A Grammar of Togo Kan
(Dogon language family, Mali)

Jeffrey Heath
University of Michigan

July 2015

author’s email
schweinehaxen@hotmail.com

color codes (excluding headings)
blue: transcription of Togo Kan forms (italics)
green: transcription of forms from other Malian languages and of all unitalicized forms
(reconstructions, underlying forms, and IPA transcriptions)
Contents

1 Introduction .............................................................................................................. 1
  1.1 Dogon languages ................................................................................................. 1
  1.2 Togo Kan language ............................................................................................. 1
  1.3 Environment ......................................................................................................... 5
  1.4 Previous and contemporary study of Togo Kan .................................................. 5
    1.4.1 Previous scholarship (Prost) ........................................................................ 5
    1.4.2 Fieldwork ...................................................................................................... 5
    1.4.3 Acknowledgements ......................................................................................... 6

2 Sketch ....................................................................................................................... 7
  2.1 Phonology ........................................................................................................... 7
    2.1.1 Segmental phonology .................................................................................. 7
    2.1.2 Prosody ......................................................................................................... 7
    2.1.3 Key phonological rules ................................................................................. 8
  2.2 Inflectable verbs .................................................................................................. 8
  2.3 Noun phrase (NP) ............................................................................................... 8
  2.4 Case-marking and PPs ......................................................................................... 9
  2.5 Main clauses and constituent order .................................................................... 9
  2.6 Nominalized clauses and constituent order ....................................................... 10
  2.7 Relative clauses .................................................................................................. 10
  2.8 Interclausal syntax ............................................................................................... 11
  2.9 Anaphora ............................................................................................................ 11

3 Phonology ................................................................................................................. 13
  3.1 General ............................................................................................................... 13
  3.2 Internal phonological structure of stems and words ............................................ 13
    3.2.1 Syllables ...................................................................................................... 13
    3.2.2 Metrical structure ....................................................................................... 13
  3.3 Consonants ........................................................................................................ 13
    3.3.1 Alveopalatals (c, j) ..................................................................................... 14
    3.3.2 Voiced velar stop g and spirantized y .......................................................... 14
    3.3.3 Back nasals (ŋ, n) ....................................................................................... 14
    3.3.4 Voiceless labials (p, ʃ) ................................................................................ 15
    3.3.5 Laryngeals (h, ʔ) ....................................................................................... 15
    3.3.6 Sibilants (s, ʃ, z, ʒ) .................................................................................... 15
    3.3.7 Nasalized sonorants (r̩, w̩, y̩) .................................................................... 15
  3.3.8 Consonant clusters ......................................................................................... 16
    3.3.8.1 Word- and morpheme-initial CC clusters .............................................. 16
    3.3.8.2 Medial geminated CC clusters ............................................................... 16
    3.3.8.3 Medial non-geminate CC clusters .......................................................... 16
    3.3.8.4 Medial triple CCC clusters .................................................................... 18
    3.3.8.5 Final CC clusters .................................................................................... 18
  3.4 Vowels ............................................................................................................... 18
    3.4.1 Oral short and long vowels ......................................................................... 18
3.4.2 Nasalized vowels .......................................................... 22
3.4.3 Phonetically nasalized vowels next to nasal consonants .......... 25
3.4.4 Initial vowels .................................................................. 27
3.4.5 Stem-final vowels .............................................................. 27
3.4.6 Vocalic harmony .............................................................. 27
3.4.7 Vowel symbolism ........................................................... 28
3.5 Segmental phonological rules .................................................. 28
  3.5.1 Trans-syllabic consonantal processes .................................. 28
    3.5.1.1 Nasalization-Spreading ........................................... 28
    3.5.1.2 Consonantal metathesis ........................................... 29
  3.5.2 Vocalism of suffixally derived verbs .................................. 29
    3.5.2.1 Suffixal Vowel-Spreading ....................................... 29
    3.5.2.2 Presuffixal V₂-Raising ............................................ 30
  3.5.3 Vocalic rules sensitive to syllabic or metrical structure ........... 30
    3.5.3.1 Epenthesis ......................................................... 30
    3.5.3.2 rv-Deletion ....................................................... 30
  3.5.4 Syncope ...................................................................... 32
  3.5.5 Apocope of final high vowels .......................................... 32
  3.5.6 Local consonant cluster rules ........................................... 33
  3.5.7 Vowel-vowel and vowel-semivowel sequences ...................... 33
    3.5.7.1 Hiatus between adjacent vowels in reduplications ........ 33
    3.5.7.2 vv-Contraction .................................................... 33
  3.5.8 Local vowel-consonant interactions .................................... 34
    3.5.8.1 /i/ > u before labial ............................................... 34
    3.5.8.2 Monophthongization (/iy/ to i, /uw/ to u) ..................... 34
3.6 Cliticization .................................................................... 34
3.7 Tones ............................................................................. 34
  3.7.1 Lexical tone patterns ..................................................... 35
    3.7.1.1 At least one H-tone in each stem ................................ 35
    3.7.1.2 Lexical tone melodies of verbs .................................. 36
    3.7.1.3 Lexical tone melodies for unsegmentable noun stems .... 37
    3.7.1.4 Lexical tone melodies for adjectives and numerals ......... 38
    3.7.1.5 Tone-Component location for verb stems .................... 38
    3.7.1.6 Tone-break location for bitonal noun stems .................. 39
    3.7.1.7 Tone-break location for tritonal noun stems ................ 42
  3.7.2 Grammatical tone patterns ............................................. 42
    3.7.2.1 Grammatical tones for verb stems ............................ 42
    3.7.2.2 Grammatical tones for noun stems ............................ 43
    3.7.2.3 Grammatical tones for adjectives .............................. 43
    3.7.2.4 Grammatical tones for numerals ............................... 43
    3.7.2.5 Grammatical tones for demonstratives ....................... 44
  3.7.3 Tonal morphophonology .................................................. 44
    3.7.3.1 Autosegmental tone association ................................ 44
    3.7.3.2 Phonology of H(H…)L and H(L…)L tone overlays ........ 45
    3.7.3.3 Atonal-Morpheme Tone-Spreading ............................ 45
    3.7.3.4 Tone polarization .................................................. 45
    3.7.3.5 Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering ....................... 46
    3.7.3.6 Numerical as tonosyntactic catalyst for postnominal possessor .... 49
    3.7.3.7 {L}+H overlay on numeral-final string ....................... 50
  3.7.4 Low-level tone rules ....................................................... 52
4 Nominal, pronominal, and adjectival morphology ........................................ 59
4.1 Nouns ................................................................. 59
  4.1.1 Simple nouns and plural bê ~ mbê ........................................ 59
  4.1.2 Irregular nouns (‘woman’, ‘child’, ‘person’, ‘thing’) ..................... 60
  4.1.3 ‘So-and-so’ (àma:n) .......................................... 61
  4.1.4 Initial Cv- reduplication in nouns .................................... 61
  4.1.5 Final reduplication in nouns ........................................ 64
  4.1.6 Nouns with full-stem iteration ..................................... 64
  4.1.7 Frozen initial á- or âN- in nouns .................................. 66
  4.1.8 Vocatives of kin terms ............................................ 67
4.2 Derived nominals .................................................... 67
  4.2.1 Suffix -gú or -gi with {H} overlay ................................ 67
  4.2.2 Deadjectival extent nominals with reduplication and suffix -ná .... 67
  4.2.3 Characteristic denominal derivative (-gú, -gi’ after {L} overlay) . . 68
  4.2.4 Verbal nouns (-ù ~ -í ~ -Ø) .................................... 69
  4.2.5 Instrument nominals .............................................. 70
  4.2.6 Uncompounded agentives ......................................... 71
4.3 Pronouns .................................................................. 71
  4.3.1 Basic personal pronouns ............................................. 71
  4.3.2 Personal pronouns as complements of postpositions ................. 72
4.4 Demonstratives ......................................................... 72
  4.4.1 Demonstrative pronouns and definite morphemes ....................... 72
  4.4.1.1 Tonal definite (final L-tone) .................................. 73
  4.4.1.2 ‘This/that’ deictic demonstrative pronouns (nɔ:‘, yɔ:‘, ẹrú kɔ:~ ẹ kɔ:) . 75
  4.4.1.3 Prenominal discourse-definite kó ‘that (same)’ ..................... 77
  4.4.1.4 Anaphoric/logophoric demonstrative pronouns ..................... 78
  4.4.1.5 kiin with definite locations ..................................... 78
  4.4.1.6 Possible dialectal definite morpheme ............................. 79
  4.4.2 Demonstrative adverbs ............................................ 79
    4.4.2.1 Locative adverbs ............................................. 79
    4.4.2.2 Emphatic and approximative modifiers of adverbs .............. 79
    4.4.2.3 ‘Like this/that’ (, ) .......................................... 80
  4.4.3 Presentatives (ùŋọ̀y, ùŋò ~ ùŋó, yọgò, ìgè) ......................... 80
4.5 Adjectives ................................................................ 81
  4.5.1 Types of adjectives ............................................... 82
  4.5.2 Distributive adjective iteration with {H}·{L} overlay .................... 84
  4.5.3 Expressive adverbials with adjectival sense ‘flat’ (pótv→) ............ 84
4.6 Numerals ................................................................. 85
4.6.1 Cardinal numerals ................................................................. 85
4.6.1.1 ‘1’ (túrì, túnì)’, ‘same (one)’, and ‘other’ (pèrè).............................. 85
4.6.1.2 ‘2’ to ‘10’ ........................................................................... 85
4.6.1.4 Large numerals (‘100’, ‘1000’, …) and their composites ............... 87
4.6.1.5 Currency ........................................................................... 88
4.6.1.6 Distributive iteration of numerals ............................................... 88
4.6.2 Ordinal adjectives .................................................................. 88
4.6.2.1 ‘First’ (kò-kè) and ‘last’ (dùnì) .............................................. 88
4.6.2.2 Other ordinals (suffix -nìbì) .................................................. 89
4.6.2.3 Unsuffixed ordinal with ‘month’ .............................................. 90
4.6.3 Fractions and portions ............................................................ 90
5 Nominal and adjectival compounds .............................................. 91
  5.1 Nominal compounds .................................................................. 91
  5.1.1 Compounds of type (nì nì) ....................................................... 91
  5.1.2 Compounds of type (nì hì) ....................................................... 91
  5.1.3 Compounds of type (hì nì) ....................................................... 92
  5.1.4 Compounds with final verbal noun, type (nì VblN) ....................... 93
    5.1.4.1 Verbal nouns with incorporated object ................................ 93
    5.1.4.2 Noun plus deverbal adjective ........................................... 93
  5.1.5 Agentive and verbal-noun compounds of type (x í) ..................... 94
  5.1.6 Possessive-type compounds (nì pìn) .......................................... 96
  5.1.7 Compounds with í"ñ‘child’ and variants .................................... 96
  5.1.8 ‘Man’ (ùrùa), ‘woman’ (né, yìì, yè) ......................................... 98
  5.1.9 Compounds with ‘owner’ (nì bùpà) .......................................... 99
  5.1.10 Loose and tight compounds with nà: (‘authentic’, ‘entire’) ............ 99
  5.1.11 Natural-species compounds with medial -nà:-............................ 101
  5.1.12 Instrumental relative compounds (‘oil for rubbing’) .................. 101
  5.1.13 Other phrasal compounds ...................................................... 102
  5.1.14 Unclassified nominal compounds .......................................... 102

  5.2 Adjectival compounds ............................................................... 103
    5.2.1 Bahuvrihi (“Blackbeard”) compounds .................................. 103
      5.2.1.1 With adjectival compound final (nì á) or (nì ñá) .................. 103
      5.2.1.2 With numeral compound final (n num) .............................. 104

6 Noun Phrase structure ................................................................ 105
  6.1 Organization of NP constituents ............................................... 105
    6.1.1 Linear order ....................................................................... 105
    6.1.2 Headless NPs (absolute function of demonstratives, etc.) ............ 106
    6.1.3 Apparent bifurcation (in relatives) ......................................... 107
    6.1.4 Internal bracketing and tone-dropping (unpossessed NP) .......... 107
  6.2 Possessives .............................................................................. 110
    6.2.1 Tonal changes on possessed NPs after a possessor .................... 111
      6.2.1.1 Possessed-noun {H} for prosodically light simple nouns .......... 111
      6.2.1.2 Possessed-noun {HL} for heavy and complex nouns ............. 112
      6.2.1.3 Possessed-noun {L} for two monosyllabic nouns ................. 116
      6.2.1.4 Downstep in possessed noun ............................................. 116
      6.2.1.5 {L}+H tone pattern for possessor-numeral combinations .......... 117
    6.2.2 Treatment of modifiers following the possessed noun ............... 117
7 Coordination.........................................................................................137
6.2.3 Pronominal possessors..........................................................................118
6.2.4 Inalienable possession (kin terms)..........................................................121
6.2.5 Recursive possession...............................................................................121
6.3 Noun plus adjective ...............................................................................122
6.3.1 Noun plus regular adjective (core NP)..................................................122
6.3.2 Adjective gamá ‘certain (ones)’, ‘some’..................................................123
6.3.3 Expansions of adjective..........................................................................123
6.3.3.1 Adjective sequences..........................................................................123
6.3.3.2 Adjectival and other intensifiers.........................................................123
6.3.3.3 ‘Good to eat’ (má).............................................................................125
6.4 Core NP plus cardinal numeral...................................................................126
6.4.1 Ordinary N-(Adj-)Num sequences..........................................................126
6.4.2 Adjective-Numeral Inversion..................................................................127
6.5 Noun plus determiner.................................................................................130
6.5.1 Prenominal discourse-definite kó............................................................130
6.5.2 Postnominal demonstrative pronouns.....................................................130
6.6 Universal and distributive quantifiers.......................................................131
6.6.1 ‘All’ (sà:n, fú).......................................................................................131
6.6.2 ‘All’ (dày)............................................................................................131
6.6.3 ‘Each, every, all’ (wó)............................................................................133
6.6.4 ‘Any’ (p3).............................................................................................134
6.7 Accusative absent (except for 1Sg object)..................................................135
7 Coordination...............................................................................................137
7.1 NP coordination.........................................................................................137
7.1.1 NP conjunction (‘X and Y’) by final dying-quail intonation (.:.):...........137
7.1.2 kù:, in NP conjunctions........................................................................137
7.1.3 Serial NP conjunction of type [X bè] [Y bè].............................................138
7.1.4 1. day ‘limit’ in conjunctions..................................................................138
7.2 Disjunction...............................................................................................139
7.2.1 ‘Or’ (ma:) as disjunctive particle with NPs..............................................139
7.2.2 Clause-level disjunction........................................................................139
8 Postpositions and adverbials.....................................................................141
8.1 Dative and instrumental..........................................................................141
8.1.1 Dative (nì, = tà)....................................................................................141
8.1.2 Instrumental-comitative (bè).................................................................141
8.2 Locational postpositions..........................................................................142
8.2.1 Tonal locatives.......................................................................................142
8.2.2 ‘In, on’ (basic locative) (bùn ~ bùn).......................................................144
8.2.3 ‘On X’ and ‘over X’ (kà).......................................................................145
8.2.4 ‘At the edge of X’ (kà)........................................................................146
8.2.5 ‘On top of X’ (árá)................................................................................146
8.2.6 ‘Beside X’ (bè-gàrè)............................................................................147
8.2.7 ‘Beside X’ (bà)....................................................................................147
8.2.8 ‘In front of’ (girè)................................................................................147
8.2.9 ‘Behind X’ (dògò), ‘after X’ (i dògò nì)...................................................148
8.2.10 ‘Under X, at the base of X’ (bàrè).......................................................149
8.2.11 ‘Between’ (gàn)................................................................................149
8.2.12 ‘Among X’ (kéné) ...............................................................................................................150
8.2.13 ‘From X to Y’ (bà→, fô→) ..................................................................................................150
8.2.14 Combinations with tò ~ tè ‘toward’ (sívé tè, ágá tò) ..............................................................150
8.3 Complex relational postpositions ............................................................................................151
8.3.1 Purposive and causal postpositions .......................................................................................151
8.3.1.1 Purposive ‘for’ (gë, gi, gà) ................................................................................................151
8.3.1.2 Causal ‘because of’ (sògò) ................................................................................................152
8.3.2 Source (númò) ......................................................................................................................152
8.4 Other adverbs (or equivalents) .................................................................................................153
8.4.2 Extent (gàr-à→ or sèy-a lot’, jò-jó→ or jò: ‘many’, dág-à→ ‘a little’) ...............................154
8.4.3 Specificity ................................................................................................................................154
8.4.3.1 ‘Approximately’ (lí:sì:~kà:; má) .......................................................................................154
8.4.3.2 ‘Exactly’ (tè→; jà:tì) ..........................................................................................................155
8.4.4 Evaluation ................................................................................................................................155
8.4.4.1 ‘Well’ and ‘badly’ ..............................................................................................................155
8.4.4.2 ‘Proper, right’ (jà:”) ........................................................................................................156
8.4.5 Spatiotemporal adverbs .........................................................................................................156
8.4.5.1 Temporal adverbs .............................................................................................................156
8.4.5.2 ‘First’ (là:; tì→) ...............................................................................................................156
8.4.5.3 Spatial adverbs ..................................................................................................................157
8.4.6 Expressive adverbials ............................................................................................................157
8.4.6.1 Types of expressive adverbial ............................................................................................157
8.4.6.2 Expressive adverbial plus {H}-toned perfective .................................................................162
8.4.6.3 ‘Straight’ (déw~) ..............................................................................................................163
8.4.6.4 ‘Apart, separate’ (dèy~) ..................................................................................................163
8.4.6.5 ‘Always’ (jà-wò→), ‘never’ (númà) ..................................................................................163
8.4.7 Reduplicated (iterated) adverbials .........................................................................................164
8.4.7.1 Iterated (fully repeated) onomatopoeias .........................................................................164
8.4.7.2 Distributive adverbials from iterated numerals .................................................................164
8.4.7.3 ‘Scattered, here and there’ (tàŋ-tàŋ) ................................................................................165

9 Verbal derivation ..........................................................................................................................167
9.1 Reversive verbs (-rv, -r̃v) ........................................................................................................167
9.2 Deverbal causative verbs .........................................................................................................169
9.2.1 Productive suffixed causative (-mv) ......................................................................................169
9.2.2 Minor causative suffixes (-gë, -gë, -në) .................................................................................172
9.3 Passive and transitive ................................................................................................................173
9.3.1 Mediopassive -ì: ~ -ë: versus transitive -rv ~ -r̃v. ...............................................................173
9.3.2 Passive suffix (-mv) .............................................................................................................176
9.4 Ambi-valent verbs without suffixal derivation .......................................................................176
9.5 Deadjectival inchoative and factitive verbs ............................................................................176
9.6 Denominial verbs ....................................................................................................................178
9.7 Obscure verb-verb relationships ............................................................................................178

10 Verbal inflection ........................................................................................................................179
10.1 Inflection of regular indicative verbs ......................................................................................179
10.1.1 Suffixes versus chained auxiliary verbs .............................................................................179
10.1.2 Overview of indicative categories ......................................................................................180
10.1.3 Verb stem shapes ...............................................................................................................181
10.1.3.1 CV and CV: verb stems .................................................................181
10.1.3.2 Irregular CV and CV: stems .........................................................183
10.1.3.3 Bisyllabic stems ...........................................................................184
10.1.3.4 Bisyllabic stems with final nonhigh vowel ..................................184
10.1.3.5 Bisyllabic stems with final high vowel ........................................184
10.1.3.6 Contracting and non-contracting Cvrν and Cvrνv stems ............185
10.1.3.7 Verbs with -i: in bare stem and perfective only .........................186
10.1.3.8 Verbs with -e: except in in bare stem and perfective ..................187
10.1.3.9 Trisyllabic stems ..........................................................................187
10.2 Positive indicative AMN categories ...................................................189
10.2.1 Perfective positive system (including perfect) ...............................189
10.2.1.1 Simple perfective (-e/-e/-i, -sēo, e:-sē) .......................................190
10.2.1.2 Experiential perfect ‘have ever’ (-tē-jē) .......................................194
10.2.1.3 Recent perfect (jē) .......................................................................195
10.2.1.4 Perfect of continuing possession (-e: ~ -e: ~ -i: plus sā, plural sē) .........197
10.2.1.5 Replicated perfective (Cv-... -e/-ê) .............................................197
10.2.2 Imperfective positive system ..........................................................198
10.2.2.1 Imperfective (positive) (-jú ~ -jú, -jif ~ -jif) ................................198
10.2.2.2 Replicated imperfective (Cv-... -jú) .............................................201
10.2.2.3 Paired alternative imperfective (-jō, -jê).......................................201
10.2.2.4 Delayed future (-jā sā) ...............................................................202
10.2.2.5 Progressive (-tāňa, -tēnê).............................................................203
10.2.2.6 Replicated progressive (Cv-... -tāňa) ............................................205
10.2.3 Negation of active indicative verbs..................................................205
10.2.3.1 Perfective negative (-lî, -lā) ............................................................205
10.2.3.2 Experiential perfect negative (tē-lî, tē-lā) ....................................207
10.2.3.3 Recent perfect negative (jē-lî, jē-lā) .............................................207
10.2.3.4 Imperfective negative (-rō, -rē) ...................................................207
10.2.3.5 Variant imperfective negative (-jā, -jā) .........................................209
10.2.3.6 Progressive negative (-wē-tā, -wē-rē) ..........................................210
10.2.3.7 Replicated progressive negative (Cv-... -wē-tā) ............................211
10.3 Pronominal paradigms for non-imperative verbs ..............................211
10.3.1 Subject pronominal suffixes ...............................................................211
10.3.2 Nonhuman versus 3Sg subject .........................................................212
10.4 Derived stative form of verbs (repeated and unrepeat) ......................212
10.5 Post-verbal temporal particles ...........................................................214
10.5.1 Past clitic absent ............................................................................214
10.6 Imperatives and hortatives .................................................................214
10.6.1 Imperatives and prohibitives ............................................................214
10.6.1.1 Positive imperatives (imperative stem, plural addressee -y) .............214
10.6.1.2 Prohibitives (-lê, plural addressee -lê-y) ......................................216
10.6.2 Hortatives .......................................................................................218
10.6.2.1 Positive hortatives (-mâ, plural addressee -mâ-y) ............................218
10.6.2.2 Hortative negative (-m-lê, plural addressee -m-lê-y) .....................220
10.6.3 Syntactic status of second-person subject in imperatives ..............221
10.6.4 Imperative and hortative verbs with non-second person subject ......223
10.6.4.1 Imperative with third person subject .............................................223
10.6.4.2 Imperative with implied first person singular subject .....................223
10.6.4.3 Hortative with second or third person subject ..............................223

ix
11 VP and predicate structure

11.1 Regular verbs and VP structure

11.1.1 Verb types (valency)

11.1.2 Objects

11.1.3 Verb Phrase

11.1.4 Fixed subject-verb collocations

11.1.5 Fixed verb-object combinations

11.1.5.1 Verb and noncognate noun

11.1.5.2 Formal relationships between cognate nominal and verb

11.1.5.3 Grammatical status of cognate nominal

11.2 ‘Be’, ‘become’, and other statives

11.2.1 ‘It is’ clitics

11.2.2 Existential and locative quasi-verbs and particles

11.2.2.1 Existential (yé ~ yɔ̀)

11.2.2.2 Locational-existential copula (wɔ̀, kɔ̀, negative wɔː~rɔ̀, kɔː~rɔ̀)

11.2.2.3 Inchoative ‘become’ (kẹ̀, wẹ́) related to ‘be (somewhere)’ quasi-verbs

11.2.2.4 Perfective copulas (kí-í, wí-í) ‘be’

11.2.3 Positional statives (sò ‘be in’, nàŋà ‘be on’, wàwà ‘be on’)...

11.2.4 ‘Know’ and ‘want’...

11.2.5 Morphologically regular verbs...

11.2.5.1 ‘Remain’ (ṣígẹ́)

11.2.5.2 ‘Become’ (tànã), ‘transform’ (tànun-gù)

11.2.5.3 ‘Take place’ (bɔ̀r-ẹ́)

11.2.5.4 ‘Fear, be afraid’ (limi-ì: ~ ị̀y-ì:)

11.3 Quotative verb

11.3.1 ‘Say’ verbs...

11.3.1.1 pórù ‘say, speak’

11.3.1.2 ẹ́ ‘say’

11.4 Adjectival predicates

11.4.1 Positive adjectival predicates...

11.4.1.1 Simple adjective stem plus copula

11.4.1.2 Adverbial extension of adjective stem (e.g. -í-ẹ́) plus copula

11.4.2 Negative adjectival and stative predicates (lú, lé)

11.4.3 Emphatic reduplicated adjectival predicate (Rdp^I,II,III,Adj)

11.4.4 Factive adjectival predicates (bẹ̀)

11.5 Possessive predicates...

11.5.1 ‘Have’ (sà, sè)

11.5.2 Special form of ‘have’ (sí-í)

11.5.3 ‘Belong to’ predicates ([X kẹ̀] = ?)

11.6 Verb iteration

11.6.1 Iteration of inflected verb forms...

11.6.2 Simple iteration of bare verb stems (self-chaining)

11.6.3 Verb iteration with initial reduced to one syllable (reduplication)
11.6.4 Iteration with presuffixal vocalism of verb stem........................................259
11.6.5 Verb iteration of type [verb]_{inflection} .................................260
11.6.6 Verb iteration of type [verb]-Pfv mà → ë → verb-Pfv] .................................260
11.6.7 Verb iteration plus mà.................................................................261

12 Comparatives..................................................................................263
12.1 Asymmetrical comparatives ............................................................263
12.1.1 Asymmetrical comparatives without gá:rá ‘more’ ......................263
12.1.1.1 Predicative adjective with là ‘than’ and comparandum.........263
12.1.1.2 Verbal predicate plus sigé ~ sigé ‘more’ and là ‘than’ ..........264
12.1.2 Asymmetrical comparatives with gá:rá ‘more’ .........................265
12.1.2.1 {HL}-toned predicative adjective with gá:rá ‘more’, sógò ‘than’......265
12.1.2.2 {HL}-toned verb plus gá:rá ‘more’ and sógò ‘than’ ..................266
12.1.3 {HL} overlay with other gradient quantifiers ...............................268
12.1.4 ‘Be better, more’ (ìré) .................................................................269
12.1.5 ‘Best’ .........................................................................................270
12.2 Symmetrical comparatives .............................................................271
12.2.1 ‘Be equal to’ (bà:)) .................................................................271
12.2.2 ‘As much as’ (bà:→) ..............................................................271
12.2.3 ‘Same (equal)’ (kéw-kéw, ké-kéw) ............................................272
12.2.4 ‘Attain, equal’ (dëk) .................................................................273
12.3 ‘A fortiori’ (sè:, nè:, yè, sà-gàrà) ..................................................273

13 Focalization and interrogation..........................................................275
13.1 Focalization ................................................................................275
13.1.1 Subject focalization .................................................................276
13.1.2 Object focalization .................................................................279
13.1.3 Focalization of PP or other adverb ............................................280
13.1.4 Focalization of postpositional complement ..............................281
13.2 Interrogatives ..............................................................................281
13.2.1 Polar (yes/no) interrogatives ....................................................281
13.2.1.1 Simple polar interrogatives (mà) .........................................281
13.2.1.2 Rhetorical tag question with lò mà, lò→ ................................282
13.2.1.3 Tag question with là:; là: mà ..............................................282
13.2.2 ‘Who?’ (à:)) ............................................................................282
13.2.3 ‘What?’ (ìpè), ‘with what?’, ‘why?’ ......................................283
13.2.4 ‘Where?’ (yà: ~ yà:) .................................................................284
13.2.5 ‘When?’ (yà: dògùrù, yà: tènè bè) ..............................................284
13.2.6 ‘How?’ (nàj) ............................................................................285
13.2.7 ‘How much/many?’ (à:ɲá) ......................................................285
13.2.8 ‘Which?’ (yà:-kà) .................................................................286
13.2.9 ‘What happens?’ (sìjì‘→) ..........................................................287
13.2.10 Embedded interrogatives .........................................................287

14 Relativization .................................................................................289
14.1 Basics of relative clauses ............................................................289
14.1.1 Coordinated relatives with a shared head ................................290
14.1.2 Tone-dropping in an unpossessed NP as head of relative clause ....290
14.1.3 Addition of a possessor NP to a relative-clause head NP ..........291
14.1.4 Restrictions on the head noun in a relative clause .................292
14.1.5 Relative clause with conjoined NP as head ........................................292
14.1.6 Headless relative clause ........................................................................293
14.1.7 Resumptive {L}-toned element after relative ........................................293
14.1.8 Preverbal subject pronoun in relative clause ........................................295
14.1.9 Relative-clause verb ..............................................................................295
14.1.9.1 Positive perfective-system verbs in relative clauses ...........................296
14.1.9.2 Positive imperfective-system verbs in relative clauses .....................301
14.1.9.3 Negative perfective-system verbs in relative clauses .........................308
14.1.9.4 Negative imperfective-system verbs in relative clauses .....................309
14.1.9.5 Stative verbs (positive and negative) in relative clauses ....................310
14.1.9.6 Other predicates (‘be’, ‘have’, ‘be in’, ‘it is’, adjective) in relatives ....311
14.1.10 Same-subject mà connecting nonsubject relative to main clause...........313
14.1.11 Relative clause involving verb- or VP-chain ......................................315
14.1.12 Demonstratives following the verb ......................................................316
14.1.13 Universal quantifier ‘all’ (ʮ̀aturity) following the verb .........................316
14.1.14 Evaluative adjective following the verb ..............................................317
14.2 Subject relative clause ..............................................................................318
14.3 Object relative clause ..............................................................................319
14.4 Possessor relative clause ..........................................................................320
14.5 Relativization on the complement of a postposition .................................321

15 Verb (VP) chaining and adverbial clauses ..................................................323
15.1 Direct chains (without chaining morpheme) .............................................323
15.1.1 Verbal noun of directly chained verbs ....................................................324
15.1.2 Presence of AMN suffix in nonfinal verb in direct chains ....................324
15.1.3 Linear position and arguments of directly chained verbs .....................325
15.1.4 Negation of direct verb chains ..............................................................326
15.1.5 Iterated {HL}-toned verbs plus a final motion verb ................................326
15.1.6 Nonfinal L-toned CVector verb stems in chains ..................................327
15.1.6.1 Nonfinal L-toned ɬ yē ‘go’ in chains ................................................327
15.1.6.2 Nonfinal imperative ɬ yà: ‘go’ in chains ...........................................327
15.1.6.3 Nonfinal L-toned ɬ tī ‘do first’ in chains ...........................................327
15.1.7 Inflected form of yē- ‘go’ as final member of chain ................................328
15.1.8 Chaining with jìjì ‘(go) along with’ ......................................................329
15.1.9 Chaining with final perfective of pòrù ‘say’ ............................................330
15.2 Adverbial clauses with overt chaining or subordinating morpheme .........330
15.2.1 Imperfective and durative subordinated clauses ....................................330
15.2.1.1 Progressive adverbial clause (ɗ tānà, plural -ɗ jēg) ........................330
15.2.1.2 Different-subject ‘while’ clause (ɗ nì ← ɗ h) ..................................331
15.2.1.3 Same-subject ‘while’ clause (ɗ jē) ..................................................333
15.2.1.4 Same-subject ‘while’ clause (ɗ nì) ..................................................334
15.2.1.5 Parallel construction (Verb1ɬ yà:; Verb2ɬ yà:) .................................335
15.2.1.6 Parallel construction (Verb; Imprt ɬ Verb2l; Imprt) ..........................335
15.2.1.7 ‘Until getting tired’ (ɗò ~ dê̂ò-ɗè) ...................................................336
15.2.1.8 Chains with ɗè: plus locational-existential quasi-verb .......................336
15.2.2 Anterior clauses .....................................................................................337
15.2.2.1 Same-subject past anterior (ɗè: ~ ɗè ~ ɗ t) ....................................337
15.2.2.2 Simple inflected verb plus mà ‘and then’ .........................................340
15.2.2.3 Same-subject anterior ɗè: ~ ɗè ~ ɗ t plus mà ..................................340
15.2.2.4 Conjoined background perfectives with dying-quail (ɗ: ) ..................341
15.2.2.5 Perfective linker between two chained verbs (tē-è: ~ tē-è) .......................... 342
15.2.2.6 (Pseudo-conditional) future anterior (dē) .................................................. 342
15.2.2.7 Different-subject anterior clause (kē:~ kērè~ kē-è:) .................................. 344
15.2.2.8 Different-subject kē:~ kērè plus mà ............................................................... 345
15.2.2.9 Different-subject ‘after’ clause (-n dē) .......................................................... 345
15.2.2.10 gi-ń dē ‘when, after’ (different subject) ....................................................... 346
15.2.3 ‘Since …’ clauses (gi:ń) .................................................................................... 347
15.2.4 ‘Until…’ clauses .............................................................................................. 349
15.3 Noun clauses ...................................................................................................... 349
15.4 Reverse anteriority clause ‘before …’ ............................................................... 350
15.4.1 Based on perfective negative ......................................................................... 350
15.4.1.1 kó k5-n dē ....................................................................................................... 350
15.4.1.2 kó k3 bè ........................................................................................................ 351
15.4.2 With delayed future -jā ................................................................................ 351
15.5 Spatial and manner adverbial clauses .................................................................. 353
15.5.1 Spatial adverbial clause (where …) (nà) ......................................................... 353
15.5.2 Manner adverbial clause (how …) (bà) ............................................................ 353
15.5.3 Headless adverbial clause as spatiotemporal or manner clause .................... 354
15.5.3.1 Omission of redundant clause-internal head ............................................... 354
15.5.3.2 Headless adverbial relative clause plus topic wà: ........................................ 354
15.5.4 ‘From X, until (or: all the way to) Y’ (nàñá, t dù) ............................................. 355
15.6 Past time constructions ...................................................................................... 357
15.6.1 Perfect with gàrá ‘yè (‘y-è) ‘pass’ .................................................................... 357

16 Conditional constructions .................................................................................... 359
16.1 Conditional antecedent with dē ‘if’ ................................................................... 359
16.1.1 Simple dē ........................................................................................................ 359
16.1.2 Reduced form of simple perfective of CV verb before dē ......................... 360
16.1.3 Extensions of dē .............................................................................................. 360
16.1.3.1 tāñá yè-Ø dē ‘if it happens that …’ ................................................................. 360
16.1.3.2 t-i dē (temporal sequencing) ................................................................. 361
16.1.4 ‘Unless’ antecedent ......................................................................................... 361
16.2 Alternative ‘if’ particles .................................................................................... 362
16.2.1 ‘Even if …’ (… kà:~ làl … kà:~) ................................................................. 362
16.2.2 ‘As soon as …’ (dē fú→) .............................................................................. 362
16.2.3 ‘As long as …’ (tà:~ fú→) .............................................................................. 363
16.2.4 ‘Suppose that …’ (sà) .................................................................................. 363
16.3 Willy-nilly and disjunctive antecedents (‘whether X or Y …’) ......................... 364
16.4 Counterfactual conditional (kà:~) ..................................................................... 364

17 Complement and purposive clauses .................................................................... 365
17.1 Quotative complement ..................................................................................... 365
17.1.1 Direct versus indirect in quotative complements ......................................... 365
17.1.2 ‘Say that …‘ with inflectable ‘say’ verb (póri, gi) .......................................... 365
17.1.3 Quotative particle wà .................................................................................... 366
17.1.4 Quotative subject wà and allomorphs ........................................................... 367
17.1.5 Jussive complement (reported imperative or hortative) .............................. 368
17.1.5.1 Quoted imperative ..................................................................................... 368
17.1.5.2 Quoted hortative ....................................................................................... 369
17.2 Factive (indicative) complements .................................................................... 370
17.2.1 ‘Know that…’ factive complement .................................................. 370
17.2.2 ‘See (find, hear) that…’ complement ................................................ 370
17.2.2.1 Factive complement of ‘see’ and ‘hear’ ........................................... 370
17.2.2.2 Imperfective complement of ‘see’ and ‘hear’ .................................. 371
17.3 Nominalized and non-factive imperfective complements .......................... 371
17.3.1 Structure of verbal noun clause .......................................................... 372
17.3.2 ‘Prevent’ (gà:ñ) with nominal complement ........................................ 373
17.3.3 ‘Dare’ (dà:rì) with imperfective complement ...................................... 374
17.3.4 ‘Consent’ (yówɔ, mà:ñ) with verbal-noun or imperfective complement .... 374
17.3.5 ‘Cease’ (dàga) with verbal-noun complement ....................................... 375
17.3.6 ‘Want’ (iye) with verbal-noun or imperfective complement .................. 375
17.3.7 ‘Forget’ (nànyà) with imperfective complement .................................... 376
17.3.8 Obligational ‘must VP’ (köy) ................................................................. 377
17.3.9 Normative ‘it is right that…’ (jà:ñ kà) with imperfective complement ...... 377
17.3.10 ‘Fear’ (liw-ì ~ lìy-ì) with imperfective complement ........................... 378
17.3.11 ‘Begin’ (tɔrì) with verbal-noun or purposive complement .................... 378
17.3.12 ‘Be VERB-able’ (bir-ì) with verbal-noun complement .......................... 380
17.3.13 ‘Finish’ (kili) with verbal-noun complement ...................................... 380
17.3.14 ‘Complete, finish’ (dùnrì) plus same-subject anterior clause ................ 381
17.4 Locative verbal noun or other nominal complement ............................... 381
17.5 Chained-verb formal clause ................................................................. 381
17.5.1 ‘Be able to, can’ ................................................................................. 381
17.5.1.1 bërè following the main verb .......................................................... 381
17.5.1.2 bërè in respectful requests ............................................................. 382
17.5.1.3 {L}-toned bërè preceding the main verb .......................................... 382
17.5.2 ‘Help’ (bàrà) as {L}-toned nonfinal verb in chain ................................. 383
17.5.3 ‘Look’ (gër-ì) as final verb in chain (‘try to’) ...................................... 383
17.6 Purposive, causal, and locative clauses .................................................. 384
17.6.1 Purposive clauses with postposition gë:; gi, or g-i dè .............................. 384
17.6.1.1 Purposive clause with }gë: ............................................................... 384
17.6.1.2 Purposive clause with }gi ................................................................ 387
17.6.1.3 Purposive clause with g-i dè ............................................................ 387
17.6.2 Tonal purposive clauses of type (n ð) before motion verb ...................... 389
17.6.3 Purposive clauses with -lì ................................................................. 390
17.6.4 Causal (‘because’) clause (sàbù, sàbù dè→) ....................................... 390
17.6.5 Phrase- or clause-final sògò ~ sògò ‘because (of)’ ............................... 391

18 Anaphora ................................................................................................. 393
18.1 Reflexive .................................................................................. 393
18.1.1 Reflexive object (sà)........................................................................ 393
18.1.2 Reflexive PP complement ................................................................. 393
18.1.3 Reflexive possessor ......................................................................... 394
18.1.3.1 Reflexive possessor sà(a) (plural sà(a) bè) ....................................... 394
18.1.3.2 Reflexive possessor mà ................................................................ 395
18.1.4 Reflexive with antecedent in higher clause ....................................... 396
18.1.5 Reflexive topic (sà(a) kè)................................................................. 397
18.1.6 Emphatic pronouns ......................................................................... 398
18.1.6.1 sàn-5: ‘(by/for) oneself’ .............................................................. 398
18.2 Logophoric pronouns ......................................................................... 398
18.2.1 Logophoric ènè for second and third person antecedent ..................... 398
19 Grammatical pragmatics........................................................................................................402
19.1 Topic ...................................................................................................................................402
19.1.1 Falling tone (or pitch) on topical NP ..............................................................................402
19.1.2 Topic (wɔ́) .........................................................................................................................403
19.1.3 Possessive kè in topic function ........................................................................................405
19.1.4 Topical interrogative subject ‘what about?’ (dà) ..............................................................405
19.1.5 Topic (kày) .........................................................................................................................406
19.1.6 ‘Now’ (kà:nà, né:, né: wɔ́) ................................................................................................407
19.1.7 ‘Also’ (kà:”à ~ kà:”) .............................................................................................................407
19.1.8 ‘Also’ (= nì) .......................................................................................................................409
19.1.9 ‘Even’ (hâ:l, kà:”à ~ kà:”) ..................................................................................................409
19.2 Interclausal discourse markers ..........................................................................................410
19.2.1 ‘But ...’ (gà→) ....................................................................................................................410
19.2.2 ‘And/or alternatively ...’ (gà́) ............................................................................................410
19.2.3 ‘Otherwise ...’ (dùŋgùń’ò) ..................................................................................................411
19.3 Pragmatic adverbs or equivalents ......................................................................................411
19.3.1 ‘Again’ (pîlè-m-è: , pîlè-mì, iyè = nì) , ‘not again’ (pèrè) .............................................411
19.4 ‘Only’ particles ....................................................................................................................412
19.4.1 ‘Only’ (sà) ..........................................................................................................................412
19.4.2 ‘Just (one)’ (léw’) ..............................................................................................................413
19.5 Phrase-final emphatics .......................................................................................................413
19.5.1 Clause-final tájìrà ‘definitely’ ............................................................................................413
19.5.2 Phrase-final jà:tì ‘exactly’ ..................................................................................................413
19.5.3 Clause-final kòy (confirming) ...........................................................................................414
19.5.4 Clause-final là (surprise) ..................................................................................................414
19.5.5 Clause-final dè (contradicting or warning) .........................................................................415
19.5.6 Clause-final gà ~ gâ: (warning) ..........................................................................................415
19.6 Backchannel and uptake checks .......................................................................................415
19.7 Greetings ............................................................................................................................416

20 Text .......................................................................................................................................419
“Planting” ................................................................................................................................419

Indices .......................................................................................................................................429
Prosody (grammatical) ...........................................................................................................429
Grammatical tone overlays .................................................} ...........................................................429
Intonation .....................................................................................................................................430
Selected morphemes .................................................................................................................430
Grammatical terms ....................................................................................................................436
Abbreviations and symbols ........................................................................................................443
Abbreviations ..........................................................................................................................443
Symbols .................................................................................................................................444
Reference ..................................................................................................................................445
1 Introduction

1.1 Dogon languages

This is one of several grammars of Dogon languages produced by me and others as part of a project begun in 2004. There are some 20 Dogon languages by a conservative count and perhaps 80 locally named varieties. The difference between dialect and language is often unclear.

The wider relationships of Dogon are not well understood. Traditionally they have been ascribed to the Niger-Congo family, but a demonstration of this or other genetic relationship has yet to be made and some linguists doubt the Niger-Congo connection.

1.2 Togo Kan language

Togo Kan (or TgK for short) is spoken in the sandy plains (south-)east of the plateau and cliffs of central Dogon country, still in Mali but not far from the Burkina border. It is the dominant language in a block ranging from about N 13’52” to 14’13”, and from W 03’11” to 03’25”.

The language is called $\text{tògò}^{\text{L}}\text{-ká}^{\text{n}}$ by most of its native speakers. (For superscripts like $^{\text{L}}$ see §3.7.2.) Togo ($\text{tògò}$) is the overwhelmingly dominant family (i.e. clan) name among native speakers of TgK, even in the more southerly villages. “Kan” is from $\text{ká}^{\text{n}}$ ‘mouth’, here as a compound final meaning ‘language’.

However, $\text{tènè}^{\text{L}}\text{-ká}^{\text{n}}$ is the common term for varieties spoken in an area including Toroli and Azanga, generally south of the 14th parallel (but not including Zon or Wilwal). It is possible that speakers in this area consider Tene Kan to be a distinct variety, though my main TgK informant denied any major dialectal difference. $\text{tènè}$ is the name of the zone, not a family name. Most speakers of Tene Kan have Togo as surname.

Villages where Togo Kan (or Tene Kan) is the dominant language are listed in (1). The names are given both in the native pronunciation and in the Gallicized written name found on maps, namely the colonial-era government maps for “Bandiagara” (above 14 N) and “Tougan” (below 14 N), sold by the Institut de Géographie in Bamako. Current official village names may be slightly different. In citations, I generally omit French accents.

Among the common adjectival modifiers in the village names are $\text{kàná}$ ‘new’, $\text{pè}^{\text{n}}$ ‘old’ and by extension ‘main, principal’, $\text{gàrà}$ ‘big’, and $\text{ná}$: ‘main, principal’. Forms of $\text{àná}$ ‘village’, $\text{kù}^{\text{n}}$ ‘head’, $\text{ójú}$ ‘road’, and $\text{gìr}^{\text{i}}$ ‘house’ also occur in some compounds. Unparenthesized coordinates are from our own survey, in degrees and minutes (both 0 to 60), plus decimal fractions of minutes (.001 to .999). Coordinates in parentheses are estimated from maps. The maps show two widely separated Pélédourou villages, one of which we surveyed. Some village clusters have a global name as well as specific names for each village.

(1) native name | map name | coordinates
--- | --- | ---
a. “Togo Kan” speaking $\text{ámádù-bádù}$ hit.$\text{àná}$ [not on map] 14 15.230 03 19.701 $\text{ámá-mùr}^{\text{n}}\text{ù}$, divided into:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Coordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>âmâ-mûr“û-bôrô</td>
<td>14 13.548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âmâ-mûr“û-ďûŋj”</td>
<td>14 13.580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âmâ-mûr“û-kú“</td>
<td>14 13.155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(âmâ-mûr“û-)ânâ-kâgà</td>
<td>14 13.399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(âmâ-mûr“û-)ôr“-sûgû</td>
<td>14 13.355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânâ bêr“ë</td>
<td>14 13.387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânâ-bêr“ë dîrú</td>
<td>14 14.215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânâ-kâgà</td>
<td>[see âmâ-mûr“û“]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânâ-mûlâ kânâ</td>
<td>14 02.636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânâ-mûlâ pê“</td>
<td>14 07.419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânâ-ôjû (“village-road”)</td>
<td>14 14.259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânjó:nô îl. ânâ</td>
<td>14 36.316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ârû-nâ:-bêr“ë</td>
<td>14 08.555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâ:“gôlô kânâ</td>
<td>14 00.058</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâ:“gôlô pê“</td>
<td>14 01.643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâr:ólá</td>
<td>14 09.040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâw“à</td>
<td>14 05.660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bëjërë gârû</td>
<td>14 14.694</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bënë, divided into:</td>
<td>14 10.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bënë kânâ</td>
<td>14 09.823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bënë ná:</td>
<td>14 09.493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bënë-përû</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birëkâr“à“</td>
<td>14 04.222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birë“</td>
<td>14 02.415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dâmìs““îl. ânâ</td>
<td>14 13.896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dë:rô</td>
<td>14 15.317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dî:“</td>
<td>14 11.060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dûn:“</td>
<td>[=tôr“-dûn:“]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gëwrû</td>
<td>14 10.187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gîrë-gârû</td>
<td>14 13.665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gôrô</td>
<td>14 15.649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gôm, divided into:</td>
<td>14 11.582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gôm kânâ</td>
<td>14 11.931</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gôm ná:</td>
<td>14 10.047</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jâbâjâ:</td>
<td>14 14.469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jimë“û“</td>
<td>14 09.693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jimë“û-ďûŋj“</td>
<td>14 09.788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jî:“</td>
<td>13 51.185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kë“û“</td>
<td>14 09.411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kôy“-gir“û</td>
<td>14 07.845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kà“-pê“</td>
<td>14 13.343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàr:ôlí</td>
<td>14 13.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kûrû-kûâ, divided into:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kûrû-kûâ dâgâ</td>
<td>14 12.741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kûrû-kûâ gârû</td>
<td>14 12.252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kûnëngôrô</td>
<td>14 05.889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ôjû-tâ:ñà, divided into:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ôjû-tâ:ñà ná:</td>
<td>14 07.341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ôjû-tâ:ñà pê“</td>
<td>14 07.653</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. “Tene Kan” speaking

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Town</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Longitude</th>
<th>Latitude</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Azanga</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 55.934</td>
<td>03 19.739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diga</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 47.349</td>
<td>03 25.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gandourou</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 52.925</td>
<td>03 20.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganaguénékouro</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 50.760</td>
<td>03 20.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gouroussindé</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 53.414</td>
<td>03 19.450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanama</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 58.804</td>
<td>03 19.028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saalé</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 50.020</td>
<td>03 25.453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodougara</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 47.215</td>
<td>03 25.673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tansogou</td>
<td>[not on map]</td>
<td>13 53.074</td>
<td>03 23.394</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I was told that téwⁿè (Tiémama) was the oldest TgK speaking village.

Togo Kan and Tengou Kan have been regarded in recent classifications as dialects of a single language. There is no satisfactory overall name for this “language,” which has been somewhat arbitrarily called “Tene Kan” and more recently "Tengou Kan" in the online Ethnologue. There are actually five such endonyms for varieties of this “language”: Togo Kan, Tene Kan, Tengou Kan (in the narrow sense), Guimiri Kan language (giwⁿrⁿ-ká”), and Worou Kan (wɔːrù-ká”). The latter is also known as Wolou Kan. The primary surnames are Guindo for Tengou Kan (narrow sense), Sagara for Guimiri Kan, and Poudiougo for Worou Kan. Perhaps a better name for the “language” would be “Southeastern Dogon” or “Tengou-Togo.”

I can find no reference to Guimiri Kan or Worou Kan in the literature, and it is evident that the relationships among all these varieties will have to be worked out by new fieldwork. For the time being I will follow Dogon usage and distinguish all of them.

Historically, the Togo (originally from Tiemama), the Guindo (from Ireli), the Sagara (from e.g. Ende), and the Poudiougo (from Wol) have spread from their original villages at or near the cliffs into the vast expanse of sandy plains to the southeast. Several of the Guimiri Kan and Worou Kan speaking villages are north and northeast of Togo Kan country, while many Tengou Kan speaking villages are to the west, but the boundaries are ragged. This is especially true of the southern part of the Togo Kan zone, where each village has a different mix of TgK, Tengou Kan, Guimiri Kan, and Worou Kan, plus Gourou (closely related to Jamsay, with surnames Djimde, Niangali, Dama, and Bamadio), and Mossi (speaking Moore). Pigué village (N 13 51.186 by W 03 07.448) is a Toro So outlier, with surname Douyon. Several villages in this southern area have three or four languages in use. Where they are closely related (Togo Kan, Tengou Kan, Worou Kan, Guimiri Kan), it would be interesting to study the sociolinguistics at the community level (e.g., how are “language” boundaries maintained over generations?).

There are numerous Fulbe in the area, mostly freeborn (surnames Diallo, Bari, Boli, Sidibe) rather than the Fulfulde-speaking ex-slaves known collectively as Rimaibé (primary surname Tamboura). Freeborn Fulbe specialize in cattle herding but many now also practice farming. There is a sharp social and cultural divide between Fulbe and Dogon, immediately visible in housing (Fulbe huts versus Dogon mud-brick houses), clothing, hairstyles, etc. There are several small Fulbe hamlets in the spaces between Dogon villages. There are also Fulbe quarters at the edges of some Dogon villages, or separate Fulbe “suburbs” a short distance away.

The majority of TgK speakers are Muslims. However, there are Protestant and/or Catholic churches in several villages in the area.

Weekly markets (on the seven-day cycle) are held at Gandourou (Sunday), Koporo-Pe and Toroli (both Monday), Zon and Témégolo (both Tuesday), Koporo-Na and Pomboro-Dodiou-Koun (both Wednesday), and Tendeli (Saturday). There is also a small-scale market at Geourou (Friday).

The primary informant for the grammar and lexicon was Boukel Togo, who was also the first Malian intern in our Dogon project. He grew up in Koporo-Pe, in an essentially all-TgK speaking area. This village has a weekly market which attracts vehicles from several directions, so there is some contact with non-TgK speakers. However, there is no especially salient second language, other than the French learned in schools and the Bambara that is
often picked up by young people working seasonally in the cities, or by going to school in Bandiagara or other outside communities.

Some salient features of TgK are given in chapter 2.

### 1.3 Environment

Most of the TgK-speaking villages are in the sandy plains, some distance from the cliffs and plateaus of central Dogon country (far enough away to avoid the dune ridges that run parallel to the cliffs). There are no remarkable topographic features (rivers, large lakes, inselbergs, dense forests) in the zone. The economy revolves chiefly around millet farming and light herding. There is little dry-season gardening due to the absence of year-round water bodies. The rainy season extends from June to September with the main harvest around October. Blacksmiths, weavers, basket-weavers, and potters are widely scattered rather than concentrated in a few specific villages.

### 1.4 Previous and contemporary study of Togo Kan

#### 1.4.1 Previous scholarship (Prost)

There is one significant previous work on TgK, a grammar in French by missionary André Prost (1969). Like most similar works of that era, it is accurate as far as it goes. Prost did not mark tones, and in view of the way tonal patterns (lexical and grammatical) permeate the grammar of the language this is a significant handicap. Consulting Prost was helpful to me in early stages of the fieldwork in suggesting constructions to study further. Prost’s work remains valuable with respect to TgK dialectology, since the main dialect he worked on (that of Pel) is somewhat different from the one described here, and since he adds some further notes about outlying dialects.

I mention Prost throughout this grammar primarily with respect to dialectology. I note here two striking lexical differences between Prost’s Pel dialect and the Koporo-Pe dialect I have studied:

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{(2) & Pel (Prost) & Koporo-Pe & gloss} \\
\text{“já” & ñàŋá & ‘take, pick up’ (‘prendre’)} \\
\text{“kàna” & bìrè & ‘do, make’} \\
\end{array}
\]

Underlined “\( n \)” is Prost’s symbol for retroflexed tap \( n \), i.e. for \( r^n \) in my transcription. Most Dogon languages have cognates of “\( kàna \)” as the basic ‘do, make’ verb, e.g. Jamsay \( kàr^ná \) and Mombo \( kàntë \), while cognates of \( bìrè \) mean ‘perform, carry out (work or other purposeful activity)’. The languages disagree as to the basic verb for ‘take’ or ‘pick up’; “já” belongs with Najamba \( jë \)- and Bankan Tey \( zë \), while \( ñàŋá \) is cognate to e.g. Jamsay \( ýàŋá \).

#### 1.4.2 Fieldwork

My fieldwork on TgK began in late December 2009 and has continued off and on since. Boukela Togo, a native of Koporo-Pe village, was recruited as the first Malian intern in our project. He was with me in Douentza for several months during 2010.
During some of this time Boukel sat at an aging desktop computer and keyboarded TgK words and short phrases into our comparative Dogon lexical spreadsheet. Then he and I jointly edited the lexical material, some of which has found its way into this grammar (particularly sections on derivational morphology, compounding, and the like). Some additional grammatical elicitation was also done during this period, though I was simultaneously working on other Dogon languages.

In 2011 Boukel was hired (with a pay raise!) for three months. Our team made its first trip to Togo country then. We recorded texts in Koporo-Pe, surveyed most of the TgK speaking villages, and resolved a few difficult flora-fauna identifications by collecting or observing specimens. The recordings (a little over an hour) were transcribed and translated back in our bases in Douentza and Sevare.

Since then I have occasionally met with Boukel in Bamako to iron out remaining details.

1.4.3 Acknowledgements

The overall project on Dogon languages began with grant PA-50643-04 (2004-06) from the National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) for solo fieldwork by me primarily on Jamsay. Brief survey work during that project led to the idea of a comparative Dogon linguistic project. Its three phases have been funded by The National Science Foundation, Documenting Endangered Languages program: grants BCS-0537435 (2006-09), BCS-0853364 (2009-13), and BCS-1263150 (2013-16). The bulk of the fieldwork on TgK was carried out during the second phase.

Our primary Malian assistant (and my Jamsay informant) is Minkailou Djiguiba. Readers are invited to view our website, which includes interesting documentary videos: www.dogonlanguages.org.
2 Sketch

A few highlights of the grammar will be given here for purposes of initial orientation. Features distinguishing Togo Kan (TgK) from other Dogon languages are emphasized.

2.1 Phonology

2.1.1 Segmental phonology

The consonantal inventory is a typical Dogon one, with the following typologically variable features. Sibilants: s but not z is present. Palatoalveolars: j is present, but c is generally absent except in foreign words and names (e.g. from Fulfulde). Nasalized sonorants \{w^n y^n r^n\} occur noninitially.

Vowels: the usual Dogon inventory with seven vowel qualities, long and short. Nasalized vowels are present, short as well as long. Mid-height vowels constitute two classes, [+ATR] \{e o\} and [-ATR] \{ɛ ɔ\}, that are the basis for some ATR-harmonic phenomena. High vowels are extraharmonic, compatible with either harmonic set, while a patterns as [-ATR].

TgK is notable for the full or partial deletion of word- and stem-final sonorants and short high vowels. The disappearance of a final nasal is sometimes reflected by nasalization of the originally preceding vowel, but final semivowels \{*y *w\} may disappear without a trace.

2.1.2 Prosody

*Cv* with short vowel is an allowable stem shape for verbs and nouns, alongside the more common *Cv*, *CvCv*, *CvCvCv*, etc. Verbs must end in a vowel, while other stems including nouns may end in a consonant.

Nearly all stems, nouns as well as verbs, have either /H/ (all-high) or /LH/ (rising) as the basic lexical melody. The slash notation /.../ is used for lexical melodies, angled brackets \{...\} for tone overlays and more generally for surface tone patterns. For verbs, but not other stem-classes, the lexical tone-class is partially predictable from the initial consonant. Stem-initial voiced obstruents (the classic depressor consonants) require /LH/ while voiceless obstruents (anti-depressors) require /H/. Initial sonorants are neutral and allow a lexical choice between /LH/ and /H/. The lexical tones of verbs are subject to erasure by tone overlays controlled by verbal inflectional suffixes or by the larger syntactic construction. Therefore depressor consonants do not affect tones even for verbs at the phonetic level.

For nouns, adjectives, and numerals, lexical tones pay no attention to depressor versus other consonants. This is conspicuous in cognate verb-nominal pairings like *bɛ̬*: *bɛ̂*: ‘defecate’, where the nominal *bɛ̬*: is lexically (arbitrarily) /H/-toned while the verb is /LH/-toned, respecting the initial depressor consonant. Nouns, adjectives, and numerals have their lexical melodies overridden by tonosyntactic overlays words in a NP.

Dying-quail intonation (prolongation of the final syllable plus pitch decline) is the basic NP conjunction device, as in Jamsay. Prolongation without pitch drop is found with a number of adverbials.
2.1.3 Key phonological rules

The phonology, aside from the tonal morphophonology, is fairly simple. There is some deletion (Syncope, Apocope) of short high vowels in positions like \( CvC_{-Cv} \) and \( CvC_{-} \), especially in verbs.

Nasalization-Spreading is observable, especially in verbal derivational suffixes after a stem with a final syllable that consists of a nasal consonant plus a vowel. However, when the relevant nasal consonant has been simplified from an older nasal-stop sequence, e.g. \( \eta \) from \( *\eta g \), it behaves like the original cluster and does not induce nasalization of a suffixal consonant.

Some (but not all) verb stems of the shapes \( Cvrv \) and \( Cvr^{n}v \) reduce to \( Cv- \) and \( Cvr^{n}- \), respectively, before most inflectional suffixes.

2.2 Inflectable verbs

A verb form has the general shape \([\text{stem-derivation(s)-AMN-pronominal}] \). The stem is followed by any derivational suffixes; the productive ones are reversive \(-rv \), causative (rarely passive) \(-mv \), and paired mediopassive \(-t: \) (presuffixal \(-ɛ:\) ) versus transitive \(-rv \). The simple or derived stem is followed by an AMN (aspect-mood-negation) suffix, sometimes zero (imperative). There is a final pronominal-subject position, though in TgK it is reduced to singular versus plural subject, and even this distinction is not rigorously made. The AMN category may control tone overlays on the stem.

Unusually for a Dogon language, there is no conjugated past clitic that can be added to an aspectually inflected verb.

2.3 Noun phrase (NP)

Unpossessed NPs consist of words whose linear order is noun-adjective(s)-numeral-demonstrative-Pl-’all’. Tone-dropping on the noun (and on any intervening word) is controlled right-to-left by adjectives, by relative clauses, and by demonstratives.

Possession can be nonappositional (i.e. direct). In this case, all possessors except the 1Sg pronoun immediately precede the possessed NP. The 1Sg possessor in the nonappositional construction is \( mè \) following the possessed noun. When the possessor precedes the possessed NP, the latter is subject to a tone overlay, \{H\} for prosodically light possessed nouns (up to two moras), but \{HL\} for prosodically heavy possessed nouns. There are two monosyllabic nouns, ‘child’ and ‘woman, wife’, that take \{L\} overlay when possessed.

Pronominal possession can also be expressed by an appositional construction of the form \([Y [X kè]] \) ‘the Y of X’, where \( kè \) ‘possession’ (originally ‘thing’) is in apposition to the possessed NP Y and where X is a pronominal.

When a possessed NP functions as head NP in a relative (‘Seydou’s dog that fell’), the possessive construction is rebuilt as an appositional construction with the possessor now preceding the possessed NP: \([X kè] Y \). This allows Y to undergo tonal and other changes as head NP of the relative, with no interference from the possessor.

Tonosyntactic controllers within NPs are nonappositional preposed possessors, plus adjectives, relative clauses, and demonstratives. These are the primary reference restrictors, i.e. the elements that divide the set of otherwise potential referents into those that are (potentially) included and those that are specifically excluded.
An example of a rather complex NP is (3). It shows a more complex tonosyntactic structure than simpler NPs do because of the combination of a numeral and a demonstrative. The first three words (elsewhere péjụ́, márₜá, and kúrẹ́) are tone-dropped, but an H-tone is added on the final syllable of the numeral; the demonstrative itself is tone-dropped (from yɔ́:).

(3) [péjụ́ márₜá kúrẹ́:]¹⁺H i yɔ́: nà sâ:n
[sheep big six]¹⁺H iNearDist Pl all
‘all those 6 big sheep’

NPs functioning as head NPs of relatives are seemingly bifurcated, with the possessor, noun, adjective(s), and numeral remaining intact but surfacing inside the relative clause, while demonstratives, the plural morpheme, ‘all’ quantifiers, and discourse-function morphemes (like ‘also’ or ‘even’) constitute an NP coda following the verb. The “bifurcation” is really a function of the position of the relative clause within the larger NP, following Poss-N-Adj-Num but preceding the other elements.

The only definite marking is by addition of a final L-tone (tonal definite). A homophonous tonal locative with the same final L-tone is mentioned just below.

2.4 Case-marking and PPs

Adpositions are postpositions, i.e. they follow the NP or pronominal complement. Thus sînê ‘knife’, instrumental sînê bê ‘by means of a knife’. Core nonspatial postpositions are dative nî (often reduced to cliticized =ǹ), instrumental-comitative bê, and purposive gê (and variants). Some but not all nouns have a tonal locative expressed by a final L-tone (as in Jamsay). Presumably there was once a *CV locative postposition that fell afoul of the diachronic erosion of final syllables, leaving behind only its tone. bîn ~ bîn ‘in, inside of’ and other marked spatial postpositions consist of synchronic or original nouns plus a falling melody consistent with an original possessor-controlled {H} overlay combined with the tonal locative (final L-tone).

There is no accusative case marker, except that the 1Sg pronoun has a special direct-object form. Dative nî is used broadly for indirect objects (nominal and pronominal).

2.5 Main clauses and constituent order

Constituent order in main clauses is SOV. The limited pronominal-subject marking in verbs encourages the use of subject pronouns, which occupy the same position as subject NPs at the beginning of the clause. Subjects are strongly clause-initial in TgK. Whereas some Dogon languages frequently have setting adverbs like ‘yesterday’ preceding subjects, in TgK such adverbs follow subjects, typically occurring between subject and object (4d-e). Non-setting adverbs and adverbial phrases may precede or follow nonpronominal direct objects, with the more focal of the two usually just before the verb (4g).

(4) a. sèydú bútú àmàdú = ǹ¹⁺0 ̀è S money A=Dat ¹⁺give-Pfv
‘Seydou gave (the) money to Amadou.’
2.6 Nominalized clauses and constituent order

Verbal-noun (i.e. infinitival) complement clauses may include nonsubject complements such as direct objects. Simple (unquantified, unmodified) object nouns are incorporated as compound initials to the verbal noun. Multi-word object NPs retain their full main-clause form, except that the presence of a demonstrative may trigger an unusual tonal pattern. If a subject NP is expressed, it takes the form of a possessor. See §17.3.1 for details.

2.7 Relative clauses

There is no full morphological system of verb-participles in relative clauses. Instead, the verb usually has the same form as the corresponding main-clause stem, but without subject agreement (whereas main-clause verbs may agree in plurality with their subject). Perfective verbs do show some participle-like changes in relative clauses.

Following a common Dogon pattern, the main lexical part of the head NP (possessor, noun, adjective, numeral) occurs inside the relative clause but undergoes tone-dropping. Demonstratives, plural bè, nonnumeral quantifiers like ‘all’, and discourse-function morphemes like ‘also’ follow the verb. The linear position and the tonosyntax can be accounted for by recognizing a basic order Poss-N-Adj-Num-Poss-Rel-Def-‘all’-DF. The relative clause functions as a reference-restricting modifier and therefore controls tone-dropping to its left, going as far as the noun. This is followed by movement of the string on the left of the relative clause into the relativization site within the relative clause proper. The entire sequence including the coda is really a NP with an incorporated relative clause.
In nonsubject relatives with a referentially specific subject NP, a pronominal subject pronoun appears immediately before the verb, not in clause-initial position as in main clauses. It is arguably a proclitic, but I do not transcribe it as such since there is no phonological interaction between it and the verb.

A semantically light noun with a sense like ‘owner’, ‘day’, or ‘place’ may follow the relative clause proper, with {L}-tone (arguably as possessed noun). This resembles the double-headed relative of some other Dogon languages, such as Jamsay.

Unusual features of TgK relatives include an optional inversion of adjective and numeral in the head NP (§6.4.2), and some quirks involving restructuring of possessed head NPs (§6.2.1-3).

A simple nonsubject relative is (5). The head NP ‘child’ occurs medially within the relative clause, i.e. in the relativization site. It is tone-dropped as internal relative head.

![Example sentence](5)

A semantically light noun with a sense like ‘owner’, ‘day’, or ‘place’ may follow the relative clause proper, with {L}-tone (arguably as possessed noun). This resembles the double-headed relative of some other Dogon languages, such as Jamsay.

Unusual features of TgK relatives include an optional inversion of adjective and numeral in the head NP (§6.4.2), and some quirks involving restructuring of possessed head NPs (§6.2.1-3).

A simple nonsubject relative is (5). The head NP ‘child’ occurs medially within the relative clause, i.e. in the relativization site. It is tone-dropped as internal relative head. Since the subject Seydou (man’s name) is specific, a coindexed 3Sg subject proclitic precedes the verb.

![Example sentence](5)

A semantically light noun with a sense like ‘owner’, ‘day’, or ‘place’ may follow the relative clause proper, with {L}-tone (arguably as possessed noun). This resembles the double-headed relative of some other Dogon languages, such as Jamsay.

Unusual features of TgK relatives include an optional inversion of adjective and numeral in the head NP (§6.4.2), and some quirks involving restructuring of possessed head NPs (§6.2.1-3).

A simple nonsubject relative is (5). The head NP ‘child’ occurs medially within the relative clause, i.e. in the relativization site. It is tone-dropped as internal relative head. Since the subject Seydou (man’s name) is specific, a coindexed 3Sg subject proclitic precedes the verb.

![Example sentence](5)

2.8 Interclausal syntax

Direct VP-chaining, i.e. with no special morphology on the verb of a nonfinal clause, is common. Some such chains occur in both perfective and imperfective contexts, while others occur only in imperfective aspectual contexts (chapter 15).

Suffixally expressed switch reference is present in certain ‘while’ clauses (same-subject versus different-subject), see §15.2.1.2-4.

Particle dè is the regular conditional antecedent ‘if’ (chapter 16), but it also occurs in a pseudo-conditional chain-like construction with a positive perfective verb, followed by a clause (usually with the same subject) denoting a chronologically sequenced event. Both clauses are interpreted as imperfective with respect to the speech event, see §15.2.2.6.

In the more common perfective context, the same-subject anterior subordinator -ɛ: is used instead of dè to indicate a chronological sequence.

In quoted clauses, the unconjugated quotative particle wà occurs clause-finally, but also after a subject NP (§17.1.3-4).

Imperfective complements of perception verbs, as in ‘I saw the child fall(-ing) out of a tree’, require a preverbal subject pronoun (even when a full subject NP has already been uttered), see §17.2.2.1.

2.9 Anaphora

TgK differs from most Dogon languages in having fully productive transpersonal reflexives. The morpheme sǎⁿ (plural sǎⁿ bè) can function as a reflexive object (‘X hit X’), a reflexive possessor (‘X hit X’s dog’), or a reflexive postpositional complement (‘X gave it [to X]’). It is accompanied by no pronominal-person marker, and the antecedent (normally the clausemate subject) may be first, second, or third person. In reflexive possessor function, sǎⁿ competes with a dedicated transpersonal reflexive possessor mà, both of which precede the possessum.
The other Dogon language known to have transpersonal reflexives in object and other functions is Tomo Kan, where the reflexive morpheme is postnominal hà (dialectally sà). A third language, Toro Tegu, has only a transpersonal possessor morpheme (postnominal mà).

Transpersonal reflexives are important for the study of the syntactic properties of imperative and hortative “subjects.” In all three Dogon languages that have them, imperative “subjects” fail to bind reflexives, in contrast to subjects of indicative clauses. Relevant examples for TgK are in §18.1.1 and §18.1.2.1 (sàⁿ is absent in imperatives), and in §18.1.3.2 (má absent in imperatives). Therefore the plural suffix in imperative morphology must be understood as marking plural addressee, not plural subject. In hortatives, plural addressee is again marked in the morphology, but is distinct from the more inclusive 1Pl subject. The latter can bind reflexives.

Other anaphoric elements are logophoric èné (coindexed to the attributed author of quoted speech) and reciprocal sàⁿ-túⁿ, originally the reflexive possessor of a noun ‘companion’. Chapter 18 covers all TgK anaphorics.
3 Phonology

3.1 General

In comparison to other Dogon languages, a notable feature of TgK is the abundance of short-voweled monosyllabic $Cv$, particularly in noun and adjective stems. Many of the relevant stems have lost an etymological syllable-final sonorant such as *y or *n (the latter may leave a trace in the form of vowel nasalization).

3.2 Internal phonological structure of stems and words

3.2.1 Syllables

The typical syllable of TgK is $Cv$ (i.e. short-voweled open syllable) or, less often, $Cv\_$. Stem-finally, and sporadically stem-internally, $CvL$ with a final sonorant $L$ is also possible.

3.2.2 Metrical structure

If we assume that a shift to high vowels {i u} can reflect metrically weak positions in multisyllabic words, we can argue that the second and third of three syllables in a trisyllabic verb with final-syllable rhotic are weak in the bare stem (and related paradigmatic forms), but not in the imperative or some other verb forms. We can see this in alternations like $túŋi\_r^nî$ ‘cause to kneel’ (bare stem) and its imperative $túŋi\_r^nɔ̀$. For other trisyllabic verb stems (i.e. with a non-rhotic consonant in the final syllable), the second (but not third) syllable is weak even in the imperative, as in $kúmûnù$ ‘crumple’ (bare stem), imperative $kúmûnɔ̀$.

3.3 Consonants

The primary consonants of TgK are those in (6). Parentheses indicate marginal or restricted consonants. Nasalized {wⁿ yⁿ rⁿ} are present, while {z f ʒ} are absent except in recent loanwords. $f$ and $h$ are not original Dogon consonants but occur in a fair number of loanwords, mostly from Fulfulde, and are less foreign-sounding than the sibilants mentioned. Glottal stop $ʔ$ is a predictable junctural element in some reduplicated forms of vowel-initial stems.
(6) Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labial</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>wⁿ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alveolar</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>rⁿ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alveopalatal</td>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>yⁿ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velar</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>yⁿ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laryngeal</td>
<td>(h)</td>
<td>(ʔ)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*c* is IPA [tʃ], *j* is [dʒ], *n* is [n], *r* is tap [ɾ], and *y* is [j].

key to columns: 1. voiceless stops (*c* is affricated); 2. voiced stops; 3. nasals, 4. voiceless fricatives including sibilants; 5. laterals; 6-7. respectively oral and nasalized sonorants (semivowels and rhotics); 8-9. laryngeals

There are important asymmetries in the positional possibilities of obstruents and sonorants, respectively. Excluding loanwords, reduplications, compounds, and nouns derived historically from compounds, obstruents (stops and fricatives) occur predominantly in stem-initial position; an exception is that *g* is moderately common in noninitial syllables. Non-rhotic oral sonorants occur freely in any syllable-initial position (word-initial or medial). By contrast, rhotics occur only in intervocalic position (i.e. never stem-initially).

3.3.1 Alveopalatals (*c, j*)

There is no particular tendency for velar stops {*k g*} to front to {*c j*} before front vowels (as they do in Jamsay, for example). Thus *kéjé* ‘cut’ (not #*céké*) and *giré* ‘eye’ (not #*jiré*).

A *j* distinct from *g* is fairly common in a variety of vocalic environments. Examples are *bájá* ‘pull’ and *jújɔ́* ‘brush against’.

Voiceless *c*, on the other hand, is virtually absent. In a working lexicon of several thousand items, only the flagrantly onomatopoeic *cɪːⁿ*-cάːⁿ* (sound of small birds chirping) contains this consonant.

3.3.2 Voiced velar stop *g* and spirantized *γ*

Voiced velar stop *g* is phonetically spirantized to [*ɣ*] between any combination of preceding and following *a* and *ɔ*. This appears to be a low-level allophonic process, and except in narrow phonetic transcriptions I write *g*.

3.3.3 Back nasals (*ŋ, ɲ*)

*ŋ* and *ɲ* are distinguished before all vowels, with no tendency to merge before front vowels. We hear a clear *ŋ* in e.g. *(ʊɲhó) sáːɡi* ‘make a yawn’, but *ɲ* in e.g. *nǐɲíwⁿè* ‘sister’s child’.

14
3.3.4 Voiceless labials \((p, f)\)

\(p\) is one of the basic consonants: examples are pá gà ‘tie up’ and pé gù ‘break in half’. In native vocabulary it is normally in stem-initial position, but it occurs intervocally in loanwords like ná pilá ‘optional Muslim prayer’ (often, as here, reflecting \(\ast f\) in the source language), in frozen reduplications like púp úg ‘out of shape’, and in various onomatopoeic or expressive forms like págárápá ‘toy rifle’ and póp ‘landing powerfully’. Cluster \(mp\) occurs in a few loans like lâmpá ‘(modern) lamp’.

\(f\) occurs in a few Fulfulde and French loanwords. From the working lexicon I can cite má: fë ‘red sauce’, fük ‘oven’, and two important expressive elements \(fó \rightarrow \ldots\) ‘all the way to …’ and \(fú → \ldots\) ‘all, entirely’. As noted above, original \(\ast f\) in loanwords is normally realized as \(p\).

3.3.5 Laryngeals \((h, ŋ)\)

\(h\) is not an original Dogon consonant, but it occurs stem-initially in Fulfulde loans and in a few other regionally widespread forms: háyà ‘well, …’, háf ‘even if’, hájú ‘card (cotton)’, hâmp:i ‘chew (tobacco)’, hâj: ‘trust(v)’, hâ:j ‘pilgrimage (to Mecca)’. One of the ‘yes!’ forms is the ubiquitous \(h₅\).

Phonetic glottal stop \([ʔ]\) is heard at the juncture between vowels within a word, in \(\dot{s}₅\-\dot{\ddot{a}}ₙ\) (one of the ‘no!’ forms) and in \(Çv\)- reduplications of stems with no initial consonant like (stative) \(i\-\dot{f}igë ‘be standing’\).

3.3.6 Sibilants \((s, f, z, ŋ)\)

\(s\) is a basic consonant in stem-initial and to some extent intervocalic position. There is no special tendency for it to palatalize before front vowels, as seen in sfë ‘cook (meal)’.

Other sibilants \(\{f, z, ŋ\}\) are absent except in poorly-assimilated loanwords.

3.3.7 Nasalized sonorants \((rₜ, wₜ, yₜ)\)

Nasalized semivowels occur intervocally and syllable-finally. The nasalized rhotic occurs intervocally (rhotics in general do not occur in other positions). We begin with examples where the nasalization is autonomous.

Examples of \(rₜ\) are, tûr ‘go get (firewood)’ and ūr ‘burrow(n)’. In some other Dogon languages, \(n\) corresponds to TgK \(rₜ\).

Examples of \(wₜ\) are kùw ‘shut (eyes)’, áw ‘(animal) be in good condition’, tₜw ‘do for a long time’, and expressive adverbial déw ‘looking straight at’. In some other Dogon languages, \(m\) corresponds to TgK \(wₜ\).

\(yₜ\) is less common and is mostly found stem- (and therefore syllable-) finally. These include compounds ending (at least historically) in a desyllabified form of \(i\-\dot{f}\) ‘child’, such as dëy ‘pestle’ and tûw ‘flint (for lighter)’. Other stems with final \(yₜ\) include sëy ‘a lot, very’ and òy ‘boundary’. In a few nouns \(yₜ\) is intervocalic; the known examples are dëy ‘ashes’ (which has cognates with \(yₜ\) in some other Dogon languages, but cf. Najamba ŭdë:) and two items of cultural vocabulary, bû ‘tassels’ and káy ‘bit (mouthpiece)’. There are also several expressive adverbials with syllable-final \(yₜ\) like káy ‘oversized (teeth)’ and déy ‘apart’.
Sequences of intervocalic nasalized sonorants co-occur in e.g. \textit{géwⁿé́rⁿé́} ‘charcoal’ and \textit{súwⁿúrⁿù} ‘stalk(v)’. The sequence is usually \textit{wⁿ} then \textit{rⁿ} since rhotics but not semivowels are the typical sonorant consonants in the third or later syllables of complex words.

Nasalized sonorants often occur in stems or derivational verbal suffixes when preceded by a nasal syllable (such as \textit{na} or \textit{ba}). In such cases one could argue that the nasalization of the sonorant is phonologically secondary. Examples are \textit{nèwⁿé́} ‘scales (on skin)’, \textit{sèŋéřⁿé́} ‘foot-chain’, and \textit{gàmùrⁿù} ‘divide’. In cases like \textit{jàwⁿúrⁿù} ‘scold’, the nasalization appears to spread recursively, starting from the initial nasal. However, TgK has many stems that fail to spread nasalization from a nasal to a subsequent sonorant: \textit{démè́rⁿé́} ‘fat, stout’, \textit{mù́ŋú-rⁿú} ‘untie’ (reversive), \textit{bò́mí-rⁿú} ‘put (child) on the back of (sb)’). In most such cases it can be shown that the nasal consonant reflects a cluster *\textit{mb} or *\textit{ng} that would not originally have spread nasality to subsequent syllables; see \S3.5.1.1, below. But the synchronic effect is that Nasalization-Spreading, though productive in e.g. Jamsay, is not a productive process in TgK.

When a semivowel closes a nasal syllable (e.g. \textit{kú́rⁿù}), the inital nasal has its own tone and functions as a syllable, albeit a reduced one. I know of no other initial-syllable nasals.

3.3.8 Consonant clusters

3.3.8.1 Word- and morpheme-initial \textit{CC} clusters

There are no tautosyllabic word- or suffix-initial consonant clusters. A suffix-initial \textit{CC} cluster could arise, in theory, from syncope of an intervening vowel, but I can cite no examples.

In \textit{į́kú́rⁿú} ‘mouse’, the initial nasal has its own tone and functions as a syllable, albeit a reduced one. I know of no other initial-syllable nasals.

3.3.8.2 Medial geminated \textit{CC} clusters

Geminated clusters do not occur within stems or other morphemes. They may arise accidentally at compound boundaries especially when the first stem has its final vowel syncopated: \textit{bínⁿ- nú́rⁿú} ‘stomache ache’. Even these cases are rare in TgK, which has few stems with final consonants.

3.3.8.3 Medial non-geminate \textit{CC} clusters

Nongeminate medial clusters are also uncommon within stems and other morphemes. However, they do occur in borrowed vocabulary and in frozen compounds. Nouns ultimately from Arabic (usually via Fulfulde) preserve definite prefix \textit{al-} before noncoronal consonants, providing one source (among others) for \textit{IC} clusters.

Some stems that I initially transcribed with a medial homorganic stop-nasal cluster have been retranscribed with a nasalized vowel and an unclustered stop. These include reduplicative \textit{jè́jè́nⁿ báⁿ} ‘millet cultivar’ (báⁿ ‘red’) and \textit{jàⁿ dèⁿᵈⁿ} ‘empty lot’ (ná ‘ground’); French loanwords \textit{pșⁿtí} ‘nail’ (pointe), \textit{kù́má’dáⁿ} ‘(military) commander’, and \textit{síⁿkó́m} ‘chewing gum’; nouns \textit{jàśú́rⁿú} ‘donkey’ and \textit{dù́ŋú́má́} ‘invisible devil’; and \textit{síːkáːⁿ béŕé} ‘get a mate for’ (béré ‘get’) and \textit{ářⁿú}–\textit{jàśkéː} ‘first rain of rainy season’ (ářⁿú ‘rain’).
Nasal-stop clusters were verified as follows: \textit{mb} in \textit{támbúrọ} ‘date (fruit)’ (ultimately from Arabic) and \textit{bálmbá} ‘champion (fighter)’; \textit{mp} in \textit{làmpá} ‘lamp’, \textit{hámp-i}: ‘chew (tobacco)’ (<Fulfulde), and \textit{pómpi} ‘pump(v)’; \textit{nd} in \textit{ändí}: ‘year’, \textit{ändángù} ‘soft millet cakes’, \textit{ändá} ‘tiny fly sp.’, \textit{pá:ndé} ‘thick cotton thread’, \textit{gándál} ‘vanity, pride’ (<Fulfulde), and \textit{bándí} ‘bandit’; \textit{nt} in \textit{jánté} ‘conversation’ (<Fulfulde) and \textit{álbárkánté} ‘incense (bdellium)’; \textit{ng} in \textit{jóngólú} ‘basket holder’, \textit{mángóró} ‘mango’, \textit{àngé}: ‘agematé’, \textit{àngùnrú} ‘giant tortoise’, and \textit{àngilé}: ‘English person’; and \textit{ngk} in \textit{wáŋké} ‘butcher’ and \textit{dálsŋké} ‘short-length boubou’.

A list of the attested clusters, with one example each, is (7).

(7) \textbf{CC clusters}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cluster</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{mb}</td>
<td>\textit{támbúrọ} ‘dates (fruit)’ (ultimately &lt;Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{mp}</td>
<td>\textit{pómpi} ‘pump’ (&lt;French \textit{pompe})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{nd}</td>
<td>\textit{ändí}: ‘year’ (frozen compound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{nt}</td>
<td>\textit{jánti} ‘converse (with laughter)’ (&lt;Fulfulde)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{ng}</td>
<td>\textit{mángóró} ‘mango’ (regional)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{ŋk}</td>
<td>\textit{wáŋké} ‘butcher (caste)’ (regional)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. \textit{l} plus noncoronal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cluster</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{lb}</td>
<td>\textit{álbárkánté} ‘bdellium (incense)’ (root &lt;Arabic \textit{bbrk})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{lp}</td>
<td>\textit{sálpána} ‘early PM prayer’ (&lt;Fulfulde)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{lg}</td>
<td>\textit{wálgá-wálgá} ‘bouncing (necklace)’ (source unknown)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{lk}</td>
<td>\textit{álká:má} ‘wheat’ (&lt;Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{lm}</td>
<td>\textit{álmè:tú} ‘match(es)’ (&lt;French)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{ln}</td>
<td>[unattested]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. others

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cluster</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{rk}</td>
<td>\textit{álbárkánté} ‘bdellium (incense)’ (root &lt;Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{rs}</td>
<td>\textit{pàrsó} ‘poison’ (&lt;French)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{ns}</td>
<td>\textit{ànsá:rá} ‘white person’ (syncopated from *\textit{ànàsá:rá}, &lt;Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{wg}</td>
<td>\textit{jéwğé}→ ‘teetering’ (expressive adverbial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{wl}</td>
<td>\textit{dàwlé} ‘esteem’ (&lt;Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{wr}</td>
<td>\textit{dáwórú} ‘spell (sorcery)’ (&lt;Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{yk}</td>
<td>\textit{báykál} ‘type of modern rifle’ (imported from Ghana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{ws}</td>
<td>\textit{háwsá} ‘Hausa (ethnicity)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are also some words that can be pronounced with or without a brief high vowel between two nonhomorganic medial consonants in trisyllabic or longer stems. Thus \textit{àgúl-}\textit{mbó} ‘hard red candy’ with variant \textit{àgụsi} 1\ldots, and \textit{nám-gí} ‘become poor (impoverished)’. These are transcribed as I hear them in normal speech. The native intuition (especially for verbs) is that the high vowel is present. Note the combination (cognate nominal plus verb) \textit{dáwárá dáwárá} ‘cast spells’, where the usual pronunciation is \textit{CvCCv} for the noun but \textit{CvCVc} with medial high vowel for the verb (cf. imperative \textit{dáwárá}). ‘Rifle, musket’ is usually heard as \textit{máùpá}:.

Clusters are more common at boundaries in compounds. Any combination of an allowable stem-final consonant with an allowable stem-initial consonant is potentially possible. Recall however that only certain consonants are allowed stem-finally, so the number of potential clusters is limited. Except as the result of low-level syncope of high vowels in
trisyllabics, there are no consonant clusters at boundaries in inflected verb forms, since every verb stem ends in a vowel.

3.3.8.4 Medial triple CCC clusters

Triple CCC clusters are virtually nonexistent. One is mpl in the poorly assimilated loanword sémplés ‘type of modern rifle (from Europe)’, said to derive from cinq plus on the label. Another is wŋ in gáwŋgá ‘furrow (or other low spot) in a field’.

3.3.8.5 Final CC clusters

Final CC clusters are also nonexistent except in poorly assimilated loanwords.

3.4 Vowels

The inventory of oral vowels is the standard one for Dogon languages, with seven vowel qualities, long and short. Nasalized vowels are less common than oral vowels but are well represented. Nasalized vowels may be long or short, unlike the situation in some other Dogon languages where they must be long. Short Cvⁿ syllables often reflect earlier *Cvŋ, *Cvwⁿ, or the like whose final consonant survives only as vowel nasalization.

(8) Vowels


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>oral short</th>
<th>oral long</th>
<th>nasalized short</th>
<th>nasalized long</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>uⁿ</td>
<td>uⁿ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>oⁿ</td>
<td>oⁿ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>œ</td>
<td>œ</td>
<td>œⁿ</td>
<td>œⁿ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>aⁿ</td>
<td>aⁿ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>eⁿ</td>
<td>eⁿ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>iⁿ</td>
<td>iⁿ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4.1 Oral short and long vowels

The short oral vowels are common in all positions, as the most typical shapes of stems include Cv, CvCv, and CvCvCv. Within a stem, excluding loanwords, there are vowel-harmonic constraints, particularly in verb stems; see §3.4.6, below. There is an issue whether short and long vowels following a nasal or nasalized consonant should be considered phonologically oral or nasal; for discussion see §3.4.2, below.

Long oral vowels are most common in stems of the shapes Cv: and Cv:Cv. They also occur in longer stems with shapes such as Cv:CvCv, but these are usually either loanwords or compounds (including frozen compounds).
Examples of the main syllabic shapes with short oral vowels are in (9), using verbs, nouns, adjectives, numerals, and various grammatical words and particles. In formulae like $CvCv$, the initial $C$ position may be vacant.

(9) Short oral vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

a. **Cv**

verb stems, all non-nasal examples known

| ó    | ‘give’ |
| tí   | ‘send’ |
| jê   | ‘take away’ (most forms based on $já$-) |
| yê   | ‘go’ (most forms based on $yá$-) |

noun stems, all non-nasal examples known

| lô   | ‘medication’ |
| bê   | ‘beard’ |
| jâ   | ‘fiber’ |
| lê   | ‘slashing earth (to sow), planting(n)’ |
| tê   | ‘tea’ (<French and Arabic) |

compound initials and finals

| ginê¹-ä | ‘sleepiness’ |
| bô¬¹-kê | ‘nickname’ |
| yê¹ X   | ‘woman’ (in e.g. $yê¹ ná$: ‘old woman’) |
| yê¹-lâ  | ‘betrothal at birth’ |
| kùrê¹-tâ | ‘bone fracture’ |
| ô¹-dû   | ‘absence of moonlight’ |
| kênê¹-dô | ‘acidic reflux’ |

grammatical morphemes (sample)

| wô  | 3Sg pronoun |
| kó  | ‘that’ (definite demonstrative) |
| yî  | ‘here’ (generalized) |
| yê  | ‘there’ (definite) |
| wô  | ‘be (somewhere, human)’ |
| kô  | ‘be (somewhere, nonhuman)’ |
| yô, yê | existential particle |
| tô  | ‘around (somewhere)’ |
| bè  | instrumental postposition |

b. **CvCv** (very common)

stems (sample)

| giri | ‘eye’ |
| nànà | ‘cow’ |
| tûmò | ‘(sun) rise’ |
| pèrú | ‘ten’ |
| ëlù  | ‘sweet’ |
| ọnê  | ‘what?’ |
c. CvCvCv (fairly common, but include frozen derivatives)

stems (sample)

áwìrì ‘lay out (mat)’
kégéré ‘saddle(n)’
déméré ‘fat, stout’

CvC is not very common, since so many final sonorants have been lost. However, I can cite lāy ‘garlic’ (French ‘ail’).

In the fairly small number of Cv nouns and noun-like compound elements included in (9a), if we exclude ‘woman’ (whose short Cv form before adjectives and in compounds has parallels in other Dogon languages) and the loanword ‘tea’, we are left with a set of stems that have probably lost an original final semivowel. For example, ‘beard’ has cognates like Toro Tegu bēw, and ‘medication’ has cognates like Jamsay lōy. Ė (from *Cv-y) is a regular verbal noun form for Cv: verb stems, and some nouns with this shape (including the rising tone) originated as verbal nouns. A case can be made that verbs ó ‘give’ and tí ‘send’ also formerly ended in semivowels, compare Toro Tegu ów ‘give’ and tíw ‘send’. These are the only two verb stems whose TgK paradigm is based consistently on Cv rather than Cv: shape.

There are no Cv numerals or adjectives in TgK. So except for grammatical morphemes, Cv as a shape for stems may be an innovation.

The main stem shapes for long oral vowels are illustrated in (10). The number of Cv: stems is considerably greater than that of Cv stems, showing that Cv: is the more productive pattern.

(10) Long oral vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>á</td>
<td>‘moon, month’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bë</td>
<td>‘excrement’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bɔ</td>
<td>‘member’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dë</td>
<td>‘senior twin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dî</td>
<td>‘water’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gë</td>
<td>‘hunger’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gɔ</td>
<td>‘granary’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gò</td>
<td>‘(courtyard) wall’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X ‘kè’</td>
<td>‘X’s (possessions)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kù</td>
<td>‘yam (Dioscorea)’ (&lt;Bambara)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jɔ</td>
<td>‘fishhook’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lɔ</td>
<td>‘mother’s younger sister’; ‘step-mother’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lî</td>
<td>‘bed’ (French lit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pò</td>
<td>‘tankard, drinking cup’ (French pot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sò</td>
<td>‘pail’ (French seu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tè</td>
<td>‘honey’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɛ</td>
<td>‘pile of millet grain spikes’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɔ</td>
<td>‘sprout(s)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɔ</td>
<td>‘matter, issue’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sò</td>
<td>‘awareness’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sí: ‘saw (tool)’ (French scie)

compound initials and finals
nùm₃-jè: ‘handful’
nàŋa¹-tê: ‘(dairy) butter’
nùŋù⁴-tō: ‘deadline’
kèⁿ¹-bò: ‘splinter-removing gear’
àrà⁴-yá: ‘heroism’
pòrù¹-kè: ‘harvesting knife’
kúⁿ⁴-sì: ‘having a somewhat pointed snout’

adjective stems (all known examples)
kò: ‘empty, plain’
tò: ‘stray (crop plant)’
è: ‘tight’
wá: ‘wide’

adverbs and grammatical morphemes
ä: ‘who?’
yā: ‘where?’
yá: ‘yesterday’
lá: ‘at first’
bà→ ‘since’
nò: ‘this’
kè: bà→ ‘in the past’

b. Cv:Cv (fairly common)
stems (sample)
gó:ró ‘kola nut’
là:rá ‘fields next to the village’
è:rê ‘peanut, groundnut’
wò:ŋù ‘(liquid) be at full boil’
sí:ri ‘cook (meal)’
pé:gù ‘harvest (grain spikes) by breaking or pulling off’

c. other
wàlâ:y ‘by God!’ (swearing an oath)

Cv:C is not a normal stem shape, but it occurs in the loanwords fù:r ‘covered oven’ (French four) and lá:m ‘razor blade’ (French lame).

In bisyllabic stems, and to a lesser extent in trisyllabic and longer stems (many of which originated as compounds), the initial syllable is favored for long vowels. However, TgK has a considerable number of nonmonosyllabic stems (other than verbs) with a final long vowel, and a few of these have final long oral vowels not preceded by a nasal consonant. All examples from my working lexicon are in (11).
(11) Final long oral vowel in nonmonosyllabics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. bisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>noun stems (not obviously recent loanwords)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àtí:</td>
<td>‘bird trap’ (perhaps with à- prefix, §4.1.7; also in Jamsay)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>òtë:</td>
<td>‘well (for water)’ (cf. Toro Tegu tèwò)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àndì:</td>
<td>‘year’ (frozen compound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bè-sè:</td>
<td>‘father’s younger brother’ (frozen compound &lt; ‘little father’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàrä:</td>
<td>‘legal proceeding’ (contracted from *sàriyà)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàrà:</td>
<td>‘diarrhoea’ (contracted from *sàriyé or the like)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìrìŋ jèːkèː</td>
<td>‘first heavy rain’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adjectives</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bɔ̃r̥-sè:bèː</td>
<td>‘skinny-buttocks’ (bahuvrihi compound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>French loanwords (nouns and adjectives)</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kèpì:</td>
<td>‘cap’ (French képi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàpó:</td>
<td>‘hat’ (French chapeau)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pòlì:</td>
<td>‘pulley’ (French poulie)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kìlè:</td>
<td>‘key’ (French clé)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tìyò:</td>
<td>‘tube’ (French tuyau)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàkì:</td>
<td>‘tan (color)’ (French khaki)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adverbs, expressive adverbials</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dùrò:</td>
<td>‘(garment) on backwards’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>other</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìyà:</td>
<td>‘want’ (irregular stative verb, §11.2.4.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. trisyllabic or longer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bànàkú:</td>
<td>‘cassava; sweet potato’ (&lt;Bambara compound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àŋgìlè:</td>
<td>‘English person’ (French anglais)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàrùp:</td>
<td>‘calabash tomtom’ (frozen compound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màrúpà:</td>
<td>‘rifle, musket’ (ultimately &lt;Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màrùtò:</td>
<td>‘hammer’ (French marteau)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For prolonged final vowels in adjective stems in predicative form, see §11.4.1.2, below.

3.4.2 Nasalized vowels

TgK is richer in nasalized vowels than many other Dogon languages. This applies mainly to stem-final syllables, where many final nasal consonants have been lost, leaving behind a trace in the form of vocalic nasalization. Typically the resulting nasalized vowel retains its original length (long or short), so TgK has many stem-final short nasalized vowels (which are absent from some other Dogon languages).

(12) presents cases of short nasalized vowels in monosyllabics, where the nasalized vowel is clearly autonomous, i.e. it does not follow a nasal or nasalized consonant.
(12) Short nasalized vowels (autonomous) in monosyllabics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CVⁿ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb stems: for a list see §10.1.3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun stems: all known examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d₃ⁿ</td>
<td>‘price’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t₃ⁿ</td>
<td>‘hump (in person’s back)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dᵣⁿ</td>
<td>‘hip’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gᵣⁿ</td>
<td>‘gallbladder’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kᵣⁿ</td>
<td>‘head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kᵃⁿ</td>
<td>‘mouth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dᵃⁿ</td>
<td>‘size’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tᵃⁿ</td>
<td>‘fabric, garment’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tⁿ</td>
<td>‘firewood’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j₃ⁿ</td>
<td>‘private field’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kᵍⁿ</td>
<td>‘daba (hoe)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k₃ⁿ</td>
<td>‘weeping(n)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dᵉⁿ</td>
<td>‘waterjar’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jᵉⁿ</td>
<td>‘handle (of pail)’; ‘forked stick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bᵃⁿ</td>
<td>‘wooden bench’ (French banc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pᵃⁿ</td>
<td>‘shortage of water’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j₃ⁿ</td>
<td>‘dyer’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sᵃⁿ</td>
<td>‘religion (Islam), prayer’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bˢⁿ</td>
<td>‘tomtom’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bˢⁿ</td>
<td>‘name’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kᵉⁿ</td>
<td>‘pointed instrument’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pˢⁿ</td>
<td>‘bridge’ (French pont)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

adjective stems: all known examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kᵣⁿ</td>
<td>‘unmarried’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pᵉⁿ</td>
<td>‘old’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dᵉⁿ</td>
<td>‘poorly developed (millet)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bᵃⁿ</td>
<td>‘red’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sᵉⁿ</td>
<td>‘good’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tⁿ</td>
<td>‘mild-mannered’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

compound initials and finals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[nʊmᵉ⁻yⁿ]ᵈ⁻dⁿ</td>
<td>‘pinky finger’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⁹ᵃᵗᵃ⁻ᵍ₃ⁿ</td>
<td>‘roselle plant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>³ᵉʳ₃⁻ᵍⁿ</td>
<td>‘meningitis’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

grammatical morphemes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sᵃⁿ</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tⁿ</td>
<td>reciprocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ᶥᵍⁿ</td>
<td>characteristic derivational suffix (human)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are also some short nasalized vowels in nonmonosyllabic words. Most nasalized vowels are in stem-final syllables. For nouns they may reflect original compounds with an L-toned initial followed by *[ⁿ]-$ⁿ$ ‘child’. Nasalized vowels in nonfinal syllables, in the absence of a nasal or nasalized consonant, are attested but uncommon.

Autonomous long nasalized vowels in monosyllabics are in (13).
Long nasalized vowels (autonomous) in monosyllabics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. verb stems</td>
<td>(for a list see §10.1.3.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. noun stems: all known examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɛ́ⁿ</td>
<td>‘soda ash’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>íⁿ</td>
<td>‘child’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gó:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘griot (caste)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grí:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘theft’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ké:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘inheritance’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gó:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘vestibule’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dê:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘elder same-sex sibling’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. compound initials and finals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìⁿ-tá:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘friend’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. adjective and numeral stems</td>
<td>(no known example)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. grammatical morphemes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hó:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘here! take (this)!’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grí:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘like, similar to’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>já:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘what is right’ (adverbial)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Final nasalized vowels in nonmonosyllabic stems are in (14). Those in (14b) are probably frozen diminutives. For the human nouns in (14c), the nasalization may be a vestige of a former suffix, compare Jamsay human singular -n and human plural -m.

Final nasalized vowels in nonmonosyllabic stems are in (14). Those in (14b) are probably frozen diminutives. For the human nouns in (14c), the nasalization may be a vestige of a former suffix, compare Jamsay human singular -n and human plural -m.

(14) Final nasalized vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. nonhuman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hà:ʳéⁿ</td>
<td>‘Muslim holy day associated with cousins’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dùwòléⁿ</td>
<td>‘mirror’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dèbèⁿ</td>
<td>‘(modern) mat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sùsùléⁿ</td>
<td>‘whip (branch)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>üsùláⁿ</td>
<td>‘incense’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sàrìⁿ</td>
<td>‘plow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. frozen diminutive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mòrĩⁿ</td>
<td>‘small amulet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gàrĩⁿ</td>
<td>‘kidney’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āpĩⁿ⁻gà:ⁿ</td>
<td>‘soft spot above collarbone’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lègĩⁿ</td>
<td>‘rolling pin for cotton’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kò-kóřiⁿ</td>
<td>‘shuttle in loom’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. human
\[
\begin{align*}
dɔ̀g⁴^n & \quad \text{‘Dogon (person)’} \\
ɔ̀g⁴^n & \quad \text{‘Hogon, chief’} \\
tɛ́lɛ́ⁿ & \quad \text{‘Tellem (person)’} \\
dɛ́g⁴^n & \quad \text{‘short person’} \\
hɔːrɔ́s⁴^n & \quad \text{‘noble, freeborn person’} \\
yɛ́rɪⁿ & \quad \text{‘visitor, guest’} \\
wálfⁿ & \quad \text{‘seer’}
\end{align*}
\]

The stems in (15) have a nonfinal nasalized vowel. Those in (15b) also have a final nasalized vowel. Nonfinal nasals are not common.

(15) Nonfinal nasalized vowels

a. nonfinal nasalized vowel only
\[
\begin{align*}
táⁿᵗú & \quad \text{‘tent’} \\
málf⁶ᵉⁿk & \quad \text{‘angel’} \\
iⁿˢirⁿf & \quad \text{‘urine’}
\end{align*}
\]

b. nonfinal and final nasalized vowels
\[
\begin{align*}
siⁿ⁶ᵏᵃⁿ & \quad \text{‘a match, an equivalent’} \\
s³ⁿ⁶ˢᵃⁿ & \quad \text{‘cemetery’} \\
gùⁿˢᵃⁿ & \quad \text{‘full outback’} \\
sⁱⁿˢⁱⁿ & \quad \text{‘childhood’}
\end{align*}
\]

3.4.3 Phonetically nasalized vowels next to nasal consonants

There are also many stems with syllables like na or rṭi, where a nasal or nasalized consonant is followed by a vowel. The vowel is phonetically nasalized, but except in special cases involving morpheme breaks there is no phonological opposition between oral and nasalized vowels in this position. The same phonetic nasalization applies to vowels preceding a nasalized consonant, as in sequences like ana.

My assistant had a clear sense that such nasal-adjacent vowels are nasalized. For example, he would syllabify a sequence like ana as aⁿ.nᵃⁿ, and would render the vowel of the second syllable (stripped of the preceding n) as [aⁿ]. He would correct me if I suggested pronunciations with oral vowels.

The vocalic nasalization in stems like nā ‘person’ can be strong enough to lead to optional pronunciations with (what sound like) homorganic nasal-stop sequences in e.g. plural nā bē ‘people’, i.e. [nāmbē]. However, there is no productive process of the type /naga/ > nanga within stems. Note, for example, (causative) verb sūnū-gū ‘take down’, not #sūnū-ngū. Likewise ɛmūgĭ ‘hold against one’s chest’ and mānūgū ‘thought’. Having said this, a quick run through the working dictionary shows that most nonmonosyllabic stems (excluding recent loans) that begin with a nasal have other nasals in following syllables, so that stems like nāpūrⁿù ‘next year’ with three consecutive Nv syllables (and therefore continuous phonetic nasalization from start to finish) are entirely typical.

Examples of nasal-plus-vowel combinations are in (16).
(16) Nasal or nasalized consonant (N) plus vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Nv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbs stems: only example</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun stems: all known examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná</td>
<td>‘person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nê</td>
<td>‘woman’ (in compounds also yê- etc., §5.1.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>né</td>
<td>‘blood’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mɔ́</td>
<td>‘laughter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mɔ̌</td>
<td>‘gum arabic’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɲá</td>
<td>‘ground’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mè</td>
<td>‘cut (wound)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective stems: only example</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mǎ</td>
<td>‘dry’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grammatical morphemes (sample)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mà</td>
<td>1Sg possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nì</td>
<td>‘here’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Nv:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb stems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(for lists see §10.1.3.1-2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun stems: all known examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú:</td>
<td>‘death’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pà:</td>
<td>‘meal’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mè:</td>
<td>‘salt’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pê:</td>
<td>‘fire’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pù:</td>
<td>‘millet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐ:</td>
<td>‘cow-pea’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nì:</td>
<td>‘father’s sister’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mà:</td>
<td>‘light metal’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective stems: all known examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná:</td>
<td>‘primary’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú:</td>
<td>‘hot’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mì:</td>
<td>‘fine (powder)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grammatical morphemes (sample)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nò:</td>
<td>‘that’ (demonstrative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pîlé-m-è:</td>
<td>‘again’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. bisyllabic and longer stems (sample)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CvNv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gîrⁿí</td>
<td>‘house’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pàŋá</td>
<td>‘power’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CvNv: (uncommon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| sɔ̃mế: | ‘spices’ (Jamsay sɔ̃mâ’y’)
| númɔ́-dîŋê: | ‘thin bead bracelets’ (-dîŋê: also occurs in other jewelry-type compounds, and is itself probably a frozen diminutive compound from *dîŋe-ý”) |
The suggestion that vowels next to nasal consonants are phonologically (not just phonetically) nasalized is pertinent to the analysis of Cv-reduplications from TvNv… stems, with oral consonant T and nasal N. For Tv^n-TvNv… as the reduplicated form, see the discussion of nouns such as sɔ̀-sɔ̀ ‘sand’ in §4.1.4, below.

3.4.4 Initial vowels

There are no restrictions on which vowels can occur initially. Initial vowels are found when the usual C1 position happens to be vacant. Some examples: ó ‘give’, ú:-ǹ ‘lay down’, èré ‘peanuts’, ñá ‘thing’, árá ‘suckle’.

3.4.5 Stem-final vowels

For monosyllabic words, a final vowel may be long or short. For unsegmentable nonmonosyllabics, final vowels are usually short, except in loanwords. However, some nonmonosyllabic stems do have a final long vowel, in some cases due historically to a contraction. See (11a-b) in §3.4.1 above.

3.4.6 Vocalic harmony

The vowel-harmonic sets are [+ATR] {e o} and [-ATR] {e a}.

High vowels {u i} are extraharmonic and may co-occur with either vowel-harmonic set within the stem. Low vowel a is associated with [-ATR], to judge by verb forms like perfective pág-è (not #pág-è) ‘tied’ from stem págá ‘tie’.

There are only a handful of known cases where different forms of the same word family, e.g. noun and verb, diverge in vowel-harmonic class (17).
Harmonic divergences

a. ɗọ̀ŋo
   ɗọ̀ŋɔ̀-ɗọ̀ŋɔ́nú
   ‘pound (to dislodge grain from spike)’
   ‘area at edge of village where women pound millet spikes in large mortars’

b. mòm mòmò
   ‘carry out second round of weeding’ (cognate noun plus verb)

c. ẹ́wé
   ẹ́wé
   ‘sell’
   ‘market(n)’
   ẹ́w
   ‘(a) purchase’

3.4.7 Vowel symbolism

As in other Dogon languages, there are a few lexical families containing semantically and consonantally related stems that differ in vocalism in a manner suggesting a limited vowel-symbolic system. The sets in question are generally verbs and expressive adverbials.

For TgK, consider the set (18), which additionally involves consonantal repetition (reduplication is perhaps too strong a word). The form with e-vowels (hence with higher second formant) has diminutivizing sense, as often with e and e in similar sets in other Dogon languages.

(18) a.  gògó
   ‘eat (soft fruit)’

b.  gègé
   ‘(grasshopper, mouse) nibble at (food)’

c.  gùgɔ́
   ‘chew cud’; ‘spit up (food) into mouth’

Connecting the verbs in (18) further with  gògɔ́ ‘say one’s beads (fingering the beads of a rosary)’ and ‘set (rifle cock)’ is more of a stretch.

See also the discussion of vowel sequences in nouns with full-stem iteration (§4.1.6), and the set of expressive adverbials meaning ‘flat’ (§4.5.3).

3.5 Segmental phonological rules

3.5.1 Trans-syllabic consonantal processes

3.5.1.1 Nasalization-Spreading

In many (but not all) stems, including suffixally derived verbs, a semivowel or rhotic consonant appears in nasalized form when preceded by a nasal syllable such as nv, rⁿv, or Cvⁿ. Among many examples are rⁿ in  bánjär’d ‘shin’, wⁿ in nówⁿ ‘meat’, and yⁿ in gámù L kàrⁿiyⁿ ‘watermelon for cooking’. These forms reflect what was probably once a productive Nasalization-Spreading process.

However, there are a significant number of counterexamples where {w y r} remain unasalized in a nasalizing context. These are generally cases where a nasal-stop cluster has simplified in TgK to just the nasal. Examples are nèpèrè L-kùⁿ ‘knee’ (compare Perge nìngè) and lèmùrù ‘citrus fruit’ (Perge lèmbùrù, from Bambara). Since these forms seem to be stable, we cannot assert a synchronically productive Nasalization-Spreading process.
This is a phonological problem insofar as it applies to a verbal derivational suffix, namely reverse -rv. As shown in §9.1, below, this suffix nasalizes to -r̂v after some but not all stems that end in a nasal syllable. For example, ógù-r̂v ‘uncrumple’ has a nasalized r̂v, but téjì-rì ‘un-hobble (animal)’ has oral r, reflecting an earlier form of the type *tèngì-rì whose *ŋg cluster had no nasalizing effect on following suffixal segments. We are therefore stuck with a lexically arbitrary phonological rule by which some stems allow Nasalization-Spreading to a suffixal consonant while others do not.

In verbal inflectional morphology, the imperfective (positive) suffix -jú is nasalized to -jù after most stems ending in a nasal syllable, defined as either a syllable with a nasal or nasalized consonant as onset (e.g. na, mo, w’e), or a syllable with a nasalized vowel as in monosyllabic stems like jì:n ‘fart’. Thus gùŋjú ‘will take out’, jì:n-jú ‘fart’.

This suffixal nasalization does not apply to a set of such verbs whose medial nasal consonant reflects an etymological nasal-stop sequence, i.e. y from *ŋg, n from *nd, or (in theory) m from *mb. Thus tèngjú ‘will block’ or ‘will hobble (quadruped)’, minjú ‘will roll up’, dùngjú ‘will stop up (hole)’, bínjú ‘will turn (e.g. pocket) inside out’, all with -jú instead of -jù. I cannot cite examples with m from *mb, and in fact there are counterexamples like tèmjú ‘will encounter’, șmșjú ‘will rot’, and tímjú ‘will cover (with a lid)’, whose m’s reflect *mb.

In CvC syllables, a final {y w} is nasalized in most cases if C1 is nasal or nasalized, as in nù:ỹ ‘went in’.

Such nasalization-spreading as does exist synchronically in TgK is forward (progressive) rather than backward (regressive). However, backward nasalization-spreading has occurred diachronically in a handful of cases, where synchronic initial n reflects an earlier *y that was nasalized under the influence of a following nasal. This has resulted in obscure alternations in two cases. For ‘woman’ and related forms (jë, yë, yâ) see §4.1.1 and §5.1.8. For jà-mà ‘let’s go!’ from yë ‘go’, see (285a) in §10.6.2.1. Another diachronic case, with no synchronic alternations, is jàpà ‘take, pick up’, cf. Perge (Jamsay dialect) yëngé. The Dogon language with the most synchronic cases of backward nasalization-spreading is Toro Tegu.

3.5.1.2 Consonantal metathesis

Metathesis is not a common process. We see it on an isolated basis in the word-family with noun bár”awà ‘wound(n)’ and transitive verb báw”ùrù ‘wound (someone)’. Here the verb has metathesized, cf. Jamsay bárme ‘wound (someone)’ and other related forms (probably from Fulfulde).

My assistant showed variation between g/j and j/g sequences in the verb kójúgù – kógújù ‘cough’.

3.5.2 Vocalism of suffixally derived verbs

3.5.2.1 Suffixal Vowel-Spreading

Because derivational suffixes on verbs almost always result in heavy stems, derived verbs belong to the type with final short high vowel in the bare stem and perfective. In other inflected forms, the vowel of the derivational suffix is based on the vocalism of the stem. An exception is causative -mì, which follows a different pattern. See chapter 9 passim for examples of derivational suffixes.
3.5.2.2 Presuffixal V₂-Raising

In CvCv-Cv verbs with some derivational suffixes (but not causative -m), the medial syllable raises its short vowel to a high vowel {u i} in the bare stem. This occurs with reversives (§9.1) and transitive derivatives (§9.3.1). An example is págdá ‘tie’, reversive pági-ri ‘untie’.

3.5.3 Vocalic rules sensitive to syllabic or metrical structure

3.5.3.1 Epenthesis

I know of no vocalic epenthesis processes in TgK.

3.5.3.2 rv-Deletion

Some CvCv stems (chiefly verbs) ending in rv or rⁿv, where v is a short vowel, lose this syllable without compensatory lengthening in a metrically weak position before a consonant-initial suffix.

The process applies to several verb stems of the bimoraic bisyllabic shapes Cvrv and Cvrⁿv, before certain suffixes. Some stems of the same shapes fail to reduce. gɛ̀r-: ‘look’ is treated as /gɛ̀rɛ́/ before suffixes (compare gɛ̀rɛ́ ‘harvest’), and it is affected, but other Cvr- and Cvrⁿ- mediopassives are not, presumably because of the long suffixal vowel.

(19) Verb stems undergoing rv-Deletion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>stem</th>
<th>Ipfv</th>
<th>IpfvNeg</th>
<th>PfvNeg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Cvrv stems subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td>béré</td>
<td>bē-ju</td>
<td>bē-ro</td>
<td>bē-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>gārá</td>
<td>gā-jú</td>
<td>gā-ro</td>
<td>gā-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘pass, go past’</td>
<td>bārá</td>
<td>bā-ju</td>
<td>bā-ro</td>
<td>bā-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘add’</td>
<td>bīrē</td>
<td>bī-ju</td>
<td>bī-ro</td>
<td>bī-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘do’</td>
<td>yērē</td>
<td>yē-ju</td>
<td>yē-ro</td>
<td>yē-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular e ~ e alternation</td>
<td>gēr-:</td>
<td>gē-jú</td>
<td>gē-ro</td>
<td>gē-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular (partial mediopassive morphology)</td>
<td>árá</td>
<td>á-ju</td>
<td>á-ro</td>
<td>á-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular (imperative pé-nj)</td>
<td>pōri</td>
<td>pō-ju</td>
<td>pō-ro</td>
<td>pō-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Cvrⁿv stems subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td>gærⁿ-</td>
<td>gā-ju</td>
<td>gā-ro</td>
<td>gā-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘be able’</td>
<td>dārⁿ-</td>
<td>dā-ju</td>
<td>dā-ro</td>
<td>dā-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘kill’</td>
<td>bārⁿ-</td>
<td>bā-ju</td>
<td>bā-ro</td>
<td>bā-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘beat drum’</td>
<td>dārⁿ-</td>
<td>dā-ju</td>
<td>dā-ro</td>
<td>dā-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘sell’</td>
<td>dōrⁿ-</td>
<td>dō-ju</td>
<td>dō-ro</td>
<td>dō-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Stems not subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td>tōr</td>
<td>tōr-ju</td>
<td>tōr-ro</td>
<td>tōr-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underived, with r</td>
<td>ár</td>
<td>á-ju</td>
<td>á-ro</td>
<td>á-li</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The verbal suffixes that do and do not trigger rv-Deletion for the relevant verb stems are listed in (20). Only suffixes beginning with a Cv syllable (whether or not the vowel is subject to Apocope) are included.

(20) Suffixes and rv-Deletion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger Deletion</th>
<th>Do Not Trigger Deletion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Derivational</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-m causative (rarely)</td>
<td>-m causative (usually)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rv reversive (becomes -lv)</td>
<td>-nv inchoative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gv causative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Inflectional</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-jú ~ -pú imperfective</td>
<td>jé recent perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ró imperfective negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lí perfective negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=lá stative negative (infrequently)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tédjé experiential perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tán progressve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-w3-r2 progressive negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lé prohibitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-má hortative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-m-lé hortative negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Subordinating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nì different-subject ‘while’ (§15.2.1.2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples can be found in the relevant sections of chapters 9 and 10. From the array of suffixes in (20), it is not clear how a synchronic phonological analysis could neatly explain why some suffixes do and others do not allow rv-Deletion.

Regarding causative (and occasionally passive) -m, rv-Deletion is attested in a few high-frequency forms: gě-m ‘cause to look’, gă-m in dagá gă-m ‘allow to go past’, and bè-m ‘be obtainable’. However, deletion is not productive before this suffix: árá-m ‘nurse, give suck to’, wárá-m ‘have (animal) plow’, (kéné) párá-m ‘make (sb) angry’.

For the reverse (normally -rv), the phonology is non-transparent in tárá ‘affix, glue’ with reverse tá-lí ‘remove (sth affixed)’, and góró ‘cover (opening)’ with reverse gó-lí ‘remove cover from (opening)’. Arguably the suffixal /r/ dissimilates, becoming l before rv-Deletion applies to the second stem vowel.

For the minor derivational suffixes that do not trigger rv-Deletion, examples are yórá-gí ‘become soft’ and gúrú-ní ‘become long’.
Apocope is word-final deletion of a (short) vowel. As part of the general attrition of word-final segments, a final short high vowel \( \{ i u \} \) is deleted under some conditions. Actual synchronic alternations are limited to verbs.

For some verbs, including all heavy stems \((Cv:Cv, \text{trisyllabic}, \text{or longer})\) and some \(Cv:Cv\) stems, the important “bare stem” form ends in a short high vowel. This final vowel is usually
deleted after an unclustered \{m n ñ l\}, i.e. any sonorant other than a rhotic, semivowel, or \textit{p}. There are, however, careful pronunciations with the final high vowel audible. Other forms of these verbs have a clear (nonhigh) vowel, for example in the imperative. Examples are in (21).

(21) Apocope in verb stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>imperative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gùŋ</td>
<td>gùŋá</td>
<td>‘take out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàgá-mì</td>
<td>bàgá-mú</td>
<td>‘cause to fall’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wáh</td>
<td>wáná</td>
<td>‘shallow-fry’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>má:-ŋ</td>
<td>má:-ŋá</td>
<td>‘harden’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pól</td>
<td>pólo</td>
<td>‘break up’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to the bare stem, the same verbs allow Apocope in the perfective, e.g. \textit{gùŋ-∅} ‘took out’, variant \textit{gùŋ-i}.

Finally, verbal nouns in \textit{-ú} of bisyllabic stems are typically apocopated, e.g. \textit{wán-∅} ‘shallow-frying’, alongside \textit{wán-ú}.

3.5.6 Local consonant cluster rules

None.

3.5.7 Vowel-vowel and vowel-semivowel sequences

3.5.7.1 Hiatus between adjacent vowels in reduplications

The hiatus between the vowel of a \textit{Cv} reduplicant (in this case just \textit{v}) and a stem-initial vowel is filled by a glottal stop. See, for example, §4.1.4 for nouns, and §10.2.1.5 (among others) for verbs. An example is \textit{ó-ʔó-è}, reduplicated perfective of ‘give’, from simple perfective \textit{ó-è}.

3.5.7.2 \textit{vv}-Contraction

There are relatively few situations where two vowels come together at a boundary and contract. Some vocalic sequences are tolerated, even aside from the reduplications with glottal-stop hiatus. Verbs often show uncontracted diphthong-like sequences like \textit{œ} and \textit{æ} in the perfective. Compound final \textit{-í:} ‘child’ is often uncontracted after an initial ending in a vowel, though various contracted forms also occur, especially in terms for juvenile livestock, see (96) in §5.1.7.

Some pronouns contract with quotative subject \textit{(w)à}, hence 1Sg \textit{má à}, pronounced \textit{[mâ:]}, and 3Sg \textit{wò ʒ} from /wò wà/.

The imperfective negative of verbs is \textit{-rò} after a form of the stem with lengthened final vowel that also shifts from H-tone to \{HL\} (falling) tone, e.g. \textit{páɡá:-rò} ‘will not tie’. This is likely to have resulted from contraction of the stem with a bisyllabic suffix (complex).
3.5.8 Local vowel-consonant interactions

3.5.8.1 /i/ > /u/ before labial

There is no productive process of this type, though short high vowels do fluctuate between \(i\) and \(u\) especially in verbs, and the consonantal environment probably plays a role in the phonetics.

The alternation of mediopassive \(im\text{-}i\) ‘lie down’, stative \(\dot{u}\text{-}\dot{\text{ùmò}}\) ‘be lying down’, and irregular causative \(\dot{u}\text{-}n\) ‘lay (sb, sth) down’ (perhaps from *\(\dot{w\text{ùmù-n}}\)) represents an isolated and archaic case.

3.5.8.2 Monophthongization (\(i\text{y}/\) to \(i\); /uw/ to \(u\))

Examples of this are perfective \(ny\text{-}ny\) ‘ate (meal)’, pronounced [ni:], and verbal noun \(bùw\text{-}\emptyset\) (apocopated from /bùw-ú/), pronounced [bù:], cf. verb \(bùw\text{ɔ́}\) ‘scrub’.

3.6 Cliticization

There are no second-position (“special” or Wackernagel’s-position) clitics.

It is difficult to justify (on precise phonological grounds) a distinction between suffixes, clitics, and particles, and I cannot defend every orthographic decision I have made in this respect.

The best case for cliticization is when the putative clitic is reduced to a syllable-final consonant, pronounced with the final syllable of the preceding word. This is clearly the case with \(ny\) ‘it is’, which also acquires its tone from the preceding word (§11.2.1.1), and with the short allomorph \(n\) of dative postposition \(n\) (§8.1.1).

In verbal morphology, the boundary between suffixation and chaining is not clearcut, and some “suffixes” that follow the same form of the verb used in nonfinal position in chains could be reanalysed as (auxiliary) verbs. See §10.1.1 on this matter.

3.7 Tones

Lexical tone melodies are enclosed in slashes, e.g. /H/ or /LH/. Curly brackets {…} enclose tone overlays like {HL}, each of which consists of one or more tone elements H[igh] and L[ow], that are superimposed on stems of variable syllable and mora counts. {…} is also used when the difference between lexical and overlaid tone patterns is not relevant or not known. Syllable-by-syllable representations like L.<LH> use the period to mark syllable boundaries, and angled brackets to represent contoured (nonlevel) syllable tones. For example, an /LH/ melody or overlay can be mapped onto any type of stem, e.g. as <LH> on a monosyllabic. For bisyllabic and longer stems, how the mapping works must be specified. For example, /LH/ could in principle be mapped onto Cv.Cv.CvC as L.H.H, as L.L.H, or as L.L.<LH>, depending on the language and perhaps varying by construction. See the discussions on tone-break locations for lexical melodies (§3.7.1.5-7).

Superscripts like \(^L\) and \(^HL\) are used to index the presence of a tone overlay in NPs and in nominal compounds. Superscripts do not add phonetic information, as tones for each syllable in the target domains are already adjusted to their overt forms due to the overlay. See §3.7.2 for details.
Syllables in TgK are H, L, <LH> (rising), <HL> (falling), and <LHL> (bell-shaped). The tonal diacritics are, respectively, ū, ū́, ū̃, ū̂, and ū̌, where ū is a variable over vowels. <LHL> is not a lexical melody for monosyllabic stems in TgK, but due to Apocope it does occur (in a predictable fashion) in the “bare form” and related perfectives of some verbs that have <LH> elsewhere. Example: mɔ́ː�� ‘gather, assemble’ (apocopated from /mɔː:n̩uː/). It also occurs in the imperative negative of several verbs, e.g. biː-rò ‘will not do’. Among nouns, one can cite the archaic compound pe-yı’n ‘girl; daughter’ (§5.1.8).

In Dogon languages, verbs generally have restrictive tonal (as well as vocalic) properties that do not apply to non-verb stem-classes. Typically verbs belong to either /H/ or /LH/ lexical classes, and the choice is often predictable from the initial consonant (C_i). If C_i is a voiced obstruent (depressor consonant), we get /L/, if C_i is a voiceless obstruent (nondepressor) we get /H/. If there is no C_i, or if C_i is a sonorant, whether the stem is tonally /H/ or /LH/ is not predictable and must be learned verb by verb. By contrast, in these other Dogon languages, nouns, adjectives, and numerals have a broader range of lexically possible tone melodies, to wit /H/ /HL/ /LH/ /LHL/ and (in Toro Tegu and Ben Tey) /HLH/, and there is absolutely no correlation of lexical tone with features of the C_i or with any other segmental property of the stem.

In TgK, verbs generally follow this widespread Dogon pattern. The basic lexical distinction for verbs is /H/ versus /LH/, and if C_i is an obstruent we can predict the lexical tone (except in recent loanwords). However, there is an important class of verbs with a final high vowel {i u} in the “bare stem” and in some related forms. This class includes all stems of three or more moras (for example, all trisyllabics), as well as some bimoraic bisyllabics. See (242) in §10.1.3.5 and (246) in §10.1.3.9 for sample lists. In this class, the bare stem has a final L-tone, so the possibilities are /HL/ and /LHL/ allowing for the lexical distinction in the initial tone. Since the final L-tone in the bare stem is predictable, and since it is absent in the imperative and some other inflected forms, we could argue that the real lexical distinction for verbs of this class is /H/ versus /LH/, exactly as in other verbs.

Moreover, TgK non-verb stem-classes have inched closer to verbs. They still differ from verbs in showing no correlation of lexical melody with initial consonant type. However, they have replaced /HL/ by /H/ and /LHL/ by /LH/. The effect is to consolidate non-verb stem-class tone melodies around /H/ and /LH/, as in verbs.

Lexical melodies of all stem-classes (except expressive adverbials) are subject to partial modification or to full erasure, as syntactically or suffixally controlled tone overlays are applied to some or all syllables of the stem. For example, all stem-classes drop their tones to {L} in specified morphosyntactic contexts, and prosodically heavy nouns have an {HL} overlay when possessed.

3.7.1 Lexical tone patterns

3.7.1.1 At least one H-tone in each stem

All verb, noun, adjective, and numeral stems have at least one H-tone in their basic lexical form. There is no indication in the paradigms of monosyllabic verbs that any of them has a lexical /L/ melody. The important effect of this is that a morphosyntactically controlled {L} overlay on a stem is always audible. A partial exception is that /LH/-melody numerals are pronounced as L-toned in allegro speech when not phrased with a following word, e.g. tà:nú ‘3’ sometimes pronounced tà:nù.

A real exception to the constraints is that a few expressive adverbials (EAs) have /L/ melody. Four examples are in (213f), joined by iterated gòrùm-gàràm in (216c), all in
§8.4.6.1. These /L/-toned EAs require H-toned variants of two following monosyllabic morphemes that are otherwise <HL>- or L-toned: kɔ́ for copula kɔ́ ‘be’, which makes EAs predicative, and kāⁿ for kāⁿ, which follows some EAs in adverbial function. EAs, which have various phonological idiosyncracies, are somewhat autonomous prosodically. They are generally not subject to tonosyntactic operations.

3.7.1.2 Lexical tone melodies of verbs

In the bare stem and in the closely related perfective, the basic lexical melodies for verb stems are /H/ and /LH/, the choice being predictable if the stem begins with an obstruent (voiceless requires /H/, voiced requires /LH/) and lexical if it begins with a sonorant or no consonant. There are two complications to this. First, an archaic verb jē ‘take away, convey’, etymologically a two-verb chain, has /HL/ melody. Second, there is a large class of nonmonosyllabic verbs that end in a short high vowel i/u in the bare stem, and which add a final L-tone in this form, so /H/ becomes /HL/ and /LH/ becomes /LHL/. These verbs are prosodically heavy, or (in the case of CvCv) treated as though heavy, so the final L is semi-predictable. The final L-tone is also absent from the imperative, which ends in a nonhigh vowel.

The facts are summarized in (22).

(22) Syllabic shape and lexical tone melodies of verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>melody</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Cv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/H/</td>
<td>only ọ́ ‘give’, nụ́ ‘go in’, tí́ ‘send’, gí́ ‘say’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/</td>
<td>only ẹ́ ‘see’ (treated as ẹ́ in some inflections)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Ce/Cv: (irregular)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/</td>
<td>only yẹ́ ‘go’, presuffixal yā:-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/HL/</td>
<td>only jḗ ‘take away’, presuffixal jā:-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Cv; also prosodically light CvCv with final nonhigh vowel in bare stem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/H/</td>
<td>required with C₁ = voiceless obstruent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>some with C₁ = sonorant or zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/</td>
<td>required with C₁ = voiced obstruent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>some with C₁ = sonorant or zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. CvCv with final high vowel in bare stem</td>
<td>treated as light like (c), final i matches preceding i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/H/</td>
<td>e.g. pír₁ ’milk (a cow)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treated as heavy like (e), final high vowel unrelated to preceding vowels</td>
<td>e.g. pórá ’say’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/HL/</td>
<td>e.g. guŋ &lt; /guŋù/ ’remove’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LHL/</td>
<td>e.g. guŋ &lt; /guŋù/ ’remove’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Cv:Cv and other heavy stems with final high vowel in bare stem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/HL/</td>
<td>required with C₁ = voiceless obstruent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>some with C₁ = sonorant or zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a few loanwords with C₁ = voiced obstruent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
usual with $C_i = \text{voiced obstruent}$

some with $C_i = \text{sonorant or zero}$

The association of /H/ and heavy /HL/ melodies with initial voiceless obstruent, and conversely of /LH/ and heavy /LHL/ with initial voiced obstruent (depressor consonant), is robust for verbs at the lexical but not surface level. The lexical melody of a verb is regularly erased by morphophonological overlays controlled by suffixes, e.g. biré ‘do’ with initial voiced obstruent and the “correct” /LH/ melody, but imperative biré. Nouns and other non-verb stems show no effects of depressor consonants at any level.

3.7.1.3 Lexical tone melodies for unsegmentable noun stems

For uncompounded and unpossessed common nouns, the normal lexical tone melodies are /H/ and /LH/. That is, final falling /HL/ and /LHL/ are virtually nonexistent in simple common nouns (see below for exceptions). This distinguishes common nouns from other word types that do include stems with final falling tone, including proper nouns, numerals, inflected verb forms, and particles (e.g. nī ‘here’). Most other Dogon languages including closely related Jamsay have plenty of nouns with /HL/ and /LHL/ melody. It is clear that TgK has flattened final */…HL/ to /…H/ in common nouns, though usually not elsewhere.

A difficulty in studying nominal tones is the thin line between being compounded and simple, and between being reduplicated and simple. Tonal patterns, notably the position of tone breaks, suggest that many nouns that only occur in one form are nonetheless analysed by native speakers as containing either a compound break or a reduplicant.

The lexical melodies are exemplified in (23).

(23) Lexical melodies for morphologically simple noun stems

a. /H/  

īⁿ  ‘child’

tógú  ‘shed’

lásíří  ‘couscous’

b. /LH/  

ɲē  ‘woman’

girⁿí  ‘house’

dêrⁿé  ‘rest’

púnąyⁿ  ‘flour’

ósòró  ‘earth’

c. [for /HL/ and one case of /HLH/, see below]

There is no issue regarding the tone break in the /H/ stems, but the issue is problematic for the /LH/ stems; see §3.7.1.6-7, below.

Unlike common nouns (i.e. those that denote masses or sets of individuals), personal names and toponyms may have /HL/ melodies. There is considerable variation in the pronunciation of personal names like ‘Seydou’ and ‘Fanta’, which occur in all Malian languages in various tonal forms. In TgK they sometimes have melodies ending in H (like common nouns), and sometimes have final L (as in several neighboring languages). The list of local village names in §1.2 shows several with /HL/ and /LHL/ melodies. Among
morphologically complex common nouns, \{LH\}-\{L\} is notably present in ār̥á-ỳⁿ ‘boy’ and nëɔ-ỳⁿ ‘girl’, which end in a reduced form of ‘child’ as compound final (§4.1.2, §5.1.7).

In the infrequent /HL/ noun like šɔsà ‘cemetery’ that is not transparently compounded, one suspects nonetheless that it originated as a compound and is still treated prosodically as a compound. Compare Jamsay cognate ðwɔ-sà-yⁿ.

/HL/ and /LHL/ adverbs, including some that are rather noun-like, are well attested. For example, ‘last year’ is nágùrù, and ‘day after tomorrow’ is yògò-

I know of one partially /HL/ noun that does not appear to be compounded. ‘(Non-boiling) kettle’ (used to carry water) is sátàlá for some speakers, at least in the combination sátàlá mả ‘my kettle’. However, the noun is also heard variously as sátálá or sátàlá, i.e. with /H/ or /HL/ melody. With ‘it is’ clitic I recorded sátàlá =y ‘it is a kettle’. The noun is found in several languages in the region, including Bambara, and variant melodies may be due to multiple (re-)borrowing across language boundaries.

Overall, then, final-falling melodies /HL/ and /LHL/ are very restricted for unpossessed, uncompounded noun stems. However, the combination of an /H/-toned noun with the (generally atonal) ‘it is’ clitic =y appears with final-falling tone pattern under some conditions; see (313c-e) in §11.2.1.1.

3.7.1.4 Lexical tone melodies for adjectives and numerals

Uncompounded adjectives have the same lexical choice between /H/ and /LH/ as uncompounded common nouns. See §4.5.1, below, for a long list.

kùrújù functions as an adjective or compound final (the two categories are not always distinguishable) with rare /LHL/ melody. It denotes the occasional cow-pea or roselle seed that is too hard to use for food, e.g. for cow-peas ni: kùrújù. It may itself be composite at least historically, cf. adjective kùrú ‘thick (liquid, e.g. honey)’.

Numerals have a wider range of melodies than adjectives and common nouns. Attested melodies are /H/ (pèrù ‘10’), /LH/ (này ‘4’), /HL/ (sɔ ‘7’), and /LHL/ (sìlà ‘8’).

3.7.1.5 Tone-Component location for verb stems

CvCvCv and Cv:Cv stems are the most useful for identifying tone-break locations.

/LH/ and /LHL/ stems, i.e. those with an initial L-tone segment, show the break from L to H as close as possible to the left edge. A trisyllabic example is /LHL/ bare stem yɔ̀rù-gi ‘slacken’ with \{LH\}-toned imperative yɔ̀rù-gĩ A Cv:Cv example is /LHL/-toned mɔ:ñ ‘assemble’ and its \{LH\}-toned stem in imperfective mɔ:ñ-jù.

Aside from ‘take away’, most of whose forms are based on jà:-, a final L-tone occurs only on the final syllable of stems ending in a short high vowel, and even for them only in the bare stem and perfective. This applies to heavy /LHL/-toned verb stems (Cv:Cv, CvCvCv), as seen just above in yɔ̀rù-gi and mɔ:ñ. In the other suffixed forms, and in the imperative, these verbs lose the final L-tone, shifting from /LHL/ to \{LH\}.

For /HL/-toned CvCvCv stems, which likewise lose the final L-tone in most inflected forms but show it in the bare stem and perfective, the tone break can be after the first or second syllable. The data in §10.1.3.9 show a strong correlation of CvCvCv with C₃ = rhotic as in pini-rì ‘open (door)’, and of CvCvCv with C₃ = other than rhotic.
3.7.1.6 Tone-break location for bitonal noun stems

Here we focus on un compounded, underived /LH/-toned common nouns. There is of course no tone break in the other common melody for such nouns, namely /H/. Angled brackets indicate contour tones in specific syllables, so \(CV\) is represented as \(\langle LH\rangle\).

For monosyllabic /LH/ nouns, the break is of course within the single syllable: \(m\dot{a}\) ‘gum arabic’, \(d\dot{y}n\) ‘waterjar’, \(d\dot{y}n\) ‘pestle’, \(b\dot{i}\) ‘belly’. It should be noted that \(C\dot{v}C\) is not a completely regular shape for nouns; \(d\dot{y}n\) is probably an old compound ending in ‘child’, and \(b\dot{i}\) still varies with bisyllabic \(b\dot{i}n\).

For nonmonosyllabic stems, it is advisable to begin by separating off apparent \(C\dot{v}\)-reduplications, or equivalently by disregarding the tone of the initial syllable. For example, rather than treating \(C\dot{v}-C\dot{v}C\) and \(C\dot{v}-v\dot{c}\) as \(L.H.H\) and \(L.L.H\), respectively, with a lexical choice of tone-break location, it makes more sense to treat them as reduplicated derivatives of ordinary bisyllabic /H/ and /LH/ stems, respectively, i.e. as \(L./H\) and \(L./LH\) including the hyphen. The tone breaks then unproblematic phonologically. Examples are in (24). For a fuller list and more discussion, see §4.1.4.

(24) Nouns with L-toned reduplicant

a. \(CV-Cv\)
   \(L-H\)
   \(g\dot{e}-g\dot{e}\) ‘jaundice’
   \(L-\langle LH\rangle\)
   \(n\dot{u}-n\dot{u}\) ‘cold weather’

b. \(CV-Cv\):
   \(L-H\)
   \(d\dot{e}-d\dot{e}\) ‘father’ (dialectal variant \(d\dot{e}d\dot{e}\))
   \(k\dot{o}-k\dot{o}\) ‘scab’; ‘slough(n)’ (Jamsay \(k\dot{g}\dot{o}\))
   \(L-\langle LH\rangle\)
   \(k\dot{o}-k\dot{o}\) ‘(fish) scale; (tree) bark’ (Jamsay \(k\dot{i}-k\dot{o}\))

c. \(CV-CvC\)
   \(L.H.H\)
   \(k\dot{u}-k\dot{u}\) ‘smoke’
   \(L-L.H\)
   \(k\dot{a}-k\dot{a}\) ‘armpit’

Other bisyllabic and trisyllabic /LH/ nouns, including nominal compound finals, are illustrated in (25). Any longer (i.e. quadrisyllabic) stem is likely to behave tonally like a compound.

(25) Morphologically simple /LH/-toned nouns and compound finals

a. \(CV\)
   \(L.H\)
   \(n\dot{a}\) ‘cow’
   \(d\dot{o}\) ‘cat’
   \(g\dot{r}n\) ‘house’
   \(\dot{a}r\) ‘man’
gùjú  ‘skin’
gùⁿsáⁿ  ‘plain (topography)’
L..<LH>
final iⁿ
mùɲnⁿ  ‘Mossi (person)’
gùřnⁿ  ‘Gourou (person)’
other
[none]
c. Cv:Cv
L.H
là:rá  ‘fields next to the village’
tà:rá  ‘collective hunt’
dè:ŋé  ‘earthenware pot’
gè:jé  ‘thin cotton thread’
gè:mé  ‘shard’
wò:mí  ‘pancake-like cake’
bà:já  ‘eating bowl’
bɔ:nɔ  ‘shoulderbag’
sùgùrù¹-jè:lé  ‘earring’
L..<LH>
[none]
d. CvCvC, Cv Cv:
L.H
bàsáⁿ  ‘bassam (fabric)’
ràsá:  ‘sneaker’ (<Rasta[farian])
kèpí:  ‘cap’ (Fr képî)
sàpó:  ‘sailor’s hat’ (Fr chapeau)
bùt₅ⁿ  ‘button’
sì⁹gám  ‘chewing gum’
L.<LH>
pùnàyⁿ  ‘flour, powder’
mòt₃m  ‘scorpion’
e. CvCcv and Cv:CCv
L.H
làmpáⁿ  ‘lamp’ (loanword)
àndáⁿ  ‘tiny fly sp.’
pàrnì  ‘fritters’ (<Bambara)
pà:ndé  ‘poison’
kògò¹-tà:ŋé  ‘chicken’s drinking trough’
f. CvCvCv
L.H.H
initial a(ⁿ) possibly segmentable (§4.1.7)
àtégú  ‘wrestling’
àségú  ‘sneeze’
àlégú  ‘loincloth’
àndáŋú 'soft millet cakes'

other

kùmúr"ú 'baobab seed'
kògújó 'cough'
kàgújá 'drooling'
númɔ̀ -kàsèrè 'ring finger'
kènè¹-pèrúgè 'hiccups'
lèmúr"ú 'citrus fruit'
sèpèr"é 'sifting residue'
dògòrò 'mortar'
kèpèlú 'hot chili pepper'
sùkòrú 'sugar'
gàmù¹-kàr"iy'á 'watermelon (cooking)'
sàdîné 'vegetable garden'
òmòrò 'small-mouthed waterskin'
bùtélú 'bottle'

L.L.H

initial a(ⁿ) possibly segmentable (§4.1.7)
àpálá 'soft millet cakes'

CvCúCú (like trisyllabic verbal noun)
kèrúgú 'gap between front teeth'
sèbúgú 'heart of palm'
sèmùr"ú 'rags, tatters'
pùsùrú 'crushed millet'
jènùr"ú 'short-handled pick-hoe'
tògùrú 'basket with square base'

other

kàⁿ-kèrùwè 'sideburns'
i"síî'í 'urine'
tènî"í 'baobab fruit'
pèrígí 'wide-brimmed hat'
 bèlèśí 'cotton fabric'
àrùkó 'boubou (robe)'
pòrùké 'long boubou'
nàmásá 'banana'
lè-lígíjí 'slashing earth (not in rows)'
bàrâdá 'tea keetle'

L.L. <LH>

gònòsṣa 'slave-snatcher'

Observe that both L.L.H and L.H.H, and one case of L.L.<LH>, are present. This suggests that TgK does not favor separation of an /L.H/ melody from the segmental representation of uncompounded, unreduplicated trisyllabic nouns. The issue of where the break would occur in /HL/ in trisyllabic common nouns is moot since this tone pattern is confined to prosodically heavy possessed nouns (and to personal and place names).
3.7.1.7 Tone-break location for tritonal noun stems

Because the \{HL\} sequence is restricted to prosodically heavy possessed nouns, and to personal and place names, the melody /LHL/ is largely absent. The other tripartite pattern, /HLH/, is rare even in other Dogon languages (a few examples in Toro Tegu and Ben Tey).

In the frozen expression kâwã bê: ‘excuse me!’, also found in e.g. Jamsay, the initial word is /LHL/ but its status as a noun is not completely transparent. In any event, it has only three moras so there is no suspense as to where the tones will occur.

3.7.2 Grammatical tone patterns

The lexical tone melodies of verbs, nouns, adjectives, numerals, and even demonstratives are frequently erased by superimposed tone overlays in specific grammatical contexts. For verbs, the relevant contexts are morphological (word-level), as tone overlays are controlled by certain suffixes. For nouns, adjectives, and numerals, the most significant contexts are syntactic, as words to the left or right (not always adjacent) control tones on targeted words.

Word- or phrase-level tonosyntactic superscripts \(_L\), \(_H\), and \(_H\) are placed at the left or right edge of the targeted word, or of the (bracketed) targeted phrase, “pointing” in the direction of the controller (C). So, if \(T\) is the target, I write \(C_L^T\) and \(T_L^C\) for left-to-right controllers (possessors) and right-to-left controllers of \{L\} overlays, respectively. If a noun is arguably targeted from both the left and the right, and we cannot determine which controller is active, double superscripts can be used: \(C_1^L T_2^C\). A local tone component that is realized only at the phonological edge of the target (e.g. its final mora) is indicated by a + mark in the superscript, so that \(T^L_{\text{+H}} C\) indicates that the target has word- or phrase-level \{L\} overlay plus a final H-tone component.

As an example, in [[sã bê] \(_HL\) ñà:] ‘their (own) mother’ from (64), ñà: ‘mother’ shows an \{HL\} overlay controlled by the preceding possessor, erasing the lexical tone, so the superscript is on the left of the target. In [fisí gë’] \(_L\) már’à ‘(a) big black dog’ (137d), the final adjective már’à controls tone-dropping on the bracketed two-word target domain, so the superscript is on the right.

Superscripts are also used in nominal compounds, though here the notion of “controller” is less clearly applicable. For example, in [pàrã-[gô:-rò]] \(_L\)-bîré ‘harvest-work’, pàrã-[gô:-rò] ‘harvest season’ is tone-dropped to \{L\} as compound initial. To avoid clutter, such word-internal superscripts are often omitted from text transcriptions. This is even more so for suffix-stem tonomorphology in verbs.

Tonosyntactic superscripts are not phonetic diacritics (like downstep marks). The tones on the syllables of the targeted word(s) are already marked as H, L, or whatever, by the usual accent diacritics. The superscripts are simply there to help the reader identify the tonosyntactic processes that have applied to produce these surface tones.

3.7.2.1 Grammatical tones for verb stems

Tone overlays on verb stems are generally morphological (word-level) rather than syntactic in nature.

The imperfective negative does not cast an overlay over the entire verb stem, instead it merely lengthens the final vowel and adds a final L-tone element to it (to give it a falling tone). Thus págâ:-rò ‘will not tie’ from págâ, but dágâ:-rò ‘will not leave’ from dágâ, preserving the distinction between verbs with initial H- and initial L-tones.
The perfective negative suffix -\textit{lí}, on the other hand, controls stem-wide tone-dropping on the verb, so the lexical melody is erased. Thus \textit{pàgà-lí} ‘did not tie’ and \textit{dàgà-lí} ‘did not leave’, with no difference in stem tones.

The perfective (positive) preserves lexical tones.

In the imperative, lexically /LH/-toned prosodically light (\textit{CV} and \textit{CVC\textit{V}}) stems become \{H\}-toned, merging with lexical \textit{CV} and \textit{CVC\textit{V}}.

Further tonal changes occur in focalized clauses and in relative clauses.

### 3.7.2.2 Grammatical tones for noun stems

Nouns are subject to three morphosyntactically controlled tone overlays.

The first is tone-dropping to \{L\} controlled by a following modifying adjective or demonstrative, or due to function as head NP of a relative. Tone-dropping is phonologically simple: all H-tones drop to L. See chapter 6 for interactions of nouns with adjectives and demonstratives, and chapter 14 for head NPs in relative clauses.

The second is a possessed-noun overlay that is controlled by a preceding (but not following) possessor. The preceding possessor may be a pronoun (other than 1Sg) or a nonpronominal NP. The lexical melody of the possessed noun is erased, replaced by \{H\} if the stem is light and \{HL\} if it is heavy (three or more moras). Two high-frequency monosyllabic nouns have \{L\} as possessed-noun contour. See §6.2.1 for details.

The possessed-noun overlay and tone-dropping do not conflict in relative clauses, since possessors of a relative head NP are restructured into appositional forms that do not interact with the head NP tonally. However, the possessed-noun overlay and tone-dropping do potentially conflict in combinations like [possessor [noun adjective]], where the noun is in theory subject to an \{H\} or \{HL\} possessed-noun overlay from the possessor to the left, but to tone-dropping controlled by the adjective to the right. In this case, the possessor wins out; indeed, the adjective as well as the noun are subject to the possessed-noun overlay, which is always \{HL\} in this case (§6.2.2).

For the \{L\}+H pattern on certain types of NP including a numeral, see §3.7.2.4 below.

The third context where a noun is subject to tonal overlays is in compounds. For the most part, this involves either tone-dropping the initial to \{L\}, or an \{H\} or \{HL\} overlay on the final like that of possessed nouns.

### 3.7.2.3 Grammatical tones for adjectives

Adjectives undergo the same tonal processes as nouns, insofar as they can occur in word strings that can be targeted by tonosyntactic controllers.

### 3.7.2.4 Grammatical tones for numerals

Word-internal tone-dropping occurs on numeral stems before ordinal suffix -\textit{niri} (§4.6.2.2).

There are some unusual tonal changes on numerals as parts of composite numeral expressions. First, numerals modifying a preceding ‘hundred’ or ‘million’ are tone-dropped, see §4.6.1.4. Second, decimal terms (‘20’, etc’) involve contracted forms of \textit{pèr}d\‘i 10’ as initial. This appears as <LH>-toned \textit{pè} before an L-tone and in \textit{pè-l\textit{A}y} ‘20’), and as L-toned \textit{pè} before other H-tones (§4.6.1.3).
In the sequence [noun (adjective) numeral], the numeral (like the preceding words) is subject to tone-dropping controlled by a preceding possessor NP, or by a following demonstrative or relative-clause verb. This tone-dropping fits the pattern seen in several other Dogon languages.

However, TgK also shows an \{L\}+H overlay on target domains that include a numeral when the target domain is combined with certain additional elements (possessor, demonstrative, ‘all’). This takes the form of \{L\} spread over the target domain, except for a single final-syllable or final-mora H-tone. See §6.2.1.5 and §6.6.1 for details.

3.7.2.5 Grammatical tones for demonstratives

The two basic demonstrative stems, proximate \textit{n̩d}: ‘this’ and near-distant \textit{y̩d}: ‘that (near you)’ are lexically /H/-toned (§4.4.1.2). This is how they appear in isolation, and in the combination N-Dem, e.g. \textit{gir}ⁿ\textit{î} ‘house’, \textit{gir}ⁿ\textit{î}: \textit{y̩d}: ‘that house’ (where the demonstrative controls tone-dropping on the noun).

However, when the NP that includes the demonstrative is more complex (i.e. morphosyntactically heavier), the demonstrative drops to L-tone. The tonosyntactic treatment of the NP as a whole depends on whether a numeral and/or a possessor are present, since these elements can require an \{L\}+H tone pattern preceding a tone-dropped demonstrative. For details and examples see §3.7.3.5 and §6.1.4. With a prenominal possessor, Poss-N-Dem appears with the regular possessed-noun overlay on the noun, and with tone-dropped demonstrative. An example is (128b) in §6.2.2. However, this could be marked up tonosyntactically either as Poss \textit{H}L\textit{N}L\textit{Dem}, with \{H\} overlay on prosodically light possessed noun and with separately tone-dropped demonstrative, or as Poss \textit{HL}[N Dem], with the demonstrative as part of the possessor’s target domain, triggering the \{HL\} overlay for prosodically heave possessed NP.

3.7.3 Tonal morphophonology

Having discussed lexical tone melodies, and grammatical (mostly stem-wide) tone overlays, we now consider the more purely phonological side of tonology, including tone sandhi.

3.7.3.1 Autosegmental tone association

It is possible in some Dogon languages to consider stem-level tone patterns (lexical melodies or overlays) to be ontologically separate from segmental strings. In this analysis, a stem would consist of a string of consonants and vowels, organized into syllables and moras, plus a melody or overlay like \{H\}, \{L\}, \{LH\}, or \{HL\}. This will work if there is a mechanical way to associate the elements of the bitonal patterns \{LH\} and \{HL\} onto the segmental strings.

For nouns, this will not work cleanly because, as shown in §3.7.1.6 above, both L.L.H and L.H.H occur as tone sequences for trisyllabic stems. Some of the relevant cases can be explained away as e.g. \textit{Cv-CvCv} reduplications or compounds, taking the final element as an /H/- or /LH/-toned bisyllabic. However, there remains a residue of unsegmentable trisyllabics of both L.L.H and L.H.H types.

For verbs too, separation of tones from segmental strings is problematic. The very fact that verbal melodies /H/, /LH/, /HL/, and /LHL/ correlate fairly well with the heaviness of
stems, and with their initial consonants (§3.7.1.2, above), points to a deep rather than superficial integration of their segmental and tonal structures.

In Jamsay, the entire melody of a verb stem, /H/ or /LH/, is reapplied to its suffixal derivatives. In TgK, the onset (H or L) is preserved under suffixal derivation, but the derived stems are prosodically heavy and so fall into the class with final high vowel {i u}. These stems have a final L-tone, so /H/ and /LH/ input stems have {HL} and {LHL} outputs, respectively. See especially the reversive derivatives in §9.1.

3.7.3.2 Phonology of H(H...L and H(L...)L tone overlays

H.(L...)L is favored over H.(H...)L in {HL} tone overlays.

The possessed noun overlay is H.L.L rather than H.H.L for trisyllabic stems, as in [X tōgōrō] ‘X’s namesake’, see §6.2.1.2. With quadrisyllabic nouns, {HL} is manifested as H.H.L.L, but I think this is because the default prosodic treatment of quadrisyllabics is as compounds of two bisyllabic stems; see (124) in §6.2.1.2.

Verbs with final high vowel, including suffixal derivatives of CvCv stems, have H.L-L rather than H.H-L patterns when the stem is lexically /H/, as in pága ‘tie’, reversive pági-rì ‘untie’, see §9.1.

Bahuvrihi compounds are not relevant here since their second elements do not have {HL} tone in TgK.

3.7.3.3 Atonal-Morpheme Tone-Spreading

Most affixes, clitics, and subordinating particles have intrinsic tones, so there is limited scope for a rule accounting for the tones of intrinsically atonal morphemes.

However, verbal derivational suffixes like reversive -rv- get their tone (high in most inflected forms) by spreading from the preceding verb stem, subject to possible erasure by tone overlays controlled by inflectional categories.

The postvocalic allomorph =y of the ‘it is’ clitic (§11.2.1.1) is atonal, acquiring its tone by spreading from the syllable that it forms part of. Thus fāntà = y ‘it’s Fanta’, ā = y ‘it’s you-Sg’. See also Contour-Tone Stretching (§3.7.4.2).

3.7.3.4 Tone polarization

Tonal dissimilation of two morphemes, by which one adopts the tone opposite to that of the adjacent morpheme, is not a regular process in TgK. However, the copulas kɔ̀ (nonhuman), wɔ̀ (human singular), and wè (human plural) shift to H-tone when preceded by an all-{L}-toned expressive adverbial, such as those listed in (213f) in §8.4.6.1. Example: sày kɔ̀ ‘it is oily’. Since expressive adverbials are the only word-class that allow /L/ as a lexical melody, this tonal polarization is rather limited.

The other place in the grammar where a kind of tonal polarization occurs is in decimal numerals. These all begin in a form of péù ‘10’ that has undergone rv-Deletion to pe-. The tone is <LH>, hence pé-, in pe-lɔ̀y ‘20’ and whenever followed by an L-tone, as in pé-tànɔ̀ ‘30’. (Cognates of lɔ̀y ‘2’ are mostly /LH/-toned, so ‘20’ was originally not exceptional.) However, the tone seemingly polarizes to L before an H-tone, as in pé-kùrɛ̀ ‘60’.

This could, however, be analysed as merger of the final H-tone of pé- with the following H-tone.
3.7.3.5 Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering

A demonstrative (yɔ́:; nɔ́:) is dropped to L-tone (1-yɔ́:: ɔ́nɔ́:) in certain types of NP. Under more limited conditions, a postnominal pronominal possessor of the type [Pron kè] drops its tones, e.g. 2Sg ú kè becoming 1/[u kè]. A key analytical issue is whether the tone-lowering is triggered by the presence of a tonal definite (§4.4.1.1), overt or covert, on the preceding word.

Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering affects both demonstratives and [Pron kè] possessors when the preceding string ends in a numeral and has {L}+H overlay. Demonstratives are also tone-lowered in the combination Poss-N-(Adj-)Dem with a prenominal possessor, in the combination N-(Adj-)Poss-Dem with a postposed pronominal possessor, and optionally in the combination N-Adj-Dem (or [N-N]-Dem with a compound noun). Demonstratives are also tone-lowered at the end of a relative clause. I will illustrate with demonstratives and return to postposed pronominal possessors in (30) below.

An example with a numeral adjacent to the demonstrative, but with no possessor, is (26). The overlay {L}+H is applied to the N-Adj-Num sequence, with only the final syllable H-toned. The demonstrative is tone-dropped. For more examples of this type see (152a-d).

(26) [gir'í már'á kùrè:]1-H 1-yɔ́: 1NearDist
    [house big six] 1-yɔ́: ‘those six big houses’

The same tonal structure is present even when the noun is omitted: kùrè; 1-H 1-yɔ́: ‘those six’ (compare kùrè: ‘six’). Such omission is rare (§6.1.2).

There is an alternative output with {L}+toned preceding string ending with the numeral, plus H-toned (not tone-dropped) yɔ́: or nɔ́: See [nànè tɔ̀y] 1-yɔ́: ‘those two uses (just described)’ in (153) in §6.5.2. An interesting speculation is that the more common tone-dropped version, as in (26), occurs when the numeral is marked by the tonal definite (final L-tone). Even when the tonal definite is itself otherwise covert, it could trigger Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering. Conversely, The idea would be that the L-tone of the tonal locative spreads rightward into the demonstrative, replacing its H-tone. Conversely, if the tonal definite is absent, the final determiner remains H-toned in this model.

There is evidence both for and against this analysis. On the positive side, it gives us a simple, direct way to account for the tonal differences between (26) and (153). When the pre-demonstrative word is a lexically /H/-toned adjective, as in (28b) below, the second syllable of the adjective drops to L-tone before L-toned demonstrative. In (28b), már'á ‘big’ surfaces as már'á 1 ‘big’, the correct form for a tonal definite, before demonstrative 1-yɔ́: See also (29b) where the final element is sã:: ‘all’.

On the neutral side, there are many examples where the tonal locative that supposedly triggers Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering is covert, including all cases where the pre-demonstrative word is a numeral. Phonological explanations can be given for its covertness, but it does make the analysis less than transparent.

On the negative side, I can find no independent evidence that e.g. (26) is semantically definite while e.g. (153) is semantically indefinite. A definiteness opposition would be at best subtle, at worst completely redundant, in an NP containing a demonstrative. Secondly, when the demonstrative is plural (nɔ́: nà, yɔ́: nà), tone-lowering is noticeably less common than when it is singular. This suggests that the prosodic weight of the demonstrative is one of the conditioning factors, further weakening the correlation with definiteness. Finally, in some examples the demonstrative is tone-dropped but a preceding H-toned word does not show the expected final-syllable tone-dropping, even in phonological contexts that would allow it. This
happens when the pre-demonstrative word is a possessed noun with \{H\} overlay, like "gírⁿí ‘house’ in (27a) below.

I am fairly sure that the tonal definite (or its predecessor, an overt L-toned definite morpheme, cf. Jamsay kùⁿ) played some role historically in Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering. However, the fact that the tonal definite is now often covert in pre-demonstrative position has muddied the waters, and there are signs that Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering is in the process of decoupling from definite marking. So I will sit on the fence regarding this issue as this section proceeds.

Examples with a prenominal possessor but without a numeral are (27a–d). In (27a), the noun is realized with bisyllabic H.H tones (H.gírⁿí), so there is clearly no tonal definite (terminal L-tone). The fuller version of (27c) does have a numeral, but due to Adjective-Numeral Inversion it is not adjacent to the demonstrative. The two variants of (27d) could be explained by presence versus absence of the tonal definite as described above, although the tonal definite itself is not overt. One can likewise argue for a covert tonal locative in (27e).

(27)  
a. sè:dú H gírⁿí L yá:
   S   H house L NearDist
   ‘that house of Seydou’s’

b. sè:dú HL kërè L yá:
   S   HL saddle L NearDist
   ‘that saddle of Seydou’s’

c. sè:dú HL [gírⁿí (kùrè:) màrⁿà] yá:
   S   HL [house (six) big] L NearDist
   ‘those (six) big houses of Seydou’
   (after Adjective-Numeral Inversion)

d. [ú L kë] kërè L/gírⁿí L ná:
   or: [ú L kë] kërè L/gírⁿí L ná:
   [2SgPoss L Poss] saddle L/house L L Prox
   ‘this saddle of yours-Sg’

e. [ú L kë] L gàrá L ná:
   [2SgPoss Poss L house L big] L Prox
   ‘this big house of yours-Sg’

In (27a–b), the possessor clearly controls the overlay on the noun, so the tonosyntactic formula is Poss H L N L Dem. However, the adjective ‘big’ and, if present, the inverted numeral ‘six’ in (27c) show the \{L\}+H overlay, i.e. broad \{L\} overlay plus a single final-syllable H-tone. We cannot determine where the L-tone portion of the possessor-controlled \{HL\} overlay ends and where the demonstrative-controlled \{L\}+H begins. When a preposed possessor contains possessive kë, there is no possessor-controlled overlay (27d–e), but the presence of the possessor allows the noun to surface with its lexical tones before a tone-dropped demonstrative.

(28a) below has a possessor at the beginning and a numeral that is adjacent to the demonstrative. The \{HL\} overlay controlled by the possessor and the \{L\}+H overlay controlled by the demonstrative target the same intervening N-Adj-Num. Presumably the \{H\} tone on ‘house’ is due to the possessor, and the \{L\}+H on the numeral is due to the demonstrative, but we cannot determine which element controls the \{L\}-tone on the adjective.
‘big’. This is arguably a case of double control. (28b) has a preposed possessor with kè and an inverted numeral that is separated from the demonstrative by an adjective. The adjective preserves its lexical melody and controls tone-dropping on the preceding string.

(28) a. sè:dú [gir₃í mârⁿà kùrëː]₁-H yː: ³
S [house big six]₁-H 'NearDist
‘those six big houses of Seydou’

b. [ú kè] [gir₃í kùrëː]₁ yː: nà
[2SgPoss LPoss] [house six] L big₁ L'NearDist Pl
‘those six big houses of yours-Sg’

A demonstrative is also tone-lowered after a postposed possessor. The set of postposed possessors consists of 1Sg mà on the one hand, and pronominal possessors of the form [Pron kè]. All of these postposed possessors end in an L-tone, so if there is a tonal locative it is covert. An example is gir₃í mà yː: ‘that house of mine’, (132b) in §6.2.3, where the final demonstrative is tone-dropped after 1Sg mà.

Universal quantifier sâ:ⁿ does not undergo tone-lowering. In (29a) and other examples of the sequence [N-...-Num]₁-H ‘all’, ‘all’ requires an {L}+H overlay on the numeral-final string, just as demonstratives do. One could argue that a covert tonal definite occurs at the end of the numeral, and that this rather than ‘all’ is what controls {L}+H, but in this combination the tonal locative is otherwise covert. (29b), with an adjective rather than a numeral preceding ‘all’, does have a tonal definite, audible with /H-melody adjectives like mârⁿà ‘big’. sâ:ⁿ ‘all’ maintains its tones throughout (29a-c), which weakens the tonosyntactic parallelism between ‘all’ and the final demonstratives in (28a-b).

(29) a. [sè:dú kè] [gir₃í kùrëː]₁-H sâ:ⁿ
[S LPoss] [house six]₁-H all
‘all six houses of Seydou’

b. [ú kè] gir₃í L mârⁿà L sâ:ⁿ
[2SgPoss LPoss] house L big₁ L all
‘all six of your big houses’ = ‘all six big houses of yours’

c. ú L kêgërë sâ:ⁿ
2SgPoss HL saddle all
‘all of your saddles’

When the demonstrative occurs after an unpossessed compound noun or an unpossessed N-Adj sequence, these forms may keep their regular tones. In this case, the demonstrative is tone-dropped: gir₃í L mârⁿà ‘big house’, gir₃í L yː: ‘that big house’; nû:₁-{kî-kîjî} ‘millet grain spike’, nû:₁-{kî-kîjî} yː: ‘that millet grain spike’. In alternative pronunciations like [gir₃í mârⁿà]₁ yː: ‘that big house’, the demonstrative keeps its H-tone, and controls {L} on the preceding sequence.

A demonstrative that follows the verb of a relative clause (a type of heavy NP) is tone-dropped, see §14.1.12.

Tone-dropping also applies to pronominal possessors following a numeral or numeral-adjective string, cf. §3.7.3.7. In (30a), the possessor (elsewhere ú kè, émë kè) drops tones, compare the parallel version with a demonstrative in (30b). The tones of mârⁿà suggest that the tonal definite is present in both examples; see discussion of (147b-c) in §6.4.2.
(30) a. \[\text{[pèjù kùrè:] L mårà}^+L \quad \text{[ù / èmè kè]}\]
   \[\text{sheep six}^L \quad \text{big}^L \quad \text{[2SgPoss/ 1PIPoss Poss]}\]
   ‘your/our six big sheep’

   b. \[\text{[pèjù kùrè:] L mårà}^+L \quad \text{[yɔ̀]}\]
   \[\text{sheep six}^L \quad \text{big}^L \quad \text{NearDist}\]
   ‘those six big sheep’

3.7.3.6 Numerical as tonosyntactic catalyst for postnominal possessor

In the preceding section, many of the examples show not only the tone-dropping of the demonstrative, but also the appearance of an H-tone on the final syllable of an otherwise \{L\} -toned postnominal modifier (adjective or numeral) or modifier string.

Since these two phenomena often go together, it is tempting to think that the underlying H-tone of the demonstrative jumps to the preceding syllable. If so, we would need a morphophonological tone-displacement rule.

This is rejected here as a synchronic analysis. First, when the demonstrative drops its tone when directly following a noun, there is no change in the noun’s tones. This is true even when the noun ends in an L-tone, as in sèdú \[\text{Hi} \text{kègèrè}^+L yɔ̀:\] ‘that saddle of Seydou’s’, (27b) in the preceding section. The same is true when the tone-dropped demonstrative follows L-toned 1Sg possessor mà, as in girîn mà \[\text{yɔ̀:}\] ‘that house of mine’, (132b) in §6.2.3. A second reason is that H-tone movement rules at word boundaries in languages of this zone (e.g. Songhay) generally work left-to-right and generally take the form of spreading rather than displacement, e.g. HLL becomes HHL, not LHL.

I show in §6.2.3 that all pronominal possessors, postnominal 1Sg mà as well as the various preposed possessors, are optionally restructured as postnominal possessors of the form [Pron \[\text{kè}\]], when this is licensed by a postnominal modifier (adjective or numeral). If the last postnominal modifier preceding any such postnominal possessor is a numeral, we get an \{L\}+H overlay on the string including the noun and numeral; see the following section for this type of overlay.

The postposed possessor does not control tones when the final postnominal modifier is an adjective instead of a numeral. In this case, the possessor has no effect on the internal tonosyntax of the N-Adj combination. The schema is therefore [[N^h Adj] Poss], where the adjective is tonally free, but (as usual) controls \{L\} on the noun. See (133a-b) in §6.2.3 for examples involving adjectives gàrá ‘big’ and kélú ‘cold’.

Since the postnominal possessor is a controller in [N (Adj)]^L Num^L+H Poss] but not in [[N^L Adj] Poss], I identify the numeral as a catalyst that allows the otherwise dormant possessor to control tones on the possessed NP.

(31) Numeral as catalyst for postnominal possessor

The presence of an immediately preceding numeral allows a following postnominal pronominal possessor, whether 1Sg mà or any [Pron \[\text{kè}\]] combination, to target the numeral itself and any preceding words in the NP (noun, adjective).

The notion of catalyst implies that a) the postnominal possessor has a natural tendency to function as tonosyntactic controller, but b) it is prevented from doing so in other contexts. (a) is reasonable, since preposed possessors do control tone overlays on following possessed NPs, and more generally because tonosyntactic control is correlated with reference restriction.
All possessors, regardless of linear position, are reference restrictors. (b) is reasonable since postnominal possessors, unlike preposed possessors, was originally appositional: X [Pron ₁₉] meant “X, Pron’s thing.” Appositionally juxtaposed elements are not tightly linked prosodically, so there could have been no tonosyntactic interaction between them. As they gradually become more tightly linked, the latent, semantically-grounded tendency for [Pron ₁₉] to control tone overlays on the preceding words only needed a catalyst to be activated.

The question remains as to why numerals, but not adjectives, became capable of catalysing the tonosyntactic power of postnominal possessors. The existence of a similar {L}+H overlay, with numerals as catalysts, in Donno So and Toro So indicates that this overlay developed long ago, and probably first in N-(Adj-)Num-Dem combinations, later spreading to N-(Adj-)Num-Poss combinations. If the unmarked linear order at that time was adjective before numeral, an {L}+H overlay with the final H just before the demonstrative would have been primarily associated with numerals, not adjectives, and could have generalized from there.

However, how current native speakers “understand” these tonosyntactic constructions is unclear.

3.7.3.7 {L}+H overlay on numeral-final string

When any NP ending in a numeral is successfully targeted by a following controller, the resulting overlay is {L} throughout the target domain, except for a single H-tone that appears on the final syllable of the adjective or numeral. This {L}+H overlay is a constructional tonosyntactic pattern that cannot be modeled compositionally, i.e. by applying any set of one-on-one controller-target formulae in any order or subject to any reasonable hierarchical constraints. Not only is the {L}+H overlay sui generis, some elements that can (jointly) control it do not show tonosyntactic control power elsewhere. This is the case with universal (‘all’) quantifiers, see (154c) in §6.6.1, and with postposed pronominal possessors.

Examples involving a numeral and a possessor are in (32). Because the numeral also licenses optional restructuring of all pronominal possessives into a type ending in [Pron ₁₉], there are two alternative ways to express any phrase like ‘my six houses’ (32a-b) or ‘your-Sg six houses’ (32c-d). Whenever a postnominal possessor (1Sg mà, or any [Pron ₁₉] combination) follows a numeral (32a-b,d), the entire phrase is subject to {L}+H, with just a final-syllable H-tone. If the possessor would normally begin with an H-tone, it is tone-dropped, e.g. ú₉ kë ‘your(s)’ becoming ë₉/ù₉ kë in (32d). When the possessor precedes the noun (always possible except for 1Sg possessor), we get the usual possessor-controlled overlay, with {H} or {HL} on the noun depending on its weight (mora count), and with {L} on any following words (32c).

(32) a. [girⁿⁱ  kùrë:]₁⁻⁻[H]  [fⁿⁱ  kë]  
    [house six]₁⁻⁻[1SgPoss Poss]  ‘my six houses’ (restructured)

b. [girⁿⁱ  kùrë:]₁⁻⁻[H]  mà  
    [house six]₁⁻⁻  1SgPoss  
    (= (a)) (unrestructured)

c. ú  [H] [girⁿⁱ  kùrë:]  
    2SgPoss [HL] [house six]  ‘your-Sg six houses’ (unrestructured)
We also observe the \{L\}+H overlay when a demonstrative follows a numeral (with or without a possessor) (33a-b), or when a demonstrative follows a possessed NP ending in an adjective (33c). The demonstrative itself undergoes Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering (§3.7.3.5 above). This combination of \{L\}+H overlay plus Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering occurs when the demonstrative is not followed by plural nà. When this plural morpheme is present, the output is (non-tone-dropped) yɔ́: nà and the final H-tone on the numeral is absent; see (144a-b) in §6.4.2. In (33a), where there is also a preposed possessor, the sequence N-Adj-Num is targeted by both the possessor and the demonstrative, at its left and right edges, respectively. In particular, in (33a) ‘house’ has the \{H\} overlay controlled by the possessor, ‘six’ has the \{L\}+H overlay controlled by the demonstrative, and the intervening \{L\}-toned adjective ‘big’ could be analysed as part of either the \{HL\} overlay controlled by the possessor (on a multi-word target) or the \{L\}+H controlled by the demonstrative. In effect, ‘big’ is doubly condemned to drop its tones.

More subtly, the \{L\}+H overlay occurs when the definite marker is added. However, the definite marker in question is itself just a final tone element L, so the combination ends up as \{L\}+H+L, realized syllabically as L.(L…)\{HL\} with a final falling tone. See (58) in §4.4.1.1 and discussion there.

The semantic aspect of the analysis is clouded by the fact that the universal quantifier sâ:ⁿ ‘all’ also controls the \{L\}+H overlay on a preceding numeral-final sequence, but sâ:ⁿ does not drop its own tones; see (29a) above. This is a TgK innovation, to judge by the fact that, in Donno So, only determiners (not ‘all’) control the \{L\}+H overlay. In TgK, \{L\}+H is no longer strictly associated with determiners. It may be in the process of generalizing to NPs of the formal type N-…-Num-X, where X is not tightly restricted semantically. The diachronic catalyst for the generalization to ‘all’ may have been the tonal definite (floating L-tone), which is covert (inaudible) after a rising tone, facilitating reanalysis.

Under limited conditions, the \{L\}+H overlay can occur on a numeral-final string with a possessor in the form [X kè] that appears before rather than after this string. [X kè] form is typical of restructured possessed NPs, arguably derived transformationally from underlying regular possessed NPs with postnominal pronominal possessor. The restructuring occurs when the possessum is the head of a relative, but it also happens in main clauses when the possessor is a reflexive (pro-)noun, see [sâⁿ L-kè] [ù̃rⁿ: lɔ́y] \{L\}+H ‘Seydou saw his own two children’ (644b) in §18.1.3.1. The explanation for this is that a preposed [X kè] possessor
does not control the usual {H} or {HL} overlay on the possessum, so the {L}+H overlay applies to the numeral-final string, as though it were followed by a determiner or postposed possessor.

The facts can be summarized as (34).

(34) Constructional tonosyntax of numeral-final strings
   a) a string ending in a numeral (Num, N-Num, N-Adj-Num) is subject to an {L}+H overlay when followed directly by a possessor, by an unpluralized demonstrative, by the tonal definite, or by sâ:"all", or when preceded by an [X kê] possessor and not subject to any other tone overlay;
   b) if the {L}+H overlay is applied, a post-numeral possessor or (unpluralized) demonstrative, but not sâ:"all", drops its own tones if not already L-toned (like 1Sg mà);
   c) in the sequence Poss-N-(Adj-)Num-Dem, the {L}+H overlay controlled by the (unpluralized) demonstrative combines with the {H} or {HL} overlay controlled by the preposed possessor, so the noun is targeted by the possessor, the numeral is targeted by the demonstrative, and an adjective (if present) is ambiguously or doubly targeted.

For the interaction of {L}+H with Adjective-Numeral Inversion, see also §6.4.2.

The combination of tone-dropping of the pronominal possessor and the appearance of a final H-tone on the otherwise {L}-toned numeral-final string could appear to reflect the simple phonological jumping of the H-tone onto the right edge of the preceding word, e.g. /...kùrè: yð/: becoming ...kùrè: yð: in (33a) above. This is very likely the diachronic source of the {L}+H pattern, but it does not work synchronically. Specifically, 1Sg postposed possessor mà is always L-toned, but it controls the same {L}+H pattern on preceding numeral-final strings as do H-toned possessors, as seen in (32b) above.

3.7.4 Low-level tone rules

3.7.4.1 Contour-Tone Mora-Addition

This process does not occur in TgK, where vowels are not lengthened to accommodate contour tones. There are many Ĉ stems with short vowels and <LH> tone; see §3.7.1-2. A functional element of this shape is reflexive object sâ" (§18.1.1). It is harder to find Ĉ stems, but this is only because {HL}-toned stems of any length are generally disallowed among verbs, common nouns, and adjectives. There is one Ĉ verb (jë ‘take away’), and some functional elements like plural-subject perfective suffix -së" (§10.2.1.1), recent perfect jë (§10.2.1.3), and postpositions kû" ‘on’, kâ" ‘at the edge of’, and bû" ‘beside’ (§8.2.3-4,7).

3.7.4.2 Contour-Tone Stretching

This rule, more visible in other Dogon languages such as Jamsay, takes inputs of the shape Ĉ or Ĉ plus an atonal suffixed or encliticized -C (a sonorant), and stretches the arc of the contour tone so that the terminal rise or fall is mainly heard on the final sonorant. In TgK most final sonorants have been lost, either in stems or including consonantal suffixes and clitics. So there is not much need for this rule.
However, the (atal) ‘it is’ clitic allomorph \(=y\) can be added to a monosyllabic noun with \(<\text{LH}>\) tone, e.g. \(k\tilde{a}^n\) ‘daba (hoe)’. I write the result as \(k\tilde{a}^n=y^n\) for purposes of structural clarity, but a phonetically more accurate transcription would be \(k\tilde{a}^n\equiv y^n\), with the arc of the \(<\text{LH}>\) tone spread out over the syllable.

3.7.4.3 Rightward H-Spreading

The spreading of an H-tone element to subsequent syllables, erasing or displacing prior L-tones, is not a common process in TgK. For example, the \{HL\} overlay on heavy nouns controlled by a preceding possessor is realized as H.L.L on a trisyllabic noun and as H.L.L on a heavy bisyllabic noun, and remains so even when the noun is followed by an \{L\}-toned postposition. Thus noun \(\text{sí:n}\) ‘knife’, \{HL\} possessed form \(\text{HL}^{\text{L}}\text{sí:n}\) in e.g. \(\text{ém}^{\text{HL}}\text{é}^{\text{HL}}\text{sí:n}\) ‘our knife’, and no further tonal change in PP \([\text{ém}^{\text{HL}}\text{sí:n}]\text{bè}\) ‘with our knife’.

There is some apparent H-tone spreading in phonologically similar environments in relative clauses, where a verb that otherwise ends in an H.L.L syllable sequence shifts this to H.H before a terminal element (usually L-toned) such as plural \(nà\). For example, imperfective relatives have L-toned suffix \(-jù\) (versus main-clause H-toned \(-jù\)), but the suffix goes back to \(-jù\) when followed by a terminal element: \(\text{nüù}^{\text{HL}}\text{gó}^{\text{HL}}\text{jù}\) ‘ruins’ in main clause, in relative clause \(\text{nüù}^{\text{HL}}\text{gó}^{\text{HL}}\text{jù}^{\text{HL}}\text{nà}\). This looks superficially like Rightward H-Spreading in other African languages, where H.L.L shifts to H.L.L as the H-tone pushes as far to the right as it can without eliminating the L-tone.

However, this phonological pattern is not matched elsewhere in TgK morphology, and I am dubious about positing a morphologically restricted rule of this type that would apply only to relative-clause predicates. TgK has a number of other constructions where a final H-toned syllable of a word drops to L-tone to indicate a grammatical category: the tonal locative of some nouns (§8.2.1), the tonal definite of many nouns and other non-verb stems (§4.4.1.1), and tonal topical nouns (§19.1.1). Since relative clauses in Dogon languages are semantically restrictive, a specific connection with the tonal definite is likely. In this interpretation, there is no Rightward H-Spreading process. Rather, the alternation involves presence versus absence of definite marking.

The postposition \(kù^{\text{HL}}\) ‘on’ or ‘over’ is related to the noun \(kù^{\text{HL}}\) ‘head’ (historically it may be a tonal locative). The 1Sg form is \(kù^{\text{HL}}\text{mà}\), identical to ‘my head’. Similarly \(\text{girè}^{\text{HL}}\) ‘in front of’ but \(\text{girè}^{\text{HL}}\text{mà}\) ‘in front of me’ and so forth for some other /HL/-toned postpositions. However, it may be that the 1Sg form is added, not to the /HL/-toned postposition, but to an /H/-toned noun related to the postposition (\(kù^{\text{HL}}\) ‘head’, \(\text{girè}^{\text{HL}}\) ‘front’). Evidence for this comes from the /HL/-toned postposition \(\text{dógò}^{\text{HL}}\) ‘behind’, whose 1Sg form \(\text{dógò}^{\text{HL}}\text{mà}\) has the /LH/ melody of the related noun \(\text{dógò}^{\text{HL}}\) ‘rear (area)’. So it may be that the relevant postpositions get their \{HL\} overlay only when following a (possessor-like) NP or pronoun, i.e. when final within a PP. Again, the evidence for positing Rightward H-Spreading is weak.

3.7.4.4 Stranded-Tone Re-Linking

A tone may be stranded due to the deletion of the vowel it was previously associated with. The processes that can strand a tone are Apocope and Syncope (vowel-deletion rules affecting short high vowels in some medial and some final positions), and \(\text{rv}-\)Deletion which deletes the second syllable of some \(\text{CvCv}\) stems (mostly verbs) before a suffix.

The stranded tone re-links to the left. When the tone of the deleted vowel is identical to that of the preceding syllable, no audible change occurs. For example, from \(\text{pó}^{\text{HL}}\text{ri}^{\text{LH}}\) ‘say’ we
expect imperfective póró-ju, but since this stem is subject to rv-Deletion the actual result is pó-ju. We could laboriously derive this from /póró-ju/, becoming /póH-ju/ with H = unlinked H-tone, becoming pó-ju by merger of the first two H-tones. Or we could just take póró as having a single stem-level H-tonal autosegment, with no relocation required on the deletion of the second syllable. However, when the stem is /HL/-toned, as in gárá ‘pass’, the H-tone element does re-link to the left when the second syllable is deleted, resulting in an <LH> tone in e.g. imperfective gá-fú.

Similar examples involving Apocope of a word-final /u/ are bare stem wáñ ‘shallow-fry’ from /wáñ/, and verbal noun diw-∅ ‘going up’ from /diw-ú/.

Syncope is less common in TgK, but in cases like imperative dán-gá ‘fix, make good’ from /dánú-gá/ we get the same leftward re-linking.

3.7.4.5 Nonfinal Contour-Tone Simplification (C flourish or CV to CV)

Nonfinal CV syllables within a word cannot carry a contour tone (except for initial-syllable <LH>, see below). In TgK the simplification is from either C flourish or CV to CV.

A CV.C word is occasionally followed by the ‘it is’ clitic (§11.2.1) in the form = i: This clitic is atonic, getting its tone in part by spreading from the left. It is difficult to find such combinations, given the absence of lexically /HL/-toned common nouns. However, an /HL/-toned postposition like bín ‘in’ can be followed by the clitic, in an abstract sense indicating the topic of discourse (not the location of a specific object). In (35b), we see that the /HL/ melody of bín is split, with the H-tone remaining on the postpositional vowel and the L-tone realized on the clitic. This is because bín = i: is initially (re-)syllabified as /bíni:/ . While the syllable bín can easily accomodate an {HL} overlay, a nonfinal CV syllable cannot, so the syllable simplifies its tone to H. There is no loss of lexical tone-melody information, since the clitic has acquired the L-tone part of /HL/ by spreading.

(35) a. gir'í bín ‘in the house’
   b. [gir'í bín] = i:   [house in]=it.is ‘in the house’
      ‘It is (i.e. we are talking about) in the house’

<LH> tones are allowed on initial syllables of nonmonosyllabic words, as in gá-ju cited in §3.7.4.4 above. So for <LH> tones the disallowed position is not “nonfinal” but “medial” (i.e. neither initial nor final).

A final <LH> tone on a short vowel is possible for a stem (other than a verb) in isolation (36a). Addition of a suffix and/or clitic to a noun may reposition the stem-final CV syllable as word-medial, which triggers a corrective tone change. The relevant combination is that with the ‘it is’ clitic, which (for certain nouns) is preceded by singular suffix -n. In (36b), /dògòni/ has been tonally reshaped as dògòni, with the disallowed medial CV syllable simplified from <LH> to H-tone.

(36) a. dògòna ‘Dogon person’
   b. nò: dògò-n = i:   Prox Dogon-Sg=it.is
      ‘(He/She) is a Dogon’
The tonal simplification does not apply to combinations involving plural bè or postpositions: dɔ̀gɔ̀ bè ‘Dogan people’, dùwɔ̀lè bè ‘with a mirror’.

Monosyllabic stems retain, though subtly, the full /LH/ melody in this construction: j3n ‘dye-er, member of dye-er caste’, j3-n = i: ‘(he/she) is a dye-er’. The initial L-tone segment is difficult to hear, but is (subtly) audible when an H-tone precedes, as in wò j3-n = i: ‘he/she is a dye-er’ with 3Sg subject wò. The difference between dɔ̀gɔ̀n and jɔ̀n is that shifting the <LH> tone to H-tone would completely erase the L-tone in the lexical melody in jɔ̀n, but not in dɔ̀gɔ̀n.

In cases where a Cvr̀ or Cvrⁿ verb stem with lexical /LH/ melody undergoes rv-Deletion before a suffix, the /LH/ tone is reconstituted on the surviving Cv syllable, as the delinked H-tone element joins the L-tone element to its left (see the previous section). For example, gàrá ‘pass, go past’ forms imperfective gǎ-ɲú. In this context, my assistant did normally articulate the <LH> tone, in spite of the phonetic difficulty in doing so. Again, the simplification of <LH> tone to H fails to apply when it would totally erase part of the lexical melody.

There are also a few (underlyingly) nonmonosyllabic verbs like gùŋ (for /gùŋù/) ‘take out, remove’, an archaic causative of gǒ: ‘go out’, that retain the <LH> tone on the first syllable. An example is imperfective gùŋjì-ɲú.

3.7.4.6 Downstep (H 4H)

In TgK, downstep (symbol 4 before the affected word) is not the result of compressing underlying HLH into H4H, as in some other languages of the area. It is used opportunistically to differentiate the pitches of two adjacent {H}-toned words, and it helps mark certain constructions. In both respects, it facilitates the listener’s parsing of the speech signal. However, it is unclear whether downstep is a full-fledged phonological phenomenon in TgK.

Phonetically, a downstepped H-tone is a mid tone. The phonation type is the same as for a normal H-tone, so it still sounds like singing, unlike the case with L-tones. A downstepped bisyllabic 4HH has level pitch; the entire stem is lowered. A subsequent {H}-toned word or particle, as in H 4HH H, can revert to a higher pitch level.

Downstep is most conspicuous when the two words in question are lexical stems (nouns, adjectives, verbs). It is less common, or less conspicuous, when one of the elements is a monosyllabic functional element (pronoun, particle, etc.). Downstep is of particular importance in connection with the constructions in (37), though it applies to other combinations of {H}-toned words.

(37) a. bahuvrihi compound
   b. possessor plus possessed noun

In the most common subtype of bahuvrihi (“Blackbeard”) compound, the initial is a noun with its lexical tones (i.e. usually /H/ or /LH/), and the final is an adjective with {H} overlay (§5.2.1.1). The tables are perfectly set for downstep. Consider the four-way tonal opposition in (38); the bahuvrihi is (38d).

(38) a. gɪrɛ má
    eye ReflPoss
    ‘(one’s) own eye’ (as in ‘He sold his own eye’)
In (38a), the /LH/-toned noun ‘eye’ is followed by an H-toned monosyllabic functional morpheme, which is unaffected by downstep. The result is L.H-H. In (38b), the same noun is followed by an L-toned 1Sg possessor morpheme, resulting in L.H-L. In (38c), the noun drops tones before the adjective, which happens to be <LH>-toned, so L.L.<LH>. The bahuvrihi in (38d) uses the same lexical stems as in (38c), but changes the tones to L.H-H, which becomes L.H-<H> by downstep.

Nouns preceded by a possessor are subject to a possessor-controlled overlay, which is \{H\} for prosodically light stems (one or two vocalic moras) and \{HL\} for heavy stems (three or more moras), except for two nouns that exceptionally become \{L\}-toned. Since common nouns and adjectives end in an H-tone, there are abundant opportunities for downstep. It is most consistent when the possessed noun has the \{H\} overlay and is preceded by an H-final nonpronominal possessor (39a). Downstepping may occur after an H-toned pronominal possessor, but it is not consistent (39b). Downstepping is not regular on a heavy possessed noun that carries the \{HL\} possessor-controlled overlay (39c). It is also not usual when an otherwise \{H\}-toned stem (39a) adds a local L-tone at the right margin (to mark definiteness or location) (39d).

These data suggest that downstep is not a fully grammaticalized process of the sort typically considered to be tonosyntax. Were it systematic, we would expect double downstep in recursive (stacked) possessives, as the higher of two downstepped possessed nouns resets the pitch ceiling against which the pitch of the lower possessed noun is calculated, resulting in a descending arpeggio. What actually happens is that downstep is preferentially realized on the
last possessed noun in the string. So ‘uncle’ is clearly downstepped in (40a), spoken in isolation, but not in (40b), where the downstep is reserved for the following possessed noun (‘house’).

(40) a. sè:dú ɪH nípí
S ɪH uncle
‘Seydou’s maternal uncle’

b. [sè:dú ɪH nípí] ɪH gírɛ́í
[S ɪH uncle] ɪH house
‘Seydou’s uncle’s house’

When the higher possessed noun is heavy and therefore has {HL} overlay (described in the next section below), or when the higher possessed NP otherwise ends in an L-tone (NP ending in plural bè), the lower possessed noun is still downstepped in comparison to the earlier H-tone. Example: ú ɪH ínà: ‘your-Sg mother’ (from ínà: ‘mother’), [ú ɪH ínà:] ɪH nípí ‘your-Sg mother’s maternal uncle’. The pitch of the downstepped H-toned ɪH nípí is higher than that of the L-toned preceding syllable. The pitch of ɪH nípí is also higher than that of a following L-tone (41a), and lower than that of a following H-tone (41b). The phonetic transcriptions use the mid-tone diacritic [x̄] to represent the intermediate pitch of the downstepped H.

(41) a. [[ú ɪH ínà:] ɪH nípí] bàɡ-ɛ́
[2SgPoss ɪH mother] ɪH uncle] fall-Pfv
‘Your-Sg mother’s maternal uncle saw me.’
(phonetic [úìnà:nīpibàgɛ́])

b. [[ú ɪH ínà:] ɪH nípí] má Lɛ̀-ɛ́
[2SgPoss ɪH mother] ɪH uncle] 1SgObj 1S see-Pfv
‘Your-Sg mother’s maternal uncle saw me.’
(phonetic [úìnà:nǐnǐmɛ̀ɛ̀])

It is not always possible to hear a downstepped H-tone, in either an {H}- or an {HL}-toned word, after an L-tone, as with ‘uncle’ in (41a-b). In recorded texts, the downstepped word sometimes sounds {L}-toned to my ear. However, in more deliberate speech it is clear that the downstepped H (with its “sung” phonation) is distinct from L-tone even in this context.

Another kind of downstep, akin to clause-level downdrift, is seen with sàn. This morpheme occurs after the verb in perfective subject relatives, and is therefore usually at the end of a full clause. The H-tone is clear after /H/-toned verbs, but when sàn follows a verb that has the L-toned -ɛ́: extension, I hear the combination as -ɛ́: sàn when it is not closely followed by another element. However, the H-tone reappears (-ɛ́: sàn) when such an element is present, as in plural-subject -ɛ́: sàn nà (§14.1.9.1).

3.8 Intonation contours

3.8.1 Phrase and clause-final terminal contours (→)

Like other Dogon languages, speakers of TgK make extensive use of pitch and duration modifications on the final syllable of clauses and other intonation groups. This is most typical
on the nonfinal clause (or other constituent) in a parallelistic sequence. Prolongation of the final syllable (represented by $\rightarrow$) is particularly common in narrative and in the more enthusiastic segments of conversation.

Morphemes that are often (but not obligatorily) prolonged in this way include bè ‘and’ used in serial conjunctions, as in open-ended lists (§7.1.3), mà yes-no question particle (§13.2.1.1) or disjunctive ‘or’ §7.2.1), and imperfective -jô; the form used in parallel imperfective constructions (§10.2.2.3). fû ‘all’ is usually prolonged.

3.8.2 Clause-final tone-dropping of predicates (downdrift, defocalization)

Verbs and other predicates tend to drop to {L} tones, or at least to a pitch level otherwise typical of {L}-toned words, when preceded by other constituents (other than just pronominal clitics). This is a reflection of the natural downdrift of pitch over an intonation group, favored by the defocalization of the predicate when preceded by other overt constituents. This tone-dropping is not obligatory, and is often blocked when a particle follows the verb or other main predicate.

In texts, I have transcribed such words as {L}-toned when I hear no H-toned syllables. However, it is possible that the “tone-dropping” in this case is not complete, and that subtle distinctions in pitch or even phonation can alert native listeners to phonological tone. The basic point is that tone distinctions are greatly weakened at the end of a normal clause.

Details will be given in the chapters on verbs and other predicates.

3.8.3 Adverbs and particles with lexically specified prolongation ($\rightarrow$)

Intonational prolongation of the final syllable is baked into certain adverbial and grammatical lexical items.

This includes expressive adverbials such as déw$n$ ‘straight’ and déy$n$ ‘separate, apart, distinct’. In these two cases, the final semivowel is prolonged. Many expressive adverbials are presented in §8.4.6.

Adjectives can be made into expressive adverbials by prolonging a final vowel, sometimes alongside a segmental change. This is typical of adjectival predicates (§11.4.1.2).

3.8.4 Dying-quail intonational effect $\therefore$

Both conjuncts (‘X and Y’), or just the first, in a conjoined NP are characterized by the dying-quail intonation, involving prolongation and (if ending on an H-tone) slow pitch decline. See §7.1.1 and §15.2.2.4.
4 Nominal, pronominal, and adjectival morphology

4.1 Nouns

4.1.1 Simple nouns and plural bè – mbè

There is no affixal marking of intrinsic nominal categories (human/animate versus inanimate, singular versus plural). A NP consisting of a bare noun stem can be interpreted as singular, or as indefinite plural. A (specific) plural is expressed by a particle bè, sometimes heard as mbè after a nasal syllable. Prost writes this as “be” alternating with “we”. Homophones of plural bè are conjunction particle bè which follows each conjoined NP (§7.1.3) and instrumental-comitative postposition bè (§8.1.2).

(42) gloss unmarked (specific) plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(42)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>‘sheep’</td>
<td>péjú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘dog’</td>
<td>isí</td>
<td>isí bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘snake’</td>
<td>lúːró</td>
<td>lúːró bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘thing’</td>
<td>ḥjó</td>
<td>ḥjó bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>‘man’</td>
<td>ìr“á</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘woman’</td>
<td>jè</td>
<td>jè bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘blacksmith’</td>
<td>jèmè</td>
<td>jèmè bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘house’</td>
<td>giri‘í</td>
<td>giri‘í bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘person’</td>
<td>ná</td>
<td>ná bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘cow’</td>
<td>náŋá</td>
<td>náŋá bè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>‘Dogon person’</td>
<td>dòg³ⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Fulbe person’</td>
<td>pùléːⁿ</td>
<td>pùléːⁿ bè</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although there is no synchronic suffixation for number or human/animate category, there are many nouns with human reference that end in a nasalized vowel that probably reflects an original suffix, compare Jamsay singular -n and plural -m for ordinary human nouns (except kin terms). In addition to ‘Dogon person’ and ‘Fulbe person’ in (42c) above, further examples are gúrîn ‘Gourou person’, téleⁿ ‘Tellem person’, and séːgíp ‘Segem person (carpenter caste)’. The nasalization can no longer be easily segmented, and it is questionably audible in the presence of a preceding nasal, as with tèŋǐ (ⁿ) ‘Tengou person’. It is also subject to possible confusion with reduced forms of -íːⁿ ‘child’ as compound final (§5.1.7). See §3.4.2 for more examples and discussion.

A vestigial human singular suffix -n does survive when followed by the ‘it is’ clitic, see (315) in §11.2.1.1. However, it is optional, has no obvious function, it seems to function somewhat as a linker, and it has spread to some other combinations involving the ‘it is’ clitic, for example pùŋ-n = iː ‘it is how?’ (417c) in §13.2.6. Another, indirect vestige of nasal suffixes is the synchronically opaque n/y alternation in ‘woman’ and related forms (§4.1.2, §5.1.8). The difference between jè ‘woman’ as simple noun, and the variant yè in some compounds and other constructions, makes sense diachronically only if the noun is assumed
to have formerly ended in a nasal suffix. Compare Jamsay noun \( pɛ-n \) ‘woman’ and compound initial \( yà \). The diachronic evolution of ‘woman’ was something like \( *yɛ-nù → *y^{\text{b}}ɛ-nù \) (backward nasalization-spread ing, cf. Toro Tegu \( y^{\text{n}}à-r^{\text{n}}ù \) → \( pɛ-n \) (as in Jamsay) → \( pɛ \) (TgK).

As noted in §3.4.1, short-voweled \( Cv \) and long-voweled \( Cv \); are clearly distinguished in TgK noun stems. \( Cv \) noun stems are quite numerous, and include some original verbal nouns of the type that appears as \( C^{\text{f}}_\text{e} \)-\( y \) in e.g. Jamsay.

Some kin terms still show alternations including a form with final nasalized \( é:\text{n} \). With ‘(man’s) sister’, for example, my assistant (inconsistently) replaced the post-possession form \( lárà \) with \( lár\text{è}:n \) in the plural, see ‘Seydou’s sisters’ in (43c).

(43) ‘(man’s) sister’

a. unpossessed

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{lárà} & \quad \text{‘a sister’} \\
\text{lárà} & \quad \text{‘sisters’}
\end{align*} \]

b. with 1Sg possessor (postposed)

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{lárà mà} & \quad \text{‘my sister’} \\
\text{lárà mà bè} & \quad \text{‘my sisters’}
\end{align*} \]

c. with preposed possessor

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{sè:dú} & \quad \text{‘Seydou’s sister’} \\
\text{sè:dú} & \quad \text{‘Seydou’s sisters’} \\
\text{sè:dú} & \quad \text{‘my sister’} \\
\text{sè:dú} & \quad \text{‘my sisters’}
\end{align*} \]

With \( é\text{g} \) ‘husband’, on the other hand, nasalized \( H\text{êg}:n \) is the regular post-possession form, singular as well as plural: \( wô \) \( H\text{êg}:n \) ‘her husband’, compare \( é\text{g} \) \( mà \) ‘my husband’ with postposed possessor.

4.1.2 Irregular nouns (‘woman’, ‘child’, ‘person’, ‘thing’)

‘Woman’ (\( npɛ \), ‘man’ (\( àr\text{ⁿ}à \), ‘thing’ (\( ñ\text{j}ð \), and ‘person’ (\( nân \), see the preceding section), present no synchronic irregularities as nouns. However, ‘child’ along with its human derivatives has a suppletive plural form.

(44) gloss singular plural

\[ \begin{align*}
a. \quad \text{‘child’} & \quad i:\text{n} & \quad ùr\text{n}:y \\
b. \quad \text{‘boy’} & \quad àr\text{n}à-y:n & \quad àr\text{n}à-1-ùr\text{n}:ù (bè) \\
\text{‘girl’} & \quad pê-y:n & \quad pê-2-ùr\text{n}:ù (bè)
\end{align*} \]

Singular ‘child’ \( i:\text{n} \) is distinguished by vowel length from the 1Sg pronoun \( ì\text{n} \). ‘Child’ is desyllabified to \( -y:n \) in (44b). In other compounds, \( i:\text{n} \) is sometimes pronounced in unreduced form, and sometimes contracts with a stem-final vowel (§5.1.7, below).

\( npɛ \) ‘woman’ shows the effect of diachronic backward nasalization-spread ing from original suffixed forms (cf. Jamsay singular \( npɛ-n \) ‘woman’, plural \( npɛ-m \)), compare \( yɛ \) as compound initial (§5.1.8). Another case of \( *y \rightarrow \_n \) before another nasal is \( pà-má \) ‘let’s go!’ (285a) in §10.6.2.1, hortative of \( yɛ \) ‘go’.
4.1.3 ‘So-and-so’ (àmá:n)

àmá:n ‘is used as a variable over personal names in generalized contexts, cf. English *So-and-so*, French *un tel*, Arabic *fulaan*-, and the like. For the possibility of segmenting it as *à-má:n*, see §4.1.7 below.

4.1.4 Initial Cv- reduplication in nouns

A number of nouns (and adverbs) appear to have an initial Cv- reduplication, with both the consonant and the vowel quality (and, usually, tone) copied from the stem. The vowel of the reduplicant is short, even when based on a long vowel in the stem. In the great majority of cases, the stem does not occur elsewhere (to my knowledge) in unreduplicated form, so the segmentability of the reduplicant is not transparent.

In a couple of examples, there is in fact language-internal evidence for segmenting the reduplicant. For nù-nùŋ́ú ‘sun’, the comparison is with nùŋ́u ná: ‘daybreak’. For pú-púgɔ́ ‘out of shape(adj)’, the related verb pú:gù ‘get out of shape’ hints at segmentability. For dù-dùgíⁿ ‘sorceror’, the comparison is with verb dùgó and its cognate nominal dúgó, which co-occur in the combination dúgó dúgó ‘cast spells’. Tones are commented on below.

(45) Cv-reduplicated nouns (except CvCv)

a. noun stems

H-toned reduplicant and /H/-toned base

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Costring</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gó-góró</td>
<td>‘padlock’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gú-gúrú</td>
<td>‘grass, herbaceous plants’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kí-kíjí</td>
<td>‘grain spike’ (usually a compound final)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wó-wórdó</td>
<td>‘outhouse for bathing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pé-péréé</td>
<td>‘air, breeze’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nŋ-nŋrⁿí</td>
<td>‘scar(n)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

L-toned reduplicant and /LH/-toned base

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Costring</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kò-kò:</td>
<td>‘scale (of fish)’; ‘tree bark’ (Jamsay kì-kòw)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kò-kò:</td>
<td>‘scab’; ‘slough(n)’ (Jamsay kògò)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ü-ügò:</td>
<td>‘steam; hot weather’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nè-nèné:</td>
<td>‘groin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kà-kàrá:</td>
<td>‘armpit’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dè-dègú:</td>
<td>‘patience’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù-gùjú:</td>
<td>‘giant pouched rat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kò-kòjú:</td>
<td>‘viper’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tò-tòjú:</td>
<td>‘calf (of leg)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bò-bòrú:</td>
<td>‘sediments (in liquid)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kì-kìjé:</td>
<td>‘edible winged termite’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kà-kálà:</td>
<td>‘secrecy, stealth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kà-kàró:</td>
<td>‘noisy bastard sp.’ (onomatopoeic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sù-sùlé:</td>
<td>‘branch used as whip’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nò-nòrⁿí</td>
<td>‘spider’s web’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tò-tùːrí:</td>
<td>‘young man’s horn’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
as above, with nasalized vowel in reduplicant

sáⁿ-sǎn̄ ‘sand’
tóⁿ-tó̌r̄é ‘bell’
kéⁿ-ké̌r̄é ‘courser (bird)’

L-toned reduplicant and /H/-toned base

dè-dé: ‘father’ (dialectal variant dè-dè̌)
bà-bá: ‘grandfather’
nà-ná: ‘grandmother’
tè-tè: ‘kite (hawk)’
tò-tó: ‘tin can’, ‘jewelry box’
kè-ké: ‘craziness’
kè-ké: ‘beetle’
tà-tàgá ‘joking, kidding’
ki-kíjí ‘bat (mammal)’
kù-kúmó ‘smoke’
tò-tó̌gú ‘gecko’
pi-pí̌f ‘butterfly’
tó-tó: ‘errand, mission’

as above, with nasalized vowel in reduplicant

kéⁿ-kéw̄é ‘mosquito’
góⁿ-gó̌r̄ó ‘honey ant (Camponotus)’

H-toned reduplicant, L-toned onset of base

base is {L}
té-tèrè: ‘miracle’
tè̌-tè̌n̄è ‘zorilla (mammal)’, variant of tè̌n̄è

b. nominal compound initials and finals

H-toned reduplicant and /H/-toned base

lú:ró¹-[kú-kúr̄ú] ‘puff adder’ (lú:ró ‘snake’)

L-toned reduplicant and /LH/-toned base

kèn̄e¹-[là-làgá] ‘spleen’ (cf. kèn̄e ‘heart/liver’)
núm³-[sà-sàgá] ‘small bracelet’ (“hand-jewel”)

L-toned reduplicant and /H/-toned base

mo³-[kà-kàr̄ú] ‘loud laughter’ (“laugh-[onomatopoeia]”)
núm³-[tò-tó̌gú] ‘elbow’ (“hand-…”)
kà-[tò-tó̌gó] ‘praying mantis’ (“grasshopper …”)
pùnàyi³-[sà-sàr̄ú] ‘flour that sticks to mortar’ (“flour-…”)

compound initial (tones dropped)

àrùkó¹-[pè-pèr̄ú]³-jà ‘type of boubou (robe)’
[di-dí]¹-kè-dú ‘tickling (n)’

compound final (tones dropped)

d̄:gú ‘pó-pó̌rò ‘outbreak of watery sores’ (“sweat …”)

H-toned reduplicant and /H/-toned base

w̄t-w̄r̄ú ‘fast (in action)’

L-toned reduplicant and /H/-toned base

pò-pò̌ ‘innocent’
jò-jò̌ ‘much, many’
d. other stem-class

\[\text{kà:ná sà-sày} \quad \text{‘right now’ (kà:ná ‘now’)}\]

In the list above, two further phonological points arise. First, when the stem begins with a vowel, the reduplicant is limited to a copy of this vowel, the two being separated by a hiatus-marking phonetic glottal stop: \[\text{ù-ùgù} \quad \text{‘steam’}\].

Secondly, when the stem is of the type \(TvNv\) with an initial nonnasal consonant \(T\) and a medial nasal consonant \(N\), the vowel of the reduplicant is nasalized in some cases, resulting in \(Tv^nTvNv\). Nasalization was heard in \(s\,s\,\text{sǎn} \quad \text{‘sand’}, \ t\,\text{tərɛ̃} \quad \text{‘bell’}, \ g\,\text{ɡɛ̃} \quad \text{‘honey ant’}, \ k\,\text{kɛwɛ̃} \quad \text{‘mosquito’}, \) and \(k\,\text{kɛ̀ɛ̃} \quad \text{‘courser’}. However, \(k\,\text{kùmō} \quad \text{‘smoke’} \) was heard without reduplicant nasalization. Based on this fragmentary information, it is possible that labial \(m\) behaves differently from coronal nasals in this respect.

Of the nouns in (45) above, \(\text{tɛ̀-tɛrɛ} \quad \text{‘miracle’} \) has the most puzzling tonal pattern. Cognates (e.g. Jamsay and Najamba \(\text{tɛ̀-tɛrɛ}, \) Yanda-Dom \(\text{tɛ̀-tɛrɛ}\)) suggest an unreduplicated protoform like \(\text{*tɛ̀(\cdot)ɛ́-tɛrɛ.} \) It is possible that TgK \(\text{tɛ̀-tɛrɛ}: \) reflects a fully iterated immediate protoform \(\text{*tɛ̀ɛ̀ɛ́ɛ́-tɛrɛ-ɛ́ɛ́-tɛ́}-tɛ́ɛ́ɛ́ɛ́}, \) with the second syllable lost by \(rv\)-Deletion (§3.5.3.2).

Reduplicated nouns consisting of two \(Cv\) syllables are problematic because it may be impossible to determine whether they represent \(Cv\)-reduplication or full-stem iteration (on which see below, §4.1.6). Indeed, since \(CvCv\) is the most basic stem-shape in the language, while short-voweled \(Cv\) is marginal, the \(CvCv\) cases could also be interpreted (by native speakers) as unsegmentable.

The \(CvCv\) stems that are candidates for reduplicative status are in (46).

\[
(46) \quad CvCv \ \text{reduplicated stems}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>possessed</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. L(\cdot)&lt;LH&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pù-\text{nù} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{pù-nù} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘cold weather’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yà-yà \quad \text{L} \quad \text{yá-yá} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{nà:} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘woman who has just given birth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound finals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pù\text{ŋ} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{ŋ}-jà-jà )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘fonio greens’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{tú} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{tú-tà} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘stone shelf’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. L(\cdot)H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b\text{bó} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{bó} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘Bobo (ethnicity)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n\text{hó} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{hó} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘Guinea worm’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g\text{gɛ́} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{gɛ́} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘jaundice’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pù\text{n} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{pù-nù} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘shrub (Calotropis)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m\text{ɛ̀-mɛ́} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{ɛ̀-mɛ́} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘ant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound final</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{ər} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{ŋ}-kɛ́ɛ́-n} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘ant sp. (Messor)’, cf. (\text{ər} ) ‘rain’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. H(\cdot)H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{tɛ̀} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{tɛ̀} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘arrogance’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n\text{ɛ̀} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{ɛ̀} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘person of low caste’; ‘latch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{tɛ̀} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{tɛ̀} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘bland-tasting, lightly sugared or salted’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jù-\text{jù} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{jù-jù} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘judge’ (French (juge))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jù,\text{ŋ}-jù \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{jù,\text{ŋ}-jù} )</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘mud-dauber wasp’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The most interesting feature in this list is the L-<LH> tone pattern of nù-nù ‘cold weather’ and similar forms, including the final in pògà ɔ̀-Ejà ‘fonio greens’. Such a tone pattern is unattested with unreduplicated bimoraic CvCv nouns, see (24) in §3.7.1.6. This suggests a reduplication, e.g. nù-nù, where the base -nù has an /LH/ melody that must be realized on its single mora, as with many unreduplicated monomoraic nouns like mè ‘gum arabic’ and dëⁿ ‘waterjar’. If this analysis is accepted, its conclusion might be extrapolated to the other cases.

As shown in §6.2.1, unsegmentable CvCv stems have an {H} overlay controlled by a preceding possessor. By contrast, morphologically composite stems beginning with Cv-Cv... or Cv Cv... have an {HL} overlay with the H-tone on the initial syllable. This suggests that the tone of possessed forms of arguably reduplicated CvCv stems might show how native speakers analyse these forms. This does not work for compound finals or for adjectives, which cannot occur at the left edge of the possessed noun, but it does work for simple nouns. As (46) indicates, we get an {HL} possessed-noun overlay for the two testable cases with L-<LH> pattern (‘cold weather’, ‘woman who has ...’), for the two testable nouns with final nasalized vowel (‘ant’, ‘mud-dauber wasp’), and for ‘judge’, but not for the other testable cases.

pìpàlá ‘square fan’ is a regional word, probably from Bambara (with f replaced by p), and does not fit the vocalism of the TgK Cv- reduplicative pattern.

4.1.5 Final reduplication in nouns

This pattern is not well represented in TgK, but I can cite kà: pògàrè-pò ‘grasshopper sp. (Oedaleus)’, with kà: ‘grasshopper’. There are final-reduplicated cognates of various forms denoting the same species in other Dogon languages.

kàŋkà: ‘louse’ may have originated as a noun with final reduplication (cf. Nanga kàrōŋ-kà). However, it is now probably segmented by native speakers, if at all, as {L}-toned compound initial form of kà ‘mouth’ plus kà: ‘grasshopper’.

For final multiple reduplications in expressive adverbials, as in dëʳ‘̃m‘m‘ ‘foul-smelling’, see (219) in §8.4.6.1 and cross-references there.

4.1.6 Nouns with full-stem iteration

A fair number of nouns have a frozen iterative form, i.e. with two parts that are more or less identical segmentally and metrically, aside from possible changes in vowel quality and/or tone. In some cases the base occurs elsewhere in simple form with a related but distinct sense. This full-iteration type is distinguishable from the Cv- reduplications discussed above (§4.1.4) when both base and reduplicant are at least bisyllabic, but the two converge and are indistinguishable in the case of C_v,C_v, nouns or compound finals such as sùⁿùⁿ and pàⁿ dëⁿ-dëⁿ in (47b).

(47) Fully iterated nouns (and compound elements)

a. no tonal or vocalic difference
   [none]

b. tonal difference but no vocalic difference
   {L} then {H}
   bòmbōⁿ 'candy' (French bombon)
sùⁿ’sùⁿ ‘worm, grub’
ò:òpòⁿ-pùⁿ’sùⁿ ‘whirlwind’ (with ò:òpó ‘wind’)
kùrsà-kùrsà ‘itchy skin disease’
yùgù-yùgù ‘used clothing market’ (regional word)
pùsù-púṣú ‘push-cart’ (French pousse-pousse)
wèrè-wèrè ‘swift (bird)’
gùdù-gùdó ‘wood-hoopoe (bird)’
{L} then {LH} ‘crack, gap’ (cf gán ‘between’)
{H} then {L} ‘lung(s)’
{H} then {L} {H} then {LH} ‘empty lot’ (with jà ‘ground’)

c. vocalic difference but no tonal difference
bírìgì-bárùgù ‘bric-à-brac’
pú:jù-pá:jù ‘lung(s)’
d. vocalic and tonal differences
{H} then {L} {H} then {L} ‘shoulderblade’
tígí-tàgù ‘mussel shell’
kírí-kòrò ‘type of boubou (robe)’
{L} then {H} {L} then {H} ‘dancers on stilts’
àrùkò-lyílè-yállá ‘hoopoe (bird)’

dìgù-mà-[díjè-dánjá] ‘hoopoe (bird)’

The vocalic differences, where they exist, involve the sequences i…a (bírìgì-bárùgù), i…o (kírí-kòrò), e…a (tèŋè-tàŋà), u…a(pú:jù-pá:jù), i/i…a/u (tígí-tàgù), and i/e…a/a (dìjè-dánjá)
The basic principle, as in English freezes based on nonsense syllables (ping-pong, riffraff), is that a perceptually light vowel quality on the left corresponds to a perceptually heavier vowel quality on the right, with perceived weight based primarily on the second formant as seen in spectrograms. i has the highest F2, while vowels in the u-o-a belt have low F2. See also the comments on occasional vowel symbolism in sets of related verbs (§3.4.7).

More questionable cases are gɔ̀njù-(g)ɔ́njù-nɔ́ ‘giant millipede’ where the u in the second syllable is difficult to account for, and the apparently reduplicated final in the bird name bùrgù-tùtí ‘coucal’, which could be onomatopoeic.

The frozen iterated stems in (47) above should be distinguished from look-alike agentive compounds, each consisting of an {L}-toned form of the cognate nominal plus the {H}-toned form of the verb stem, e.g. jìŋ₁-H jìŋé ‘protector’; see §5.1.5. However, the iterated stems with {L} then {H} tone in (47b,d) could possibly be interpreted by native speakers as frozen agentives, at least where the noun denotes a human agent of an activity, as with ‘dancers on stilts’.

kù:kùbù ‘machete blade’ (French coupe-coupe) has likely mutated from *kùbù-kùbù (cf. Jamsay kùbù-kùbù and similar quadrisyllabic counterparts in other Dogon languages) but is no longer transparently reduplicated.

Full iteration is also common in onomatopoeias (§8.4.7.1), in adjectival intensifiers, in other expressive adverbials, see (216) in §8.4.6.1, and in derived distributives especially from numerals (§8.4.7.2).
4.1.7 Frozen initial à- or àN- in nouns

As in some other Dogon languages, TgK has a number of nouns that arguably begin with a prefix-like element à- or àN- (with an underspecified nasal that assimilates to the position of a following consonant, or is heard as nasalization of the a). In some cases there is some actual evidence for segmentation, as when a word-family includes both prefixed and unprefixed forms. In other cases the segmentation is speculative. Even in the clearer cases, the function of the prefix cannot be determined.

The relevant forms are grouped together as (48), with brief comments about related forms.

(48) Prefix à- or àN-

a. word-family has forms with and without prefix
   à-tégú tégé ‘stand on tiptoes; (goat) stand on hind legs’ (cognate nominal plus verb)
   à-n-dágú dágá ‘fry large soft millet cakes’
   à-mámú mámá ‘bite one’s lower lip’
   bà:gaL à-gágú and bà:gaL gógú (containing bà:gaL ‘stick’; the terms denote two types of shepherd’s staff, each having a hooked or curved end, while à-gógú also has a fork for easy gripping at the other end)
   àŋ-gó:ní and gó:ní (two types of poles for knocking fruits off trees, àŋ-gó:ní having a metal hook at the end)
   àm-böŋú ‘hide-and-seek (game)’, obscurely related to báŋ ‘secret(adj)’ and related forms

b. other possible cases
   fauna terms
   àŋgùŋúrú ‘giant tortoise’
   ândá ‘tiny fly sp.’
   péléL-ásé:nú ‘namaqua dove (Oena)’, cf. pélé ‘dove’
   other cultural vocabulary
   àlégú ‘loincloth’
   àpálà (synonym àn-dágú) ‘meal with large, soft millet cakes’
   àtémú ‘customary rite’
   àtí ‘bird trap’
   àpà:ré ‘mechanism (of musket)’
   àjírí ‘traditional wrestling’
   other
   ân só:ŋó ‘bowlegged person’
   âségú ‘sneeze(n)’

Perhaps àmá:n ‘So-and-so’ (§4.1.3) belongs here. àn*sá:rá ‘white person’ does not, at least etymologically, as it derives from *ânàsá:rá by syncope. It is ultimately from the Arabic word for ‘Nazarene’.

It is not clear whether ñkúrú ‘mouse’, beginning with a (weakly) syllabic nasal (§3.3.8.1), is segmentable.
4.1.8 Vocatives of kin terms

A noun (especially a personal name or kin term), or a second person pronoun, can function as a vocative.

For ‘father’, the usual tone is dé-dé: (dialectally also dè-dè:) when not preceded by a possessor, and *HL dé-dé: with the regular {HL} tone overlay when preceded by a possessor. A special vocative pronunciation was observed: dè-dè: ‘hey father!’; with falling tone on the second syllable.

The other examples of this vocative tone pattern were similar reduplicative kin terms: bà-bà: ‘grandfather’ with vocative bà-bà:, and nà-ná: ‘grandmother’ with vocative nà-ná:.

‘Mother’ has no tonally distinctive vocative. inà: is both the unpossessed form of the noun and the vocative.

4.2 Derived nominals

4.2.1 Suffix -gú or -ní with {H} overlay

A handful of deverbal nominals have a suffix -gú and a stem-wide {H} overlay. The known examples are in (49). They form a fairly natural class semantically (transitions between presence/visibility and absence/invisibility).

(49) Suffix -gú

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>related verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. celestial bodies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nùmú-gú</td>
<td>‘sunset’</td>
<td>nùmó ‘(sun) set’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tǔmú-gú</td>
<td>‘(sun/moon)-rise’</td>
<td>tǔmó ‘(sun, moon) rise’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tőrú-gú</td>
<td>‘beginning’</td>
<td>tőró ‘begin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yá:-gú</td>
<td>‘going (departure)’</td>
<td>yě (yǎ:-) ‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yěrě-gú</td>
<td>‘coming (arrival)’</td>
<td>yěrě ‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gő:-gú</td>
<td>‘going out’</td>
<td>gō: ‘go out, exit’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This minor deverbal nominal is distinct tonally and semantically from the (nonhuman) characteristic derivative in -gú with {L}-toned stem (§4.2.3).

In the introduction to §5.1, a compound including the archaic nominal ní:-nì ‘eating’, from verb nì: ‘eat (meal)’, is mentioned. The relationship, if any, between this -nì and other nominalizations (such as that with -gú) is unclear.

4.2.2 Deadjectival extent nominals with reduplication and suffix -ná

A number of adjectives, notably those relating to measurable (scalar) spatiotemporal properties, have a nominal derivative with a suffix -ná following an {L}-toned form of the adjective (with final u in the case of two or three relevant bisyllabic stems) including an initial Cv- reduplication. The known forms are in (50).
Extent nominals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>related adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wà-wàgù-ná</td>
<td>‘distance’</td>
<td>wàgá ‘distant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wò-wòrù-ná</td>
<td>‘depth’</td>
<td>wòrò ‘deep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gù-gùrù-ná</td>
<td>‘length’</td>
<td>gùrù ‘long’ (also ‘tall’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wà-wà:ná</td>
<td>‘width; thickness’</td>
<td>wà: ‘wide, thick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tè-tèrè-ná</td>
<td>‘speed’</td>
<td>tèrè ‘speedy’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

tè-tèrè-ná ‘speed’ (and ‘speediness’) is unusual in not shifting the final stem-vowel to ū.

For ‘tallness, height’ I recorded an underived noun géné. It is at best distantly and obscurely related to the adjective gùrù, compare English stature or French taille.

4.2.3 Characteristic denominal derivative (\(-gú, -gi\) after \{L\} overlay)

In this derivation, which functions as a noun or adjective, a noun denoting a characteristic of certain objects or people, such as a personality trait or a medical condition, is followed by a suffix -gú (nonhuman) or -gi (human). The noun drops its tones. The construction is fairly productive. The characteristic derivatives gleaned from the working dictionary are in (51).

(51) Characteristic derivative

- a. nonhuman
  - bà:ga\(^L\)-kìr\(^L\)-gú ‘staff (bà:ga) with one forked end (kìr\(^L\))’
  - sìyè\(^L\)-gú ‘plump (animal)’, cf. sìyè ‘(animal) fat’

- b. human
  - bà:rè\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘left-handed person’ (unrelated to adjective for ‘left (hand/foot)’)
  - pànà\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘authority, government’, cf. pànà ‘power’
  - nùrù\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘sick person’, cf. nùrù ‘disease’
  - ò:rò\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘cripple, paraplegic’, cf. ò:rò ‘being crippled’
  - jòñò\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘leper’, cf. jòñò ‘leprosy’
  - nàm\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘impoverished person’, cf. verb nàm-gi ‘become poor’
  - bò:mò\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘idiot, stupid person’, cf. bò:mó ‘stupidity’
  - liwè\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘cowardly (person)’, cf. liwè ‘fear(n)’
  - wàlà\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘lazy’, cf. wàlà ‘laziness’
  - [àmà-sàgò]\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘pitable (person)’, cf. àmà ‘God’
  - kòí\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘glutton’, cf. kòí ‘intestine’
  - pùgà:rù\(^L\)-gi\(^m\) ‘poorly behaved (person)’ (pùgà:rù)

The (denominal) nonhuman characteristic \(-gú\) with an \{L\}-toned stem should be distinguished from a minor deverbal nominalization with \(-gú\) after an \{H\}-toned stem (§4.2.1).
4.2.4 Verbal nouns (-ũ ~ -í ~ -∅)

The productive verbal noun formation replaces the stem-final vowel of a nonmonosyllabic verb stem by -ũ, with the remainder of the verb stem {L}-toned. We get -í instead of -ũ when the preceding syllable has an i-vowel.

Monosyllabic stems instead have -∅, with <LH> tone on the stem vowel. The monosyllabic verbal noun Çv-∅ corresponds to the Jamsay type Çv-ŷ, reflecting the usual TgK loss of final semivowels.

The /u/ for nonmonosyllabics is usually deleted (apocopated) after an unclustered semivowel or nasal {w wⁿ y m n pŋ} in bimoraic ÇvÇv stems whose penult has a non-high vowel. Apocope is optional in Çùw-ũ, but it is hard to hear the difference between bisyllabic and apocopated monosyllabic in this case. When the /u/ is deleted, its H-tone is stranded, and re-links to the left (3.7.4.4), resulting in an <LH> tone on the surviving syllable. Where typographically possible, I write this with a separate acute accent on the sonorant, for example Çv-ñ-∅ rather than Çv-∅. This is not (mainly) for phonetic reasons, rather to to clarify the morphology by indicating that the H-tone has re-linked from the right. For I, the accented form Ĩ exists but creates problems of recognition and linespacing, so I write Çv-∅.

Mediopassive suffix -ě is reduced to -ĩ which may then be zeroed by apocope (52d).

(52) Verbal nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>verbal noun</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>ō-∅</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yě</td>
<td>yě-∅</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jě</td>
<td>jě-∅</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mlí</td>
<td>mlí-∅</td>
<td>‘eat meal’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gò:</td>
<td>gò-∅</td>
<td>‘go out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ká:n</td>
<td>ká:n-∅</td>
<td>‘shave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. nonmonosyllabic (without Apocope)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ÇíC-í from CiCv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sigé</td>
<td>sig-í</td>
<td>‘remain’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tǐŋé</td>
<td>tǐŋ-í</td>
<td>‘speak’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kígírí</td>
<td>kígír-í</td>
<td>‘go back’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ÇúC-ú from CuCv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>núŋó</td>
<td>núŋ-ú</td>
<td>‘sing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kúwó</td>
<td>kúw-ú</td>
<td>‘eat meat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~ kúw-∅</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ÇvC-ú from other CvCv with medial obstruent/liquid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāgá</td>
<td>bāg-ú</td>
<td>‘fall’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běrě</td>
<td>běr-ú</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pál</td>
<td>pál-ú</td>
<td>‘pick (fruit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūmú-gi</td>
<td>sūmú-g-ú</td>
<td>‘take down’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. nonmonosyllabic (with Apocope)

medial semivowel

\[ \text{dɔ̀w} - \text{∅} \] ‘go up’
\[ \text{tɛ́w} - \text{∅} \] ‘eat (by crunching)’
\[ \text{bìy} - \text{∅} \] ‘bury’

medial nasal

\[ \text{pémé} - \text{∅} \] ‘slurp’
\[ \text{nɔ̌ːm} - \text{∅} \] ‘cause to drink’
\[ \text{bòm} - \text{∅} \] ‘pamper’
\[ \text{dɔ̀ɲɔ́} - \text{∅} \] ‘butt with head’
\[ \text{sà:j} - \text{∅} \] ‘settle down’

\[ \text{d. Mediopassive} \]

final short i after CiC-

\[ \text{dig-} - \text{dig-i} \] ‘follow’
\[ \text{im-} - \text{im-i} \] ‘lie down’
\[ \text{diw-} - \text{diw-i} \] ‘lean on’

final short u after CuC- other than Cuw-

\[ \text{tùŋ-} - \text{tùŋ-ū} \] ‘kneel’

final zero after other CvC- with final semivowel/nasal

\[ \text{bòm-} - \text{bòm-∅} \] ‘carry on back’
\[ \text{dèŋ-} - \text{dèŋ-∅} \] ‘sit’
\[ \text{pèŋ-} - \text{pèŋ-∅} \] ‘circulate’
\[ \text{sàŋ-} - \text{sàŋ-∅} \] ‘carry on shoulder’
\[ \text{yàj-} - \text{yàj-∅} \] ‘play (board game)’
\[ \text{dùw-} - \text{dùw-∅} \] ‘carry’

A variant of -ū used in parallelistic passages is -i→, with intonational prolongation.

(53) [\text{yɔ́: wɔ́n} - \text{sàjù}^{-}[\text{dig-i→}], \text{pù́}^{-}[\text{pòr-i→}]
[\text{NearDist Top} | \text{bird}^{-}[\text{drive.out-VblN}], \text{millet}^{-}[\text{grow.spike-VblN}]
\text{émé} [\text{yɔ́: nà sà:n}]
\text{1PISbj} [\text{NearDist Pl all}] \text{say-Pfv-PlSbj}

‘As for that, we have talked both (about) driving birds out and about the development of millet grain spikes.’ (2011.1a.08)

A suffix -lé used in one type of verb iteration (§11.6.5) is a possible vestige of an older verbal noun formation, cf. Najamba and Yanda Dom -lè.

4.2.5 Instrument nominals

There is no widely used instrumental-nominal derivation, to judge by the absence of candidates in my working lexicon. The tool ‘file’ is dì:sì, unrelated to the corresponding action verb nèrɛ́ ‘file, scrape with a file’ (also ‘hone [blade]’). Likewise, ‘bellows (blacksmith’s blower)’ is ìjú, unrelated to verb pìyé ‘blow’. New expressions can be created for modern functional appliances and tools, using verbal nouns with incorporated object as adjectives, as in màsù \text{‘mù́}^{-n5w^{-∅}} \text{‘machine’ millet^-grind-VblN’}, denoting a modern grinding device (‘mill’).
‘Scrubber (for bathing)’ is *pù*: which oddly seems to have diverged phonologically from the cognate verb *bùwɔ́ ‘scrub (one’s body, in bathing)’*. The noun has a variant pronunciation *füː*, whose ʃ suggests loanword status. The verbal noun of *bùwɔ́ is *bùw-ɔ́* phonetic [bù:]. The cognate noun and verb in some other Dogon languages are more transparently related (e.g. Perge *pùw* and verb *pùwɔ́*).

See also the compounds in §5.1.11.

4.2.6 Uncompounded agentives

I know of no uncompounded agentive nominals, with the possible exception of *dáná ‘hunter’, cf. verb *dàná ‘hunt’. See the agentive compounds, typically including a generic object as the initial, in §5.1.5.

4.3 Pronouns

4.3.1 Basic personal pronouns

The pronominal categories are first person (1Sg and 1Pl), second person (2Sg and 2Pl), third human (3Sg and 3Pl), nonhuman (with no obligatory number distinction), and logophoric (LogoSg and LogoPl). The logophoric “pronoun” is the most nounlike of these forms. Antecedents for logophorics are third person referents, less often second person (§18.2.1). There are also transpersonal reflexive markers for nonsubject categories (§18.1), but they are bound morphemes outside of the regular pronominal system.

The independent, accusative, and preverbal subject pronouns are identical in form, except that 1Sg has a special accusative *mA*. This category also has other forms of the shape *mXV* with variable vowel, including postnominal possessor *mA* (§6.2.3) and *mX- in the ‘it’s me’ form.

Subject-pronominal suffixation on the verb (or other predicate) is very limited. In all AMN (aspect-mood-negation) categories the singular-subject category is unmarked. Depending on the particular AMN category, the plural-subject category is either unmarked (converging with the singular) or has a marked suffix used equally for 1Pl, 2Pl, and 3Pl. Subject-pronominal suffixation is therefore limited to at most a singular/plural opposition, with no marking of person (first, second, third). Because of this, either clause-initial independent pronouns in subject function (in main clauses) or preverbal subject pronouns (in non-subject relative clauses) are needed to determine the pronominal-subject category.

(54) Personal pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>subject</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>‘it’s __’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>indep.</td>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>preverbal</td>
<td>suffixed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>fⁿ</td>
<td>má [!]</td>
<td>fⁿ</td>
<td>-蛏</td>
<td>mí=yⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(for mí=y see below)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>émé</td>
<td>émé</td>
<td>émé</td>
<td>[marked]</td>
<td>émé = ņ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>ú</td>
<td>ú</td>
<td>ú</td>
<td>-蛏</td>
<td>ú=y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>é</td>
<td>é</td>
<td>é</td>
<td>[marked]</td>
<td>é = ņ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
‘It’s me [focus]’ is phonetic [mí:] and could be transcribed as mí = ñⁿ parallel to 2Sg ú = ñ etc. or as mí =? parallel to 1Pl émé =? . It could also be taken as unsegmentable mí: on the grounds that it is the only irregular focused pronoun, i.e. it is not directly derived from the corresponding independent (and preverbal subject) form. See discussion of (317c) in §11.2.1.1 for possible evidence in favor of mí:.

In possessives (for kin terms as well as alienable nouns), a pronominal possessor normally precedes the possessed NP and takes the same form as in the independent, accusative, and preverbal-subject series just illustrated. The exception is 1Sg alienable possessor, which is L-toned mà following (not preceding) the possessed NP, see §6.2.3 below. If the noun has an additional modifier, any pronominal possessor can be postnominal, in combination with particle kè (originally ‘thing’ in apposition to the possessed noun X), as in X ýù kè) ‘your-Sg X’, see (133-4) in §6.2.3.

4.3.2 Personal pronouns as complements of postpositions

For all categories except 1Sg, the form of a pronoun used before a postposition is the same as in independent, accusative, and preverbal subject functions as detailed just above.

For 1Sg, we have dative mà =ǹ ‘to/for me’ (§8.1.1). The more noun-like spatial postpositions show 1Sg possessor mà following the noun-like element, as in kú mà ‘on me, over me, on my head’ (§8.2.3) and several similar examples. The morpheme gí:n ~ gi:n ‘like’, which does not pattern as a true postposition, has 1Sg mà gí:n ‘like me’ (§8.4.1). Similarly, purposive ‘because of me’ is mà gíː: (§8.3.1.1).

4.4 Demonstratives

4.4.1 Demonstrative pronouns and definite morphemes

The resources in TgK for expressing discourse definiteness are these:

(55)  
a. tonal definiteness marking (final L-tone on noun)  
b. preposed kó (§4.4.1.3) ‘that (same)’  
c. postposed near-distant demonstrative yóː ‘that (just mentioned)’ (§4.4.1.2)

kó and yóː: are stronger discourse deictics and are usually best translated by ‘that’ in the discourse-internal sense. Of the two, yóː: is appropriate when the referent in question has just been mentioned, while kó can dredge up an older discourse referent.
4.4.1.1 Tonal definite (final L-tone)

Weak discourse definiteness, as when an entity is referred to several times after its initial introduction, is typically expressed tonally. However, a noun or NP that already ends in an L- or <HL>-toned syllable cannot audibly distinguish definite from indefinite in this fashion. This applies to heavy possessed nouns with {HL} overlay, to NPs with plural bè, and to a few numerals with /HL/ or /LHL/ melody.

Examples of tonal definites are in (56). Recall that all uncompounded common nouns and adjectives (as opposed to proper nouns), and some numerals, are lexically /H/ or /LH/-toned, i.e. their melodies end in an H-tone. This makes it possible to audibly distinguish the definite form by adding a final L-tone element at the right edge. In (56a), we see that a final H-toned Cv syllable becomes L-toned if there is at least one preceding H-toned syllable, but <HL>-toned if there is no preceding H-tone. We also see that a final <LH>-toned syllable becomes <LHL> regardless of how many syllables the stem has. In the transcription, superscript +L indicates a local (not word-level) tone at the right edge. This superscript is not a phonetic diacritic and can be disregarded in pronunciation; it merely indicates that the final L-tone is a morphological add-on.

(56) noun/NP definite gloss

a. bisyllabic and longer stems

\(H_1(H…)H\) to \(H_1(H…)L\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun/NP</th>
<th>definite</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sì:n</td>
<td>sì:n</td>
<td>'knife'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tì:núr</td>
<td>tì:núr</td>
<td>'stool'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>há:kílè</td>
<td>há:kílè</td>
<td>'mind, attention'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úr</td>
<td>úr</td>
<td>'children'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(L_1(L…)H\) to \(L_1(L…)<HL>\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun/NP</th>
<th>definite</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nù:m</td>
<td>nù:m</td>
<td>'arm, hand'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wò:rù</td>
<td>wò:rù</td>
<td>'field'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà:nà</td>
<td>nà:nà</td>
<td>'cow'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gir</td>
<td>gir</td>
<td>'house'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>là:rá</td>
<td>là:rá</td>
<td>'area near village'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tò:jí</td>
<td>tò:jí</td>
<td>'truth'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(L_1(L…)<HL>\) to \(L_1(L…)<LHL>\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun/NP</th>
<th>definite</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɔ̀:n</td>
<td>ɔ̀:n</td>
<td>'chief, Hogon'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìtè:</td>
<td>ìtè:</td>
<td>'well'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìnà:</td>
<td>ìnà:</td>
<td>'mother'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sí:rìwè</td>
<td>sí:rìwè</td>
<td>'folding knife'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(L_1(L…)<HL>\) unchanged

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun/NP</th>
<th>definite</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ɔ̀:n</td>
<td>ɔ̀:n</td>
<td>'boy'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. monosyllabic stems

\(<H>\) to \(<HL>\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun/NP</th>
<th>definite</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>è:</td>
<td>è:</td>
<td>'soda ash'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>í:</td>
<td>í:</td>
<td>'child'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dì:</td>
<td>dì:</td>
<td>'water'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(<LH>\) to \(<LHL>\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun/NP</th>
<th>definite</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ìtè:</td>
<td>ìtè:</td>
<td>'woman'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà:</td>
<td>nà:</td>
<td>'person'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. compounds and noun-adjective sequences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bàrà-nw&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;nỳ</td>
<td>‘wild animal’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yè nà:</td>
<td>‘old (=adult) woman’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X&lt;sup&gt;L&lt;/sup&gt; pèn</td>
<td>‘old X’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gùrì pìrí</td>
<td>‘big (=adult) person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà gàrá</td>
<td>‘white house’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. noun-numeral sequences (see discussion below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral Sequence</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X&lt;sup&gt;L&lt;/sup&gt; tún</td>
<td>‘one’ (adjective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X türu</td>
<td>‘one’ (numeral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X tà:nù</td>
<td>‘three’ (X&lt;sup&gt;L&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X kùrê:</td>
<td>‘six’ (X&lt;sup&gt;L&lt;/sup&gt;)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although àr<sup>p</sup>à-y<sup>n</sup> ‘boy’ does not audibly change in isolation, the distinction between unmarked and definite forms is audible when a demonstrative is added: unmarked àr<sup>p</sup>à-y<sup>n</sup> and y<sup>n</sup> ày: ‘that (near-distant) child’ (demonstrative controls tone-dropping on noun), definite àr<sup>p</sup>à-y<sup>n</sup> vày: ‘that child’ (demonstrative is tone-dropped).

The local attachment of L-tone to the right edge is quite distinct from, say, a word-level {HL} overlay. For example, lexically /H/-toned tünùr‘stool’ has definite form tünùr<sup>a</sup>n‘stool’ (numeral) (<tünùr>), which happens to end up as H.H.L, but as a possessed noun with true {HL} overlay it is [X<sup>HL</sup> tünùr<sup>a</sup>n] ‘X’s stool’ with H.H.L.

The subtlety lurking in these data is the tones of the noun X and the numeral in the noun-numeral sequences in (56d) above. Although the definiteness-marking local L-tone is added at the end of the numeral, the noun is also tone-dropped in that example. Moreover, the numeral itself is {L}+H-toned, as it is before a demonstrative (§6.5.2). This is therefore the {L}+H output (§3.7.3.7), controlled by the definite marker (as it is by demonstratives). To this is added a terminal L-tone (tonal definite), resulting in {L}+H+L. Syllabically, the output is L(…).<HL> for nonmonosyllabics with the falling tone realized on the final syllable, and <LHL> for monosyllabics. Examples are in (57).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(57)</th>
<th>Unmarked</th>
<th>Definite</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>nè tà:nù</td>
<td>[nè tà:nù]&lt;sup&gt;L-H+L&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>‘(the) three women’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>nè kùrê:</td>
<td>[nè kùrê:]&lt;sup&gt;L-H+L&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>‘(the) six women’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>nè sɔː:</td>
<td>[nè sɔː:]&lt;sup&gt;L-H+L&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>‘(the) seven women’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d.</td>
<td>nè têmdêrɛ</td>
<td>[nè têmdêrɛ]&lt;sup&gt;L-H+L&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>‘a/the hundred women’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While adjectives and common nouns always end lexically in an H-tone, there are a few numerals that end in an L-tone (e.g. ‘7’, ‘hundred’). If tonal definite marking had applied to N-Num in the same manner as N-Adj, i.e. with just an incremental final L-tone, there would have been no audible difference between unmarked and definite forms in (57c-d). Indeed, there is no difference (audible to me) between unmarked and definite forms of {HL}-toned
possessed nouns (no great loss since possession usually implies definiteness), or of the tonally unusual frozen compounds àr’á-d’) ‘boy’ and pè-y’nd ‘girl’.

A textual passage illustrating the use of this definite marking is (58). Here a new discourse referent is introduced as unmarked (indefinite) yè L nà: ‘an old woman’. Subsequent references to her, of which only one is included in this excerpt, are in the definite form yè L nà:uckles ‘the old woman’.

(58) [yè-ŋò-gé-ɛ̃]
[like.that 3SgSbj say-and.SS]
[ŋà-L nà:] kéngère-kéngère mà.
[women L old] listen-listen (§11.6.7) and.then,
[ŋà: [I-n+L nà:] jàgà nù-nù:-lì wà]
[lo! 3SgSbj like.that 3Sg=Dat PfvNeg Quot,
jàgà wò nà: nù: wò = nù bîr-ɛ mà → wà,
lo! 3SgSbj like.that 3Sg=Dat Pfv Q Quot,
[ŋà-L nà:-lì] gò-ɛ:-]
[women L old.Def+L] go.out-and.SS
‘When she (=spirit of dead girl) said (= sang) like that, an old woman was listening. She (=old woman) said, “wow, this child indeed did not die (naturally).” She (=old woman) asked (=wondered), had she (=the girl’s stepmother) [focus] done this to her? The old woman went out.’ (2011.1b.01)

The “definiteness” (i.e. ready identifiability) of a conspicuous or sole member of a set (the sun, one’s home, one’s village, etc.) does not count as discourse definiteness, even when the listener is assumed to understand the reference, and is not marked tonally as definite.

(59) a. ða gir”í yà:-jù
1SgSbj house go-Lpfv
‘I am going home (=to the house).’
(can also mean ‘I am going to the village.’)

b. nù-nàgù ú tègè-jù
sun 2SgObj burn-Lpfv
‘The sun will burn you-Sg.’

A difficulty in parsing TgK is that the same local right-edge L-tone element can also mark tonal locatives (§8.2.1) and, less importantly, the tonal topic marker (§19.1.1). For tùñà ‘one’ (adjective), there is an audible tonal distinction between tonal definite and tonal locative. For purposes of definite marking, tùñà is treated tonosyntactically as a numeral, so the phrase gets the {L}+H overlay preceding the definite L-tone: definite [pè tùñà] L+H+L ‘the one woman’. The tonal locative treats tùñà as an adjective, so the definite L-tone only affects the final syllable: nà L tùñà ‘in one (=the same) place’. For other nouns and adjectives, there is no overt difference between definite and locative tonal forms. See §8.2.1 for discussion of how the two can be identified in texts. There are some textual examples that could be parsed either way.

4.4.1.2 ‘This/that’ deictic demonstrative pronouns (nof; yò; érù kó ~ é kó)

Proximate nò: ‘this’ and near-distant yò: ‘that (over there)’ are the primary deictic categories, i.e. they can be accompanied by pointing. (For L-toned versions ñò: and ñò, see below.)
Each has distinct singular and plural forms. L bàŋà, a special variant possessed form of bàŋà ‘owner’ (not the usual possessed form, see the end of this section) follows the demonstrative if the referent is human singular. The human plural counterpart is nà (compare Jamsay nám). I do not mark it as tone-dropped since it is always L-toned. Plural particle bè is usually not added to an already plural-marked demonstrative with nà.

For the far-distant/definite category, a structurally distinct form érù kó is basic. It looks morphologically like a relative clause with nonhuman head (‘… that is over there’), but it is somewhat frozen and can be used with a human referent. In the far-distant sense, a human referent can be expressed by a more transparent copular relative (ending in singular wó L bàŋà, plural wé nà), cf. (465a,e) in §14.1.9.6. In the discourse-definite sense, ‘that (same) one’ (i.e. that we were talking about before), only érù kó has been observed even for human referents. The discourse-definite sense appears to be rare and did not occur in recorded texts. The usual definite markers in NPs are the tonal definite (weak discourse-definite), and prenominal kó (strong discourse-definite).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(60)</th>
<th>category</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nonhuman</td>
<td>human</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>simple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Proximate</td>
<td>nó:</td>
<td>nó L bàŋà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Near-Distant</td>
<td>yó:</td>
<td>yó L bàŋà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>relative-clause type (far-distant or definite)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>either sense:</td>
<td>érù kó</td>
<td>érù kó L bàŋà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Far-Distant sense also:</td>
<td>érù wó L bàŋà</td>
<td>érù wé ná</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In allegro speech, érù kó may reduce to é kó. For postnominal kó:, which functions like the more common prenominal discourse-definite kó, see the end of §4.4.1.3 below.

Combinations of the proximate demonstratives with nouns are in (61).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(61)</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>‘this/that …’</td>
<td>‘these/those …’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bá:ɡá L yó:</td>
<td>bá:ɡá L yó:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘sheep’</td>
<td>péjú</td>
<td>péjú bè</td>
<td>péjú L nó:</td>
<td>péjú L nó:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>péjú L yó:</td>
<td>péjú L yó:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘person’</td>
<td>ná</td>
<td>ná bè</td>
<td>ná L nó: L bàŋà</td>
<td>ná L nó:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ná L yó: L bàŋà</td>
<td>ná L yó:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The proximate and near-distant demonstratives can also be added to nouns (with or without modifiers) that are already marked for definiteness by a final L-tone added to the right edge. In this case, the noun otherwise surfaces with its lexical tones, but the demonstrative is tone-dropped. This is illustrated in (62), where the nouns are bá:ɡá ‘stick’ and ná ‘person’, whose lexical melodies appear in the definite column. See also ‘this child’ in (58) above.
(62)  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>unmarked</th>
<th>definite</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.  bàːgà¹ nòː</td>
<td>bàːgà¹ H nàː</td>
<td>‘this stick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàːgà¹ yỳː</td>
<td>bàːgà¹ H yỳː</td>
<td>‘that (near-distant) stick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.  nà¹ nòː 1 bàŋà</td>
<td>nà¹ nòː 1 bàŋà</td>
<td>‘this person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà¹ yỳː 1 bàŋà</td>
<td>nà¹ yỳː 1 bàŋà</td>
<td>‘that (near-distant) person’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

L-toned 1 nòː and 1 yỳː also occur in certain other combinations including a numeral or a possessor. The string preceding the demonstrative takes {L}+H tonal form in this case. The likely historical origin is that the H-tone of the demonstrative jumped leftward onto the final syllable or mora of the preceding string. However, this does not work clearly as a synchronic analysis. See §3.7.3.5 for details.

Demonstratives like nòː may be used absolutely, as in ‘take this!’ As modifiers, they follow NPs consisting of a noun plus any modifying adjectives and/or a numeral. In a sequence N-Adj-Num-Dem, the demonstrative licenses optional Adjective-Numeral Inversion (§6.4.2), to N-Num-Adj-Dem, and this has implications for the tonosyntax. For more on the linear and tonal structure of the combinations, see §6.5.

The L-toned 1 bàŋà in human singular demonstratives like nòː 1 bàŋà ‘this one’ is striking. One would have expected #nòː 1 H bàŋà, since the regular possessed form of bàŋà ‘owner’ is {H} 1 bàŋà, and since there are many possessive-type compounds ending in H bàŋà (§5.1.9). The same unexpected L-toned following element occurs in yỳː 1 tògù ‘that kind of thing’ and in yỳː = yì ‘it is that’ with final ‘it is’ clitic, for expected #yỳː 1 H tògù (perhaps downstepped) and #yỳː = yì. Demonstrative-based manner adverbs such as yỳː-yò ‘like that’ also have a final L-tone.

However, these tone patterns are isolated. There is no productive tone-dropping of post-demonstrative words or clitics. For example, yỳː 1 sìː-ɔ̀-kà ‘the equivalent of that’ (i.e. ‘something like that’) has no tone-dropping or even downstep on H-toned syllable sìː. Therefore the irregular tone patterns in the preceding paragraph (nòː 1 bàŋà, yỳː 1 tògù, yỳː = yì, yỳː-yò) should be viewed as synchronic vestiges of an older /HL/-toned form of the demonstrative stem. This would also allow a direct equation of nòː and yỳː with Jamsay nùŋò ‘this that’ and variant yùgò ‘this/that’.

4.4.1.3 Prenominal discourse-definite kò ‘that (same)’

kò before a noun is ostensibly a nonhuman possessor pronoun. As in several other Dogon languages, however, this construction often marks the NP as strongly discourse definite (‘that [same]’), with at best an abstract, impersonal ‘possessor’ denoting the situation, the discourse, or the like. This was observed by Prost (p. 17): “On peut parfois employer le pronom ko placé avant le substantif pour marquer qu’il s’agit de celui dont il est question, dont on a déjà parlé.”

The noun does take its regular possessed-noun overlay, so there is no overt difference between nonhuman possessor and discourse-definite marker. An {H}-toned possessed noun after kò is usually slightly downstepped, as it is following other possessors.

(63)  
| a. human  |
|-----------------|-----------|
| kò H nòː  | ‘the child’ |
| kò H pè   | ‘the woman’ |
| kò H òr’à́ | ‘the man’ |
b. nonhuman

kó \[ã̃\]góří ‘the house’
kó \[ä̃\]ér‘é ‘the goat’
kó \[æ̃\]tőjůř‘ù ‘the stool’

My assistant also produced another construction, with \{L\}-toned noun as head of a relative clause whose other part is kó: as in \[ã̃\]góří kó: ‘that (same) house’. The tonosyntax suggests that kó: is treated like postnominal demonstratives nó: and yö: (§4.4.1.2).

4.4.1.4 Anaphoric/logophoric demonstrative pronouns

No Jamsay-type anaphoric (e.g. logophoric) demonstrative pronoun forms occur in TgK.

4.4.1.5 kùn with definite locations

A morpheme kùn occurred twice in about an hour of recorded texts from Koporo-Pen (64a), and I was able to elicit additional examples. It seems to involve discourse definiteness, but only with respect to allative locations. (64a) occurred in the middle of a tale about a pair of twins who had been abandoned by their mother in the relevant village, but had been brought up else where (by God) and were now trying to find their mother. In (64b), ‘house’ (the home of the quoted speaker and the listener, i.e. his wife) is introduced in the main quotation and then referred to in the embedded quotation, which is to be spoken by the wife to the animals (who by that point will be at the couple’s house).

(64)  
a. \[[sān \ bē \ řá̃ná:] \ děné-pú \ gě:] \[[[RefIPoss \ Pl \ řá̃ná]mother] \ seek-Lpfv \ for]\[áná \ kùn \ yěr-ě:] \[bē \ kě-’u\]  
village at.Def come-and.SS \[3PlSbj \ when.DS\]  
‘when they came upon that (same) village in order to look for their mother, …’ \(2011.1b.04\)
b. \[bē \ èně \ důw-ć: \ gir‘í \ jě-∅ \ dě,\] \[3PlSbj \ LogoObj \ carry-MP \ house \ take.away-Lpfv \ if,\[ařěć \ řá-č:] \[yě \ tě] \[isř \ děné-děné-děné-děné\]  
[man too] \[there.Def \ around] \ dog \ look.for-(iterated)\  
\[[sān \ řěć \ hir‘íř \ kùn] \ mř-ń-ě:] \[mà\]  
[[RefIPoss \ Pl \ house] \ at.Def \ assemble-Caus-and.SS \ and.then,\  
(‘He said to his wife:) When they (=wild animals) have carried and taken me to  
the house, (tell them) “the man for his part was seeking (=collecting) dogs  
around there and has assembled them at his (afore-mentioned) house, and …” ’ \(2011.1b.05\)
c. \[kăńţ \ kùn] \[děś-sěn\] \[gold \ at.Def \ arrive-Lpfv\PlSbj\  
‘They (=miners) reached the gold (that they were digging for).’
If indeed *kùn* is specifically a discourse-definiteness marker, it might be cognate to e.g. Jamsay definite *kùⁿ*. However, it might also be related to *kùn* ‘put’, cf. Jamsay stative *kün* ‘be (put) in’. Or it could be a fusion from *kù* plus dative = *ǹ*.

4.4.1.6 Possible dialectal definite morpheme

Prost (p. 17) states that the “pudyugu” dialect in the far north of the TgK zone has a postnominal determiner “ũ”, i.e. *uⁿ*. The reference is presumably to the Worou Kan language/dialect, which belongs to the same language/dialect group as TgK, and is spoken by people with the surname Poudiougo.

Whether this morpheme is related to *kùn*, or to the Jamsay definite morpheme *kùⁿ*, is unclear. In any case it may reflect the original morpheme that became the TgK tonal definite.

4.4.2 Demonstrative adverbs

4.4.2.1 Locative adverbs

The main locative adverbs are in (65). The alternation of proximate *n* and near-distant *y* in simple demonstratives recurs here in *nî* versus *yî*.

(65)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>nî</em></td>
<td>‘here’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>yî</em></td>
<td>‘over there’ (deictic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>yè</em></td>
<td>‘there’ (discourse-definite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Discourse-definite *yè* should be distinguished from existential *yè* ~ *yɔ* (§11.2.2.1). They are likely two divergent reflexes of an original ‘there’. The existential particle is followed by L-toned variants of quasi-verbs ‘be’ and ‘have’, which may indicate that *yè* ~ *yɔ* originally had a falling tone. Synchronically, *yè* and *yè* ~ *yɔ* are distinct morphemes and may co-occur; see (328) and discussion in §11.2.2.1.

4.4.2.2 Emphatic and approximative modifiers of adverbs

The expressive adverbial *tè* → ‘precisely’ is added to spatial and temporal adverbials to emphasize precise location. For example, ‘right here’ is *nî té* →, and *iyè té* → is ‘precisely today’ (French aujourd’hui même).

*tɔ* ‘toward’ (§8.2.14) can be added to demonstrative adverbs to indicate approximate or nonspecific location: *nî tɔ* ‘around here (somewhere)’.
4.4.2.3 ‘Like this/that’ (, , )

In addition to combining a demonstrative with gi:\textsuperscript{a} ‘like’, as in nd\textsuperscript{a}: gi\textsuperscript{a} ‘like this’, there are some specialized demonstrative manner adverbs. The alternation of proximate n and near-distant y recurs in (66a).

(66) form gloss

a. deictic (or discourse-deictic)
   n3-ŋ ‘like this’
   y3-ŋ ‘like that’ (e.g. as just described)

b. definite
   kú:” ‘thus’ (definite)

kú:” is also very common clause-initially in the sense ‘(only) then (did…)’. This happens when the preceding clause denotes a necessarily prior (perhaps causal) eventuality.

For other ‘like X’ expressions, see §8.4.1.

4.4.3 Presentatives (ûŋôy, ûŋô – ûŋô, yô gö, ëgë)

As predicate, ûŋôy has presentative force (‘here’s …’). It also occurs in the form ûŋô with a following copula like w3 or k3 (§11.2.2.2) or a following locational quasi-verb só (§11.2.3), all of which begin with an H-tone (67a-d). The same segmental form, but with rising tone pattern, is ûŋô in (67e) before an L-tone. This suggests the possibility that ûŋôy may be segmentable as ûŋô = y with an H-toned form of the ‘it is’ clitic. The final y is not fully nasalized, probably because the ŋ is from *ng, preserved in some cognates like Ben Tey ûngôy.

ûŋôy occurs most often when the speaker is literally holding something out (a bag, a baby) to the addressee, i.e. in a clearly proximate context (67a). The shorter forms are normal when the referent object is not being held by the speaker.

(67) a. [ú HI sá:gù] ûŋôy — " " ûŋô k3
   [2SgPoss HI sack] here’s be.NonhSbj
   ‘Here’s your-Sg bag.’

b. [ú HI dé-dè:] ûŋô w3
   [2SgPoss HI Rdp-father] here’s be.HumSbj
   ‘Here’s your-Sg father.’

c. émé ûŋô wê
   1PlSbj here’s be.HumPlSbj
   ‘Here we are.’

d. péjú [gir"í bîn] ûŋô só
   sheep [house in] here’s be
   ‘Here’s a sheep in the house.’
Another form with similar sense, used with a following copula, is yògò. The spatial position in this case is near-distance, perhaps being near or in the custody of the addressee.

(68) a. bigí [[ú hjuwɔ̀ bín] yògò só pen [[2SgPoss il pocket] in] there’s.NearDist be ‘There’s the pen, in your pocket.’

b. [nù 1-tè:ré wɔ̀] yògò k3 [millet 1-heap Top] there’s.NearDist be.NonHsbj ‘(suppose that) there’s a millet heap (over there)’ (2011.1a.13)

The far-distance counterpart is ègè, again with a copula or locational.

(69) nàŋá ègè k3 cow there’s.FarDist be.NonHsbj ‘There’s the cow (over there).’

When they are combined with an overt predicate, these presentative morphemes are not themselves predicative. In this case, they function as simple adverbs. They have lexical /LH/ melody (ùŋó, yògò, ègè) before a verb beginning with an L-tone (70a-b). They have {L} tone (ùŋó, yògò, ègè) before a verb beginning with an H-tone (70c), or before another preverbal constituent such as a direct object regardless of its initial tone (70d).

(70) a. fù ùŋó yè-táŋà 1SgSbj here’s come-Prog ‘I’m coming!’ (said when one is called, cf. French j’arrive!)

b. yògò bì-táŋà there’s.NearDist do-Prog ‘There he/she is (nearby), working.’ (French leïla voilà qui travaille)

c. ègè nỳ.-táŋà there’s.FarDist eat-Prog ‘There he/she is (distant), eating.’

d. yògò nìw “s jë.-táŋà there’s.NearDist meat bring-Prog ‘There he/she is (nearby), bringing the meat.’

4.5 Adjectives

As with nouns, there is no affixal marking of intrinsic categories (humanness, number) on adjectives.
### 4.5.1 Types of adjectives

(71) provides a fairly complete inventory of ordinary adjectives, in their postnominal modifying form. They are grouped here by segmental phonological shape. As with common noun stems, the lexical melodies are /H/ and /LH/. There is a significant set of stems ending in *u* (71a). A few adjectives have a reduplicative look (71h). * xrɔ́nɔnɔ́* ‘smooth, sleek’ (71j) is syntactically an expressive adverbial, see (219d) and discussion following. This is also likely for ‘full’ (71l), in view of its intonational lengthening. The remaining adjectives have shapes similar to those of nouns and verbs, with vowel-harmonic constraints applying if there are two or more syllables. The loanword *kàkì* (71g) does not respect the vocalism rules applicable to native adjectives. For rhotic-medial * CvCv* stems, the parenthesized stative negative shows whether or not the stem is subject to rv-Deletion. In this sample, only *gàrá* ‘big’ undergoes this process (as does the verb *gàrá* ‘go past’).

(71) Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kélú</td>
<td>‘cold’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ǘjú</td>
<td>‘small, slender’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ǘjúⁿ</td>
<td>‘small’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðgú</td>
<td>‘fast’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dðŋú</td>
<td>‘skinny, lean’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mɔ́ŋú</td>
<td>‘bad, nasty’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kùŋú</td>
<td>‘rough’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔ́mú</td>
<td>‘rotten’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèrú</td>
<td>‘blue’ (stative negative <em>yèrú</em>¹ = lá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yɔ̀nrú</td>
<td>‘soft’ (stative negative <em>yɔ̀nrú</em>¹ = lá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðrú</td>
<td>‘wet’ (stative negative <em>ðrú</em>¹ = lá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dðmú</td>
<td>‘blunt (blade)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jërúⁿú</td>
<td>‘lightweight’ (stative negative <em>jërú</em>¹ = lá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gúrú</td>
<td>‘long’ (stative negative <em>gúrú</em>¹ = lá)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɛ́lú</td>
<td>‘sweet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɔ́gú</td>
<td>‘thick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yù:gnú</td>
<td>‘slow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bá:jú</td>
<td>‘over-ripe’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. * Cv and Cvⁿ*

| kɔ̌      | ‘decayed (wood)’ |
| mɔ̌     | ‘dry’ |
| dɔ̌n      | ‘ripe but poorly-developed’ |
| pɔ̌n     | ‘old’ |
| grɔ̌n     | ‘black’ |
| sɛ̌n     | ‘good’ |
| báⁿ     | ‘red’ |
c. Cv:
- nú: 'hot'
- sí: 'pointed'
- ě: 'tight (rope)'
- kò: 'empty'
- wá: 'wide, spacious'

d. CvC
- ëm: 'crowded'
- àwⁿ: '(animal) in good condition'
- kán: 'big, fat'
- ñáwⁿ: 'ruined'

e. CvCv
- díní: 'well-fed'
- pírí: 'white' (stative negative píríⁿ⁻¹ = lá⁻¹)
- kirè: 'difficult' (stative negative kirè = lá)
- ìrè: 'ripe; cooked' (negated by verb: ìrè-li)
- dégè: 'short; narrow'
- sèrè: 'diluted' (stative negative sèrèⁿ⁻¹ = lá⁻¹)
- kòró: 'unripe; raw; fresh (milk)' (stative negative kòróⁿ⁻¹ = lá⁻¹)
- wóró: 'deep'
- kàjá: 'fresh; undiluted'
- màrⁿá: 'big, massive' (stative negative màrⁿáⁿ⁻¹ = lá⁻¹)
- gàrá: 'big, adult' (contracted stative negative gà⁻¹ = lá⁻¹)
- dàgá: 'small, young'
- kàná: 'new'

f. Cv:Cv
- nà:rⁿá: 'easy'
- kó:ró: 'useless, shiftless'

g. Cv:Cv:
- kàkî: 'off-white' (French khaki)

h. bisyllabic with reduplicated appearance

CvCv
- têné: 'bland'
- nêné: 'alive'

CvⁿCvⁿ
- têsⁿᵗêsⁿ: 'sour; salty'

CvⁿCvⁿ
- stⁿ-stⁿ: 'small'

Cv: Cv
- nî:npjî: 'sharp'

i. trisyllabic

sémérⁿè: 'tattered'
bórólú: 'viscous'
kágárà: 'bitter'
sògòrì ‘multicolored’
déméré ‘fat’
kúrúgú ‘dense’
yùgùjú ‘short, runty’

j. quadrisyllabic, with apparent final reduplication
ɔ̀rɔ̀ŋɔ́n ‘smooth, sleek’
(perhaps an expressive adverbial, cf. (219) in §8.4.6.1)

k. noun-adjective sequence, using exemplars for color categories
bèrù-ɔ̀rù ‘green’ (lit. “fresh grass”)
yòrò-pùrú ‘yellow’ (lit. “néré-tree [Parkia] flour”)

l. expressive adverbial
jó→káⁿ ‘full (container)’, cf. káⁿ ‘mouth; opening (of container)’
(jó→ perhaps an expressive adverbial, cf. (214) in §8.4.6.1)

4.5.2 Distributive adjective iteration with {H}-{L} overlay

This construction has an {H}-toned first iteration of the adjectival stem, while the second and optional subsequent iterations drop to {L}, erasing the lexical melody. In the attested examples, all of which involve the adjective dágá ‘small’, the iterated sequence is chained to a noncognate following verb.

(72) a. [dèrⁿɔ̀L dágáH¹L dágà] [kó bími] páñá-jé:
[cropsL smallH¹-L small] [Nonh in] cross.plant-lpfv
‘they will intersperse minor crops (among the millet)’ 2011.1a.03

b. [númɔ́ bè] [wàgà-tùmòL dágáH¹-L dágà] dè
[hand with] [moundL smallH¹-L small-L small] shape-Pfv.PIbj if
‘they used to shape small round mounds (in rows) by hand and…’ 2011.1a.01

A tonally and semantically similar, but lexically frozen, iteration is kèwèré-kèwèrè ‘minor, secondary, miscellaneous (things)’.

4.5.3 Expressive adverbials with adjectival sense ‘flat’ (pvtv→)

A set of expressive adverbials of the shape pvtv→ with the basic sense ‘flat and wide’ and with sound-symbolic vocalism (§3.4.7) and /HL/ melody is found in TgK (73).

(73) ‘flat (and wide)’
pòtò→ ‘flat and wide and moderately thick, e.g. tortoise, nose’
pàtà→ ‘flat and wide (feet)’
pètè→ ‘flat and small (e.g. hand, fan)’
### 4.6 Numerals

#### 4.6.1 Cardinal numerals

**4.6.1.1 ‘1’ (túrú, tún3), ‘same (one)’, and ‘other’ (pèrè)**

‘1’ after a noun (or core NP) is túrú or tún3. They differ in stem-class. túrú does not control tone-dropping on the preceding word(s), in other words it behaves like numerals ‘2’ and up. tún3 does control tone-dropping, so it functions as an adjective. Observe the tones of pèjú ‘sheep’ in pèjú túrú ‘one sheep’ and pèjú L tún3 ‘one sheep, a sheep’. Likewise note the tones of nè ‘woman’ in nè túrú ‘one woman’ and nè L tún3 ‘one woman, a woman’.

Consistent with its stem-class, túrú is semantically a pure numeral—‘one’ as opposed to ‘two’ or ‘three’, perhaps answering a ‘how many?’ question. By contrast, tún3 is often used when a discourse referent is introduced, as at the beginning of a tale (‘there once was a little girl’). Both can also mean ‘(one and) the same’, predicating the identity of two ostensibly distinct referents: kó túrú ‘the same one’, nà L tún3 ‘the same person, a single person’.

-tún3 is attested in bahuvrihi compounds: [gìrè:-š]-tún3 ‘one-eyed’.

My assistant rejected plurals #túrá bè and #tún3 bè.

In recited counting sequences (‘1, 2, 3, 4, …’), the form is tí→.

The phrase: nà: túrú, bɔ̀: túrú, literally ‘mother one, father one’ (the other order is also common), means that the children in question are full siblings.

‘Other’ as adjective is pèrè. Unlike túrú, but like tún3, it functions as a modifying adjective. It therefore induces tone-dropping on a preceding noun or adjective: pèjú L pèrè ‘another sheep’ (pèjú). The plural is pèjú L pèrè bè ‘other sheep-Pl’. pèrè is also common as an adverb ‘otherwise’, ‘aside from that’, ‘elsewhere’.

**4.6.1.2 ‘2’ to ‘10’**

The numerals from ‘2’ to ‘10’ are in (74). For ‘2’ and ‘5’ there are slight differences between the form used after a noun and the form used in counting sequences (‘1, 2, 3, 4, …’). For ‘2’ the difference is that the vowel is lengthened in the counting form, but not after a noun or in isolation. This may reflect the influence of the preceding tí→ ‘1’ in the counting sequence. For ‘5’ the difference is in the initial-syllable tone, which is low after a noun but high in counting or isolation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(74)</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>all-purpose</th>
<th>after noun</th>
<th>counting</th>
<th>isolation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘2’</td>
<td>lỳ</td>
<td>lỳ</td>
<td>lỳ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘3’</td>
<td>tà:nú</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘4’</td>
<td>nàyə</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘5’</td>
<td>nùnè:</td>
<td>nùnè:</td>
<td>nùnè:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘6’</td>
<td>kùrè:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘7’</td>
<td>sɔ́:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘8’</td>
<td>sìlā:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘9’</td>
<td>tùwà:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘10’</td>
<td>pèrè</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘2’ also has a reduced variant lỳ: used when phrased with pronouns: kó lỳ: ‘the two of them (nonhuman)’, èmè lỳ: ‘the two of us’. H-toned lỳ and L-toned lỳ: are both mutations from an
original <LH>-toned *lɔy, cf. X lɔ: ságà ‘X-two’ in compound numerals of the type ‘22’ (§4.6.1.3).

The final H-tone in ‘3’, ‘4’, and (postnominal) ‘5’ is likewise often dropped to L-tone in allegro speech, but the H-tone is heard in careful pronunciations or when phrased with a following element (such as a postposition).

A cardinal numeral has no tonal effect on preceding nouns (or adjectives), which therefore have the same tonal (and segmental) form as they have without the numeral.


The multiples of ‘10’ are given in (75). Those from ‘20’ up consist of a reduced form pē- of ‘10’, see rv-Deletion §3.5.3.2, plus the relevant single-digit numeral. The single-digit numerals that elsewhere have /LH/ melody, including ‘5’ as well as ‘3’ and ‘4’, become {L}-toned in this combination, even in careful pronunciation. The tone of pē- dissimilates to that of the following syllable except in ‘20’. The effect is that we have L-toned pē- in ‘60’ and ‘70’ and <LH>-toned pē- in the other combinations.

(75) gloss form

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>’10’</td>
<td>pérú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’20’</td>
<td>pē-lɔy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’30’</td>
<td>pē-tà:nù</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’40’</td>
<td>pē-này’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’50’</td>
<td>pē-nùnè:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’60’</td>
<td>pē-kùrè:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’70’</td>
<td>pē-sɔ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’80’</td>
<td>pē-sìlè:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’90’</td>
<td>pē-tùwà:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The archaic alternative for ‘80’ is sùŋú. From this an archaic combination for ‘90’ is produced: sùŋú-pérú.


‘25’ is pē-lɔy nùnè: ságà. This shows that ‘5’ has its {H}-toned form following a decimal numeral. ‘57’ is pē-nùnè: sɔ: ságà.
4.6.1.4 Large numerals (‘100’, ‘1000’, …) and their composites

The stems in (76) are usually noun-like morphosyntactically.

(76)   | gloss | form | comment
       | ‘hundred’ | témérê | < Fulfulde
       |          |       | [heard as témérê before a modifying numeral]
       | ‘thousand’ | múñù |
       | ‘million’ | mílyo | < French

These can be followed by numerals that quantify over these larger units. The numerals ‘2’ and ‘5’ have their postnominal pronunciations, showing that ‘hundred’, ‘thousand’, and ‘million’ are morphosyntactically nouns. In the absence of a further demonstrative, témérê and mílyo (but not múñù) induce tone-dropping on a following simple numeral.

(77)   | a. péjú témérê 1̅kùrè: sheep hundred 1̅six ‘six hundred sheep’
       | b. péjú mílyo 1̅sò: sheep million 1̅seven ‘seven million sheep’
       | c. péjú múñù kùrè: sheep thousand six ‘six thousand sheep’

This difference between ‘thousand’ and the two other large numerals in tone-dropping on the following numeral is neutralized when a demonstrative is added. Now the common noun and the ‘hundred’ or ‘thousand’ term are tone-dropped (by the demonstrative), while the numeral has its normal tones.

(78)   | a. [péjú témérê]1̅ kùrè: yò: nà [sheep hundred]1̅ six Dist Pl ‘those six hundred sheep’
       | b. [péjú múñù]1̅ tà:nù yò: nà [sheep thousand]1̅ three Dist Pl ‘those three thousand sheep’

A large numeral involving hundreds or larger units can be followed by lesser numerals. The relevant common noun is often (but not always) repeated before a noninitial numeral on the order of thousands, hundreds, or ‘1-99’. This repetition can prevent confusion between e.g. ‘3210 sheep’ as in (79) and ‘3000 sheep (for) 210 (currency units)’.
4.6.1.5 Currency

As elsewhere in the region, the unit of currency corresponds to 5 CFA francs. It is called bú:dú (cf. Fulfulde buu du). Some of the more common combinations are often contracted, especially bú  ’túrú ‘one 5-CFA unit’. The unit bú:dú is used up to the million FCFA level, at which point million takes over (in the sense ‘one million FCFA’, not ‘5 million FCFA’).

4.6.1.6 Distributive iteration of numerals

A numeral from ‘1’ up can be iterated in distributive sense. For example, l5-l5y ‘two-two’ can mean ‘two at a time’, ‘by twos’, or ‘two each’.

(80) a. éwè+[L] [nā tū-tūrī] yē-tāgā
    market.Loc+[L] [person one-one] come-Prog
    ‘People come to the market one at a time.’
    [i.e. ‘People dribble into the market.’]

b. bé bɔmbɔ’n nūn-:nūn-: ọ̀jú
    3P!Sbj candy five-five give-Ifv
    ‘They will give five candies each (=to each person).’

/tūrū-tūrū/ ‘one-one’ is reduced to tū-tūrū by rv-Deletion (§3.5.3.2). This form is often used to suggest infrequency or wide scattering of individuals, cf. English once in a while. A syllable-final semivowel is dropped in the first iteration in l5-l5y ‘two-two’ and nā-nāy” ‘four-four’ (accidentally homophonous with nā nāy” ‘four people’).

Full pronunciations like tūrū-tūrū are also possible, especially in transparently distributive contexts (‘one each’) as opposed to more lexicalized functions (‘scattered, infrequent’). An example is (161a) in §6.6.3. The same section includes an example of adjective tūnɔ-tūnɔ ‘one each’ in distributive function.

‘Eleven-eleven’ is pērē: tūrū sāgā tūrū sāgā. The decimal term (‘10’, ‘20’, etc.) is not repeated if there is a following single-digit expression.

4.6.2 Ordinal adjectives

Ordinals are adjectives. They follow the relevant noun (or core NP) and control tone-dropping on it, like other modifying adjectives.

For ordinal ‘how-many-eth?’ (French quantième) à:ŋà-[L]−nir“i, see §13.2.7.

4.6.2.1 ‘First’ (kò-kẹ:) and ‘last’ (dùnɔ)

The ordinal ‘first’ is kò-kẹ:. It has no phonological resemblance to a cardinal numeral ‘1’. I have hyphenated it since the two vowels are disharmonic.
The ordinal ‘last’ (i.e. final in a series) is dùnọ́.
Both ‘first’ and ‘last’ are normal modifying adjectives, controlling tone-dropping on the noun.

(81) a. nị́nị́rị́L kọ́-kẹ́:  
    dayL first  
    ‘the first day’

b. nị́nị́rị́L dùnọ́  
    dayL last  
    ‘the last day’

An expression like gị́rị́L kọ́-kẹ́: ‘(the) first house’ can have a range of temporal interpretations, as in ‘after the bridge, it’s the first house on the left’, and in ‘that was the first (=oldest) house ever built in the village’. It is not, however, used in contexts like ‘I am first (in my class) in English’; this is expressed as ‘[focus have the front in English’ (gị́rẹ́ mị́: sọ́).

4.6.2.2 Other ordinals (suffix -nị́rị́)

Other ordinals are formed by adding -nị́rị́ to the numeral, whose tones are dropped. There are irregular contractions of the base numeral to Cv- shape in ‘second’, ‘third’, and ‘fourth’ (82). Other forms are regular, e.g. nụnẹ́.L-nị́rị́ ‘fifth’ and pẹ́rụ́.L-nị́rị́ ‘tenth’.

(82) Irregular ordinals ‘2nd’ to ‘4th’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple numeral</th>
<th>ordinal</th>
<th>gloss of ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lọ́y</td>
<td>lọ́L-nị́rị́</td>
<td>‘second’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tà:nú</td>
<td>tàL-nị́rị́</td>
<td>‘third’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>náy”</td>
<td>náL-nị́rị́</td>
<td>‘fourth’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ordinals of numerals for larger quantities are illustrated in (83). All tones are dropped before -nị́rị́.

(83) More ordinals

decimal  
[pè-lọ́y]L-nị́rị́  ‘twentieth’

decimal plus single-digit numeral  
[pè-rẹ̀-tùrù-sàgà]L-nị́rị́  ‘eleventh’

hundred  
tẹ́mđẹ́rẹ́L-nị́rị́  ‘hundredth’

hundred plus decimal numeral (two levels)  
[tẹ́mđẹ́rẹ́ pè-lọ́y]L-nị́rị́  ‘hundred and twentieth’
4.6.2.3 Unsuffixed ordinal with ‘month’

Alongside the regular combination ³:¹ tùwà:¹-ńir“í ‘ninth month’ (e.g. of a job), from ³: ‘month’, there is a special form ³:¹ tùwá: with the same literal sense but that specifically denotes ‘August’, i.e. a period just before the harvest when the granaries are often running low. The tones are different from those of the cardinal numeral combination ³: tùwà: ‘nine months’.

4.6.3 Fractions and portions

‘Half’ is péjèrè or sâm. With a possessor they are [X péjèrè] and [X sâm], i.e. ‘half of X’. They are not exact fractions and may denote any significant subpart.
5 Nominal and adjectival compounds

Compounds functioning as nouns or adjectives are covered in this chapter. The word-classes of the components (the initial and the final) may be n[noun], a[adjective], v[verb], num[eral], or a variable word-class (“x”). The initial and/or the final usually undergoes a tonal change versus its independent form. If “x” is a word-class type, the notation \( \tilde{x} \) means that it keeps its independent tones, \( \acute{x} \) that it drops tones to \{L\}, \( \grave{x} \) that it raises tones to \{H\}, and \( \check{x} \) that it becomes \{HL\}-toned. For example, the (\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \)) compound \( \text{dà:gà} \text{-pànà} \) consists of \( \text{dà:gà} \)’night’ (in tone-dropped form) plus \( \text{pànà} \) ‘food’. The compound functions (with its remaining \{H\}-tones dropped) as the initial of a \( \text{(\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \))} \) compound whose final is \( \text{nǐ:} \text{-ŋí} \), an archaic nominalization of \( \text{nǐ:} \) ‘eat (meal)’, cf. the end of §4.2.1. This compound then functions as the initial in a possessive-type (\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \)) compound whose final is \( \text{ně:} \text{-ŋé} \) ‘time’, which gets an \{H\} overlay as a bimoraic “possessed” noun.

\[
\begin{align*}
(84) \quad \text{[dà:gà-pànà]} & \text{-H} \quad \text{[nǐ:} \text{-ŋí]} \text{-H} \quad \text{ně:} \text{-ŋé} \\
& \text{‘dinner time’}
\end{align*}
\]

5.1 Nominal compounds

Nominal compounds contain (at least) two stems, usually one functioning as head and the other as modifier. Complex compounds with three or more stems can be broken down into two-part compounds in the usual hierarchical fashion; I try to bring this out using internal bracketing.

One of the longest compounds in the current lexicon is (84). The (\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \)) compound \( \text{dà:gà} \text{-pànà} \) ‘supper’ consists of \( \text{dà:gà} \) ‘night’ (in tone-dropped form) plus \( \text{pànà} \) ‘food’. The compound functions (with its remaining \{H\}-tones dropped) as the initial of an (\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \)) compound whose final is \( \text{nǐ:} \text{-ŋí} \), an archaic nominalization of \( \text{nǐ:} \) ‘eat (meal)’, cf. the end of §4.2.1. This compound then functions as the initial in a possessive-type (\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \)) compound whose final is \( \text{ně:} \text{-ŋé} \) ‘time’, which gets an \{H\} overlay as a bimoraic “possessed” noun.

\[
\begin{align*}
(84) \quad \text{[dà:gà-pànà]} & \text{-H} \quad \text{[nǐ:} \text{-ŋí]} \text{-H} \quad \text{ně:} \text{-ŋé} \\
& \text{‘dinner time’}
\end{align*}
\]

5.1.1 Compounds of type (\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \))

In this type, both the initial and the final preserve their regular tones. I have no clear examples of this type in TgK.

5.1.2 Compounds of type (\( \tilde{n} \n\tilde{n} \))

In this type, the final drops its tones while the initial has regular tones.

This is not a productive compound-formation pattern, but there are many multisyllabic nouns with compound-like appearance that end in an L-toned sequence like \( ČvČv \). In some cases, the initial and the final are more or less recognizable so the segmentation is clearcut (85).
(85)  Transparent (ǹ ǹ) compounds with possessive-like sense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>compound</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>púl:  n L tèrè</td>
<td>‘puffball’</td>
<td>púl:  n ‘Fulbe’, tèrè ‘penis’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wírí  n pòrù</td>
<td>‘wild sesame’</td>
<td>wírí ‘gazelle’, pòrù ‘sesame’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[gè:-gì  n L kàrù</td>
<td>‘vine (Ipomoea)’</td>
<td>gè:-gì  n ‘hungry person’, kàrù ‘hang (over a line)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These are interpretable semantically as a possessor followed by a possessed noun, e.g. the tongue-in-cheek ‘Fulbe (person)’s penis’ denoting a vaguely phallic puffball (Podaxis) that emerges vertically from the earth. It is possible that these compounds preserve an archaic {L} possessed-noun overlay of the sort found in several Dogon languages.

However, ́dògò  n ́kò:rò  ‘roselle variety’ is a variety of the cultivated plant ́dògó  ‘roselle’. ́sá  n ́gònò  ‘area where the community prays (on major religious holidays)’ consists of ́sá  ‘prayer’ and ́gònò  ‘pen, enclosure’.

In a number of other cases the initial and final are not recognizable, but the stem has the segmental and prosodic structure of a compound (86).

(86)  Semantically opaque (ǹ ǹ) compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>compound</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>́é:  n ́pùlò</td>
<td>‘bush (Pergularia)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kélë-gúgùrù</td>
<td>‘herb (Commelina)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bùgú-tòrò</td>
<td>‘gray-headed sparrow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́sá:-jìnè</td>
<td>‘blisters beetle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́dúmfì:-tè:rè</td>
<td>‘grasshopper (Acorypha)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́kòrù-kàjì:</td>
<td>‘tree locust’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́bádá-kàrò</td>
<td>‘gunpowder horn’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.1.3  Compounds of type (ǹ ǹ)

In this type, the final is a noun stem that keeps its regular tones, and functions semantically as the head. The initial drops its tones to {L} and functions as a modifier. This type is productive, though it gets competition from the possessive-type compound to be described below. In (87a), the tonal form of the noun corresponding to the initial is in parentheses in the comment.

(87)  (ǹ ǹ) compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>compound</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. simple (two stems)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́írí:  n ́kà:</td>
<td>‘nipple’</td>
<td>“breast-mouth” (írí)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́dògó:  n ́kènè:</td>
<td>‘back (body)’</td>
<td>“back(ward)-heart” (dògó)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́nènèpè:  n ́tàrà:</td>
<td>‘ganglion’</td>
<td>“groin-egg” (nènèpè)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>́màrúpà:  n ́tùwò:</td>
<td>‘rifle flint’</td>
<td>“rifle-stone” (màrúpà:)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
niː^{1⁻}-tɒló  ‘cow-pea pod’  ‘cow.pea-pod’ (niː)

b. composite (three or more stems)
[nɛnɛrɛ-kʊ̃]^{1⁻}-tɪmɛ́  ‘kneecap’  ‘[knee-head]-cover’
[ɑr Coroutinekʊ̃]-gʊrɛ́  ‘man’s bedroom’  ‘[man-unmarried]-house’

In some compounds, one or both of the elements is semantically obscure, at least at the current stage of TgK lexicography.

(88) Partially obscure (n̄ n̄) compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>compound</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[dɔgɔ-kɛnɛ]^{1⁻}-pʊrɛ́</td>
<td>‘upper back’</td>
<td>‘[back]-…’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aːgɑ^{1⁻}-yɛɡɑ́</td>
<td>‘morning’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A recurring issue in the study of Dogon nominal compounds is the fact that noun-adjective sequences and noun-noun compounds of the (n̄ n̄) type have the same tonal pattern and are difficult to distinguish, especially when the final element occurs in only one or two combinations.

5.1.4 Compounds with final verbal noun, type (n VblN)

5.1.4.1 Verbal nouns with incorporated object

Noun-VblN compounds are a special case of the (n̄ n̄) type just described, above. The initial is a noun denoting a typical or generic object, or one whose reference is understood in context (and whose specificity is therefore backgrounded). The compound as a whole denotes a type of eventuality, or the result of an action.

(89) Compounds with abstractive verbal noun final

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>compound</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kà^{n−}[ɔ−ɔ]</td>
<td>‘promise’</td>
<td>‘mouth-give.VblN’ (kà)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginɛ^{n−}[uju−u]</td>
<td>‘dozing’</td>
<td>‘sleep-…VblN’ (ginɛ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginɛ^{n−}[a−ɔ]</td>
<td>‘sleepiness’</td>
<td>‘sleep-catch.VblN’ (ginɛ)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In some cases, like ‘dozing’, it is not entirely clear what syntactic function the incorporated noun (here ginɛ) plays in the associated full clause type. As long as the noun is conventionally associated with the verb, it can be incorporated. This applies even to (defective) subjects in fixed subject-verb collocations like dàgə́ dɛː: ‘night fall’ (§11.1.4), with verbal noun dàgə́^{n−}[dɛ−ɔ].

5.1.4.2 Noun plus deverbal adjective

There are also cases where the “verbal noun” functions as an adjective modifying the noun. The modifier denotes an action that was involved in the making or modification of the object.
(compare English *pulled pork, roast beef, sliced bread*), and the preceding noun is the semantic head of the combination. The boundary between this and the abstractive type illustrated above is not always clear. However, to the extent possible I distinguish the adjectival examples by using a space rather than a hyphen.

5.1.5 Agentive and verbal-noun compounds of type \((\vec{x}\ \vec{y})\)

In these compounds, the verb appears in \(\{H\}\)-toned form as the compound final, and a representative noun (normally a typical direct object) appears in \(\{L\}\)-toned form as the initial. When this initial is based on a cognate nominal related to the verb, the compound superficially mimics a reduplication or iterative construction. The compound as a whole functions as an agentive. As noted in §4.2.6, above, uncompounded agentive derivatives are nonexistent.

\(\textit{91}\) Agentive compounds

a. with cognate nominal as initial

\(\textit{gák}\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{gâ}:\) ‘dancer’
\(\textit{gi}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{gî}:\) ‘thief’
\(\textit{ɲi}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{ɲî}:\) ‘assessor of fines’
\(\textit{sá}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{sâr}á\) ‘pray-er, devout Muslim’
\(\textit{nù}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{nû}:\) ‘singer’
\(\textit{jô}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{jô}:\) ‘healer’
\(\textit{ṣî}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{ṣî}:\) ‘noisy, talkative, blabbermouth’
\(\textit{jà}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{jà}:\) ‘merchant’
\(\textit{màn}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{mâ}:\) \(\textit{må}:\) ‘thinker; introspective person’
\(\textit{[tà]-tà}:\) ‘jokester’

b. with noncognate nominal as initial

\(\textit{ɲù}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{tî}:\) ‘millet-harvester (who uproots stems)’
\(\textit{[tî]-tî}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{yà}:\) ‘emissary’
\(\textit{pè}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{bî}:\) \(\textit{bî}:\) ‘day-laborer’
\(\textit{ɲà}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{ɲî}:\) ‘dandy, show-off’
\(\textit{kè}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{dà}:\) ‘(millet-)beer brewer’
\(\textit{sà}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{dí}:\) \(\textit{dí}:\) ‘one who drives off (chases away) birds’
\(\textit{iw}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{dî}:\) ‘ladies’ man’
\(\textit{d}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{gè}:\) ‘diviner of guilt who conjures images in water’
\(\textit{nù}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{gè}:\) ‘palmist (fortune-teller)’
\(\textit{må}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{bî}:\) ‘badly-behaved person’
\(\textit{bù}:\) \(\{H\}\) \(\textit{dà}:\) ‘treasurer’ (“holder of money”)
tùrà:bùL.-H lágá ‘Muslim fortune-teller’

c. with compound as initial

[kùⁿ.-²L.-H ñ: ‘seer’
[núm-siːjèL.-H siːjé ‘one who draws lines in sand’
[bǐn-kéjèL.-H kéjè ‘liar’

d. final includes derivational suffix

causative
kèdùràL.-H [kìw”i-m] ‘diviner whose biceps quiver’
transitive
kèrùL.-H [dígé-re] ‘diviner who uses twigs’
mediopassive
kèkèL.-bèL.-H [díw-é:] ‘dung beetle’
(“beetle” excrementL.-[carry-MP]”)

These agentive compounds are distinct from verbal-noun compounds whose initial is an {L}-
toned cognate nominal (or other fixed object) and whose final is a verbal noun (suffix -ú ~ -í ~ -ᵲ),
exemplified in the preceding section. The initial has the same {L}-toned form in both,
but the finals differ both in vocalism and tones. For example, núñú-núnjù ‘singer’ is distinct
from verbal noun núñú-[núnú-ú] ‘song singing’. The latter can also function adjectively in the
NP, as in (92).

(92) [l:ⁿ-[tò-tè;]:]L nűñùL.-[núnú-ú]
[sôd.a.sʰ-pôt]L songL-[sing-VblN]
‘(a/the) singing soda ash filtering pot’ (2011.1b.01)

To further complicate the situation, the form that functions as the agentive compound can also
serve as a compound verbal noun, though its final lacks the normal verbal-noun suffix and
tones. nùL.-H [díw-é:] is a compound agentive ‘millet-carriers’, but in (93a) it is the
complement of ‘begin’, and therefore functions as a synonym of compound verbal noun
nùL.-H [díw-ð-ð] ‘millet-carrying’. (93b) is another example of an apparent compound
agentive that functions as a compound verbal noun.

(93) a. nùL.-H [díw-é:] tórś-sé” ú ó-é
milletL.-H[carry-MP.VblN] begin-Pfv.Plsbj 2SgSbj see-Pfv
‘when you-Sg saw (=noticed) that they had begun the millet-carrying’
(2011.1a.15)

b. [kò wà] [pônɔL.-H kéjé d5-é] wà
[Nonh QuotSbj] [fonio]L.-H cut.VblN arrive-Pfv Quot
‘(they) say “(the time for) fonio-cutting (=harvesting) has arrived.”’ (2011.1a.25)

If the nominal initial of an agentive compound is itself possessed (or otherwise separately
determined), it takes its independent (non-compound) form, and the otherwise {H}-toned
verbal final appears with a possessed overlay, for example H.L.L if trisyllabic. So, in text
2011.1b.02, the (x 裥) agentive compound sǎL.-kájùwà ‘affair-supervisor’, i.e. ‘(house/business)
manager’ appears alongside the stacked possessor construction [sǎⁿ sǎ: L-kájùwà ‘(the)
supervisor of her (own) affairs’.

95
In some compounds, the tone patterns are the same as those of a possessive construction (cf. English *child's play*, *menswear*). The “possessor” precedes the “possessed” element and has its regular tones. As described in §6.2.1, the possessed nouns are subject to tonal changes (\( \bar{n}p \)). In TgK, there are two productive possessor-controlled overlays, \{HL\} for heavy (trimoraic or longer) stems and \{H\} for light stems.

(94) Possessive-type compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cpd</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dî( \bar{H} ) ( \bar{n}p ) ( \bar{H} ) ( \bar{n}p )</td>
<td>'low ground'</td>
<td>“water ground”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>búgú( \bar{H} ) ( \bar{L} ) ( \bar{n}p )</td>
<td>‘gunpowder soda ash’</td>
<td>“gunpowder soda.ash”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \bar{H} ) ( \bar{L} ) ( \bar{n}p )</td>
<td>‘bush (Waltheria)’</td>
<td>“fire parent-in-law”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \bar{H} ) ( \bar{L} ) ( \bar{L} ) sëgù</td>
<td>‘cotton basket’</td>
<td>“cotton basket”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. heavy compound final, with \{HL\}-tone

| jà\( \bar{H} \) \( \bar{L} \) \( \bar{n}p \) | ‘burlap’ | “fibre sack” |
| gùjú\( \bar{H} \) \( \bar{L} \) \( \bar{n}p \) | ‘goatskin waterbag’ | “skin waterbag” |
| máná\( \bar{L} \) \( \bar{L} \) \( \bar{n}p \) | ‘rubber waterbag’ | “plastic waterbag” |
| \( \bar{H} \) \( \bar{L} \) \( \bar{L} \) tógùrù | ‘cotton basket’ | “cotton basket” |
| \( \bar{H} \) \( \bar{L} \) \( \bar{n}p \) \( \bar{n}p \) súgùrú-\( \bar{J} \)\( \bar{L} \) | ‘spiral earring’ | “Fulbe’s ear-…” |

5.1.7 Compounds with \( \bar{f}p \) ‘child’ and variants

\( \bar{f}n \) ‘child’ is a transparent final, pronounced without contraction, in \( \bar{n}n \) compounds like those in (95). In this form it is common with human and inanimate reference. It is also used in this form with terms for juvenile animals (but not for the most common livestock animals). The human compounds are pluralized, as expected, with the suppletive \(-\( \bar{u}\)\( \bar{r} \)\( \bar{n}p \) ‘children’. The semantic nuance is indicated by italicized subheadings in (95). For the inanimates, the common feature is that the entity denoted by the compound is a small object associated in some way with a larger one. \( \bar{t}m\( \bar{e}\)\( \bar{f}n \) occurs twice with different senses (‘fruit of tree’, ‘sapling’).  

(95) compound gloss initial

a. human

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>literal ‘child of X’</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lárà( \bar{L} )( \bar{n}p )( \bar{f}p )</td>
<td>‘sister’s child’</td>
<td>lárá ‘sister’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \bar{H} )( \bar{L} )( \bar{n}p )( \bar{f}p )</td>
<td>‘rich person’</td>
<td>( \bar{H} )( \bar{f}p ) ‘chief’, ( \bar{f}p ) ‘chieftood’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

member of a set

| s\( \bar{t}\)\( \bar{L} \)\( \bar{n}p \)\( \bar{f}p \) | ‘man in his prime’ | s\( \bar{t}\)\( \bar{L} \)\( \bar{n}p \) ‘set of men in their prime’ |
| \( \bar{J} \)\( \bar{n}p \)\( \bar{f}p \) | ‘twin’ | \( \bar{J} \)\( \bar{n}p \) ‘pair of twins’ |

b. animal

| s\( \bar{L} \)\( \bar{n}p \)\( \bar{f}p \) | ‘colt’ | s\( \bar{L} \)\( \bar{n}p \) ‘horse’ |
| tórù\( \bar{L} \)\( \bar{n}p \)\( \bar{f}p \) | ‘piglet’ | tórù ‘pig’ |
j³⁷tûrà¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘young donkey’  j³⁷tûrà  ‘donkey’

c. inanimate
unit
sèwë¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘sheet of paper’  sèwë  ‘paper’

small but significant part of an object or assemblage
²⁶⁵sà¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘small burial pit’  ²⁶⁵sà  ‘cemetery’
nùm³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘finger’  nùm³  ‘hand, arm’
girë¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘eyeball’  girë  ‘eye(s’)
knà¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘spinning whorl’  knà  ‘spinning gear’
dìŋë¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘necklace jewel’  cf. knà-dìŋë: ‘necklace’
kàr³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘daba blade’  kàr³  ‘daba (hoe)’

small but significant adjunct to larger object
[ŋù⁻nà]:¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘round grindstone’  ŋù¹⁻nà:  ‘flat stone to grind on’
àr³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘lightning jolt’  àr³  ‘rain’

plant product
kènë¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘pit (of any fruit)’  kènë  ‘heart’
kàm³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘cotton seed’  kàm³  ‘cotton’
jòw³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘onion bulb’  jòw³  ‘onion’
ju:¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘millet grain’  ju:  ‘millet’
ùmùr³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘tamarind seed’  ùmùr³  ‘tamarind’
ôrùwò¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘jujube pit’  ôrùwò  ‘jujube’
tîmë¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘fruit of tree’  tîmë  ‘tree’

diminutive
dë³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘small waterjar’  dë³  ‘waterjar’
tîmë³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘sapling’  tîmë  ‘tree’

In some cases, a stem-final short vowel does vanish, by vv-Contraction (§3.5.7.2). This happens with several of the most common livestock terms (96a), but also with a few plant-product terms (96b).

(96)  compound  gloss  initial

a. animal
nàp³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘calf’  nàp³  ‘cow’
èr³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘goat kid’  èr³  ‘goat’
pèj¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘lamb’  pèj¹  ‘sheep’
kòg¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘chick’  kòg¹  ‘chicken’

b. plant
pàr³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘sesame seed’  pàr³  ‘sesame’
èr³⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘(a) peanut’  èr³  ‘peanut(s)’
mè:n¹⁻f.¹ⁿ  ‘wild date pit’  mè:n¹  ‘wild date (Balanites)’

Some other nouns look like frozen compounds of the type illustrated above, where the initial element does not occur separately. Examples: kòr³⁻f.¹ⁿ: ‘small intestine’, gèr³⁻f.¹ⁿ: ‘gear, equipment’.

All of the preceding cases end in a long i⁻f.¹ⁿ, making the connection with the noun i⁻f.¹ⁿ ‘child’ obvious, even if a final short vowel has been lost. However, there are also many nouns
that end in $y^n$, $f^n$, or some other short nasalized vowel, in descending order of transparent segmentability.

(97) compound gloss initial

a. human

\[ \text{ɲɛ́-}y^n \] ‘girl, daughter’  \[ \text{ɲɛ́} \] ‘woman’

\[ \text{àr}^\text{ń}á-}y^n \] ‘boy, son’  \[ \text{àr}^\text{ń}á \] ‘man’

(tonally distinct from

b. inanimate

\[ \text{tùw}^\text{ń}é-}y^n \sim \text{tùw}^\text{ń}è:s^n \] ‘small stone’  \[ \text{tùw}^\text{ń}ó \] ‘stone’

\[ \text{gir}^\text{ń}é-}y^n \sim \text{gir}^\text{ń}è:}^\text{ń} \] ‘eyeball’  \[ \text{gir}^\text{ń}é \] ‘(two) eyes’

[further reduced in \text{gir}^\text{ń}é-}\text{tùn} \text{báŋ} \] ‘one-eyed person’

Some further nouns that may contain a trace of a frozen *-\text{y}^n*, or which may have become secondarily associated with the current compound type, include \text{gàr}^\text{ń}é ‘kidney’, \text{dùw}^\text{ń}è:}^\text{ń} ‘eyeglasses’, \text{jìn}^\text{ń}–}\text{bày}^\text{ń} ‘newborn baby’, \text{pùn}^\text{ń}á ‘flour, powder’, \text{dù}^\text{ń} ‘pestle’, \text{tà:}^\text{ń}é:}^\text{ń} ‘proverb’.

The situation is complicated by a phonological convergence with nouns ending in a nasalized vowel that reflects an original human number suffix, see §4.1.1.

5.1.8 ‘Man’ (\text{àr\text{"a}}), ‘woman’ (\text{ɲɛ́}, \text{yà:, yɛ́})

The uncompounded terms are \text{àr}^\text{ń}á ‘man’ and \text{ɲɛ́} ‘woman’. As adjectives, for ‘male’ we get \text{àr}^\text{ń}á ‘male’, while for ‘female’ we get \text{yà:} for nonhuman or abstract referents and \text{ɲɛ́} for humans. The latter also appears as final in some compounds.

\text{ɲɛ́} ‘woman’ takes variant forms as a compound initial, and as a noun in some fixed noun-adjective collocations. A recurrent form is \text{yɛ́} (98b). The \text{ɲy} alternation is due to (diachronic) backward nasalization-spreading, see discussion in §4.1.2.

(98) Compounds with ‘woman’

a. \text{yà:L}  \text{kú^n} ‘unmarried (or divorced) woman’

\text{ègè:L–}yà: ‘(woman’s) co-wife’ (\text{ègè} ‘husband’)

\text{tirè:L}  \text{yà:} ‘kin on mother’s side’

b. \text{yèL}  \text{kàná} ‘newlywed woman’ (‘new woman’)

\text{yèL}  \text{ná:} ‘old woman’

\text{yèL}  \text{gàrè} ‘oldest woman’, ‘senior co-wife’

\text{yèL}  \text{dàgà} ‘junior co-wife’

\text{yèL}  \text{là} ‘betrothal (of a girl, at birth)’

c. \text{ɲèL–}nì:nì ‘act of taking bride to her husband’

\text{ɲèL–}gàrì ‘wedding’

\text{ɲè–}y^n ‘girl’ (‘woman-child’)

\text{àwàL}  \text{ɲè} ‘mother-in-law’ (i.e. female in-law)

\text{gùnɔ́L}  \text{ɲè} ‘female slave’

Cf. also \text{yà:jú} ‘religious marriage’. 

98
'Man’ is more regular in compounds and noun-adjective combinations. However, àrⁿá reduces in form in the combination àⁿ kàná ‘newlywed man’. ‘Boy’ is àrⁿá-ŷⁿ.

5.1.9 Compounds with ‘owner’ (ǹ H bàŋá)

bâŋá ‘owner (of possession), master (of slave)’, in {H}-toned “possessed” form, occurs in many compounds with preceding NPs simple and complex. The initial has its usual tones. The sense may be fairly literal, as in (99a). The construction is also used to describe the physical or personality type of a person (99b), or to define a person by reference to an affliction or other characteristic (99c).

(99) ‘Owner’ compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>compound</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. possession</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gîrⁿ H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘house-owner, head of house(hold)’, hence (with a possessor) ‘spouse’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tô:ró H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘fetish (idol) owner’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. physical or personality type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jám H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘dynamic one (in sports)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hákilé H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘quick learner’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>têté H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘arrogant person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[gîrè L mà] H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘nosy person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. affliction or other defining characteristic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sûkɔ̀ r-nûrⁿú H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘diabetic person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kùⁿ-lèrú H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘mildly crazy person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ tôⁿ bàjú ] H bàŋá</td>
<td>‘hunchback’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For {L}-toned bàŋá in singular demonstratives (n5 L bàŋá, yô L bàŋá), likely reflecting original falling-toned forms of the demonstrative, see (60) in §4.4.1.2.

5.1.10 Loose and tight compounds with ná: (‘authentic’, ‘entire’)

One can think of ná: as either a modifying adjective, or as a final in an {ǹ ŋ} compound; the two constructions are tonally indistinguishable. I will write it with a space, as for noun-adjective combinations. In (100) the main semantic patterns are represented. The sense ‘mother’ may underlie some of these senses, especially (100b).

(100) Combinations with ná:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. ‘old (person)’, especially female</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ye L ná:</td>
<td>‘old woman’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àn L ná:</td>
<td>‘old man’ (synonym àrⁿá L gàrà)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. ‘adult female (domestic animal)’
   nàŋ ná: ‘(female) cow’
   èrⁿ ná: ‘nanny-goat’
   pèjù ná: ‘ewe’

c. ‘entire plant’ (for any tree, shrub, or herb)
   ɛ̀rⁿ ná: ‘baobab tree’
   màŋgorò ná: ‘mango tree’

d. primary, prototypical, or large member of a set
   àrùkò ná: ‘large boubou’
   pòmn ná: ‘baggy pants (to knees)’
   è:rè ná: ‘groundnut’ (è:rè ‘peanut or groundnut’)  
   tôgù ná: ‘main palaver shed (of a village)’
   gi ná: ‘extended family’ (gir ‘house’)
   dùnù ná: ‘elephant’ (cf. dùn-yàrà ‘lion’)  
   lù:rò ná: ‘rock python’ (prototypical snake)

e. larger of two paired objects
   pù:ná: ‘flat stone for grinding on’

Occasionally a noun lends itself to two of these senses. In (100e), pù:ná: denotes a flattish, slightly concave stone on one’s hand. This smaller stone is called [pù-ná:], literally ‘child of pù:ná:’, see §5.1.7. pù:ná: has a second sense, denoting the prototypical cultivar of millet, in contrast to various other cultivars. A special combination pù: gɔⁿ is used in the sense ‘(entire) millet plant’, avoiding additional ambiguity of pù:ná:.

For nonprototypical or nonuseful species closely associated with an important or useful species (‘false jujube’, etc.), a miscellany of ad hoc devices are used. Examples are in (101).

(101)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>term</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>literal sense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. tā: 1HL ̀órùwò</td>
<td>‘false jujube’</td>
<td>“hyena’s jujube”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. àpù-bàlèmbá</td>
<td>‘wild roselle’</td>
<td>“roselle-???”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. è:rè-mùŋùrû’ù</td>
<td>‘peanut’</td>
<td>“peanut/groundnut-???”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(101a) illustrates the use of a nonhuman animal possessor. “Hyena’s jujube” is the tree *Ziziphus mucronata*, whose fruits resemble those of true jujube (*Ziziphus mauritiana*) but are not eaten. ‘Wild roselle’ is *Hibiscus cannabinus* (including the former *H. asper*), which resembles the cultivated food plant roselle (*H. sabdariffa*) but is used, if at all, only for cordage fiber. In (101c), unmodified è:rè subsumes peanut (*Arachis hypogaea*) and groundnut (*Vigna subterranea*), with the latter still treated as primary. The endings -bàlèmbá and -mùŋùrû’ù in (101b-c) are opaque to a native speaker. -bàlèmbá improbably resembles bàlèmbá ‘champion’. -mùŋùrû’ù may be a variant of mùŋ ‘Mossi’ (ethnic group of central Burkina Faso), perhaps crossed with the final of nà:mùŋùrû’ù ‘dream(n)’. For the Mossi connection compare Jamsay mùŋù-è:rè ‘peanut’, literally “Mossi-peanut/groundnut”.

100
5.1.11 Natural-species compounds with medial -nà-

The attested examples are in (102), in descending order of analysability. The tonal sequence is consistently x-nà-x.

(102) | compound       | gloss                  | related form
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tôgù-nà-tôgù</td>
<td>‘woodpecker’ verb tôgô ‘(woodpecker) peck deeply (wood)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàjù-nà-bàjù</td>
<td>‘wind scorpion’ verb bàjá ‘pull’ (said to drag its testicles)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kêm-nà-kêm</td>
<td>‘earwig (insect)’ kêm ‘pointed instrument (e.g. awl)’ (insect has a forked tail)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kà: sèrù-nà-sèrù</td>
<td>‘grasshopper (Acrida)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of possible relevance is nî:-kùmàkùⁿ ‘black-and-white cow-pea’, with nî ‘cow-pea’. The final element might be segmented as kùⁿ-mà-kùⁿ. In fact, my assistant volunteered a connection with kùⁿ ‘unmarried’. One could alternatively connect it with kùⁿ ‘head’, thinking of the respective black and white tips.

5.1.12 Instrumental relative compounds (‘oil for rubbing’)

In a construction that has some resemblance to a relative clause, the head noun is {L}-toned and is followed by an imperfective relative verb form. This verb has the same stem tones as in ordinary imperfective relatives (when clause-final tone-dropping has not applied), except that the imperfective suffix is H-toned (indicated by ^H superscript). /LH/-toned verb stems do not drop tones, as they often (but not always) do in ordinary imperfective relatives. Prosodically light /LH/-toned verbs (.CV, .CV: and .CVCy) are raised to {H}.

Unlike the Jamsay counterpart, which includes a generic 3Pl subject, TgK has no pronominal subject. If the head noun is not the logical direct object of the verb, the direct object may be specified, with its lexical tones, as with .nú: ‘millet’ in (103b).

(103) | compound       | gloss                  | verb
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. without a separate object</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>binominal</strong> lexically /LH/-toned verb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tô: nô-nú^H</td>
<td>‘drinking water’</td>
<td>nô: ‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kôrô^H bà-nú^H</td>
<td>‘trough for tapping’</td>
<td>bár’ô ‘beat (tomtom)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pà^H gô:-jú^H</td>
<td>‘exit, place to go out’</td>
<td>gô: ‘go out’ (2011.1b.05)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mediopassive</strong> /LH/-toned verb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tô: in-ê-nú^H</td>
<td>‘water for bathing’ (ôf: ) in-ô: ‘bathe’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| b. with a separate object | | |

The construction is productive and is not limited to a few lexicalized combinations.
The Prophet Muhammad is referred to as àmá tì-tìrì1-H yá: ‘God’s envoy’. The second word, tì-tìrì1-H yá: ‘emissary’, is based on tì-tìrì ‘important errand, mission’ and the verb yé (yá:-) ‘go’. Oddly, tì-tìrì1-H yá: does not have possessed-noun overlay after àmá.
5.2 Adjectival compounds

5.2.1 Bahuvrihi (“Blackbeard”) compounds

Bahuvrihi compounds are like English two-headed or redhead (red-headed). They describe an entity, often a person or animal, by reference to an attribute that consists of a noun (such as a body part) and either a modifying adjective or a numeral. Bahuvrihis can be nouns (redhead) or adjectives (red-headed).

5.2.1.1 With adjectival compound final (ń ā) or (ń ā)

These bahuvrihis are of the type [head-red], where the final is an adjective directly modifying the referent of the initial, and the combination describes a salient or defining feature of the overall referent.

In one subtype, illustrated in (107), the initial has its regular tones, so (as always with common nouns) it ends in a n̄-H tone. The final has overlaid {H} tone whether it is lexically /H/ or /LH/, but it is downstepped. I show downstep in (107), symbol ꜜ, but usually omit the symbol in textual transcriptions since it is not phonemic. For more nuances on downstep in bahuvrihis and elsewhere see §3.7.4.6.

(107) Initial with regular tones

a. final {H} from lexical /H/

\[kògòr̩\text{ }dùr̩\text{n}-i\text{ }bá\text{n}a \text{ “fish tail-red” (Hydrocynus)}\]
\[gùjú-i\text{ }gè\text{ “skin-black” (“African”)}\]
\[nà\text{ }kènè\text{-i\text{ }sì} \text{ “nose heart-black” (“evil person”)}\]
\[nà\text{ }bìn-i\text{ }mår̩\text{ “person belly-big”}\]
\[nà\text{ }giyè\text{-i\text{ }kàgàjú} \text{ “person body-rough” (“rough-skinned”)}\]
\[nè-yè\text{ }girè\text{-i\text{ }må} \text{ “girl eye-dry/hard” (i.e. ‘stubborn’)}\]

b. final {H} from lexical /LH/ (yàrù, è:, dègé)

\[giyè\text{-i\text{ }yòrù} \text{ “body-soft” (“person with soft skin’)}\]
\[giyè\text{-i\text{ }è:} \text{ “body-hard”}\]
\[nùmù\text{-i\text{ }dègé} \text{ “hand-short” (“short-armed’)}\]

In another type, somewhat less common, an {L}-toned noun is followed by a lexical-toned adjective (108). We could take these to be (ń ā) compounds with the adjective as head. They also have the same tones as the underlying noun-adjective sequence would have, with the noun tone-dropped before a modifying adjective.

(108) Initial tone-dropped

a. final with lexical /LH/

\[kùwò\text{-gòná} \text{ “foot-crooked” (“knock-kneed’)}\]
\[kùwò\text{-yù:}gù \text{ “foot-slow” (“slow-moving’)}\]
b. final with lexical /H/

\[
\begin{align*}
{k}\text{w}\text{ɔ́}-ť\text{g}\text{u} & \quad \text{“foot-fast” (‘fleet-footed’)} \\
k\text{à}^{\text{nL}}-\text{ɲɛ́r}^{\text{nú}} & \quad \text{“mouth-lightweight” (‘person who can’t keep a secret’)} \\
\end{align*}
\]

5.2.1.2 With numeral compound final (n num)

When the compound final in a bahuvrihi is a numeral, the compound has the same tone that it would have as an independent noun-numeral sequence. For ‘2’ through ‘10’ this means that both the noun and the numeral show lexical tones. For ‘1’, the adjectival \( t\text{ùn}^{5} \) is used, so the noun drops tones. The compound as a whole usually functions as an adjective, with a preceding tone-dropped noun. (109) illustrates the pattern using ‘person’ and ‘cow’ as the modified nouns.

(109) Bahuvrihi with numeral as final

a. initial is tone-dropped before adjectival numeral

\[
\begin{align*}
n\text{à}^{\text{l}} \cdot \text{gir}^{\text{nL}}-\text{tùn}^{5} & \quad \text{‘one-eyed person’} \\
\end{align*}
\]

b. initial and numeral final have lexical tones

\[
\begin{align*}
n\text{à}^{\text{l}} \cdot \text{gir}^{\text{-tà:nú}} & \quad \text{‘three-eyed cow’} \\
n\text{à}^{\text{l}} \cdot \text{kù}^{\text{o}-\text{jy}} & \quad \text{‘two-headed cow’} \\
n\text{à}^{\text{l}} \cdot \text{kù}^{\text{o}-\text{kúr}^{\text{ét}}} & \quad \text{‘six-headed cow’} \\
\end{align*}
\]
6 Noun Phrase structure

6.1 Organization of NP constituents

The core NP consists of the noun (whether simple or compound) and any following modifying adjectives.

6.1.1 Linear order

The order of elements is shown schematically in (110).

(110) possessor NP (except 1Sg pronoun) core NP
    noun
    adjective(s)
    numeral [optionally inverts with adjective if possessed/determined]
    NP-final elements (determiners and non-numeral quantifiers)
    postnominal pronominal possessor (pronoun plus ké, or 1Sg mà)
    tonal definite
    demonstrative
    plural (bè or nà)
    ‘all’ (sâ:)

Plural bè is generally omitted where redundant, i.e. with nonsingular numerals and with ‘all’. The schema omits wò ‘each, all’, which follows a noun-adjective combination but does not readily co-occur with the following elements (except in special senses).

1Sg possessor mà normally follows a numeral (N-Num-mà). My assistant accepted as grammatical an alternative order N-Num-mà-Num, but indicated that it was dispreferred. The two have quite different tonosyntactic implications; see (126a-b) in §6.2.1.5.

Examples showing the regular linear ordering are in (11).
péjú mà \textsuperscript{L}yò:\quad ‘that sheep-Sg of mine’ \quad N Poss Dem

[péjú már\textsuperscript{L+H} à kùrè:\textsuperscript{L}yò:\textsuperscript{n} nà:\quad ‘those 6 big sheep’ \quad N Adj Num Dem

[péjú kùrè: màr\textsuperscript{L}yò:\textsuperscript{n} nà:\quad ‘all those 6 big sheep’ \quad N Adj Num Dem ‘all’

sè:dù \textsuperscript{HI} [péjú már\textsuperscript{L+H} à kùrè:\textsuperscript{L}yò:\textsuperscript{n} nà:\quad ‘Seydou’s 6 big sheep’ \quad Poss N Adj Num

or: sè:dù \textsuperscript{HI} [péjú kùrè: màr\textsuperscript{L}yò:\textsuperscript{n} nà:\quad ‘all those 6 big sheep’ \quad Poss N Num Adj

Parenthesized ‘(inverted)’ in the gloss column, after ditto marks, means that optional Adjective-Numeral Inversion (§6.4.2) has applied.

In addition to linear order, the morphosyntax of NP also involves tonosyntactic processes and the apparent “bifurcation” break point for NPs functioning as relative-clause heads. In TgK there is no suffixal marking of humanness or animacy of the sort found in e.g. Jamsay or Najamba.

6.1.2 Headless NPs (absolute function of demonstratives, etc.)

Demonstratives and the universal quantifier ‘all’ readily occur in absolute function, without a preceding noun (112a-b).

Cardinal numerals are elicitable without a noun, as in kùrè:\textsuperscript{L+H} yò:\ ‘those six’. However, in texts they normally co-occur with at least a semantically light noun, e.g. nà ‘person’, or with nonhuman pronoun kó in possessor function (112c-d).

(112) a. \textsuperscript{I}n\textsuperscript{n} ná:\quad \textsuperscript{L}èw-è
1SgSbj Prox \textsuperscript{L}buy-Pfv
‘I bought this.’

b. \textsuperscript{I}n\textsuperscript{n} sà:\textsuperscript{n} (fú→) \textsuperscript{L}èw-è
1SgSbj all (all) \textsuperscript{L}buy-Pfv
‘I bought all (=everything).’

c. \textsuperscript{I}n\textsuperscript{n} [kó \textsuperscript{HI} kùrè:\textsuperscript{HI} six] \textsuperscript{L}èw-è
1SgSbj [NonhPoss \textsuperscript{HI} six] \textsuperscript{L}buy-Pfv
‘I bought six (of them).’

d. [kó \textsuperscript{NonhPoss} témdrë\textsuperscript{H} hundred] \textsuperscript{L}èn\textsuperscript{n}\textsuperscript{H} give.Imp
‘Give me one hundred (of them).’

Modifying adjectives may be used absolutely when the noun is understood or indeterminate. As with numerals, this is not common.

(113) \textsuperscript{3}wó \textsuperscript{bà\textsuperscript{n}} \textsuperscript{L}èw-è
3SgSbj red \textsuperscript{L}buy-Pfv
‘He/She bought (a/the) red one.’

For a textual example see ‘red’ and ‘white’ in (668) in §19.1.2.  

106
6.1.3 Apparent bifurcation (in relatives)

When a NP functions as head of a relative clause, it (seemingly) divides into two parts. The noun along with a possessor, an adjective, and/or a numeral (if present) remains intact inside the relative clause. In TgK, unlike most Dogon languages, a possessor changes its form in this combination.

The apparent bifurcation point is between the inner string Poss-N-Adj-Num and the set of late-NP elements that follow the verb of the relative clause: demonstrative pronouns, plural bè or nà, universal quantifiers (‘all’), and discourse-functional (DF) elements. These late-NP elements can be referred to collectively as the coda of the relative construction.

A more revealing analysis is that the relative clause is really just part of a NP of the type Poss-N-Adj-Num-Rel-‘all’-DF, and that the string to the left of the relative moves into the relativization site, leaving the final elements (determiners, ‘all’, discourse-function elements) in their original position. For the details, see chapter 14.

6.1.4 Internal bracketing and tone-dropping (unpossessed NP)

This section considers tonosyntactic effects relevant to the internal structure of unpossessed NPs in functions other than relative-clause head. Certain elements (possessors, adjectives, demonstratives, relative clauses) are reference restrictors, and impose a tone overlay on the noun and on any intervening words. Of these, all except possessors are postnominal, so they target a domain (including the noun) to their left. Addition of a possessor significantly complicates both the “regular” morphosyntax and the tonosyntax. Possessors may be prenominal or postnominal, and they may be simple (identical in form to an ordinary NP) or they may be followed by a possessive morpheme kè. These choices have consequences for the tonosyntax.

This section considers unpossessed NPs, and works from the inside out. At the center is the core NP consisting of the noun (simple or compound) and any modifying adjectives. An NP may consist entirely of a core NP with no further material (N, N-Adj, or N-Adj1-Adj2). In this case, the final word in the core NP preserves its lexical tones, while preceding words beginning with the noun are tone-dropped to {L}. Recall that the lexical melody of a noun or adjective must contain an H-tone (§3.7.1.3-4), so tone-dropping is always audible.

(114) Core NP

a. N (with lexical tones)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>‘sheep’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>péjú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àrⁿá</td>
<td>‘man’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. N¹ Adj

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N¹</th>
<th>‘big sheep’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>péjú L márⁿá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>péjú L géⁿ</td>
<td>‘black sheep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àrⁿá L mⁿú</td>
<td>‘bad man’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àrⁿá L gàrà</td>
<td>‘old man’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. [N Adj]¹ L Adj2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[N Adj]¹ L Adj2</th>
<th>‘big black sheep’ (or: [pèjú géⁿ] L márⁿá)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[àrⁿá gàrà] L mⁿú</td>
<td>‘bad old man’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In (114c), it cannot be scientifically proven whether the final adjective controls tone dropping on both preceding words, or whether tone-dropping applies cyclically, each time affecting only the word immediately to the left of the controlling word. My tonosyntactic notation is based on the noncyclical interpretation: [N Adj1]^{L} Adj2. The cyclical version might be represented schematically as [N^{+} Adj1]^{L} Adj2, with strikethrough on the leftmost superscript, reflecting an initial cycle with [N^{+} Adj1].

The core NP may be extended by adding a cardinal numeral (this is sometimes called “NumP”). The core NP and the numeral are tonosyntactically autonomous, each keeping its own tones. Therefore the core NP preceding the numeral (115a-c) has exactly the same form it had in (114) above.

(115) numeral plus core NP

a. N Num
   pèjù kúrè: ‘six sheep’

b. N^{+} Adj Num
   [pèjù márⁿá] kúrè: ‘six big sheep’

c. [N Adj1]^{L} Adj2 Num
   [pèjù màrⁿà]^{L} gèⁿ kúrè: ‘six black sheep’

The NP-coda elements are determiners (demonstratives, definite), plural, ‘all’, and DF markers like Topic (‘as for’) and ‘only’. Of these, only demonstratives (§4.4.1.2) are full-fledged tonosyntactic controllers, imposing obligatory tone-dropping on a preceding noun (116a). However, when certain other elements are combined with the N-Dem combination, a more complex tonosyntactic processes take place. If the demonstrative is immediately preceded by an adjective (116b), the output appears to depend on whether the tonal definite is present.

If the demonstrative stem is nɔː: (proximate) or yɔː: (near-distant), the demonstrative is “optionally” tone-dropped. Arguably the floating L-tone of the tonal definite is the trigger for the tone-dropping, but the tonal definite itself is not always independently audible. In (116b), pèjù márⁿá^{L} nɔː: ‘this big sheep’ does have an L-tone on the final syllable of ‘big’ (otherwise márⁿa), which can be taken as the tonal definite. However, if we replace márⁿa ‘big’ with an /LH/-melody adjective like dògù ‘heavy’, the result is pèjù dògù nɔː: ‘this heavy sheep’. One can argue that this is underlying /dògù+L/, and that the floating L is inaudible on the adjective for phonological reasons (no <HL>-toned syllable can occur in this position), but that this covert L-tone is responsible for the L-toned demonstrative nɔː:, as is the overt L-tone in pèjù márⁿa^{+L} nɔː:.

In the alternative versions in (116b), [pèjù màrⁿà / dògù]^{L} nɔː, the final demonstrative retains its lexical H-tone, the preceding N-Adj string is tone-dropped en bloc, and there is no sign (direct or indirect) of the tonal definite.

When the string preceding the demonstrative ends in a numeral, a special constructional \{L\}+H tone overlay occurs on the N-...-Num string, and the demonstrative is again tone-dropped, this time with no evidence that the tonal definite is involved (16c-d). This is schematized as [(N) Num]^{L-H}^{L} Dem.
core NP (and numeral) plus demonstrative

a. N^L Dem
   \[ \text{pèjù}^L n\ddott: \quad \text{‘this sheep’} \]
   \[ \text{àr}^r\ddott n: \quad \text{‘this man’} \]

b. N^L Adj^L Dem, or [N Adj]^L Dem
   \[ \text{pèjù}^L \text{màr}^r/\text{dògù}^L n\ddott: \quad \text{‘this big/heavy sheep’} \]
   or:
   \[ [\text{pèjù} \text{màr}^r/\text{dògù}^L n\ddott] \quad \text{‘this big/heavy sheep’} \]

c. Num^L+H L Dem
   \text{proximate and near-distant}
   \[ \text{kùré}^L+H n\ddott: \quad \text{‘these six’} (\text{< } \text{kùré}, n\ddott) \]
   \[ \text{pèrú}^L+H y\ddott: \quad \text{‘those ten over there’} \]
   \[ (\text{< } \text{pèrú}, y\ddott) \]
   \text{far-distant}
   \[ \text{pèrú}^L+H \text{èrú kš nà} \quad \text{‘those three sheep’ (far-distant)} \]

d. […] Num^L+H L Dem
   \text{proximate and near-distant}
   \[ [\text{pèjù} \text{kùré}^L+H n\ddott] \quad \text{‘these six sheep’} \]
   \text{far-distant}
   \[ [\text{pèjù} \text{pèrú}^L+H \text{èrú kš nà} \quad \text{‘those three sheep’ (far-distant)} \]

The far-distant demonstrative, which has quite distinct morphology and is not included in (116), is not tone-dropped.

The plural morpheme is \textit{bè} when added to a core NP. It is generally omitted, because redundant, in NPs that include a nonsingular numeral or an ‘all’ quantifier. Demonstratives (and relative clauses) have a distinct plural marker \textit{nà}. Plural morphemes \textit{bè} and \textit{nà} have no tonal effect on preceding words in the NP. Since both \textit{bè} and \textit{nà} are L-toned, we would not be able to hear tone-dropping were it to occur on them.

NP with plural morpheme

a. N Pl
   \[ \text{pèjù bè} \quad \text{‘sheep-Pl’} \]
   \[ \text{àr}^r\ddott bè \quad \text{‘men’} \]

b. Dem Pl
   \[ n\ddott: nà \quad \text{‘these’} \]
   \[ èrú wé nà \quad \text{‘those’ (human, far-distant)} \]

c. N Dem Pl
   \[ \text{pèjù}^L n\ddott: nà \quad \text{‘these sheep’} \]
   \[ \text{àr}^r\ddott n: \quad \text{‘those men’ (far-distant)} \]

Universal quantifiers (‘all’) follow demonstratives and (if present) a plural morpheme. The common ‘all’ form is \textit{sà}:^n. When added to a core NP with no intervening numeral, it is tonosyntactically inert; neither the ‘all’ word nor the core NP changes its tones. However,
when a numeral precedes \( sâ:\textsuperscript{n} \) (118c), we get a constructional tone overlay similar to that schematized in (116d) above. Though \( sâ:\textsuperscript{n} \) itself keeps its tones, the preceding numeral and any preceding words beginning with the noun have the \{L\}+H overlay. Tone-dropping also applies to the nonhuman pronoun \( kó \) that is often used as a default complement when the numeral is not accompanied by a noun.

(118) NP with universal quantifier

a. N ‘all’
   \( \text{pèjú sâ:\textsuperscript{n}} \)
   ‘all of the sheep’

b. N\textsuperscript{1} Adj ‘all’
   \( \text{pèjú\textasciitilde{h} mā\textasciitilde{h}â sâ:\textsuperscript{n}} \)
   ‘all the big sheep’

c. [… Num]\textsuperscript{L}+H ‘all’
   \( \text{kò kùré:\textasciitilde{h} sâ:\textsuperscript{n}} \)
   \( \text{pèjú kùré:\textasciitilde{h} sâ:\textsuperscript{n}} \)
   ‘all six (of them)’
   ‘all six sheep’

The \{L\}+H overlay is also found when a string ending in a numeral is followed by a pronominal possessor such as 1Sg \( mâ \), see (126a-b) in §6.2.1.5 below.

For \( wô \rightarrow ‘each’, \) see §6.6.3, below.

6.2 Possessives

A nonpronominal NP possessor always precedes the possessum. A pronominal possessor precedes the possessed NP in some cases, and follows it in others. There is no genitive linker between possessor and possessum.

For pronominal possessors, there are two constructions. In the most common type, a pronoun with no special possessive marker directly precedes the possessed noun, except that the 1Sg possessor form is \( mâ \) after the possessed noun and any modifying adjective or numeral. I refer to this mix of postposed 1Sg \( mâ \) and various preposed pronominal possessors as the nonappositional possession construction. It is found with alienably as well as inalienably possessed nouns. In the other type, which is generally optional but fairly common with alienably possessed nouns (especially those of complex structure, for example including a numeral), the possessed noun and any modifying adjective or numeral is followed by the sequence of a pronominal possessor and \( kè \) ‘possession, (sb’s) thing’. Since \( kè \) is in apposition to the possessed noun, e.g. ‘house [my thing]’ for ‘my house’, I refer to this as the appositional possession construction, even though the original appositional character has been partially eroded over time. To summarize so far, we have nonappositional [PronP X] except for [X 1SgPoss], and appositional [X [Pron \( kè \)]], where X is the possessed noun and any modifying adjective or numeral.

When the possessor precedes the possessum (as with all nonpronominal possessors, and with pronouns other than 1Sg in the nonappositional construction), the possessor controls a tonal overlay, \{HL\} on a heavy or composite possessum or \{H\} on a light uncompounded possessum. The possessor itself retains its regular tonal form. When the possessor follows the possessum, the latter keeps its regular tones.
6.2.1 Tonal changes on possessed NPs after a possessor

I refer to the tone overlay controlled by a preceding possessor as the possessed-noun or possessor-controlled overlay. However, the target domain of the overlay is not limited to a word, rather it comprises the (possessed) noun plus any modifying adjectives and numerals. I begin here, however, with the possessed forms of ordinary nouns and of noun-noun compounds.

Prosodically light (one or two moras) unsegmentable nouns have \{H\} as the possessed overlay, while prosodically heavy and all morphologically composite nouns have \{HL\} as the overlay, with the H limited to the first syllable. \{L\} as possessed-noun overlay is attested with two monosyllabic stems. In all cases, the possessed-noun overlay erases the lexical melody.

Downstep is usual when the possessor-controlled overlay is \{H\} but not \{HL\}. Downstep can be removed under certain conditions, and it does not appear to be a matter of phonological tone.

6.2.1.1 Possessed-noun \{H\} for prosodically light simple nouns

Prosodically light noun stems are those of one or two moras, i.e. Cv, Cv; and CvCv stems. If the stem is already lexically /H/-toned, there is no phonological change, but (phonetic) downstep is common (119a). If the stem is lexically /LH/-toned, the change to a flat \{H\} overlay is audible (119b). I therefore attribute \{H\} to both lexically /H/- and /LH/-toned nouns when possessed.

(119) \{H\} overlay for unsegmentable, prosodically light possessed noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>possessed</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. stem of 1-2 moras, lexically /H/-toned, no audible change</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ká&quot;</td>
<td>(\text{H}ká^a)</td>
<td>‘mouth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kú&quot;</td>
<td>(\text{H}kú^a)</td>
<td>‘head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>já</td>
<td>(\text{H}já)</td>
<td>‘area, zone’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bé:</td>
<td>(\text{H}bé:)</td>
<td>‘excrement’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tém</td>
<td>(\text{H}tém)</td>
<td>‘strap’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niñí</td>
<td>(\text{H}niñí)</td>
<td>‘maternal uncle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>péjú</td>
<td>(\text{H}péjú)</td>
<td>‘sheep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kéné</td>
<td>(\text{H}kéné)</td>
<td>‘liver’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. stem of 1-2 moras, lexically /LH/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná</td>
<td>(\text{H}ná)</td>
<td>‘person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bè</td>
<td>(\text{H}bè)</td>
<td>‘beard’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s3⁰</td>
<td>(\text{H}s3⁰)</td>
<td>‘horse’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>díⁿ</td>
<td>(\text{H}díⁿ)</td>
<td>‘hip’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pé</td>
<td>(\text{H}pé)</td>
<td>‘wife, woman’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>níː</td>
<td>(\text{H}níː)</td>
<td>‘paternal aunt’ (variant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>têː</td>
<td>(\text{H}têː)</td>
<td>‘honey’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dêːⁿ</td>
<td>(\text{H}dêːⁿ)</td>
<td>‘elder same-sex sibling’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>èrⁿê</td>
<td>(\text{H}èrⁿê)</td>
<td>‘goat’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
One kin term with \(\text{CvCv}^{\prime}\) shape (including a frozen diminutive morpheme) is also \{H\}-toned when possessed (120a). It has three moras, but is treated as though \(\text{CvCv}\), suggesting that the length of the final vowel is disregarded for purposes of weighing. For another kin term, the possessed form has a slight segmental change, adding a contracted form of the diminutive morpheme (120b).

\[\begin{align*}
\text{a.} & \quad \text{\(\text{CvCv}^{\prime}\)} \\
\quad \text{sùgè} & \quad \text{\(\text{H} \text{sùgè}^{\prime}\)} \\
& \quad \text{‘younger same-sex sibling’}
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\quad \text{b.} & \quad \text{with segmental change (diminutive ending)} \\
\quad \text{ègè} & \quad \text{\(\text{H} \text{ègè}^{\prime}\)} \\
& \quad \text{‘husband’}
\end{align*}\]

\{H\}-toned possessed nouns are usually downstepped after a nonpronominal possessor ending in an H-tone. For more on downstep, see §3.7.4.6. Because it is a somewhat elusive phenomenon, I am reluctant to treat it as fully grammatical, and usually I do not mark it in phonological transcriptions.

Possessed nouns, like other nouns, are subject to the addition of a final L-tone to mark weak discourse-definiteness (tonal definites, §4.4.1.1) or location (tonal locatives, §8.2.1). Since the nouns considered in this section are prosodically light, the resulting \{H\}+L mimics a true /HL/ melody, i.e. bisyllabic H.L and monosyllabic <HL>. Downstep does not usually apply to \{H\}+L-toned definite possessed nouns. Example: \(\text{ú} \text{\(\text{H} \text{gír}^{\prime}\)} \text{‘your-Sg house’}\) (with downstep), but tonal definite or tonal locative \(\text{ú} \text{\(\text{H} \text{gír}^{\prime}\)} \text{\(\text{L}\)}\) (without downstep).

The ‘it is’ clitic =\(y\) requires the \{HL\} pattern on a preceding possessum. Again, this results in removal of downstep on the onset. For a monosyllabic vowel-final stem, the only syllable is <HL>-toned, as in \(\text{ú} \text{\(\text{H} \text{ká}^{\prime}\)} \text{‘your-Sg mouth’}\) becoming \(\text{ú} \text{\(\text{H} \text{ká}^{\prime}\)} =\(\text{y}^{\prime}\) ‘it is your mouth’. Bisyllabic stems shift from H.H to H.L, as in \(\text{ú} \text{\(\text{H} \text{gír}^{\prime}\)} \text{‘your-Sg house’}\) becoming \(\text{ú} \text{\(\text{H} \text{gír}^{\prime}\)} =\(\text{y}^{\prime}\) ‘it is your house’. It is possible that this tonal pattern reflects the presence of the tonal definite (final L-tone) before the clitic.

6.2.1.2 Possessed-noun \{HL\} for heavy and complex nouns

Prosodically heavy nouns are those of three or more vocalic moras, specifically including \(\text{CvCv}\) and \(\text{CvCvCv}\). The lexical distinction between /H/ and /LH/ melodies is erased, but this time the overlay is \{HL\}, with the tone break at the first syllable boundary. This is shown in (121), using nouns that are not treated as composite (morphemically or prosodically). There is usually no downstep with the \{HL\} overlay.
(121) {HL} overlay for prosodically heavy possessed noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>possessed</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. stem of 3 moras, /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áːɲǔ</td>
<td>HL:áːɲǔ</td>
<td>‘vein’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>báːɡá</td>
<td>HL:báːɡà</td>
<td>‘stick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yɔːwɔ̀</td>
<td>HL:yɔːwɔ̀</td>
<td>‘well bag’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:Cv:Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tóɡɔːrɔ̀</td>
<td>HL:tóɡɔːrɔ̀</td>
<td>‘person with the same name’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kɛːɡɛːrɛ</td>
<td>HL:kɛːɡɛːrɛ</td>
<td>‘saddle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>báŋjaráː</td>
<td>HL:báŋjaráː</td>
<td>‘shin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. stem of 3 moras, /LH/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gɛːw</td>
<td>HL:gɛːw</td>
<td>‘belch(ing)’ (&lt;gɛːwú)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:Cv:Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðɔtɛː</td>
<td>HL:ðɔtɛː</td>
<td>‘well (for water)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pɔːlĩː</td>
<td>HL:pɔːlĩː</td>
<td>‘pulley’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pɔːrɛːː</td>
<td>HL:pɔːrɛːː</td>
<td>‘brick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìnãː</td>
<td>HL:ìnãː</td>
<td>‘mother’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:Cv:Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mɔtɔmː</td>
<td>HL:mɔtɔmː</td>
<td>‘scorpion’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:Cv:Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tǎːbɔːl</td>
<td>HL:tǎːbɔːl</td>
<td>‘table (selling stand)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cv:Cv:Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɛrjuːwɛ</td>
<td>HL:sɛrjuːwɛ</td>
<td>‘spur’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìːsɪrɛːːi</td>
<td>HL:ìːsɪrɛːːi</td>
<td>‘urine’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kɔɡùjoː</td>
<td>HL:kɔɡùjoː</td>
<td>‘cough’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of course, many prosodically heavy stems are composite in one sense or other: a) one can identify at least one of the composite morphemes; b) the noun appears to contain an initial 
Cv-reduplication; or c) the noun can be divided into two segments each of a shape like CvC or 
Cv:Cv and has a tone pattern compatible with noun-noun compound status. There are also a
very small number of Cv:Cv nouns that are arguably composite.

Reduplicated nouns are in (122). Most are Cv-Cv: kin terms (122b) and Cv-Cv:Cv or similar 
nouns (122c). They have the {HL} possessed-noun overlay characteristic of heavy stems. More interestingly, there are a handful of reduplicated Cv1Cv1Cv1 stems that also have 
{HL}, diverging from the morphologically simple Cv:Cv nouns in (119) in the preceding 
section, which have {H} after a possessor. In fact, the possessed overlay can be used as a test 
for reduplicated status of Cv1Cv1Cv1 nouns. There are a number of such nouns that fail this test 
and can therefore be taken as morphologically unreduplicated (the repetition of syllables 
being accidental); contrast (122a) with (46b) in §4.1.4, above.
(122) \{HL\} overlay for nouns with initial \(Cv\)-reduplication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>possessed</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(jù-jù)</td>
<td>(HL)jù-jù</td>
<td>‘judge’ (French \textit{juge})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nà-nà)</td>
<td>(HL)nà-nà</td>
<td>‘grandmother’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nà)</td>
<td>(HL)nà</td>
<td>‘grandfather’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(gú-gúrù)</td>
<td>(HL)gú-gúrù</td>
<td>‘grass’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nè-nègè)</td>
<td>(HL)nè-nègè</td>
<td>‘groin’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composite noun stems of the more classic type also have the \{HL\} overlay when possessed, but the position of the tone break depends on the prosodic structure as well as on the compound break. If the initial is prosodically light, i.e. \(Cv\)-, \(Cv\)-, or \(CvCv\)-, the H-tone component of \{HL\} continues to the end of the initial, while the final is \{L\}-toned (123a-c). If the initial is prosodically heavy, the tone break occurs at the first syllable boundary, as it would without the final (123d-f). In both types, the initial gets \{H\} or \{HL\} overlay in the usual way based on its weight, and the final is \{L\}-toned.

(123) \{HL\} overlay for compound nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>possessed</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(bè-sè)</td>
<td>(HL)bè-sè</td>
<td>‘father’s younger brother’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(kà-gàn)</td>
<td>(HL)kà-gàn</td>
<td>‘rim’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jè\ gàr)</td>
<td>(HL)jè\ gàr</td>
<td>‘old(est) woman’ (fused N-Adj)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(gù\发出)</td>
<td>(HL)gù\发出</td>
<td>‘full outback’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bè-gèr)</td>
<td>(HL)bè-gèr</td>
<td>‘side’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i:\ sèg)</td>
<td>(HL)i:\ sèg</td>
<td>‘elder of two young children’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(tir-wè)</td>
<td>(HL)tir-wè</td>
<td>‘grandchild’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nì-wè)</td>
<td>(HL)nì-wè</td>
<td>‘sister’s child’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(là-i)</td>
<td>(HL)là-i</td>
<td>‘sister’s child’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jè-lè)</td>
<td>(HL)jè-lè</td>
<td>‘twin sibling’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(gù-dù)</td>
<td>(HL)gù-dù</td>
<td>‘camel’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pèl-gùm)</td>
<td>(HL)pèl-gùm</td>
<td>‘courtyard’, ‘family’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pèl-gùm)</td>
<td>(HL)pèl-gùm</td>
<td>‘pigeon’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There are a number of stems that cannot be segmented into recognizable initial and final stems, but that have prosodic shapes and/or other phonological features consistent with compounds. It appears that they are treated as compounds for purposes of determining the possessed-noun overlay. The segmentation is clear in the case of ‘harvesting knife’ (124c) because of ATR disharmony. However, compound-like tonal patterning seems to apply even to kündóró ‘head’ (124c). Its unpossessed L.H.H.H tone pattern, and comparison with synonym kúⁿ⁻kêné, point to a segmentation as kúⁿ⁻núgóró, whose regular possessed form should then be #¹¹kú⁻núgóró, compare (123a) above. Instead, its possessed form is HL kündóró, which is consistent with a compound break in the middle (unpossessed kündóró). I conclude that the default prosodic treatment of quadrisyllabics is as compounds of two bisyllabic stems. This is suggested by the bracketing in the “possessed” column in (124a-c). The alternative would be to revise the model for phonological realization of {HL} overlay (§3.7.3.2), so that quadrisyllabics with this overlay appear in H.H.L.L form, instead of having the break as close as possible to the left edge.

(124) Multisyllabic nouns arguably treated prosodically as compounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Possessed</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. CvCCv</td>
<td>with unusual CC cluster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔ̀mù̄jɔ̀̄n̄g</td>
<td>HL ɔ̀mù̄jɔ̀̄ḡ</td>
<td>‘low ground’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. CvCvCv:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màrùʔpà:</td>
<td>HL [máru]pà:</td>
<td>‘rifle, musket’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. CvCvCvCv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>àrù̄ségĕ̄</td>
<td>HL [árú]ségĕ̄</td>
<td>‘animal’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wògòtòró</td>
<td>HL [wógò]tòró</td>
<td>‘cart’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dègĕ̄tò̄ró</td>
<td>HL [değé̆]tò̄ró</td>
<td>‘doctor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kündóró</td>
<td>HL kündóró</td>
<td>‘head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàrábàrá</td>
<td>HL [kára]bàrá</td>
<td>‘calabash box’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disharmonic vowelism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pòrúkèwè</td>
<td>HL pòrúkèwè</td>
<td>‘harvesting knife’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The restriction of the {HL} overlay to prosodically heavy possessed nouns, specifically not including lighter Cv: and CvCv stems, is unusual from a comparative Dogon perspective. However, the {HL} pattern does appear on light stems that function as postpositions (particularly spatial ones), as in postposition bòrò ‘under’ from noun bòrò ‘rear’, and on some toponyms like the village name báwⁿ ‘Bawa’. However, one might argue that such forms
contain the final L-tone of the tonal locative. The historical connection between possessed-noun overlays, postpositional tones, and tonal locatives of ordinary nouns, remains to be worked out.

6.2.1.3 Possessed-noun {L} for two monosyllabic nouns

Finally, there are two important monosyllabic noun stems that have {L} overlay after a possessor (125). Both are human nouns that have kinship senses when possessed.

(125) {L} possessed-noun overlay

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Possessed</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. stem /H/-toned</td>
<td>L:\n</td>
<td>\nL:\n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. stem /LH/-toned</td>
<td>L:\n</td>
<td>\nL:\n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contrast \(u^{L:i:n}\) ‘your-Sg child’ and \(u^{L:\n}\text{较少}\) ‘your wife’, showing {L}-toned possessed nouns, with the {H}-toned possessed nouns in e.g. \(u^{L:\n}\text{较少}dæ\) ‘your waterjar’ (lexical \(dæ\)), \(u^{L:\n}\) ‘your medication’ (\(lð\)), \(u^{L:\n}bɔ^n\) ‘your-Sg tomtom’ (\(bɔ^n\)), and \(u^{L:\n}\text{较少}\) ‘your-Sg tea’ (\(tɛ\)).

Historically, \(kɛ\) in pronominal possessives like \(u\ kɛ\) ‘your(s)’, originated as an L-toned possessed form of the noun ‘thing’ (cognates still mean ‘thing’ in several Dogon languages). However, this is opaque synchronically, since \(djɔ\) is the current word for ‘thing, object’, and I gloss \(kɛ\) simply as ‘Poss’.

Another likely vestige of an originally more widespread possessor-controlled {L} overlay is the small set of {L}-toned terminal elements found at the end of certain relative clauses. Some of these are tone-dropped forms of common nouns, used in resumptive fashion at the end of relative clauses (§14.1.7).

6.2.1.4 Downstep in possessed noun

In most cases the possessor itself (e.g. noun, noun-adjective, pronoun) ends in an H-tone. As noted above, most possessed nouns begin with an H-tone, and may be entirely {H}-toned. Phonetically, the final H of the possessor and the H of the possessed can approximate a tonal terrace, in the sense that there is no sharp pitch discontinuity at the word boundary. This is typical with pronominal possessors, which are monosyllabic and H-toned. Therefore \(u^{L}\text{较少}gir^n\) ‘your-Sg house’ (\(gir^n\)) and \(wɔ^{H}nɔ\) ‘his/her death’ (\(nɔ\)) show at most a slight divergence in pitch between the possessor and the possessed noun, so the {H} overlay of the possessed noun is clearly heard. The best frame for identifying the few nouns with {L}-toned possessed-noun overlay is therefore following a pronominal possessor. The sharp pitch break in \(u^{L:i:n}\) ‘your-Sg child’ or in \(wɔ^{\text{较少}}nɛ\) ‘his wife’ show that these possessed nouns are genuinely {L}-toned.

However, with nonpronominal possessors, there is a noticeable pitch drop between the final H of the possessor and the H of the possessed noun, as in \(amir^n\text{较少}gir^n\) ‘(a/the) chief’s house’ and \(nɛ^{H}nɔ\) ‘a woman’s death’. I have been taking this to be a matter of phonetic
realization, but one could argue that it should be formally reflected in the transcription as downstep, e.g. `ámír’í
\^i
H
^gír’í’.

6.2.1.5 {L}+H tone pattern for possessor-numeral combinations

In §6.1.4 above I showed that strings ending in a numeral have an {L}+H overlay when followed by a demonstrative or by the ‘all’ quantifier within the same NP; see (116c-d) and (118c). The targeted string is entirely {L}-toned except for a single H-tone on the final syllable (or, for monosyllabic numerals, the final mora).

The same {L}+H overlay applies to N-(Adj-)Num strings in combination with a postposed possessor. The only possessor that is regularly postnominal is the 1Sg possessor form `mà. In (126a), the 1Sg possessor immediately follows the noun and precedes the numeral, which is grammatical but dispreferred. In this ordering, there are no tonosyntactic interactions, so the noun and the numeral show lexical tone melodies. By contrast, in (126b), the same clause is rephrased with the preferred N-Num-Poss linear order, and the {L}+H pattern is observed, applying to the entire N-Num string. Therefore ‘children’ is L-toned and the numerals have rising tone in (126b).

(126) a. `ú [ú
^u
H
^n
í:  mà  lɔ̀y / kùrɛ: / sɔ:.] \^Lɔ̀-ɛ̀ 2SgSbj [children 1SgPoss two / six / seven] \^L-see-Pfv ‘You-Sg saw my two / six / seven children.’ (dispreferred linear order)

b. `ú [ú[ná  mɔ̀ɲù] lɔ̀y / kùrɛ: / sɔ:] \^L-see-Pfv \^Lɔ̀-ɛ̀ 2SgSbj [children two / six / seven] \^L-see-Pfv \^L-see-Pfv 1SgPoss ‘= (a)]

See also (644c-d) in §18.1.3.1, and (32a-b) in §3.7.3.7.

6.2.2 Treatment of modifiers following the possessed noun

When an adjective modifies the possessed noun, the noun-adjective combination (i.e. the core NP) is subjected, as a unit, to the {HL} possessed-noun overlay. As shown in (127), the possessed noun itself appears with its regular possessed-noun overlay, {H} or for heavy stems {HL}, and the following adjective is tone-dropped. In other words, the overlay is always {HL} for a N-Adj possessum, but the break from H to L occurs no later than the word boundary.

(127) a. sè:dú [gúr’í  gàrà] \^HL  \^HL S [house big] ‘Seydou’s big house’ (gúr’í, gàrà)

b. sè:dú [ná  mɔ̀ɲù] \^HL  \^HL S [person bad] ‘Seydou’s bad person (=kinsman)’ (nà, mɔ̀ɲù)

c. sè:dú [túnjù’ù  dágà] \^HL  \^HL S [stool small] ‘Seydou’s small stool’ (túnjù’ù, dágà)

117
A numeral following the noun (or the core NP) is also normally included in the domain of the {HL} overlay, and therefore appears in tone-dropped form, as in (128a) with kùrè: ‘six’. The same tonal pattern occurs when a demonstrative follows the noun, as in (128b), with L-toned form of yɔ́: ‘that’ (near-distant). However, it is unclear whether the demonstrative drops its tones because it is part of the target domain of the possessor-controlled {HL} overlay, as suggested by the bracketing in (128b), or because of Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering (§3.7.3.5), which would call for a revised bracketing. The ‘all’ quantifier does not drop its tones in this position and is therefore clearly not part of the domain targeted by the possessor (128c).

(128) a.  

| sè:dú       | HL[gírⁿí]    | kùrè:    |
| Seydou      | [house      | six]     |
| ‘Seydou’s six houses’ |

b.  

| sè:dú       | HL[gírⁿí]    | yɔ́:    |
| Seydou      | [house      | NearDist]|
| ‘that house of Seydou’s’ |

[c.  

| sè:dú       | H[gírⁿí]    | sâ:ⁿ    |
| Seydou      | H[house      | all]     |
| ‘all Seydou’s houses’ |

However, when the numeral has scope over a compound-like possessor-possessed combination that functions like a common noun, the numeral is not subject to tonosyntactic control of the possessor. In (129), sì:ⁿkáⁿ ‘equivalent’ gets the {HL} possessor-controlled overlay, but lɔ́y ‘two’ does not.

[[granary, female] | [equivalent] | two | up.to] | Lput-Ipfv
‘They put (=build) (the male granary) (as) two female granary equivalents (=twice the size of the female granary). ’ (2011.1a.17)

6.2.3 Pronominal possessors

We begin with possessed NPs not containing a quantifier. In the 1Sg only, the possessor is expressed by a postnominal morpheme mà (for H-toned mà see below). The possessed noun has its regular tones, as in unpossessed contexts. For the other pronominal categories, the possessor precedes the possessed noun and controls the same {HL} or {H} possessed noun overlay that was illustrated above for nonpronominal possessor NPs. Thus gírⁿí ‘house’ has its lexical tone in (130a) but has {H} overlay, optionally with a further final L-tone to mark definiteness, in (130b). There is no genitive morpheme after such preposed possessors.

(130) a.  

| 1Sg | gírⁿí | mà |
| b.  

| 1Pl | émé | H[gírⁿí] (definite émé H[gírⁿí]⁻L, etc.) |
| 2Sg | ú | H[gírⁿí] |
The same constructions are used with all possessed nouns, alienable or inalienable. Thus péjú ‘sheep’ in péjú mà ‘my sheep-Sg’ and wó ‘péjú ‘his/her sheep-Sg’ is treated like dè-dè: ‘father’ in dè-dè: mà ‘my father’ and wó ‘dè-dè: ‘his/her father’.

1Sg possessor mà follows the core NP, which may include a postnominal adjective (131a). It precedes the universal quantifiers sâ:ⁿ and fú→, which are NP-final here as elsewhere. For its position relative to cardinal numerals, see (134) below and accompanying discussion.

(131) a. gírⁿí L. márⁿà mà
     house¹ big 1SgPoss
     ‘my big house’

b. gírⁿí mà sâ:ⁿ fú→
     house 1SgPoss all
     ‘all (of) my houses’

Before instrumental-comitative postposition bè, but not before plural bè, the 1Sg possessor form shifts to H-tone: [nè má] bè ‘with my wife’, contrast nè mà bè ‘my wives’ (lit. “my women”). I did not observe this tone shift before other postpositions: [nè mà] gírⁿí ‘in front of my wife’, dative [nè mà] = n mà bè ‘to my wife’.

When a demonstrative modifies a possessed noun, Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering (§3.7.3.5) applies. The demonstrative undergoes tone-dropping and does not control tones on the possessed noun or its modifiers. This applies whether the possessor precedes or follows the possessed noun. For example, near-distant yɔ́: drops tones in (32a-b). The H.H tones of ‘house’ in (132a) show that there is no tonal definite.

(132) a. ú H. gírⁿí L. yɔ́:
     2SgPoss ¹house ¹NearDist
     ‘that house of yours-Sg’

b. gírⁿí mà L. yɔ́:
     house 1SgPoss ¹NearDist
     ‘that house of mine’

If the pronominally possessed noun is directly followed by a modifier (adjective or cardinal numeral), the modifier licenses an optional restructuring. In the restructured version, all pronominal possessors are expressed by postnominal [Pron kè], where kè derives from a noun meaning ‘thing’ still found in several other Dogon languages. This was originally an appositional construction of the type [house [your thing]] ‘your house’, with ‘thing’ in apposition to ‘house’. The L-tone of kè was attributable then to a possessor-controlled overlay, while ‘house’ was unaffected tonosyntactically by the possessor. The appositional nature of the construction has been weakened, and under some conditions (see below) the postnominal possessor can control overlays on the preceding noun (and its immediate modifiers). kè will be glossed simply as “Poss” in interlinear.
If the licensing modifier is an adjective, the sequence begins with the regular [N\textsuperscript{L} Adj] pattern found in unpossessed core NPs. The adjective controls {L} on the noun. The only clearly constructional change is that the pronominal drops its tones. If the adjective is /H/-toned, it shows a final L-tone in this construction, arguably the tonal definite, as in kélù\textsuperscript{L} from kélú ‘cold’ in (133a). I do not hear any tonal change in /LH/-toned adjectives, but this is probably because the expected final falling tone in the definite (gàrâ\textsuperscript{L} ‘the big one’) is flattened in the middle of an NP as an H-tone while its final L-toned element is absorbed by the L-toned possessor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(133)</th>
<th>pos</th>
<th>pos</th>
<th>poss</th>
<th>arrow</th>
<th>pattern</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>dì\textsuperscript{L}</td>
<td>kélù\textsuperscript{L}</td>
<td>[ù \textsuperscript{L} kè]</td>
<td>[2SgPoss Poss]</td>
<td>‘your-Sg cold water’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>gir\textsuperscript{L}</td>
<td>gàrâ\textsuperscript{L}</td>
<td>[ù \textsuperscript{L} kè]</td>
<td>[2SgPoss Poss]</td>
<td>‘your-Sg big house’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the licensing modifier is a numeral, with or without a preceding adjective, the constructional {L}+H overlay applies to the string ending in the numeral before [Pron kè] possessors. The numeral functions as the catalyst (§3.7.3.6) that unleashes the tonosyntactic control power of the possessor. The possessor itself drops to L-toned, by Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering. (134) shows the unrestructured and restructured options for pronominally possessed N(-Adj)-Num. All of the restructured forms are in the central column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(134)</th>
<th>pos</th>
<th>pos</th>
<th>pos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>[N Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{L}</td>
<td>[ù \textsuperscript{L} kè]</td>
<td>1Sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>[N Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{mà}</td>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>[N Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{L}</td>
<td>[ù \textsuperscript{L} kè]</td>
<td>2Sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>[N Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{wò \textsuperscript{L} kè}</td>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>[N Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{é \textsuperscript{L} kè}</td>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>[N Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{bè \textsuperscript{L} kè}</td>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The schema [N Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{L} [Pron kè] in (134a-b) is exemplified in (135e) below and in (32a,d) in §3.7.3.7 above. Adding an adjective, the slightly more elaborate [N Adj Num]\textsuperscript{L-H} \textsuperscript{L} [Pron kè] is exemplified in (147a) below.

The construction with postposed pronominal plus kè is also occasionally attested with simple possessed nouns, as in ‘my sleep’ in (591) in §17.3.2 and ‘my child’ in (624b) in §17.6.1.1.

Infrequently, a pronominal possessor with kè precedes rather than follows the possessed noun. This happens mainly with nonhuman kó\textsuperscript{L}kè ‘its’ as in fó\textsuperscript{L}kè \textsuperscript{LL} sógòrò ‘its (i.e. that) cleverness’ in (637) in §17.6.5 and as in fó\textsuperscript{L}kè \textsuperscript{HL} tènè-bè\textsuperscript{H} ‘the name of its time (season)’ in (136) in §6.2.5. It is also fairly common with reflexive possessor sā\textsuperscript{L}kè, as in (644a,c).
However, preposed \( [X \text{ à} kè] \) is regular, for nonpronominal as well as pronominal possessor X, when the possessed noun functions as head of a relative (§14.1.3).

6.2.4 Inalienable possession (kin terms)

There is no systematic morphosyntactic distinction between possessed forms of kinship terms and body parts on the one hand, and possessed forms of ordinary (alienable) nouns on the other.

For example, \( \text{dé-dé: ‘father’} \) occurs in \( \text{dé-dé: mà ‘my father’} \) and \( \text{wó HL-dé-dè: ‘his/her father’} \), parallel to alienable \( \text{gímí mà ‘my house’} \) and \( \text{wó HL-gímí ‘his/her house’} \).

Prost (p. 27) states that the 1Sg possessor form for three kin terms is of the type \( [íⁿX] \) in the dialect that he described (that of Pel). The stems involved are glossed ‘elder brother’, ‘younger brother’, and ‘comrades’. My assistant (from Koporo Pe) gave the regular \( [X mà] \) 1Sg possessor form for these nouns (‘my X’).

6.2.5 Recursive possession

A possessed NP may itself function as a possessor. The internal structure of the possessor has no systematic effect on the form (including tones) of the possessed NP. Therefore ‘house’ and ‘mother’ in (135a-e) have the same overlay they would have after any other preposed possessor.

(135) a. \[ \text{dè-dè: mà} \quad \text{HL gímí} \quad \text{[Rdp-father 1SgPoss] HL house} \]
   ‘my father’s house’

b. \[ \text{ú HL-dé-dè:} \quad \text{HL gímí} \quad \text{[2SgPoss HL Rdp-father] HL house} \]
   ‘your-Sg father’s house’

c. \[ \text{dè-dè: mà} \quad \text{HL ìnà:} \quad \text{[Rdp-father 1SgPoss] HL mother} \]
   ‘my father’s mother’

d. \[ \text{sè:du} \quad \text{HL dè-dè:} \quad \text{HL ìnà:} \quad \text{[S HL Rdp-father] HL mother} \]
   ‘Seydou’s father’s mother’

e. \[ \text{ùrù: I t3y]L[Ig]LHL } \quad \text{HL gímí} \quad \text{[childrenL two]LHL [1SgPoss Poss] HL house} \]
   ‘the house of my two children’

In some cases where the logic points to recursive possession, TgK prefers to treat the two final elements as a compound. In (136a), the logical sense is [the name of [the time of [that one]]], but it is realized as [[that one(‘s)] time-name].
(136) ou bien lè nǎŋ-è dè, [wárù ðë:] or else planting take-Pfv if, [weeding ðarrive]
[[kó ðkè] hì téŋé-bɔ̃] nǎŋ L gi-jù
[[Nonh ðPoss] hì time-name] how? ðsay-lpfv
‘Or from the planting to the first weeding, what do they call the name of that time
(=season)?’ (2011.1a.32)

6.3 Noun plus adjective

6.3.1 Noun plus regular adjective (core NP)

Nouns may be followed by one or more modifying adjectives. In the sequences [N Adj] and
[N Adj1 Adj2], only the final word retains lexical tones. The preceding words are tone-
dropped (137b-d).

(137) a. ìsì
‘dog’

b. isiL már”á
   dogL big
   ‘(a) big dog’

c. isiL ge”
   dogL black
   ‘(a) black dog’

d. [isi ge”]L már”á
   [dog black]L big
   ‘(a) big black dog’

túrú ‘one’ is not treated as a modifying adjective. Like other cardinal numerals, it has no tonal
effect on a preceding noun: ìsì túrú ‘one dog’.

A noun, with any following modifying adjectives, constitutes the core NP. Plural bè ~
mbè (§4.1.1) is added to the end of the core NP (138b).

(138) a. ìsì
‘dog’

b. isiL már”á mbè
   dogL big Pl
   ‘big dogs’

c. [isi ge”]L már”á
   [dog black]L big
   ‘a big black dog’
6.3.2 Adjective gàmá ‘certain (ones), ‘some’

The adjective gàmá is used in generalized contexts to denote a subset or an individual belonging to a common category. In its singular form it can also be used to denote a portion of a mass. Like other adjectives, it controls tone-dropping on a preceding noun.

The plural is gàm ná (pointing to earlier *gàm ná) or gàm ná. It may be used with human and nonhuman referents. It is probably cognate to Jamsay gàm-nám, which, however, is strictly human. A similar morpheme has plural function in érú kó ná ‘the others’.

A construction with parallel clauses is typical. The noun is optionally omitted in the second of two parallel clauses.

(139) a. [nèL gàm ná] mús àr opágá-jù,
[womanL certain Pl] shawl tie-lpfv,
[gàm ná] mús àr págá-jù
[certan Pl] shawl tie-lpfv.PI
‘Some women wear shawls, some do not.’

b. [girⁿL gàm ná] wòr-è,
[houseL certain Pl] collapse-Pfv
[gàm ná] wòr-à
[certan Pl] collapse-PfvNeg
‘Some houses collapsed, others did not.’

c. [sùkòrL gàmá] yùw-è, gàmá yùw-è
[sugarL some] spill-Pfv, some spill-PerfNeg
‘Some sugar spilled, some did not.’

See also (366c), (503), (617b), and (685).

gàmá or gàm-ná can also mean ‘maybe’ or ‘sometimes’ in adverbial function, as in (153), (197c), and (261). The fuller combination tèpèL gàmá ‘some time(s)’ is also possible. The sequence gàmá: dè with the ‘if’ particle means ‘it may be that …’ or ‘it sometimes happens that …’.

6.3.3 Expansions of adjective

6.3.3.1 Adjective sequences

There is considerable freedom in the ordering of two or more adjectives. Thus geⁿ ‘black’ and márⁿ ‘big’ can occur in either order: [girⁿL geⁿ] márⁿ or [girⁿL márⁿ] geⁿ ‘big black house’. From texts I can cite a few examples like [timè ná]L gàrã ‘big tree’, from timè ‘tree, wood’, ná: ‘main, principal’, and gàrã ‘big’.

6.3.3.2 Adjectival and other intensifiers

Intensifiers are used, often in conjunction with an ordinary adjective (or noun, or verb), to intensify or exaggerate. They may or may not correspond one-to-one to ordinary stems. Compare lexicalized collocations like brand new and dead drunk in English. Most of the TgK intensifiers are unrelated phonologically to the corresponding ordinary term, or to other
vocabulary, but there are a few exceptions. Many intensifiers are iterated, and many morphologically simple ones show the final prolongation (→). These features are typical of expressive adverbials, and most intensifiers belong to this word class.

In (140), the “normal word” in the middle column is the adjective, noun, or verb that is closest in meaning to the intensifier.

(140) Intensifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>intensifier</th>
<th>normal word</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. denoting abundance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>púnówⁿ→</td>
<td>pìré</td>
<td>‘(having) flowers’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>táy</td>
<td>pùrúgíⁿ</td>
<td>‘dust’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>táy</td>
<td>pàⁿ-þùrúgú</td>
<td>‘mist, fog’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. denoting extremity of a quality (derived from a normal word)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final -i→</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàŋ-i→</td>
<td>dàŋjó</td>
<td>‘emaciated’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final reduplication (discussion and more forms in (219) in §8.4.6.1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kérélélé</td>
<td>kélú</td>
<td>‘cold’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yàgájájá</td>
<td>kágájú</td>
<td>‘coarse, rough’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. denoting extremity of a quality (noncognate to normal words)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iterated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/H/-/H/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàŋ-dàŋ</td>
<td>märⁿá</td>
<td>‘stocky’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jéy-jéy</td>
<td>bèrù-þrú</td>
<td>‘green’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’</td>
<td>yérú</td>
<td>‘blue’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jàŋ-jàŋ</td>
<td>bò:mó</td>
<td>‘stupid’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kán-kán</td>
<td>mà</td>
<td>‘hard’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pán-pán</td>
<td>t5ⁿ-t5ⁿ</td>
<td>‘sour’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tèn-tén</td>
<td>jó→</td>
<td>‘full (container)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>’</td>
<td>ë:</td>
<td>‘tight (tomtom hide)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>táyⁿ-táyⁿ</td>
<td>ðógú</td>
<td>‘heavy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>béré-béré</td>
<td>kánã</td>
<td>‘new’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>búdó-búdó</td>
<td>yérú</td>
<td>‘soft’, ‘supple’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jòt-three jòt-three</td>
<td>³rá</td>
<td>‘wet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dër-dër</td>
<td>sì:</td>
<td>‘pointed’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jàŋa-jàŋã</td>
<td>nú:</td>
<td>‘hot’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kúdó-kúdó</td>
<td>ðégé</td>
<td>‘short, not long (object)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kédó-kédó</td>
<td>ðégé</td>
<td>‘short, not tall (person)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pùgù-pùgù</td>
<td>nèrⁿú</td>
<td>‘lightweight’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sògú-sògú</td>
<td>kúrúgú</td>
<td>‘dense (forest)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yégé-yégé</td>
<td>dúwó</td>
<td>‘overloaded’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>térⁿéwⁿ-térⁿéwⁿ</td>
<td>ë:</td>
<td>‘tight (rope)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>térⁿéwⁿ-térⁿéwⁿ</td>
<td>jó→</td>
<td>‘full (container)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/-/L/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sèy-sèy</td>
<td>sùmís</td>
<td>‘cleaned up completely’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lóy-lóy</td>
<td>káⁿ</td>
<td>‘clean-shaven (head)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tègú-tègù kíwⁿí ‘shivering’
tègè-tègè pírí ‘white’
silè-silè geⁿ ‘black’
/H/-/LH/ wàjá-wàjá tèŋ-ì: ‘clear, pure (liquid)’
/H/-/L jòyⁿ-jòyⁿ báⁿ ‘red’
tày-tày dógó ‘used up, depleted’

non-iterated
/H/

péw dógó ‘finished’
pèn kòró ‘unripe’
kò: rⁿ iⁿ-báyⁿ ‘(newborn) baby’
/LH/
pèrú kágárá ‘bitter’ (pèrú = tree Khaya senegalensis, has bitter-tasting medicinal bark)

non-iterated, with final prolongation
/H/
kòyⁿ→ márná ‘oversized (teeth)’
kòwⁿ→ újú ‘tiny (eyes)’
kòyⁿ→ újú ‘tiny (moon)’
pòrí→ ë: ‘tight (garment)’
slów→ gúrú ‘long’, ‘tall’
kònyⁿ→ dàŋò ‘emaciated’

/LH/
tàyⁿ→ élí ‘sweet (sugary)’

bùrí→ márná ‘oversized (eyes)’

yù:rlí→ ysrú ‘loose-fitting (garment)’

/L/ bàⁿ→ ìmú ‘rotten (smelling)’

Adverbial sèyⁿ ‘a lot, very, well’ is related in form to sèⁿ ‘good’, but now has a wide range of abstract senses.

Adjective sèy-sèy ‘clean’ has the same form as some of the intensifiers in (140c), but it can directly modify a noun: ñèj sèy-sèy ‘clean thing’.

See also léwⁿ (exactly/just) one’ (§19.4.2).

6.3.3.3 ‘Good to eat’ (má)

A morpheme má is added to an {L}-toned form of a verb to form a complement to predicative ‘be good’. Segmentally, but not tonally, the combination with má is identical to the (singular) hortative form of the verb, since the hortative suffix does not control tone-dropping on the verb stem (§10.6.2.1, below).

In (141b), the topic-like subject (‘meat’, ‘hairdo’) of the higher sentence functions as direct object of the subordinated verb (‘eat’, ‘look at’). There are no further constituents. In (141c), however, the topical NP (‘ax’) is marked as instrumental, and the ‘good to VP’ expression includes a distinct incorporated direct object as compound initial (‘tree’).
An embedded agent (‘Meat is good for men to eat’) is not possible. A dative PP can be preposed to the entire construction to translate such sequences.

The má in the ‘good to eat’ construction is somewhat comparable to the má morpheme in nonsubject relative clauses that have the same subject as the main clause (§18.1.3.2). This analysis would make sense if e.g. ‘meat’ in (141a) were treated syntactically as the subject (not the object) of the lower-clause. Since the ‘good to eat’ construction does not allow the expression of specific agents (‘meat is good for us to eat’), there is some hope that a connection can be justified. However, the ‘good to eat’ construction does not have relative-clause form.

6.4 Core NP plus cardinal numeral

6.4.1 Ordinary N-(Adj-)Num sequences

A cardinal numeral follows the core NP, i.e. a noun with or without modifying adjectives. The numeral does not interact tonally with the core NP, except that the lexically /LH/-toned numerals ‘3’ through ‘5’ may omit the final pitch rise and surface with apparent /L/ tones, see §4.6.1.2. I do not consider this to be tonosyntactic as such. Examples with ‘dog’ are in (142). ‘3’ is lexically tà:nú.

(142) a. 

   [isí ]

   dog       three
   ‘dog’

   [márɔ́]  

   [dog]      big
   ‘three big dogs’

   [gùrɔ́ bɛ́]

   [ax with] [tree-cut] for
   ‘An ax is good for cutting wood with.’

Inanimates and human nouns have the same pattern: gùrɔ́ tà:nú ‘three houses’, pè tâ:nú ‘three women’, púlɛ́:n tâ:nú ‘three Fulbe (people)’.

Cardinal numerals may be followed by determiners, pronominal possessors, or sâ:n ‘all’, triggering an {L}+H overlay.
6.4.2 Adjective-Numeral Inversion

A sequence N-Adj-Num is optionally inverted to N-Num-Adj in the presence of another NP-internal modifier. The modifier in question may be one of the usual reference restrictors that also trigger tonosyntactic operations (possessor, demonstrative, relative clause). It may also be the tonal definite or the universal quantifier sá::all. In the presence of any such modifier, the inverted construction is common and is spontaneously produced in elicitation from French cues. However, inversion is not obligatory, and every inverted example has an uninveted counterpart that is at least accepted by informants. In the absence of any such modifier, a plain N-Adj-Num sequence is not inverted; inverted examples are not spontaneously produced and are not readily accepted by informants.

When inversion does occur, its tonosyntactic consequences are masked in cases where the entire sequence is subject to a tone overlay imposed by an external (“higher”) controller. This is the case with relative head NPs, since the relative clause equally tone-drops a N-Adj-Num or an N-Num-Adj sequence (143a-b). The lexical forms of the bracketed stems are péjú ‘sheep’, már::á ‘big’, and kúré: ‘six’. The numeral is bolded in the interlinear.

(143) a. [péjú már::á kúré:]\L\L  L 1SgSbj  H dár::é
sheep big six 1SgSbj  H kill-Pfv.Rel
‘the six big sheep that I killed (slaughtered).’

b. [péjú kúré: már::á]\L\L  L 1SgSbj  H dár::é
sheep six big 1SgSbj  H kill-Pfv.Rel
[= (a)]

A plural demonstrative can likewise tone-drop N-Adj-Num and N-Num-Adj equally (144a-b).

(144) a. [péjú már::á kúré:]\L\L  L  yɔ:  nà
sheep big six 1SgSbj  Pl
‘those six big sheep.’

b. [péjú kúré: már::á]\L\L  L  yɔ:  nà
sheep six big 1SgSbj  Pl
[= (a)]

For alternative tonal treatments of such combinations, see (148a-b) below.

Similarly, a preposed possessor controls \{HL\} on both N-Adj-Num or N-Num-Adj sequence (145a-b), so again the internal tonosyntactic structure of the three-word sequence is masked.

(145) a. sè:dú \HL\L\L [péjú már::á kúré:]
Seuydou \HL\L\L [sheep big six]
‘Seydou’s six big sheep.’

b. sè:dú \HL\L\L [péjú kúré: már::á]
Seuydou \HL\L\L [sheep six big]
‘the six big sheep-Sg that I killed (slaughtered).’

However, a postposed possessor like 1Sg mà does not control a tone overlay on preceding words other than numeral-final strings. In (146a-b), addition of the final mà has no tonal
effects; the noun is tone-dropped by the adjective in (146a). (146c) shows the N-Adj-Num pattern which is required in the absence of an external reference restrictor. When 1Sg possessor mà is added to (146c), the output is either the uninverted (146d) or the (preferred) inverted (146e), and these two do not show the same tonosyntactic pattern. In (146d), the N-Adj-Num sequence as a whole shows an {L}+H overlay. This suggests that the presence of an immediately preceding numeral allows the postposed possessor to control a tone overlay on the entire preceding string. In other words, the numeral functions as a tonosyntactic catalyst (§3.7.3.6). By contrast, in the (preferred) inverted version (146e), mà has no tonal effect; the adjective controls tone-dropping on the preceding words, but the adjective itself is tonally free.

(146) a. \[pèjù \text{ð} \text{már}^\text{ñ} \text{á} (mà)]

\[\text{sheep}^\text{ñ} \text{big} \quad (1\text{SgPoss})\]

\[\text{‘(my) big sheep-Sg’}\]

b. \[pèjù \text{ñ} \text{kùrè:} (mà)]

\[\text{sheep} \quad \text{six} \quad (1\text{SgPoss})\]

\[\text{‘(my) six sheep’}\]

c. \[pèjù \text{ñ} \text{már}^\text{ñ} \text{á} \text{kùrè:}\]

\[\text{sheep} \quad \text{big} \quad \text{six}\]

\[\text{‘six big sheep’}\]

d. \[[pèjù \text{ñ} \text{már}^\text{ñ} \text{á} \text{kùrè:}^\text{ñ} (mà)]

\[\text{sheep} \quad \text{big} \quad \text{six}^\text{ñ} \quad (1\text{SgPoss})\]

\[\text{‘my six big sheep.’}\]

e. \[[pèjù \text{ñ} \text{kùrè:}^\text{ñ} \text{már}^\text{ñ} \text{á} \text{mà}\]

\[\text{[sheep} \quad \text{six}^\text{ñ} \quad \text{big} \quad (1\text{SgPoss})\]

\[\text{[= (d)\]}\]

A pronominal possessor other than 1Sg usually precedes the possessed NP. However, when the possessed NP is N-Adj-Num, the pronominal possessor optionally follows the string, in a different form including a morpheme kè. In this case, inversion is optional (but frequent), the {L}+H overlay applies to uninverted [N Adj Num]\text{ñ}^\text{ñ} (147a), the possessor has no tonal effect on inverted [N Num]\text{ñ}^\text{ñ} Adj (147b), and the possessor (elsewhere 1Sg ú kè, 1Pl èmé kè, etc.) is tone-dropped. When the adjective follows the numeral, a lexically /H/-toned adjective usually shows the final L-tone characteristic of the tonal definite (147b). An /LH/-toned adjective does not (147c), but this is arguably for phonological reasons. Examples with sá:ñ ‘all’ usually lack a tonal definite and bring out more clearly the tonosyntactic interaction between numeral and adjective. (147d) shows inverted N-Num-Adj-‘all’ and is the preferred ordering. It shows tonosyntactic control by the adjective of the N-Num sequence. Uninverted (147e) with N-Adj-Num-‘all’ is also acceptable. It shows the {L}+H overlay typical of numeral-final strings.

(147) a. \[[pèjù \text{ñ} \text{már}^\text{ñ} \text{á} \text{kùrè:}^\text{ñ} (mà)]

\[\text{sheep} \quad \text{big} \quad \text{six}^\text{ñ} \quad (2\text{SgPoss} / 1\text{PlPoss})\]

\[\text{‘your-Sg/our six big sheep.’}\]
b. \([pèjù \ kùrè:]^{L} \ már"à/ démèrè^{L} \ [ù / èmè kè]^{L}\)
\(\text{[sheep six]}^{L} \ \text{big/fat}^{L} \ [2\text{SgPoss/1PlPoss Poss]}^{L}\)
‘your/our six big/fat sheep’ (in part repeated from 30a)

c. \([pèjù \ kùrè:]^{L} \ dòjú / sògòrò \ [ù / èmè kè]^{L}\)
\(\text{[sheep six]}^{L} \ \text{heavy/multicolored} \ [2\text{SgPoss/1PlPoss Poss]}^{L}\)
‘your-Sg/our six heavy/multicolored sheep’

d. \([pèjù \ kùrè:]^{L} \ már"à / dòjú \ sà:"^{L}\)
\(\text{[sheep six]}^{L} \ \text{big/heavy all}\)
‘all six big/heavy sheep’

e. \([pèjù \ már"à / dòjú \ kùrè:]^{L+H} \ sà:"^{L}\)
\(\text{[sheep big/heavy six]}^{L+H} \ \text{all}\)
\([=(d)]\)

Furthermore, the examples with final plural demonstrative given above as (144a-b) are optionally modified by omitting the plural morpheme \(nà\) following the demonstrative. In this case, the unpluralized demonstrative is tone-dropped and \({L}+{H}\) overlay appears on the \([\text{N Adj Num}]{L+H}\) sequence (148a) but not on inverted \([\text{N Num}]{L}\ \text{Adj}\) (148b). In the latter example, the final L-tone on the adjective, pointing to the tonal definite, follows the pattern seen in (147b).

\((148)\)  
\(\begin{align*}
\text{a. } [pèjù \ már"à \ kùrè:]^{L+H} \ [yò:]^{L+H}\  \\
\text{[sheep big six]}^{L+H} \ [\text{NearDist}]^{L+H}\  \\
\text{‘those six big sheep’}
\end{align*}\)

\(\begin{align*}
\text{b. } [pèjù \ kùrè:]^{L} \ már"à^{L+H} \ [yò:]^{L}\  \\
\text{[sheep six]}^{L} \ \text{big} \ [\text{NearDist}]^{L}\  \\
\text{[=(a)]}
\end{align*}\)

The tonal definite (a final L-tone) by itself also requires \({L}+{H}\) overlay on a numeral-final string. The combination of this \({L}+{H}\) with the L of the tonal definite itself results in a rather complex \({L}+{H}+{L}\), expressed with a final <HL>-toned syllable (149a). If the adjective is final in the (uninverted) string, the tonal definite merely adds a final L-tone on the adjective (149b).

\((149)\)  
\(\begin{align*}
\text{a. } [pèjù \ már"à \ kùrè:]^{L+H+L}\  \\
\text{[sheep big six]}^{L+H+L}\  \\
\text{‘the six big sheep’}
\end{align*}\)

\(\begin{align*}
\text{b. } [pèjù \ kùrè:]^{L} \ már"à^{L+L}\  \\
\text{[sheep six]}^{L} \ \text{big-Def}^{L}\  \\
\text{[=(a)]}
\end{align*}\)
6.5 Noun plus determiner

6.5.1 Prenominal discourse-definite kó

On this construction, see §4.4.1.3.

6.5.2 Postnominal demonstrative pronouns

The demonstrative pronouns, which can be used absolutely as complete NPs (150a) or can follow a noun, core NP, core NP plus numeral, were described in §4.4.1.2.

(150)  

nó:  

yó:  

Prox  receive. Imprt  

‘Take this!’

Demonstratives occur in the positional slot following that of cardinal numerals. A demonstrative may follow a core NP (noun, or noun plus adjective) plus any numeral. When a demonstrative follows a core NP, the noun and any adjective are tone-dropped (151a-b). In the combination N-Adj-Dem, an alternative is to keep the lexical tone on the adjective, except that an /H/-toned adjective (‘big’) shows a final L-tone (likely the tonal definite), and drop the tone of the demonstrative (151c). A /LH/-toned adjective (‘heavy’) does not show the final L-tone, but a final L-tone element (as in /dògù/) might have been absorbed by the following L-toned demonstrative.

(151)  

a.  

bà:gà  

nó:  

stick  

Prox  

‘this stick’ (bá:gá)

b.  

[bà:gà  màrⁿ à  dògù]  

nó:  

[stick  big / heavy]  

Prox  

‘this big/heavy stick’ (bá:gá màrⁿ, bá:gá dògù)

c.  

[bà:gà  màrⁿ à  dògù]  

nó:  

[stick  big / heavy]  

Prox  

(=b)

When demonstrative nó: ‘this’ or yó: ‘that’ follows a string ending in a numeral, the constructional {L}+H overlay (§3.7.3.5) is usually applied to that string, in which case the demonstrative itself undergoes Postnominal-Determine Tone-Lowering (1 nó:; yó:).

(152)  

a.  

kúré:  

nó:  

six  

Prox  

‘these six sticks’ (kúré)

b.  

[bà:gà  kúré:]  

nó:  

[stick  six]  

Prox  

‘these six sticks’ (bá:gá kúré)
c. \[bà:gà \text{mar}^{a} \text{kùrè}: \text{L}^{1}\text{L}^{+}\text{H} \text{Prox} \]
   \[\text{these six big sticks’ (bà:gà L mar'^a kùrè:)}\]

d. \[sò \text{ly} \text{yò}: \text{L}^{1}\text{L}^{+}\text{H} \text{NearDist} \]
   \[\text{‘those two things (=techniques)’ (2011.1a.21) (sò: ly)}\]

Forms of other numerals in this \{L\}+H overlay include \[tùrù \text{L}^{1}\text{L}^{+}\text{H} \text{Prox} \text{‘1’}, \text{sò: L}^{1}\text{L}^{+}\text{H} \text{Prox} \text{‘7’}, \text{silá: L}^{1}\text{L}^{+}\text{H} \text{Prox} \text{‘8’}, \text{tèmèrè} \text{L}^{1}\text{L}^{+}\text{H} \text{Prox} \text{‘100’, and mì̀ná} \text{L}^{1}\text{L}^{+}\text{H} \text{Prox} \text{‘1000’, all of which can be substituted for kùrè: L}^{1}\text{H} \text{in (152a-c) and for lòy: L}^{1}\text{H} \text{in (152d).} \]

The tonal definite also triggers the \{L\}+H overlay; see (56d) in §4.4.1.1.

I have one textual example where the \{L\}+H overlay fails to apply, and we get [N Num]^L Dem. The preceding \kò kà:’n ‘it too’, perhaps treated as a possessor, may have influenced this output.

\[(153) \text{hàyè gàmá [kò kà:]n} \]
   \[\text{well some } [\text{Nonh too}] \]
   \[\text{[[nàpè ly]L yò:] kò=h yò kò} \]
   \[\text{[[use two]L NearDist Nonh=Dat Exist be.NonhSbj} \]
   \[\text{‘Well, sometimes, that too (=cow-peas), those two uses (just described) exist for them (cow-peas).’ (2011.1a.30)} \]

An alternative analysis, likely correct historically but debatable synchronically, is that the L-toned final demonstratives in (152a-d) reflect an (otherwise inaudible) tonal definite attached after the numeral, and that the tonal definite is absent in (153).

### 6.6 Universal and distributive quantifiers

#### 6.6.1 ‘All’ (sà:’n, fù→)

As in many Dogon languages, there are multiple options for the universal quantifier ‘all’. The two main forms in TgK are sà:’n and fù→, which are added to mass nouns (154a), to quantifiable nouns with plural reference (154b), to NPs ending in a numeral (154c), and to NPs containing a determiner (154d). sà:’n is more common and stylistically neutral, while fù→, which can be prolonged intonationally, is more emphatic.

\[(154) \text{a. nòw’ò sà:’n} \]
   \[\text{meat all ‘all (of) the meat’} \]

\[\text{b. [nè bè] sà:’n} \]
   \[\text{[woman Pl] all ‘all (of) the women’} \]
Two tonosyntactic issues arise in (154). In (154c), the N-Num string gets the {L}+H overlay; see also (644c-d) in §18.1.3.1. This suggests that the ‘all’ quantifier has the same latent tonosyntactic control power as determiners and postnominal possessors, and that the latest power is activated by the numeral as catalyst. Alternatively, we could posit an otherwise inaudible tonal definite attached to the numeral, in which case the ‘all’ quantifier has nothing to do with the {L}+H overlay.

In (154d), the demonstrative (elsewhere H-toned yɔ́; §4.4.1.2) has dropped its tones in tandem with the {L}+H overlay on the preceding numeral, as it would without the final ‘all’ quantifier. Again, one might alternatively posit a tonal definite attached to the numeral and argue that this triggers tone-lowering of the demonstrative.

With plural pronouns (1Pl émé, 2Pl é, 3Pl bé), both fù→ and sâ:n are again possible. However, the common ‘all’ form for pronouns is wò→ (for whose other functions see §6.6.3). When fù→ is used with a pronoun, it follows wò (not prolonged), showing that fù→ is really an intensifying adverbial. However, the more prosaic sâ:n can be added directly to the pronoun.

((155))

a. émé wò→
   1Pl all/each
   ‘all of us’

b. émé wò fù→
   1Pl all all
   [=(a), emphatic]

c. émé sâ:n
   1Pl all
   [=(a)]

If the plural pronoun is quantified by a cardinal numeral, the pronoun functions as possessor of the numeral, as in English all three of us. The numeral therefore appears with {HL} or {H} possessed-noun overlay.

((156))

[bé ò:mù] sâ:n
[bé ò:mù] fù→
[3PIPoss ò:mù] all
   ‘all three (of them)’
6.6.2 ‘All’ (\(L^6\text{dày}^n\))

L-toned \(L^6\text{dày}^n\) ‘all’ occurs at the end of a NP. This is a special use of the noun \(\text{dày}^n\) ‘outer limit’, hence ‘maximum’. The tones suggest that \(L^6\text{dày}^n\) was originally a possessum in this construction, presumably back when \{L\} was a viable possessor-controlled overlay.

\[\begin{array}{llll}
\text{millet}^L & \text{fast}^L & \text{limit}^L & \text{bird}^L,
\end{array}\]

‘On the other hand, birds will peck (=eat) fast all the (=early) millet.’ (2011.1a.07)

The various ‘all’ quantifiers frequently co-occur. \(\text{dày}^n\) is followed by \(sâ:\) \(\text{all}\) in (158). The co-occurrence is evidence that there isn’t much difference in meaning.

\[\begin{array}{llll}
\text{millet}^L & \text{big.heap}^L & \text{put-Pfv-PlSbj} & \text{if},
\end{array}\]

‘When (you) had made the big heap, you would go around all of the fields that you had and cut off the grain spikes.’ (2011.1a.09)

As an NP-final L-toned element, \(L^6\text{dày}^n\) is well-suited to occur as a terminal element in relative clauses (§14.1.13) and in conjunctions (§7.1.4).

6.6.3 ‘Each, every, all’ (\(wò\))

The distributive quantifier \(wò\) is L-toned. It follows a noun (or core NP) in the latter’s usual tonal form: \(nà\ wò\) ‘each person’, \(\text{gir}^\text{T}wò\) ‘each house’. It is used in classic distributive contexts like (159a), where individuals from one set are paired with a quantity from another set. In other cases, like (159b), there is no sharp semantic distinction between distributive ‘each’ and universal ‘all’.

\[\begin{array}{llll}
\text{man}^L & \text{each}^L & \text{millet}^L & \text{sack}^L,
\end{array}\]

‘Each man received one sack of millet.’

\[\begin{array}{llll}
\text{distribution} & \text{person} & \text{each} & \text{on},
\end{array}\]

‘The distribution didn’t get to each (=all) of them.’

\(wò\) has a more partitive sense in (160), since it is attached to a pronoun denoting the entire set.

\[\begin{array}{llll}
\text{1Pl} & \text{each} & \text{sack}^L & \text{one-one},
\end{array}\]

‘Each of us will get one sack.’
Further examples are in (161). In (161b) the complement of ‘each’ contains a nonsingular numeral.

(161) a. \([gir^\text{p}_\text{ñ} \text{-} ðú} \text{ türü} \text{ wò} \rightarrow \text{=} \text{n}\]
\[\text{[household one each]}=\text{Dat}\]
\[\text{[nú: \text{-} sā:gū} \text{ türü-türü} \text{ } 1_\text{g-jū} \]
\[\text{[millet}^1\text{-sack one-one]} 1_\text{give-lpfv}\]
‘(We) will give one sack of millet to each household.’

b. \([gir^\text{p}_\text{ñ} \text{-} ðú} \text{ lɔ́ y wò} \rightarrow \text{=} \text{n}\]
\[\text{[household two each]}=\text{Dat}\]
\[\text{[sā:gū} \text{ türü]} 1_\text{g-jū} \]
\[\text{[millet-sack one-one]} 1_\text{give-lpfv}\]
‘(We) will give one sack of millet to each two households.’

\text{wò} \rightarrow \text{also has other functions. It can sometimes be translated as adverbial ‘together’ (§18.3.2).}

6.6.4 ‘Any’ (\(p^3\))

The adjective \(p^3\) controls tone-dropping on a preceding noun. It is most common in negative and irrealis contexts, where it can be translated as ‘(not) any’. Typical combinations include \(nà^L \ p^3\) ‘(not) any person, no-one’, \(ɔ̀ jɔ̀ \ L \ p^3\) ‘(not) any thing, nothing’, and \(nà^L \ p^3\) ‘(not) any place, nowhere’, but \(p^3\) can be added to any countable common noun.

(162) a. \([nà^L \ p^3\] \[lɔ́gù^L \ nà:] \ kâ^\text{p}\] \[kɔ̀-rɔ́\]
\[\text{[person one any]} \ [\text{[shelter main} in\text{.front]} \text{ be.} \text{NonhSbj-Neg}\]
‘There is no-one in front of the main palaver shelter.’

b. \[[birè \ pèrè^L \ p^3\] \ kɔ̀-rɔ́\]
\[\text{[work(n) other]}^L \text{ any]} \text{ be.} \text{NonhSbj-Neg}\]
‘There is no other work.’ (2011.1a.04)

\(p^3\) is not the common ‘all’ quantifier in positive clauses, but it does occur occasionally in texts (163).

(163) \(hɛ̀-hà-hɛ̀: \ [nà^L \ p^3\] \ bɛ̀ \ \text{pó-}jù^\text{L}\)
\[\text{[person all]} 3\text{PlSbj say-lpfv.Rel}^\text{L}\]
‘he-ha-he, all the people said (=made a hubbub).’ (2011.1b.01)

6.6.5 Universal and distributive quantifiers with negation

In (164), it is implied that some of the people did come. That is, the negation has wide scope, including the quantifier. Schematically it is [not \([\forall x [x \text{ came}]]\).

(164) \([nà \ sà:] \ yè-là:\]
\[\text{[person all]} \text{ come-PfvNeg.} \text{PlSbj}\]
‘Not all of the people came.’
To reverse the scope relationship, a form of the NP directly incorporating (emphatic) negation is used, compare English nobody.

(165) \[\text{[nà}^L \pounds 5^a] \text{yè-là:}\]
[person\(^L\) not.any] come-PfvNeg.PlSbj
‘None of the people came.’

Similar negative NPs include \[\text{òj}^\L p\tilde{a}^\L \text{nothing}\] and \[nà^L p\tilde{a}^a \text{nowhere}\].

6.7 Accusative absent (except for 1Sg object)

There is no accusative marker for nouns functioning as direct objects. ‘Dog’ and ‘woman’ are not case-marked in (166).

(166) a. \[\text{í}^a \text{[isí}^L \text{yɔ́:]} \text{lág-è}\]
1SgSbj [dog\(^L\) NearDist] hit-PerfSg
‘I hit (=struck) that dog (over there).’

b. \[\text{í}^a \text{̃nè} \\text{ções} \text{é}\]
1SgSbj woman see-PerfSg
‘I saw the woman.’

The 1Sg pronoun has two stems, \(í^a\) in subject and prenominal possessor functions, otherwise \(má\) with some allomorphic variation depending on the precise function (postnominal possessor \(má\), focus form \(mí\)-, \(má\) before postpositions). \(má\) without a postposition functions, for practical purposes, as an accusative form for this pronoun, as in (41b) and (189a). Other pronominal categories have no special accusatives (§4.3.1).
7 Coordination

7.1 NP coordination

7.1.1 NP conjunction (‘X and Y’) by final dying-quail intonation (∴)

The dying-quail intonational effect, consisting of variable prolongation of the final syllable combined with pitch fall (audible when the word in question ends in a high tone), is expressed by symbol ∴, with ",&" in interlinear glosses. In TgK the prolongation is usually briefer than its counterpart in Jamsay. The intonational effect may apply to both conjuncts, or it may be limited to the first conjunct.

(167)  

a.  ú: mí:  
2Sg.& 1Sg.&  
you-Sg and I’ (ú, mí)

b.  [àràá bèː.] [jně bè]  
[man Pl.&] [woman Pl(.&)]  
‘men and women’ (Pl bè)

c.  wó [jnú: èméː:] jně-á  
3SgSbj [millet.& sorghum.&] eat.meal-Pfv  
‘He/She ate the millet and sorghum’

d.  àràá: [wó H jněː:]  
man.& [3SgPoss H woman.&]  
‘a man, and his wife’ (2011.1b.05)

In (167d), ‘man’ does not bind a reflexive possessor in ‘his wife’, so the coindexation is not explicitly marked (§18.4).

Plural conjuncts ending in plural bè usually show little or no audible dying-quail effect, at least in common phrases like [jně bè] [àràá bè] ‘women and men’. This combination is sometimes difficult to distinguish from the [X bè] [Y bè] conjunction construction (§7.1.3).

For the occasional use of dying-quail intonation to conjoin two (backgrounded) clauses, see §15.2.2.4.

7.1.2 kùː in NP conjunctions

One or more of the NPs in a conjunction may be followed by kùː, heard as a protracted [kùː] or low-pitched [kùː], instead of adding ∴ directly to the NP conjunct. This is a stylistic device, used especially in long lists with an incantational flavor.
(168) a. péjú kùⁿ, nàŋá kùⁿ, èrⁿè kùⁿ;
    sheep and., cow and., goat and.,
    [sà:n fù→] jé-è-sèⁿ
    [all all] bring-Pfv.PlSbj
    ‘They brought the sheep, the cows, the goats—everything.’

b. gérⁿè: [wó ¹kè], sérⁿèndé kùⁿ, kárábáráⁿ,
    baggage [3SgPoss ¹Poss], jewel and., calabash.box.
    [kò wò pú→] yè ¹dág-è
    [Nonh all all] there.Def ¹leave-Pfv
    ‘(They) had left her baggage, (such as) the jewel and the calabash box.’
    (2011.1b.03, excerpt from a longer list of things left)

7.1.3 Serial NP conjunction of type $[X bè] [Y bè]$

A construction with parallel final bè (arguably related to plural bè, but cf. also instrumental bè) is also found in conjunctions. In (169a) the conjoined NPs define the beginning and ending points of a time range. In English we would just say fifteen or twenty days after …, but the Togo Kan construction emphasizes the existence of the two possibilities. (169b) is a more typical example involving a potentially open-ended list of entities (here, activities) that exist or are possible. Intonational prolongation (→) is typical but not required.

(169) a. [nù: nè:] [[[niŋ̃̃ ″i [pèrè: nù:nè: ságà]] bè],
    [millet now] [[[day ten [five plus]] and],
    [[niŋ̃̃ ″i pè-oý] bè]] dš-è dè
    [[day ten-two and]] arrive-Pfv if
    ‘When the millet reaches (somewhere) between fifteen and twenty days (after sprouting), …’ (2011.1a.03)

b. [nùgù-bárⁿú bíní],
    [dry.season in]
    gírⁿ¹[-fùr-ú] bè→,
    house¹[-replaster-VblN] and,
    gš:-[-ùj-ú] bè→,
    granary¹[-build-VblN] and,
    háyè gírⁿ¹[-fùj-ú] bè→,
    well house¹[-build.VblN] and,
    sš: [tògù dèyⁿ-dèyⁿ-dèyⁿ]
    thing [kind apart-apart-apart]
    ‘In the dry season, there is replastering walls, and there is building granaries, and there is building houses, many different kinds of things (=activities).’
    (2011.1a.33)

7.1.4 ¹dàyⁿ ‘limit’ in conjunctions

¹dàyⁿ, an L-toned form of dàyⁿ ‘(outer) boundary, limit’, can be added after the final conjunct. It has something of the flavor of English along with or as well as as an alternative to and. For ¹dàyⁿ in the sense ‘all’ see §6.6.2 above.
7.2 Disjunction

7.2.1 ‘Or’ (mà→) as disjunctive particle with NPs

As generally in Dogon languages (and other languages in the region), there is no clear difference between the disjunction ‘or’ and the polar interrogative morpheme, which requires a choice between positive and negative assertions. In TgK, both the disjunction and the interrogative have the form mà→, frequently with intonational prolongation.

In a disjunction, both coordinands are overt, and both are followed by the ‘or’ morpheme.

(171) [lāyé bè] [pějú mà→] [ɛ̀r′é mà→] dár’á
[Feast.of.Ram with] [sheep or] [goat or] kill.Imprt
‘At the Feast of the Ram, slaughter-2Sg (either) a sheep or a goat!’

7.2.2 Clause-level disjunction

It is possible to use the disjunction with clauses, though it is difficult to construct contexts where the interrogative reading of mà→ is ruled out.

(172) [f̄¨ bāmākɔ yā:-jū mà→]
[1SgSbj] B go-lpfv or
[nì sigé-jū mà→]
[here stay-lpfv or]
dỳ̆ŋɔ¨ yā:-rò
on.other.hand M go-lpfvNeg
‘Either I will go to Bamako or (I will) stay here, on the other hand I won’t go to Mopti.’

As expected, it was not possible to elicit a disjunction of two imperatives. The cue ‘work, or leave!’ was rendered as (173), with only an implied disjunction.

(173) [bìrē bī-jí dē] bìrē,
[work(n) do-lpfv if] work.Imprt,
[bī:-rò dē] yā:
[work-lpfvNeg if] go.Imprt
‘If (you) are going to work, (then) work! If (you) are not going to work, go!’
8 Postpositions and adverbials

Postpositions include dedicated morphemes used only as postpositions, with L-toned Čỳ shapes (nì, bè), and a number of noun-like postpositions with /HL/ tones, in most cases still transparently relatable to nouns that have /H/ or /LH/ melody.

I have found a few tonal locatives in the form of {HL}-toned nouns, but the pattern is not productive (§8.2.1). In effect, the pattern is largely limited to spatial postpositions themselves. Dative, instrumental, and (basic) locative postpositions are distinct forms.

8.1 Dative and instrumental

8.1.1 Dative (nì, =ǹ)

Dative postposition nì is often reduced to a cliticized =ǹ after a noun ending in a vowel. The irregular 1Sg dative is má nì or cliticized má=ǹ. There are no other morphological irregularities.

A homophonous clitic =ǹ is occasionally found in clause-initial pronouns in topic-switching function. The 1Sg form for that clitic is íⁿ=ǹ (§19.1.8), showing that the two clitics are distinct.

The dative is standard for the indirect object of ‘give’, ‘show’, and ‘say’, see (298–9) in §11.1.1.2 for examples. The dative can also be used for a range of other indirect objects and beneficiaries.

(174) a. X [Y nì] sàngú kún-i
    X [Y Dat] trust(n) put.Pfv-3SgSbj
    ‘X entrusted (something) to Y.’

    b. àrⁿú má=ǹ sêⁿ kò
    rain 1Sg=Dat good NonhSbj
    ‘Rain is good for me (e.g. as a farmer).’
    or: ‘Rain pleases me.’

8.1.2 Instrumental-comitative (bè)

The postposition bè has instrumental sense (‘by means of, using’), and can also be used (e.g. with human complement) in comitative sense. A common combination is pàpá bè ‘by (means of) force’. For ipé bè ‘by means of what?’, i.e. ‘how?’, see §13.2.3. Examples involving instruments are in (175a–c). In (175d), a transporting vehicle is treated as an instrument. The 1Sg form is má bè ‘with me’, in comitative sense (175e).

(175) a. íⁿ nòwⁿét [sì:ñè bè] kèj-ê
    1SgSbj meat [knife with] cut-Pfv
    ‘I cut-Past (the) meat with a knife.’
b. bé dá:gól [səmʊrú bè] təsəm-è
   3PISbj courtyard [broom with] təsweep-Pfv
   ‘They swept the courtyard with a broom.’

c. ñú: [kɔ̌ bè] wàr-è
   1SgSbj millet [daba with] tədo.farm.work-Pfv
   ‘I farmed millet using a daba (=hoe).’

d. wó bámàkɔ́ [kǎ: ru bè] yə-y
   3SgSbj B [bus with] təgo-Pfv
   ‘He/She went to Bamako with (=in) the bus.’

e. ú [má bè] ñɛ̀ jú
   2SgSbj [1Sg with] wrestling catch təget-Ipfv
   ‘Can you wrestle with me?’

Homophones of postposition bè are the plural particle bè in NPs (§4.1.1) and the conjunction particle bè which follows both/all conjoined NPs (§7.1.3).

1Sg possessor mà (following the possessum) raises its tone in instrumental or comitative [X má bè ‘with my X’, but not before plural bè, where we get X mà bè ‘my Xs’. Thus [nè má bè ‘with my wife’ versus nè mà bè ‘my wives’.

8.2 Locational postpositions

8.2.1 Tonal locatives

There is no locative form expressed solely by a tonal change for e.g. unpossessed ‘house/home’ (gìrⁿ í), ‘field’ (wòrú), ‘well’ (òtě) or ‘village’ (àná). These nouns have rising tone melodies, with an H- or <LH>-toned final syllable. They are common complements of motion verbs like ‘go’, with no further morphology, and take regular postpositions like bínì ‘in, inside’ in other constructions.

By contrast, ëwɛ ‘market’, dá:rá ‘area outside (a home)’, gìm-kàⁿ ‘doorway’ (“house-mouth”), tògù ná: ‘main palaver shelter’, gènè ‘height’, and the possessed nouns X ḥáná ‘X’s village’, X ḥgáná ‘X’s country’, and X ḥgàř ‘X’s house’ do have a tonal locative somewhat like that in Jamsay. A local L-tone is added to the right edge, leaving the tones of previous syllables unaffected. This is best seen in transparent compounds like ‘doorway’, and in noun-adjective combinations like ‘main palaver shelter’. Superscripted +L indicates addition of a local L-tone at the right edge (176a-b), in some cases (176c-d) on top of a possessor-controlled {H} overlay.

(176) a. ñú ëwɛ+L yà:jú
   1SgSbj market.Loc+L go-Ipfv
   ‘I am going to (the) market.’

b. wó mó tô gëm-kàⁿ+L lìgi-rì
   3SgSbj motorcycle house’s-mouth.Loc+L lstop-Tr.Pfv
   ‘He/She stopped the motorcycle in front of the house.’
The form of $\text{gir}^{-1}\text{-kâ}^{+L}$ in (176b) is different from that of e.g. $\text{tùwó kâ}^{n}$ ‘at the edge of the rock (=mountain)’. The {L} overlay shows that gir$^{-1}$ is a compound initial, so gir$^{-1}$-kâ$^{n+L}$ must be the tonal locative of the compound gir$^{-1}$-kâ. By contrast, the lexical tone of tùwó is heard in tùwó kâ, so this has to be analysed as postposition kâ ‘at the mouth of’ following the noun tùwó.

The adjective túnš ‘one’ (§4.6.1.1) has a tonal locative in the combination na$^{L}$-túns$^{+L}$ ‘in one place, in a single (=the same) place’.

A difficulty in parsing texts in TgK, unlike Jamsay, is that the same local addition of an L-tone at the end of a noun (or NP) can also mark definiteness (§4.4.1.1). There is also a similar final tone (or pitch) drop on one type of topical NP, §19.1.1. These are probably all cases where an original L-toned morpheme *CV has been segmentally deleted, leaving behind a floating tone that has docked on the noun. In certain textual occurrences, it is difficult or impossible to determine whether location or definiteness is marked. I identify tonal locatives by the general context, including the absence of mentions of the referent in the immediately preceding discourse (so it can’t be construed as discourse-definite), and by the absence of a spatiotemporal postposition that would have been used with other nouns that lack a tonal locative.

(177) a. \[\text{wó} \quad \text{bà:ri} \quad [\text{yè}^{L} \quad \text{nà}^{+L}] \]
3SgSbj  go.around  [woman$^{L}$ old.Def$^{-L}$]
[éné  h\text{gir}^{+L}]  yèrè  pám-é:  wà
[LogoPoss  h\text{house. Loc}$^{+L}$]  come  lie.low-MP Imprt Quot
‘(She said to him:) (Just) circle around and come and stay out of sight at my, (i.e.) at the old woman’s, house!’ (2011.1b.01)

b. \[\text{àná} \quad h\text{ná} \quad sà:”n} \quad è:”n$^{-L}$-[tè-tè:} \]
[village  h\text{person all} soda.ash-[filtering.pot]
[tògu$^{L}$  nà:”L]  mò:”n só  wà
[shelter$^{L}$ main.\text{Loc}$^{+L}$]  gather-Caus. Imprt Quot
‘(He) said: “all people of the village, gather the soda-ash filtering pots in the main palaver shelter!” ’ (2011.1b.01)

c. \[\text{éné} \quad [nà  h\text{glyé}^{+L}] \quad nà:n:ɔ”r:”s  yé  só  dè] \]
[LogoSbj  [person  h\text{body. Loc}$^{+L}$]  Rdp-scar  Exist  be.on  if
[[kò  h\text{bànà}]  \text{gir}^{+L}]
[[[Def  h\text{owner}]  h\text{house. Loc}$^{+L}$]
ènè  ègè  yà:’rò]  wà
LogoSbj  husband  go-1pfvNeg Quot
‘(She) said: “if there are any scars in (=on) a person’s (=man’s) body, I won’t go to the fellow’s house in marriage (=I won’t marry him).” ’ (2011.1b.02)
8.2.2 ‘In, on’ (basic locative) \((bîn \sim bînì)\)

The common locative postposition is \(bîn \sim bînì\) ‘in, inside’, following a noun or pronoun denoting an enclosing container or area (waterjar, house, field). It is related to the noun \(bînì \sim bîn\) ‘belly’.

(178) a. \(wó [gìrⁿí bîn] yé Lùmò\)
   3SGsbj [house in] Exist Lie.down.Stat
   ‘He/She is lying down in the house.’

b. \(íⁿ dì: [dëⁿ bîn] kún-ì\)
   1SGsbj water [waterjar in] put-Pfv
   ‘I put (=poured) the water in the waterjar.’

c. \(bé [[[sāⁿ bè] Hwòrú] bîn]\)
   3PLsbj [[RefIposs PL Hfield] in]
   wàrù wà-téngè
   farming do.farm.work-Prog.Plsbj
   ‘They do farm work in their field.’

As with all locationals, allative or ablative directionality is expressed by an accompanying directional verb like ‘go out’ or ‘go in’. However, ‘go to X’ is expressed with no postposition on X (even in cases like ‘house’), since X functions here as a destination rather than as an enclosing space (179d).

(179) a. \(wó [gìrⁿí bîn] nú-ýⁿ\)
   3SGsbj [house in] go.in-Pfv
   ‘He/She went into the house.’

b. \(wó [ääná bîn] Lgò-è\)
   3SGsbj [village in] go.out-Pfv
   ‘He/She went out of (=left) the village.’

c. \(wó [dí: bîn] bàgá Lnù-ýⁿ\)
   3SGsbj [water in] fall go.in-Pfv
   ‘He/She fell into the water.’

d. \(wó gìrⁿí Lyè-ý\)
   3SGsbj house go-Pfv
   ‘He/She went home.’

\(bîn\) can be used with certain temporal expressions, though they are most often uttered without a postposition since their function in the clause is usually obvious. \(bîn\) is optional in (180a), but would sound awkward in (180b-c).

(180) a. \(émé [dà:gá (bîn)] dàná dàná-ńú\)
   1PLsbj [night (in)] hunt(n) hunt-Ipfv
   ‘We will go on a hunt at night.’
b. bé ëwéⁿ-nỳírⁿí ë-vé-ji 3PISbj marketⁿ-day ñ-come-lpfv
‘They will come (on) market day.’

c. nùyuⁿ-bárⁿá émé [sàⁿ bè] dë:rⁿé-mí-ńí dry.season 1PISbj [ReflObj Pl] rest-Caus-lpfv
‘In the dry season, we rest (ourselves).’

Likewise, an overt locative adposition is not used with place names.

(181) ñ  kòmpéⁿ wɔ
1SgSbj Koporo-Pen be.HumSgSbj
‘I am in Koporo-Pen (village).’

8.2.3 ‘On X’ and ‘over X’ (kùⁿ)

The postposition kûⁿ ‘on’ or ‘over’ is related to the noun kùⁿ ‘head’. The 1Sg form is kûⁿ mà, identical to ‘my head’.

The postposition can indicate position on a supporting surface (‘on X’), including vertical surfaces where appropriate (a lizard or insect clinging to a wall). This postposition often co-occurs with verbs that add nuances to the topography, such as nàŋá ‘be up on (a horizontal surface)’, wàwà ‘be lying on one’s belly (on a horizontal or vertical surface)’, and their transitive counterparts (182a-c). The senses ‘on (a surface)’ and ‘on the head of (a person)’ may converge in cases like (182d), where ‘on me’ is normally understood to mean ‘on my head’, but ‘on me’ can also be used when the stone fell on some other part of the body (e.g. while the referent was lying down). The semantic extension to an abstract burden in (182e) is unsurprising.

(182) a. kùⁿ-kuwó [tà:bá] kûⁿ 1nàŋá
hat [table on] 1be.up.on.Stat
‘The hat is on the table.’

b. kë:ŋú [gò: kûⁿ] 1wàwà
agama [wall on] 1lie.on.belly.Stat
‘The agama lizard is on (the vertical surface of) the wall.’

c. ñ bàràdá [n:é: kûⁿ] ná:n-i
1SgSbj tea.kettle [fire on] put.up.on-Pfv
‘I put-Past the tea kettle (up) on the fire (=on the burner).’

d. tûwó [kûⁿ mà] bág-è
stone [on 1Sg] fall-Pfv
‘The stone fell on me.’

e. [gìrⁿí dûw-s] [ú kûⁿ] 1nàŋá
[house load] [2Sg on] 1be.up.on.Stat
‘The burden of (financial responsibility for) the household is on you-Sg.’

145
The postposition is also used in the sense ‘over, above’, indicating a vertical relationship to a reference object over an intervening space.

(183) a. sàjú [àná kùⁿ] kír-é-tánà
   [bird [village over]] fly-MP-Prog
   ‘The bird is flying over the village.’

b. sùnjú [lìgš kùⁿ] bájá tánú-gá
   [rope [mud over]] pull pass-Caus.Imprt
   ‘Stretch-2Sg out the rope above the mud!’

Finally, kùⁿ can mean ‘about, on the subject of X’, with reference to speech or thought.

(184) [é nè:] [lè kùⁿ] pèré
   [2Pl now] [slashing on] otherwise
   [[sò: pèré] [tìpè é 1 bè-jù] yž kò mà
   [[thing otherL] speak 2PlSbj 1 get.lpfv.Rel] Exist be.NonhSbj Q
   You-Pl now, concerning planting, is there additionally another topic that you-Pl can talk (about), aside from all those things (already said)?’ (2011.1a.01)

8.2.4 ‘At the edge of X’ (káⁿ)

The noun káⁿ ‘mouth’ (also ‘rim’ e.g. of a waterjar, well, etc.) corresponds to postposition káⁿ ‘at the edge of’. Typical complements are ‘mountain’, ‘water (pond)’, ‘well’, and ‘village’.

(185) a. émé [tùwó káⁿ] yè-C dè,
   1PlSbj [rock at.edge.of] go-Pfv if,
   [sò bè] 1 dè:rò-mè-mì-nù
   [ReflObj Pl] 1 rest-Caus-lpfv
   ‘We’ll go to the edge of the mountain, then we’ll rest.’

b. dí: káⁿ
   water at.edge.of
   ‘at the edge of the water (pond, etc.)’

8.2.5 ‘On top of X’ (árà)

This postposition means ‘on top of X, on the highest part of X’. The reference object is something of considerable height that requires climbing or mounting: roof, tree, donkey, cart. The related noun árà occurs in the adverbial phrase árà kùⁿ ‘up on top’, ‘up above’.

(186) a. í [kùmɔ́rú árà] dùwɔ́-jú
   1SgSbj [roof on.top.of] go.up-lpfv
   ‘I will go up on (top of) the roof.’

b. [gereː: [í 1 kè]] [wɔ́jɔ́tɔ́rɔ́ árà] nà:nà
   [gear 1SgPoss 1Poss] [cart on.top.of] put.up.on.lmprt
   ‘Put-2Sg my baggage up on the cart!’
8.2.6 ‘Beside X’ (bɛ́:gɛ̀rɛ́)

One postposition meaning ‘beside, next to’ is bɛ́:gɛ̀rɛ́. It indicates proximity, normally on a horizontal plane. The 1Sg form is bɛ́:gɛ̀rɛ́ mà ‘next to me’. The postposition is related to the noun bɛ́:gɛ̀rɛ́ ‘side, flank’, also ‘zone, vicinity’. bɛ́:gɛ̀rɛ́ can also be used adverbially in the sense ‘at/to the side’ with unspecified reference object.

(187) a. iⁿ [wògótöró bɛ́:gɛ̀rɛ́] wɔ́
   1SgSbj [cart beside] be.Hum
   ‘I am next to the cart.’

  b. tùŋũrũ bɛ́:gɛ̀rɛ́ bɛ́:
     stool [waterjar beside] put.Imprt
     ‘Put-2Sg the stool next to the waterjar!’

Cf. noun bɛ̀rɛ̀gɛ̀rɛ̀ ‘side of body (at ribs), flank’.

8.2.7 ‘Beside X’ (bũⁿ)

Another ‘beside X’ expression is [X bũⁿ]. X denotes one or more persons or objects (e.g. a tree) that define a space that another entity can be in. The 2Sg combination is ú bũⁿ, while 1Sg is bũⁿ mà with <LH> tone.

(188) a. háyɛ̀ ámĩrì [gɔ́:ⁿ bɛ́ bũⁿ] yɛ̀-è:
    well chief [[griot Pl] beside] go-and.SS
    ‘Well, the chief went in among the griots (bards) (and …).’ (2011.1b.01)

  b. wó [tìmè üɔ́] bũⁿ wɔ́
     3SgSbj [[tree üNearDist] beside] be.HumSgSbj
     ‘He/She is next to that tree.’
     (variant: [tìmè üɔ́ bũⁿ])

8.2.8 ‘In front of’ (gĩrɛ́)

The postposition ‘in front of’ is gĩrɛ́. The 1Sg form is gĩrɛ́ mà. The postposition is related to the noun gĩrɛ́ ‘front’, as in adverbial gĩrɛ́ tɔ̀ ‘in front, ahead’. The stem can be a compound final, as in iɾ̀i-gĩrɛ́ ‘incisor’ (“front tooth”).

Prototypical uses of the postposition are spatial. The reference object should have a front side (face), such as a person, animal, or vehicle.

(189) a. wó [nա w,w吸毒→] gĩrɛ́ mà 1dɔ̀-è
    3SgSbj [person all in.front.of] 1SgObj 1insult-Pfv
    ‘He/She insulted me in front of all the people.’

  b. wó [mɔ̀bɔ́lí gĩrɛ́] 1ùmò
     3SgSbj [vehicle in.front.of] 1lie.down.Stat
     ‘He/She is lying down in front of the (motor) vehicle.’
gírè is not used in contexts like ‘He’s sitting in front of (=on the near side of) that tree’ (from a given vantage point). The usual way to express this would be with bɛ́-gèrè ‘beside, next to’, disregarding the speaker’s visual line.

‘In front of the house’ is expressed as ‘at the doorway’, see tonal locative gírⁿ⁻kāⁿ in §8.2.1, above.

8.2.9 ‘Behind X’ (dògó), ‘after X’ (H dògó nì):

‘Behind X’ in the spatial sense is X dògó. The 1Sg form is dògó mà ‘behind me’. The noun dògó ‘rear (area)’ occurs in e.g. adverbial dògó tô ‘in the rear, in back’ with tô (§8.2.14). It is also possible to use [X H dògó] tô as a PP, instead of X dògó, in the sense ‘behind X, at the rear of X’ or ‘after X’. [X H dògó] tô treats dògó as possessed noun and therefore requires its {H}-toned form.

(190) a. [émé H gír¹f] [éwé dògó] kà
 [1PIPoss H house] [market behind] be.NonhSbj
 ‘Our house is behind the market.’

b. mòtám [ú dògó] yɔ̀ kà
 scorpion [2Sg behind] Exist be.NonhSbj
 ‘There’s a scorpion behind you-Sg.’

c. [timé dògó] bàŋ-é:
 [tree behind] hid-MP.Imprt
 ‘Hide-2Sg (yourself) behind a tree!’

d. [[pù́rⁿú H dògó] tô] [jà:n-∅ dè]
 [[cream.of.millet H after] at] [boil-Pfv if]
 [nǐ-∅ kà:] H bir-é:jù
 [eat-VblN also] H do-MP-Ipfv
 ‘After (=in addition to) cream of millet, boiling and eating (bissap roselle fruits) is also possible.’ (2011.1a.27)

Temporal ‘after X’ is expressed by a related construction [X H dògó ní:]. Here H dògó can be analysed as the possessed form of noun dògó ‘rear’. The 1Sg form is [dògó mà] ní: ‘after me’. This leaves ní: as the real postposition here, but it does not have the /HL/ tone of other Cv: postpositions, and the syntax is nontransparent.

(191) a. iⁿ [ú H dògó ní:] nǎ: ní:-nỳ
 [1SgSbj 2Sg H rear after] meal eat.meal-Ipfv
 ‘I will eat after you-Sg.’

b. iⁿ aná [kèrè H dògó ní:] yà:jù
 [1SgSbj village [festivity H rear after] go-Ipfv
 ‘I will travel after the festivities.’
8.2.10  ‘Under X, at the base of X’ (bɔ́rɔ̀)

‘Under’ or ‘at the base of’ as postposition is bɔ́rɔ̀, related to a noun bɔ̀rɔ̀ ‘rear end’ (which has a range of vaguely obscene senses rather like ass in English). bɔ́rɔ̀ is also adverbial ‘below’. As compound final, -bɔ́rɔ̀ means ‘lower or rear (part of)’, as in sìgùrù- bɔ́rɔ̀ (“lower ear”) ‘earlobe’, kà’n’-bɔ́rɔ̀ (“lower mouth”) ‘lower lip’, ìrìŋ- bɔ́rɔ̀ ‘lower teeth’, and mìrùpà:-bɔ́rɔ̀ ‘butt end of rifle’.

The 1Sg form is bɔ̀rɔ̀ mà ‘under me’, identical to ‘my rear end’.

(192) a. tàgá [tà:bàl bɔ́rɔ̀] sò
    shoe [table under] be
    ‘The shoes are under the table.’

b. èmé [mànìgùrò bɔ́rɔ̀] dèŋ-e:-má-Šn
    1PLSbj [mango under] sit-MP-Hort-PISbj
    ‘Let’s sit under the mango (tree).’

c. jòwɔ̀ [dëⁿ bɔ́rɔ̀] bɛː:
    onion [waterjar under] put.down.Imprt
    ‘Put-2Sg the onions down under the waterjar!’

d. [gàmàL hí:ná] [jòŋùrü bɛ̀] [kò bɔ́rɔ̀]
    [someL person] [hoe Inst] [Nonh under]
    tɔ̀-tɔ̀:-lɛ̀ tie
    Rdp-slash-Iter slash-Ipfv
    ‘Some people keep slashing (lightly) around its base (underside and roots of peanut plants).’ (2011.1a.21) (for verb iteration see §11.6.5)

A different ‘under’ postposition, jô:, is said to occur in some other TgK dialects (e.g. Pel, Koporo-Na).

8.2.11  ‘Between’ (gàn)

The ‘between’ postposition is gàn. It is added to a NP or pronoun denoting a plurality, so there is no 1Sg form as such, though the 1Sg pronoun may occur in a conjoined NP that serves in its entirety as the complement of the postposition (193c).

(193) a. èmé gàn
    1PL between
    ‘between us’

b. [[fàrâ bè::] [në bè::]] gàn
    [[man Pl.&] [woman Pl.&]] between
    ‘between men and women’

c. [ú:: mì::] gàn
    [2Sg.& 1Sg.&] between
    ‘between you-Sg and me’
There is an adverb *gàn-nɔn* ‘somewhere (in the area)’.

**8.2.12 ‘Among X’ (*kénè*)**

*kénè* is related to the noun *kénè* ‘liver (and heart)’, which can be used abstractly to denote the seat of the emotions. As a postposition, it translates as ‘among X’, where X denotes some collectivity. There is no 1Sg form. In some contexts, *kénè* functions as a partitive, for example in sentences like ‘Among my cows, how many (cows) died?’, see §13.2.7, below.

(194)  

| a. | [émé *kénè*] wó gá:rá  
|    | [1Pl *among*] 3SgSbj more  
|    | HL 3gù  
|    | ‘He/She is the fastest (person) among us.’ |

| b. | [jé  
|    | HL gér’i:]  
|    | kénè] dèné géré  
|    | ‘Search among (=through) your-Pl baggage (=bags)!’ |

**8.2.13 ‘From X to Y’ (*bà* → *fó* →)**

There are no ablative or allative postpositions in a strict sense, since directionality is expressed by verbs. The slightly emphatic postposition-like particle *bà* → ‘all the way’ (with L-tone) can follow a term denoting either the starting point, with verb ‘go out’ as in (195a), or the endpoint, with a verb like ‘go’ or ‘come’.

*bà* → competes in part with preposed *fó* → ‘all the way to, until’, but the latter has a mainly temporal sense.

(195)  

| a. | bé [mó:tì *bà* →] jɔ̀ wɔ́  
|    | [3PlSbj Mopti all.the.way] run  
|    | [y-ɛ̀-ɛ́]:  
|    |  
|    | ‘They ran all the way to Mopti.’ |

| b. | [bé  
|    | [mó:tì  
|    | *bà* →] gɔ̀-ɛ́:]  
|    | [3PlSbj Mopti all.the.way] go.out-and  
|    | [jɔ̀ wɔ́ bàngarà  
|    | [run Bandiagara] go.Pfv.PISbj  
|    | [y-ɛ̀-ɛ́]:  
|    | ‘They ran all the way from Mopti to Bandiagara.’ |

| c. | yé émé yà:-jú  
|    | [fó→ dà:gà  
|    | [1PlSbj go.Pfv [until night night.fall-Pfv]  
|    | ‘We kept walking until night fell.’ |

**8.2.14 Combinations with *tɔ* ~ *tè* ‘toward’ (*sìyé* *tè*, *ágá* *tɔ*)**

For most nouns, ‘towards X’ is expressed as [[*X* sìyé] *tè*], variant [[*X* sìwè] *tè*], with an {H}-toned possessed form of *sìyé* ~ *sìwè* ‘side’ followed by a postposition *tè*.

Similarly, ‘about X, concerning X’ (as in the context of the subject of a discussion) can be expressed as [[*X* ̣*ágá*] *tɔ*], where *ágá* is again {H}-toned as a possessed noun, and is slightly contracted segmentally from noun *àrgà* ‘side, zone’.
There are a number of high-frequency expressions where \( tɔ̀ ~ tɛ̀ \) is added to a simple noun, without \( sìyɛ \), producing an adverbial phrase (generally spatial). The known cases are in (196). Overall \( tɔ̀ \) is the less marked of the two allomorphs, while \( tɛ̀ \) is used only after a form ending in \( ɛ \). Note especially \( gìrɛ tɔ̀ \) ‘ahead’.

(196) Noun plus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>based on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. after noun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( kúⁿ tɔ̀ )</td>
<td>‘on top’</td>
<td>( kúⁿ ) ‘head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( dógò tɔ̀ )</td>
<td>‘in the rear’</td>
<td>( dógò ) ‘rear’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( gìrɛ tɔ̀ )</td>
<td>‘ahead’</td>
<td>( gìrɛ ) ‘front’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( dáːrə tɔ̀ )</td>
<td>‘outside’</td>
<td>( dáːrə ) ‘area outside’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. after demonstrative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( nî tɔ̀ )</td>
<td>‘this way, around here’</td>
<td>( nî ) ‘here’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( yí tɔ̀ )</td>
<td>‘that way, over there’</td>
<td>( yî ) ‘over there’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( yɛ̀ tɔ̀ )</td>
<td>‘around there (definite)’</td>
<td>( yɛ̀ ) ‘there (definite)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( ɛ́ tɛ̀ )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For \( yǎ: tɔ̀ \) ‘whereabouts?, around where?’ see §13.2.4.

Some combinations with \( tɔ̀ \) can also be used as complex postpositions. In this case, the noun-like element preceding \( tɔ̀ \) is treated tonally as possessed by the preceding NP. For example, from adverbial phrase \( dógò tɔ̀ \) ‘in the rear’ we get \( [gìrɛí] nî dógò \) \( tɔ̀ \) ‘behind (=at the rear of) the house.’

### 8.3 Complex relational postpositions

#### 8.3.1 Purposive and causal postpositions

##### 8.3.1.1 Purposive ‘for’ (\( gêː, gì, gà \))

In a prospective purposive sense, both \( dógò \) ‘after’ (§8.2.9, above) and true purposive \( gêː \sim gì \) can be used (197a). \( gêː \sim gì \) also occurs in retrospective causal sense (197b). Of the two variants, \( gêː \) is more common in texts.

(197) a. \( émè [tɛː dógò] l^1 yɛ́r-ɛ \)

1PISbj [honey for] \( \text{l}^1 \)come-Pfv

‘We came for (the) honey.’

b. \( bě [arⁿú gêː] l^1 jw-ɛ \)

3PISbj [rain for] \( \text{l}^1 \)run-Pfv

‘They fled because of the rain.’
c. háyè [ɛ̀-rēn] nà: [yɔ́: ɡí]  lè:-jù
   well [peanut] main some [NearDist for] slash-Ipfv
‘Well, that [as just described] is why (they) sometimes slash (=plant)
groundnuts.’ (2011.1a.19)

The 1Sg form is má ɡê: ‘because of me’.
The phrase ‘for God’, in the sense ‘in the name of God’ (i.e. as an act of charity, without
recompense) is expressed by àmá ɡê: ~ àmá ɡi.

(198) ṩ’ [àmá gê:] ú bā-jù
    1SgSbj [God for] 2SgObj help-Ipfv
‘I will help you-Sg for (=in the name of) God.’

Another, rather isolated form àmà gà is used in requests made in desperation (‘For God’s
sake, help me!’).

ɡê: and ɡi are related to quotative verb ɡí ‘say’ (§11.3.1.2). ɡê: can be analysed as a
variant of the original combination of ɡí with same-subject anterior subordinator (§15.2.2.1).
The regular form of this combination is ɡí-ɛ̀: (as in ‘he said …, and then left’), but a variant
ɡê-ɛ̀: (often reduced to ɡê-ɛ) is the only form observed in texts. The only phonologically
similar form that I know of is tɛ́-ɛ̀: (often shortened to tɛ́-ɛ̀) related to a specialized chaining
verb tí ‘do first’ (§15.2.2.5, (§15.1.6.3).
For ɡê:, ɡi, and ɡ-ɛ́ dè in purposive clauses, see §17.6.1.

8.3.1.2  Causal ‘because of’ (sógò)

[X sógò] means ‘because of X’. The attested examples involve motivation rather than
inference or impersonal physical causation. kó sógò ‘because of that’, hence ‘so, therefore’,
typically describes the motives of human action. A gloss ‘considering X’ or ‘in view of X’
could also work. A textual example is (199).

(199) [l’ wò seeking [kiré sógò]
   [1Sg Top] [hardship because.of]
   [l’ kó: bë:-rò]
   [child raise get-IpfvNeg]
‘As for me, because of hardship (=neediness), (I) can’t raise a child.’ (2011.1b.04)

For causal sógò after a clause, see §17.6.5. For [X sógò] ‘than X’, i.e. ‘in comparison to X’,
in adjectival comparatives, see §12.1.2.2.

8.3.2  Source (númò)

Related to the noun númò ‘hand, arm’ is an /HL/-toned postposition númò, compare English
at the hand(s) of. It forms PPs that express the (human) source of something transferred.
Typical verbs associated with this PP type include ‘receive’, ‘buy’, and ‘request’.

152
(200)  a. \( l^{o} \) nàŋà [ú núm₃] \( l^{o} \)yńw⁻è
   1SgSbj cow [2Sg source] \( l^{o} \)receive-Pfv
   ‘I received a cow from you-Sg.’

   b. \( n^{o} \) wògòtòò [sè:dú núm₃] \( l^{o} \)òw⁻è
   1SgSbj cart [S source] \( l^{o} \)buy-Pfv
   ‘I bought a cart from Seydou.’

   c. \( n^{o} \) [sè:dú núm₃] bù:dú ðẹ̀-ò
   1SgSbj [S source] money request-Pfv
   ‘I asked Seydou for some money.’
   [=I requested some money from Seydou.’]

In (200c), one can also use dative \( nità \) with Seydou.

8.4 Other adverbs (or equivalents)

8.4.1 Similarity (\( gî:ⁿ \)~ \( gi:ⁿ \) ‘like’, \( gà: \) ‘something like’, \( sì:ⁿ-kàⁿ \) ‘equal’)

\( gî:ⁿ \) ‘like, similar to’ can follow and have scope over a complement (NP or adverb). It is H-toned, except as indicated below. The 1Sg form is \( má \)\( gî:ⁿ \) ‘like me’. The 1Sg form and the H-tone suggest that the ‘like’ morpheme is not a typical postposition.

(201)  a. \( nò \) [má \( gî:ⁿ \)] tiŋé tiŋé-nú
   3Sg [1Sg like] talk(n) speak-lpfv
   ‘He/She speaks like me.’

   b. [nòwⁿ] \( gî:ⁿ \) kò
   [meat like] be.NonhSbj
   ‘It’s like meat.’

   c. \( íyé \) [\( yá: \) \( gî:ⁿ \)] kë:-jú
   today [yesterday like] be.NonhSbj-lpfv
   ‘Today will be like yesterday.’

In \( nò. \)\( gî:ⁿ \) ‘like this’, the particle is L-toned. I also hear it as L-toned clause-finally, with the clause as its complement. One could argue that examples like (202), and others like it in chapter 14, consist of a headless relative clause (with omitted head \( bàⁿ \) \( l \) ‘way, manner’) followed by \( l^{o} \)\( gî:ⁿ \) in the role of an L-toned terminal noun functioning as a synonym of the head (§14.1.7).

(202) \( kò \) dág-à → —, ñmò-nú \( l^{o} \)\( gî:ⁿ \)
   NonhSbj a.little—, rot-lpfv.Rel \( l^{o} \)like
   ‘(It’s) like it rots a little.’ (2011.1a.25)

For ‘like this/that’ using demonstrative stems, see §4.4.2.3.

The possessed noun \( gà: \) after a noun X means ‘something like X’, ‘something along the lines of X’, ‘X or something similar’, etc.
It is possible, but uncertain, that this gá: is connected with optional gá: sandwiched between verb iterations (§11.6.5), and with gá: in the second part of parallel constructions (§19.2.2).

There is a noun sì:ⁿ-káⁿ ‘match, equal, equivalent’, often possessed: [X Ḿsì:ⁿ-káⁿ] ‘a match for X, an equivalent to X’. For the sense ‘approximately’ see §9.4.3.1 below. A possessive [X Ḿgì:ⁿ-káⁿ] is also attested, meaning ‘something similar to X, the likes of X’.

8.4.2 Extent (gàr-à→ or sëyⁿ ‘a lot’, jò-jó→ or jó: ‘many’, dàg-à→ ‘a little’)

Adverbal ‘a lot, considerably, to a great extent’ is gàr-à→ or sëyⁿ.

One form of the quantifier ‘much, many’ (also used absolutely without an overt noun) is an optionally reduplicated (or iterated) expressive adverbial (jò-)jó→. In this form, it is not an adjective and does not induce tone-dropping even when it follows a noun that it apparently has scope over: péjú jó: ‘lots of sheep’. Compare the verb jó: ‘be numerous, abound’.


For ‘a little’, dàg-à→ is used adverbially (‘to a limited extent’ or ‘somewhat’). The NP ‘a little’ (as in ‘they gave me a little’) is either the same dàg-à→ or a related form dàg-ìⁿ→ (frozen compound with diminutive ending, §5.1.7).

For the morphology of gàr-à→ and dàg-à→, see (351d-e) in §11.4.1.2.

8.4.3 Specificity

8.4.3.1 ‘Approximately’ (LM sì:ⁿ-káⁿ, mà:)

To express an approximate numerical count, possessed noun LM sì:ⁿ-káⁿ can be used (204). The unpossessed form is sì:ⁿ-káⁿ ‘match, equivalent’, mentioned above at the end of §8.4.1.

(204) Ḿ

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1SgSbj</th>
<th>[[pèjú pes-nûnè:]] [HL sì:ⁿ-káⁿ]</th>
<th>sà [HL equivalent] have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[[sheep fifty]]</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘I have roughly fifty sheep.’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For an approximate time, whether time of day or seasonal, the construction [X tènè] bè is used. tènè is the possessed form of tènè ‘time’, so the construction translates literally as ‘with the time of X’.

(205) [midì: [HL tènè] bè [noon [HL time] with ‘around noon’ (French midi)]

mà: (with long vowel, but no exaggerated prolongation as with interrogative or disjunctive mà→) is used with quantities.
(206) a. [kó [nìnjirì nàyì] mà:] dɔ̀ [kó tɔ:-jú]
[Nonh [day four approx] arrive] [NonhSbj sprout-Ipfv]
‘Then (when) roughly four days have arrived (=elapsed), it (=fonio) will sprout.’
(2011.1a.23)

b. ɛ́ [kìlòm ɛ́] trí túrú mâ:
[PlSbj [kilometer one approx] walking go-Ipfv]
‘We will walk (=hike) around one kilometer.’

For approximate location, see also §4.4.2.2, above.

8.4.3.2 ‘Exactly’ (tè→, jà:tì)

With a preceding quantity expression or an NP identifying an individual, the expressive adverbial tè→ means ‘exactly, precisely’.

dàŋ is used with numbers and locations. In (207) it indicates that the time frame is more or less the minimum for groundnuts to bear fruit. dàŋ and iterated dàŋ-dàŋ-dàŋ can also mean ‘right up against, flush against (e.g. a wall).’

(207) [[nìnjirì pè-sò: dàŋ] dɔ:-lì dè] [ì:] kùnɔ:-rò]
[[day ten-seven exactly] arrive-PfvNeg if] [child put-IpfvNeg]
‘Unless exactly seventy days have arrived, they (=groundnuts) won’t put out children (fruits)?’

For adverb jà:tì see §19.5.2.

8.4.4 Evaluation

8.4.4.1 ‘Well’ and ‘badly’

Adverbial senses ‘well’ and ‘badly’ are often expressed by adding a modifying adjective ‘good’ or ‘bad’ to an object, such as a cognate nominal. Thus ‘X sings well’ is expressed as ‘X sings good song(s)’. However, there is an expressive adverbial sèy’→ (with falling pitch) ‘well’, compare adjective sè’→ ‘good’.

‘Bad’ and ‘badly’ are usually translated as negations of ‘good’ and ‘well’. mònjú ‘bad’ can also be used, but it tends to have more specific senses like ‘nasty, evil (person)’.

(208) a. wó sèy’→ bìrè bì-jú
3SgSbj well work(n) do-Ipfv
‘He/She works well.’

b. wó [bìrèL sè’s] L bì:-rò
3SgSbj [work(n)L good] L do-IpfvNeg
‘He/She works badly.’ (lit. “… does bad work”)
8.4.4.2 ‘Proper, right’ (jâ:n)

*jâ:n kɔ̀* means ‘it is right, proper’, in the context of social norms.

8.4.5 Spatiotemporal adverbs

8.4.5.1 Temporal adverbs

Some of the major temporal adverbs are in (209).

(209) a. íyé ‘today; nowadays’
   íyé =̀ n ‘again’ (§19.3.1)
   pÌlè-m-è: ‘again’ (§19.3.1)
   yá: ‘yesterday’
   íyé tà:-né ‘day before yesterday’
   kà:ná ‘now, at present’
   nɛ́: wɔ̀ⁿ ‘now’ (discourse marker)

b. yògò ‘tomorrow’
   yògò-dør”è ‘day after tomorrow’
   yògò-dè:”-tì: ‘second day after tomorrow’ (third from today)

c. gà:rú ‘last year’
   nàŋú”ù, yògò H: nàŋú”ù ‘next year’
   nɔ́:w”j ‘this year’

8.4.5.2 ‘First’ (lá:, tì→)

Adverbial lá: ‘first(ly)’, implying a following eventuality even if it is not overtly expressed, is exemplified in (210).

(210) mì lá:  yè-Ç dè, [ú 1kè] dɔ̀gò 1yèrè
1Sg first go-Pfv if, [2Sg 1Top] behind 1come.Imprt
‘I will go first, then as for you-Sg, come-2Sg behind!’

Adverbial tì→ ‘to begin with, to start off, first off, first of all, firstly’ has a similar sense, and often co-occurs with lá:.

(211) maintenant émè tì→,
now 1PSbj *firstly, [planting on] first begin-lpfv
‘Now to start off, we’ll begin first (talking) about planting.’ (2011.1a.01)

A number of clause subordinators also emphasize the chronological sequence of an eventuality with respect to another. This includes the pseudo-conditional dè in (210).
8.4.5.3 Spatial adverbs

Some of the key spatial adverbs are in (212).

(212)  a. árá kûⁿ ‘on top, above, up’
   bôrô ‘below, down’

b. dû-dágá ‘east’
   têŋ-dágá ‘west’ (cf. Tengou, Dogon group)
   nàŋ–dígí ‘south’
   tôr–dígí ‘north’ (cf. tôr ‘mountain’ in other Dogon languages)

c. dògó kûⁿ ‘back, backward’
   dògó tô, dògó ‘in the rear’
   gírè tô ‘forward; in front’

gírè in gírè tô ‘in front, ahead’ is distinct tonally from gírè ‘eye’.

Adjectives ‘left’ (nàŋà) and ‘right’ (nà:) can be added to body-part terms (‘arm/hand’, ‘leg/foot’), but do not seem to have been traditionally used for abstract directions. nà: is distinct in form from nà: ‘eat (meal)’.

8.4.6 Expressive adverbials

Expressive adverbials are a class of stems that function as adverbs with various verbs (‘go’, ‘fall’, etc.), as predicates with a copula ‘be X’ (positive kô etc., negative kô-rô etc.), or as predicates with an active copula (e.g. kô: ‘become.Nonhuman’). Except for stem-iteration they typically have no morphology and do not participate in derivational or compounding morphology. They are not subject to overlays controlled by other words. They cannot function directly as postnominal adjectival modifiers, but a relative clause can be formed with the adverbial plus a copula in relative-clause form. Most expressive adverbials are not related phonologically to stems in regular classes (nouns, verbs, adjectives), but there are exceptions.

A large sample of expressive adverbials is presented in this section, organized mainly by phonological form. Most intensifiers for adjectives and other stems listed in §6.3.3.2 also belong to the class of expressive adverbials and are not re-listed here. A few important adverbials have their own subsections below.

8.4.6.1 Types of expressive adverbial

The adverbials in (213) are not iterated and do not show intonational prolongation of the final syllable. Of interest is the existence of some entirely \{L\}-toned adverbials (213f), given that every noun, verb, adjective, and numeral stem has at least one H-tone element (§3.7.1.1).

A predicative element that often combines with each EA, either a copula (nonhuman kô or human singular wô) or a verb (‘go’, ‘put’, ‘fall’, etc.), is included in parentheses after the gloss, but the forms given do not exclude other possibilities.
Expressive adverbials (non-iterated, not prolonged)

a. /H/, onomatopoeic
   - póp  ‘landing powerfully’ (bàgá ‘fall’)
   - tóti  ‘plopping (sth soft landing)’ (bàgá ‘fall’)

b. /H/, not onomatopoeic
   - sì:  ‘(sharply) pointed’ (kɔ́)
   - gùpén ‘(walk) with a swagger, with elbows out’ (yɛ́ ‘go’)
   - póyáw  ‘well-lit’ (kɔ́)
   - kólów ‘in a circle’ (kɔ́)
   - bólów ‘brilliant, long-necked’ (kɔ́)
   - séréé ‘long and thin, tall and thin’ (kɔ́, wɔ́)

with final -í:
   - sólní:  ‘smelling like raw meat or fish’ (kɔ́)

c. /HL/
   - dǔm  ‘(land) with a thud’ (súgó ‘go down’)
   - púrɛ́:y  ‘(go out) suddenly’ (gò: ‘go out’, kirí: ‘fly away’)

d. /LH/
   - pǔm  ‘(pass by, run away) in a flash’, cf. iterated variant below (gàrá ‘pass’)
   - póy  ‘(sth) shoot out’ (gò:)
   - sǔy  ‘bursting in, (entering) abruptly’ (nú ‘go in’)

e. /LHL/
   - dǔrò:  ‘backwards’ (many combinations)

f. {L}, with H-toned kɔ́
   - sù:  ‘oily’ (kɔ́)
   - wùrùjà ‘(tree) having many fruits (heavy with fruits)’ (kɔ́)
   - kùbáw  ‘dominant, towering (tree)’ (kɔ́)
   - gìyàw  ‘shady (tree)’ (kɔ́)

The EAs in (214) show intonational prolongation, or at least a final long vowel.

(214) Expressive adverbials (intonationally prolonged)

a. /H/
   onomatopoeic
   - só ‘(grain) pouring out noisily’
   other
   - só ñ ‘(staring) wide-eyed’ (gérí: ‘look’)
   - pó ‘gaping, wide open (door)’ (kɔ́)
   - sù ‘clear (sky)’ (kɔ́)
   - kùw ‘silent (person), calm (place)’ (also iterated kùw-kùw) (kɔ́, wɔ́)
   - lùw ‘placed on top (e.g. on one’s head or on a rock)’ (kɔ́)
sáy → ‘conspicuously visible’ (kɔ̂)
gúní → ‘globular, ball-shaped’ (kɔ̂)
jéwgé → ‘teetering’, ‘badly placed’ (kɔ̂)

b. /LH/
with final i (sometimes segmentable)

gègí → ‘tilted’ (kɔ̂)
sèrī → ‘sticking out (e.g. leg)’ (kɔ̂)
bàmí → ‘rickety, shakily positioned’ (kɔ̂)
" → ‘tilted’ (kɔ̂)
yùgùj-ı → ‘disheveled, furry’ (kɔ̂), from adjective yùgùjú

other

kòː → ‘empty’ (kɔ̂)
kɔyⁿ → ‘(e.g. teeth, horn) sticking out’ (kɔ̂)
yèw → ‘(eyes) slightly open’ (kɔ̂)
sèy → ‘(head, tip) sticking out (a little)’ (kɔ̂)
sùy → ‘(e.g. lips) projecting out’ (kɔ̂)


c. /HL/
sù → ‘pointing downward’ (kɔ̂)
bòdò → ‘fat and clumsy’ (wɔ̂)

d. /LHL/
kú” dò → ‘(walking) with head high’ (with kú” ‘head’) (wɔ̂)

e. two-part
/H/~/H/
yó → gó → ‘ajar, slightly open (door)’ (píné ‘shut’)

Related to this prolongation type is a set of EAs that are derived from adjectives by
adding -í or an allomorph such as lengthening of the final vowel, along with tonal changes
in some cases: dòg-ı → ‘heavy’, wàg-à → ‘far (away)’. See §11.4.1.2 for examples and
discussion. There are also a few similar adverbials derived from verbs (215). These are
essentially identical to the corresponding same-subject anterior subordinating form in -e: ~ -e:
~ -i: (§15.2.2.1), but they can be used predicatively with copulas.

(215) Expressive adverbials derived from verbs

bin-é → ‘inverted’ (verb biné) (kɔ̂)
gòm-é → ‘(eyes) wide open’ (verb gòmɔ́) (kɔ̂)
wàrⁿ-é → ‘(tree roots, vine) spreading on ground’ (verb wàrⁿ-î:) (kɔ̂)

Finally, the EAs in (216) involve stem iteration. In most cases the stem is not attested
elsewhere. (216) is organized around the phonological relationship (vocalism, tone pattern)
between the two (or three) parts of the iteration.

159
(216) Iterated expressive adverbials

a. no vocalic or tonal change

\[\text{Iterated expressive adverbials}\]

1. **ké-ké**
   - (e.g. door flush (with frame))’ (short stem makes segmentation questionable) \( (k3) \)

2. **Déⁿ-Déⁿ**
   - ‘rebalanced’ \( (k3) \)

3. **Táⁿ-Táⁿ**
   - ‘(walking) with legs separated’ \( (k3) \)

4. **Dàń-Dàń**
   - ‘side by side’ \( (k3) \)

5. **Kán-Kán**
   - ‘motionless, playing dead’ \( (k3) \)

6. **Léw-Léw**
   - ‘dripping’ (verb *léwé*)

7. **Sáyⁿ-Sáyⁿ**
   - ‘blazing (sun)’ \( (k3) \)

8. **Tɔ́ŋ-Ṫɔ́ŋ**
   - ‘dotted, spotted’ \( (k3) \)

9. **Valid Kéw-Kéw ~ Ké-Kéw**
   - ‘equal’ \( (k3) \)

10. **Dégré-Dégré**
    - ‘slowly, gently’ (cf. *dégré* ‘short’) (many combinations)

11. **Káŋá-Káŋá**
    - ‘feeling fine’

12. **Séwé-Séwé**
    - ‘(walk) silently’ \( (yéh ‘go’) \)

13. **Mùŋo-Mùŋo**
    - ‘hastily, unceremoniously’

14. **Sùrɔ̀-Sùrɔ̀**
    - ‘in a heap’

15. **Tòŋ-Tòn̂u**
    - ‘dotted, spotted’

16. **Wálango-Wálango**
    - ‘bouncing’ \( (bìr ‘do’) \)

17. **Sòróy-Sòróy**
    - ‘slippery (hard to hold)’ \( (k3) \)

18. **Tùŋgwá-Tùŋgwá**
    - ‘lukewarm’

19. **Pádà:w-Pádà:w**
    - ‘galloping (fast)’ \( (jwá ‘run’) \)

20. **Tábará-Tábará**
    - ‘blotched, with large spots’ \( (k3) \)

b. tonal change only

\( /H-/\{L\}\)

1. **Dó:rò-Dó:rò**
   - ‘shining, gleaming’ \( (k3) \)

\( /LH-/\{L\}\)

2. **Pìm-Pìm**
   - ‘running at top speed’ (iteration of *pìm*) \( (jwá ‘run’) \)

3. **Hùl-Hùl**
   - ‘quivering (like dog’s tongue)’ \( (bìr ‘do’) \)

4. **Bèy-Bèy**
   - ‘flickering (light)’ \( (k3) \)

\( \{L\}-/\{LH\}/\)

5. **Bála-Bála**
   - ‘(cook) hastily’ \( (bìr ‘do’) \)

6. **Bála-Bála**
   - ‘(cook) hastily’ \( (bìr ‘do’) \)

7. **Tió-Tió**
   - ‘(walking) clumsily (like an infant)’ \( (yé ‘go’) \)

as above, but all \( L \)-toned, with \( k3 \)

8. **Gòrùm-Gàràm**
   - ‘crooked (with sharp bends)’ \( (k3) \)

---

160
d. vocalic and tonal change

\{L\}-/H/, mid-height vowel to a

\[jèlè-já{l}á\]

‘dangling, waving’ (\(k{\ddot{a}}\))

/LH/-/L/, high vowel to a

\[jùgù-já{gù}\]

‘swaying (like elephant)’ (\(bi{ré}\) ‘do’)

\[jìgì-já{gù}\]

‘fidgeting’, ‘lumbering along’ (\(bi{ré}\) ‘do’)

e. based on uniterated adjective

\[\ddot{a}{gú}-\ddot{a}{gú}\]

‘fast, quickly’, cf. adjective \(\ddot{a}{gú}\) ‘fast’

See also the somewhat similar iterated onomatopoeias in §8.4.7.1 below.

These iterated EAs, mostly unrelated to simple stems, should be distinguished from distributive iterations of common nouns, which have a different grammar. A distributive sense can be expressed by repeating the cognate verb (217).

(217) \[f^n\] \[ti^n\] \[sùr\] \[sùr-è:\] \[sùr-è:\]

1SgSbj firewood pile(n) pile.up-SS.Ant pile.up-SS.Ant

dág-è

leave-Pfv

‘I put the firewood in (several) piles and left (it).’

Or a plural NP, rather than the simple noun, can be repeated in a conjoined NP construction (218).

(218) \[[\ddot{a}rùsègé\ bè]\] \[[[kùrš \ bè]\ [kùrš \ bè]]\] yà:-të\ñë\è

[animal PL] [herd PL] [herd PL] go-Prog.PLsbj

‘The (wild) animals travel in herds.’

The EA \(\ddot{a}{gú}-\ddot{a}{gú}\) ‘rapidly, quickly’ is transparently related to the adjective \(\ddot{a}{gú}\) ‘rapid, speedy’.

There are a small number of EAs formed by multiple final \(Cv\) reduplication. They are given in (219), which includes repeats of two adjectival intensifiers from (140b) in §6.3.3.2. Note the alternations of \(g\) with \(j\), \(r\) with \(l\), and \(r^n\) with \(n\), where in each case the first consonant occurs in \(C_2\) (once in \(C_3\)) position and is followed by at least two repetitions switching to the related second consonant.

(219) a. \(C_2\) and later \(C^\prime\)'s = \(j\)

\[kùjùjùjù\]

‘dragging forcefully’ (\(k{\ddot{a}}\))

b. \(C_2 = g\), repeated as \(j\)

\[yàgàjájá\]

‘very coarse, rough’ (\(kágájú\) ‘coarse’)

c. \(C_2\) (or \(C_3\)) = \(r\), repeated as \(l\)

\[yègèrèlélè\]

‘blinding (light)’ (\(k{\ddot{a}}\))

\[kèrèlélè\]

‘very cold’ (\(k{\ddot{l}ú}\) ‘cold’)

d. \(C_2 = r^n\), repeated as \(n\)

\[nàr^n\ddot{a}nànà\]

‘lean (meat); gooey (meat, as from an old cow)’ (\(k{\ddot{a}}\))

\[bù\ddot{n}n\ddot{n}\ddot{n}\]

‘foul-smelling (urine, dirty clothes)’ (\(k{\ddot{a}}\))

\[t^n\ddot{n}\ddot{n}\ddot{n}\]

‘smooth, sleek’
Like most pure adjectives, and unlike most EAs, ࡘൺ$n_phr: ‘smooth, sleek’ has a paired inchoative verb ࡘൺ$n. However, ࡘൺ$n is syntactically an adverbial rather than an adjective, as shown by its negative predicate, ࡘൺ$n kɔ̂-rɔ̂ ‘it isn’t smooth’, and by its relative-clause form as a modifier, gũjũ L ࡘൺ$n kɔ̂ ‘smooth skin, skin that is smooth’.

These iterative EAs should be distinguished, at least in principle, from look-alike compound agentives including a cognate nominal. Some examples of these agentives are in (91a) in §5.1.5. For example, sip̀e-siôn ‘noisy’ is simply an agentive compound based on sip̀e sip̀e ‘make noise’ consisting of a verb and preceding cognate nominal.

It is not easy to distinguish adverbs (including EAs) from verb stems that are specialized to occur only nonfinally in direct verb chains, in the bare-stem form. For example, bànà in bànà gô: ‘get out of the way, dodge’ (gô: ‘go out’), and tɔrɔ in e.g. tɔrɔ dɔ: ‘move over’ (dɔ: ‘arrive’), can be taken either as adverbs or as specialized verb stems based on current data. Adverbial jè-sè ‘breaking into a run’, which can be used with verb jɔ̀wɔ ‘run’, contains the noun jè ‘running, race’.

tɔ̀n-tɔ̀n-tɔ̀n ‘foul-smelling (e.g. fart, fox secretion)’ is tentatively taken to be an iterated EA, but the base tɔ̀n-tɔ̀n, which is attested in senses like ‘salty’ and ‘sour’) is already iterated (or a Cv-reduplication).

Other elements showing final prolongation (as for EAs) that are discussed elsewhere in the grammar are: ñù → ‘all’ (§6.6.1), wɔ → ‘each, all’ (§6.6.3), té → ‘exactly’ (§8.4.3.2), pɔ → ~ ñɔ → ‘all the way to’ and bà → ‘all the way to/from’ (§8.2.13), tɔn-tɔn ‘here and there, scattered’ (§8.4.7.3), and ‘flat’ adverbials like pàtɔ → (§4.5.3).

A morpheme kɔ in is attested after certain EAs. Like copula kɔ, it shifts to H-tone after a completely {L}-toned adverbial. Examples: pètè → kɔ ‘squared, having flat sides’, kùrɔ sɔ̀gù-sɔ̀gù kɔ ‘(tree) with dense foliage’, dêm kɔ ‘straight (road)’, gɔrùm-garùm ḫɔ ‘crooked (stick)’, yũgũj-i → kɔ ‘woolly, furry’. The form with kɔ ‘(H-kɔ)’ functions as an NP-internal modifier rather than as a predicate.

(220) bà:ɡà L [pètè → kɔ] mà=ŋ L jèːrè stick L [flat-sided Adj] 1Sg=Dat ḫbring,Impprt ‘Bring-2Sg me a flat-sided (rectangular) stick!’

8.4.6.2 Expressive adverbial plus {H}-toned perfective

An expressive adverbial (EA) or onomatopoeic interjection can occur in a construction of the type [EA Subj ḫPerf], with a subject pronominal and an {H}-toned perfective verb. Cf. English plop went the duck. The verbs in (221a-b) elsewhere appear as tɔn ‘got up’ and bɔg-ɛ ‘fell’, or they occur clause-finally in {L}-toned form.

(221) a. pàm wɔ ḫtɔn ‘He got up abruptly’ (=’he shot up’) (2011.1b.03)

b. pòp wɔ ḫbɔg-ɛ thud 3SgSbj ḫfall-Pfv ‘He fell down with a thud.’
8.4.6.3 ‘Straight’ (déwⁿ→)

The expressive adverbial déwⁿ→ is used to denote straight, direct, unmediated trajectories (motion, path, line of sight). It can be used predicatively with a copula (222b); in this case, the intonational prolongation is reduced and may be absent.

(222) a. émé [iýé ní gô:] déwⁿ→ bàmàk5 lỳà:-jù
1PlSbj [today here leave] straight B lgo-lpfv
‘We’ll go today straight from here to Bamako.’

b. ójú déwⁿ(→) kɔ̂
road straight be.NonhSbj
‘The road is straight (direct).’

This EA has an iterated variant dëⁿ-déwⁿ ~ dëⁿ-déwⁿ ‘straight (direction)’.

8.4.6.4 ‘Apart, separate’ (dýⁿ→)

This expressive adverbial means ‘apart, separate’ in a physical sense, or ‘distinct, not the same’ more abstractly. Since there is generally a parallelistic context, with two or more individuals or groups distinguished or separated, a reduplicated form is common (223b).

(223) a. [émé wò] dýⁿ→
[1Pl all] apart
‘We are not all the same.’

b. [në-ûrⁿù bè] [ârⁿd-ûrⁿù bè] dëⁿ-dýⁿ bè:
‘Place-2Sg the girls and the boys apart (separated)!’

8.4.6.5 ‘Always’ (já-wò→), ‘never’ (nánà)

The ‘always’ or ‘every day’ adverb is já-wò→. It is apparently constructed from an otherwise unattested noun já presumably meaning ‘time’ or ‘day’, plus wò→ ‘each, every’.

The ‘never’ adverb is nánà, used with a negative predicate. However, experiential perfect ‘never’ as in ‘I have never seen an elephant’ can be expressed directly by the experiential perfect negative verb form, see §10.2.3.2, below.

(224) a. iⁿ já-wò→ nî yô wɔ
1SgSbj always here Exist be.HumSgSbj
‘I will always be here.’

b. iⁿ nánà té nɔ:-rò
1SgSbj never tea drink-lpfvNeg
‘I will never drink tea.’
8.4.7 Reduplicated (iterated) adverbials

8.4.7.1 Iterated (fully repeated) onomatopoeias

Iterated onomatopoeic forms are displayed in (225), arranged by syllabic shape and vocalic changes. They can be bi- or tripartite. They are usually made predicative by adding a verb like *bìrɛ́* ‘do, make’.

(225) Iterated onomatopoeias

\[a. \quad \text{Cv-Cv(-Cv)}\]
\[kɛ́ⁿ-kɛ́ⁿ\quad \text{[ringing sound]}\]
\[b. \quad \text{Cv-Cv:} \]
\[\text{shift to a in second iteration}\]
\[cːⁿ-cːⁿ\quad \text{[chirping sound of small birds]}\]
\[hóː-háː-hóː\quad \text{‘loud chatter’}\]
\[c. \quad \text{CvCv-CvCv(-CvCv)}\]
\[\text{shift to a in second iteration}\]
\[kòró-kàrà-kòró\quad \text{[rattling or creaking sound]}\]
\[d. \quad \text{Cv:Cv:C}\]
\[tāːb-tāːb\quad \text{[sound of walking through grass]}\]
\[e. \quad \text{CvCv(:)C-CvCv(:)C}\]
\[kárà:w-kárà:w\quad \text{[sound of crunching bones]}\]

8.4.7.2 Distributive adverbials from iterated numerals

Distributives are formed from numerals by iteration. The iteration is more or less complete for simple numerals, but the first iteration is subject to some phonological attrition. In *tāⁿ-tā:n* ‘three by three’, the first element looks rather like a Cv-reduplication rather than an iteration. In *lɔ́-lɔ́y* ‘two by two’ and *nǎ-nǎy* we have a similar result, but the loss of stem-final *y* in the first iteration is also found in iterated adverbials. *tú-tūrú* ‘one by one’ could reflect rv-Deletion from a full iteration, or it could be another Cv-reduplication. Most of the other stems are clearly iterated.

(226) Distributive of numerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>numeral</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>distributive (‘one by one’, etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. ‘1’ to ‘4’, possible Cv-reduplications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>túrú</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>tú-tūrú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lɔ́y</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>lɔ́-lɔ́y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā:n</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>tāⁿ-tā:n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎ-náy</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>nǎ-náy⁴</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. ‘5’ to ‘10’, clearly full iterations

\[
\begin{align*}
nùně: & \quad nùně-nùně:  
kùrě: & \quad kùrě-kùrě:  
ss: & \quad ss-ss:  
sìlā: & \quad sìlā-sìlā:  
tùwā: & \quad tùwā-tùwā:  
pɛ́rú & \quad pɛ́rú-pɛ́rú
\end{align*}
\]

Morphologically complex numerals iterate enough material to get the point across. From \(pɛ́-tà:nù\) ‘30’ we get \(pɛ́-tà:n=30\) by 30’. From \(pɛ́: lɔ́ ságà\) ‘12’ we get \(pɛ́: lɔ́ ságà lɔ́ ságà\) ‘12 by 12’.

The distributive can be used in a range of contexts involving separation into units or clusters, or pairing members or subsets of one set with those of another.

\((227)\)

a. \(bɛ \ tù-tùrù \ yɛ̀r-ɛ\)

3PlSbj one-one come-Pfv

‘They came one by one.’ (= ‘They dribbled in.’)

b. \(ɛ́mɛ \ [n=ɔ̂ \ w Quarry = h] \ sá:gù \ lɔ́lɔ́y \ gamařda-pù\)

1PlSbj [person each=Dat] sack two-two distribute-Lpfv

‘We’ll distribute two sacks (of grain) to each person.’

8.4.7.3 ‘Scattered, here and there’ (tâŋ-tâŋ)

This adverbial indicates scattered, low-density distribution.

\((228)\)

\(ɛ́rɛ \ [ɛ́mɛ \ kè] \ tâŋ-tâŋ \ kɔ́\)

peanut [1SgPoss 1Poss] here.and.there be.NonhSbj

‘Our peanut (plants) are scattered (not common).’
9 Verbal derivation

The productive suffixal derivations for deriving a verb from another verb are the reversive (‘un-...’) with suffix -rv and the causative with any of several suffixes (most productively -mv). “v” indicates a variable short vowel. Many verbs (e.g. of stance and of holding) occur in a suffixed mediopassive form (bare stem ends in suffix -i: or -ì:) that may co-exist with a corresponding transitive form. Adjectives generally have an intransitive inchoative (‘become ADJ’) and a transitive factitive (‘make something ADJ’).

The only combinations of two derivational suffixes are those with a final causative suffix added to a reversive, a mediopassive, or an inchoative stem. Often, but not always, the factitive of adjectives is just the causative of the corresponding inchoative stem.

9.1 Reversive verbs (-rv, -rⁿv)

Reversive verbs, which are common in Dogon languages, have a semantics similar to un-verbs in English (untie, unbend). They presuppose that an initial action (tying, bending) previously took place, and the current action reverses the process, returning the object (theme) to its original position. Reversives generally preserve the valency of the corresponding underived verb. Among the more interesting simple/reflexive semantic pairings are ‘shut’/’open’ and ‘forget’/’remember’, though the latter is slightly obscured by a phonological irregularity.

The reverse is derived from the simple verb by a suffix -rv, which can be nasalized to -rⁿv after a nasal syllable (v represents a vowel). The distinction between /H(L)/ and /LH/ toned verb stems is respected. All clear reversives are of the (trimoraic) prosodic types Cv:-rv or CvCv-rv. By virtue of having these (heavy) shapes, all reversives belong to the class of verbs with final L-toned high vowel {i u} in the bare stem (and related perfective forms). This presupposes that the input simple stem is Cv: or CvCv.

All reversives from my working dictionary are listed in (229).

(229) Reversives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>input</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>Reversive</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Cv:-rv from Cv:</td>
<td></td>
<td>[none attested]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. like (a) but with nasalized -rⁿv</td>
<td>/H/-toned</td>
<td>t5:ⁿ ‘roll on (turban)’</td>
<td>t5:-rⁿi ‘unroll (turban)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. CvCv-rv from CvCv, second input syllable not nasal</td>
<td>/H/- and /HL/-toned</td>
<td>pégé</td>
<td>‘insert (blade)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pégí-ri</td>
<td>‘remove (blade)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>págá</td>
<td>‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>págí-ri</td>
<td>‘untie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sógá</td>
<td>‘lock’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sógí-ri</td>
<td>‘unlock’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíwé</td>
<td>‘put hide cover on’</td>
<td>‘remove hide cover from’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíi-ri</td>
<td>‘become uncaught, get free’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tági-ri</td>
<td>‘take off (shoe)’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíw-ri</td>
<td>‘take off (hat)’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**/L.H/-toned**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dêwê</td>
<td>‘cover up’</td>
<td>‘uncover, reveal’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dígê</td>
<td>‘join (objects)’</td>
<td>‘de-couple (objects)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wábê</td>
<td>‘sag’</td>
<td>‘spring back up (after sagging)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**d. like (c), but with nasalized -r̩v after a nasal syllable**

**/H/-toned**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sōnû</td>
<td>‘comb’</td>
<td>‘undo (braids)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōjô</td>
<td>‘crumple’</td>
<td>‘uncrumple’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáŋà</td>
<td>‘put (fence)’</td>
<td>‘unfence’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pînê</td>
<td>‘close (door)’</td>
<td>‘open (door)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíw-ôi</td>
<td>‘shut (eyes)’</td>
<td>‘open (eyes)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tînê</td>
<td>‘cover with lid’</td>
<td>‘remove lid from’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nîﬁ-ôi</td>
<td>‘become tangled’</td>
<td>‘become untangled’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**/L.H/-toned**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dôŋô</td>
<td>‘prop up’</td>
<td>‘un-prop, remove prop from’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**e. like (c-d), but with unasalized -rv after nasal syllable**

etymologically *CvNCv, see discussion below

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>téŋê</td>
<td>‘hobble (animal)’</td>
<td>‘un-hobble (animal)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nôŋ-ô</td>
<td>‘be stuck (in tree)’</td>
<td>‘become unstuck, get free’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bînê</td>
<td>‘turn inside-out’</td>
<td>‘put back on right (garment)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dûŋô</td>
<td>‘stop up (hole)’</td>
<td>‘re-open (stopped up hole)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mînê</td>
<td>‘roll up (mat), fold’</td>
<td>‘unroll (mat), unfold’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mûnô</td>
<td>‘bundle, rumple’</td>
<td>‘unbundle’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

etymologically *CvNv, perhaps reshaped by analogy to the preceding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mûŋô</td>
<td>‘tie (knot)’</td>
<td>‘untie (knot)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**f. Cvrv stem with reversive Cv-ôi (see rv-Deletion, §3.5.3.2)**

**/H/-toned**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>târî</td>
<td>‘affix, stick on’</td>
<td>‘remove (sth affixed)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**/L.H/-toned**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gôrô</td>
<td>‘cover (opening)’</td>
<td>‘remove cover from (opening)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**g. irregular**

change in vowel-harmonic class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tôŋô-</td>
<td>‘pull up (pants)’</td>
<td>‘let back down (pants)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*CvCv reduced to Cv—before suffix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nàŋà</td>
<td>‘forget’</td>
<td>‘remember’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

irregular from Cvyy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>biyé</td>
<td>‘bury’</td>
<td>‘disinter’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Prost: “bille”]

The cases in (229e), where the reversive suffix unexpectedly fails to nasalize even though it follows a nasal syllable, usually reflect proto-forms where the stem had a voiced homorganic nasal-stop cluster (*nd, *mb, *ng) that was later reduced to just the nasal. The reversive was
therefore originally of the type \textit{CvNDv-rv}, so the suffix was not in a nasalizing environment. For \textit{bîn} ‘turn inside-out’ compare Nanga \textit{bindé}. For \textit{têpê} ‘hobble (animal, i.e. by tying a rope around its legs)’, compare Perge (dialect of Jamsay) \textit{tôngô}. For \textit{nôô-ô-i} ‘(e.g. stone, stick) be stuck in tree’, compare Nanga \textit{nôô-gî-yô}. For \textit{dûnô} ‘stop up (hole)’, compare Najamba \textit{dûngî} ‘fill up (pit, well)’. \textit{mînê} ‘roll up (mat)’ and \textit{mûnô} ‘bundle, rumple’ form a set with close semantic and phonological relationships (cf. the discussion of vowel symbolism in §3.4.7); relevant cognates include Nanga \textit{mûndô} ‘rumple’, and Bankan Tey \textit{mûbûndô} ‘rumple’ and \textit{mîndê} ‘roll up (mat)’. However, for \textit{mûnô} ‘tie (knot)’ the comparative data currently known to me point to an uncluttered medial \textit{*η}, and cognate reversives do have a nasalized suffix. Perhaps this reversive verb has been reshaped in TgK by analogy to one or more of the just-mentioned examples, notably the ‘roll up’ and ‘bundle, rumple’ forms, which also begin with \textit{m} and have a medial nasal.

In (229f) we see that a \textit{Cvrv} verb combines with reversible -\textit{rv} as \textit{Cv-lv}, with \textit{l} instead of \textit{r}, perhaps reduced from an earlier *\textit{Cv-lv} Similar phenomena, reflecting difficulties in combining rhotics with laterals, occur in reversives in other Dogon languages.

A nominal based on a reversive is \textit{kâ”-[pángâ-râ]lì} ‘Ramadan (fasting month)’, literally “mouth-[tie-Reversive]” with an overlaid compound overlay, cf. \textit{kâ”} ‘mouth’ and \textit{pái-gù} ‘untie’ (imperative \textit{pángâ-râ}).

Simple (underived) stems that are not of \textit{Cv} or \textit{CvCv} shapes do not have morphological reversives, but they can express the notion of reversal by being chained with a following verb \textit{gûŋ’} ‘take out, remove’. For example, \textit{lêgî-rî} ‘slide in, insert (into a crack, under a hat, etc.)’ is already a trisyllabic stem ending in \textit{ri}, so the only way to express a reversive is by using the verb-verb chain \textit{lêgî-rî-gûŋ’} ‘slide back out, remove (something inserted)’.

Another syntactic mechanism, useful when the simple verb denotes a form of pressure rather than impact, is to chain it with \textit{dância} ‘leave’ (in the sense ‘desist’). Example: \textit{kôrô dância} ‘un-surround’ (i.e. desist from surrounding something).

Since the reversive suffix is so productive, there are few underived verbs with reversible semantics, i.e. that function as suppletive reversives for phonologically unrelated verbs. \textit{pôrî} ‘(knot) become undone’ is compatible with reversible form, but the simple verb \textit{pô}: has unrelated senses (‘scoop out’ etc.), so for practical purposes \textit{pô:rî} is a lexical reversive. \textit{sûnî} ‘(braids) become undone’ is also semantically reversible. Ironically, it has an apparent reversible derivative \textit{sûnî-rû} ‘untwist (fibers of a simple cord)’ that functions as suppletive reversible of the phonologically unrelated verb \textit{nû}: ‘make (simple cord, by twisting fibers)’. This is an example of how a simple verb and its reversible can decouple semantically over time.

In addition to the verbs recognized here as reversives, TgK has dozens of other verbs with shapes like \textit{Cv:rv} and \textit{CvCvrv} (and nasalized \textit{Cv:rnv} and \textit{CvCvrvnv}) that are compatible in form with the reversible derivation. A few of these may have originated as reversives. However, in many cases the final rhotic syllable cannot be segmented as a suffix. In other cases, it is segmentable, but the final -\textit{rv} has a different function, opposing a transitive valency to a mediopassive; see §9.3.1.

\section{Deverbal causative verbs}

\subsection{Productive suffixed causative (-\textit{mv})}

The productive causative is with a suffix -\textit{mv}, where “\textit{v}” is a short high vowel. In the bare stem, the usual pronunciation is -\textit{m}, from -/\textit{m}/, with the vowel apocopated and with its L-tone shifted onto the suffixal nasal. Before -\textit{m}, the input stem has its usual /H/ or /LH/ tone,
and the vocalism associated with the imperative, the imperfective, and other forms (other than the bare stem or its perfective).

Examples are in (230). Unless otherwise noted the sense of the derivative is within the standard range of causative senses, ranging from coercion (e.g. ‘X jump’ > ‘Y cause X to jump’) to facilitation (‘X spend the night’ > ‘Y have/let X spend the night’). The mediopassive suffix is realized as -ɛ́ before the causative suffix but is occasionally dropped (230f).

(230) Causative -m

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>input</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>causative</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. from Cv and Cv: /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
<td>nú-m</td>
<td>‘put inside’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kó:p</td>
<td>‘weep’</td>
<td>kó:p-m</td>
<td>also written kó:p-m ; used with nominal kó:p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pé:n</td>
<td>‘get old’</td>
<td>pé:n-m</td>
<td>also written pé:n-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jí:</td>
<td>‘eat (meal)’</td>
<td>jí:-m</td>
<td>‘feed’; with noun ná:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná:</td>
<td>‘spend night’</td>
<td>ná:-m</td>
<td>‘have (sb) spend the night’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bë:</td>
<td>‘defecate’</td>
<td>bë:-m</td>
<td>used with nominal bë:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>në:</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
<td>në:-m</td>
<td>‘give drink to (sb), have (animals) drink’, formerly also ‘make a blood sacrifice to (a fetish)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. from CvCv, type with stable vocalism or mediopassive form /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>árá</td>
<td>‘(baby) suckle’</td>
<td>árá-m</td>
<td>‘nurse, give suck to’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kúwó</td>
<td>‘eat (meat)’</td>
<td>kúwó-m</td>
<td>‘give meat to’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàrá</td>
<td>‘do farm work’</td>
<td>wàrá-m</td>
<td>e.g. ‘have (animal) plow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jànjá</td>
<td>‘pick up’</td>
<td>jànjá-m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>júgós</td>
<td>‘recognize’</td>
<td>júgós-m</td>
<td>e.g. ‘X introduce (=present) Y to Z’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. from CvCv, type with final L-toned {i u} in bare stem and perfective /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíw</td>
<td>‘tremble’</td>
<td>kíw-m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mür</td>
<td>‘swallow’</td>
<td>mür-m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LHL/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gùn</td>
<td>‘remove’</td>
<td>gùn-m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cvrv stems subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>póri</td>
<td>‘say’</td>
<td>pó-ri</td>
<td>in: dàgá gá-ri ‘let through, allow to pass’, see also gá-ri (232e)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gë-rí:</td>
<td>‘look’</td>
<td>gë-rí:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gàrà</td>
<td>‘pass by, go past’</td>
<td>gà-rí:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biré</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
<td>bí-ri:</td>
<td>‘cause to do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cvrv stems not subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>árá</td>
<td>‘suck’</td>
<td>árá-m</td>
<td>‘(woman) nurse (baby)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
d. from $Cv: Cv$

/H/-toned

$pá:m$ ‘understand’  $pá: má:m$ ‘advise’
$ná:-râ$ ‘remember’  $ná:-râ:m$ ‘remind’ (reversive)
$wé:jâ$ ‘be accustomed’  $wé:jé:m$ ‘accustom (sb, to sth)’

/LH/-toned

$yú:gâ$ ‘be slow’  $yú: gâ:m$  
$wó: nâ$ ‘boil [intr]’  $wó:nó:m$  
$Dé: râ$ ‘cease’  $Dé: râ:m$ ‘let (sb) rest’ (noun $Dé: râ:$)

e. from $Cv: Cv: Cv$

/H/-toned

$sé:mâ$ ‘be in tatters’  $sé:mâ:m$  
$kírâ$ ‘go back’  $kírâ:m$  
$kúrâ$ ‘be dense’  $kúrâ:m$  

/LH/-toned

$búgâ$ ‘be muddied’  $búgâ:m$  
$gèmi$ ‘become dirty’  $gèmi:m$  
$yègâ$ ‘become pulpy’  $yègâ:m$  
$mè$ ‘be small balls’  $mè:m$  

f. from mediopassive, cf. ‘look’ in (c) above

MP morpheme absent in causative (rare)

$kírâ$ ‘jump’  $kírâ:m$  

MP morpheme present in causative (productive)

$bárâ$ ‘become red’  $bárâ:m$  

The final high vowel of the causative is audible in some suffixed forms. It is heard as $i$ in imperfective $-mí: ná$ (plural-subject $-mí: ná$) and perfective negative $-mí: li$, but as $u$ (lengthened to $u$) in imperfective negative $-mù: râ$ (plural-subject $-mù: râ$). It is difficult to choose between $/mí/ \text{ and } /-mu/ \text{ representations, since each of these forms has a biased}$ phonological environment (palatoalveolar consonant, following syllable with $i$ versus $o$ in the primary singular-subject form, even the labial $m$). There may be dialectal variation; in a recorded tale (2011.1b.04), imperfective negative variant $-mâ: râ$ was heard. Other suffixed inflected forms, the imperative, and the agentive, apocopate or syncopate the vowel.

There are no apparent restrictions on the prosodic shape of the derived causative stem (unlike the case with the reversive). Causative suffix $-ná$ may be added to a reversive stem: $ná:xâ:m$ ‘cause to remember, remind’. It may be added to a suffixally derived (or simple) deadjectival inchoative verb to produce a corresponding factitive: $érâ: lâ:m$ ‘cause to be happy’. (230f) shows that the suffix can be added to the mediopassive suffix.

As with other verbs, a verbal noun from a causative can be used as a compound final or modifying adjective specifying the manner of production. Thus $pârâ$ ‘sesame’, $pârâ:-yègâ:m$ ‘balls of cooked and pounded sesame seeds’.

Deadjectival factitives with the same causative suffix are illustrated in §9.5, below. Often the causative suffix follows an inchoative suffix in these forms.
9.2.2 Minor causative suffixes (-gv, -ŋv, -nv)

A small number of verbs have an archaic causative in -gv ~ -ŋv. For some, a productive causative with -m is also elicitable. The archaic causatives may have specialized meanings. The strange metathesis-like changes in dàání-gì, súnú-gì, and nùnú-gù have counterparts in their cognates in other Dogon languages and are undoubtedly ancient. The mediopassive suffix is not retained before -gv ~ -ŋv. All known examples are in (231).

(231) Causative -gv, -ŋv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>input</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>causative</th>
<th>gloss/comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. -gv</td>
<td>consonantism preserved</td>
<td>wòró ‘(well) cave in’</td>
<td>wòrí-gi ‘cause to cave in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>káwá ‘be separated’</td>
<td>káw(u)-gù ‘separate [tr]’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mòr-i: ‘be lost’</td>
<td>mòr-gi ‘cause to be lost’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lóró ‘be punctured’</td>
<td>lóri-gi ‘puncture’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cv-gv becomes Cv-nv-gv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dág-i: ‘be done well’</td>
<td>dàní-gi ‘make/do (sth) well’; ‘get ready [intr, tr]’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>súgó ‘go down’</td>
<td>súnú-gi ‘take down; unload’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cv-gv becomes Cv-nv-gv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>táŋá ‘X become Y’</td>
<td>tánú-gú ‘Z transform X into Y’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cv-wv becomes Cv-nv-gv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nùnú-gú ‘be ruined’</td>
<td>nùnú-gù ‘ruin [tr]’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cv: (&lt; *Cvwo) becomes Cv-nv-gv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>giné nù: ‘wake up [intr]’</td>
<td>nùnú-gù ‘wake (sb) up’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. -ŋv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>input</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>causative</th>
<th>gloss/comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. phonologically regular</td>
<td></td>
<td>dọ́: ‘arrive’</td>
<td>dọ́-ŋì ‘take to the endpoint’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bá: ‘learn’</td>
<td>bá:-ŋì ‘teach, instruct’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perhaps of this type is dọ́rú-gù ‘bail out, ransom’, compare the second element in the collocation dọgò dọ́r ‘back up, retreat’ (dọgò ‘back[ward]’).

Some of the basic verbs of motion and stance have causative-like transitive counterparts with suffix -nv. Several verbs translatable as ‘put, set, lay’ are of this type. The known cases are in (232). The phonological relationships are often nontransparent.

(232) Causative -nv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>input</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>causative</th>
<th>gloss/comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. phonologically regular</td>
<td></td>
<td>dọ́: ‘arrive’</td>
<td>dọ́-ŋì ‘take to the endpoint’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bá: ‘learn’</td>
<td>bá:-ŋì ‘teach, instruct’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. minor consonantal irregularity

\[ tɔ̃ːnù \] ‘melt [intr]’
\[ tɔ̃ːrⁿù \] ‘melt [tr]’

c. (C)mv becoming (C)u:-n(i)

\[ ìm-ː \] ‘lie down’
\[ ùːn-ː \] ‘lay, put down (large object)’

d. Cvnv becoming Cv:-n(i)

\[ dɛn-ː \] ‘put down, set (e.g. container)’
\[ nàːn-ː \] ‘put up on (wall)’

e. Cvrv becoming Cv:-nì

\[ ìmː \] ‘sit’
\[ ìːn \] ‘assemble [intr]’
\[ ìːnː \] ‘assemble [tr]’

f. irregular (phonology very obscure)

\[ dɔwː \] ‘go up’
\[ dâːn \] ‘cause to go up’

For transitive suffix -rv, which is sometimes causative-like in sense, see §9.3.1, just below.

9.3 Passive and transitive

9.3.1 Mediopassive -iː ~ -eː vs transitive -rv ~ -rⁿv

A number of verb stems occur in a contrasting pair of suffixed forms. One has mediopassive -iː, which is realized word-finally as -iː after L-toned CvC- and as -iː after H-toned CvC-. It becomes -eː before another suffix, and in the imperative. The paired form has transitive suffix -rv, with nasalized variant -rⁿv after a nasal syllable. These labels are rough; most morphological mediopassives are intransitive but some are transitive, in which case the corresponding morphological transitive is doubly transitive. However, in all cases the mediopassive denotes some kind of state.

Typical semantic categories of verbs with this distinction are a) stance verbs like ‘sit’; b) verbs of holding and carrying; c) verbs of donning and wearing garments; and d) deadjectival verbs. The latter are covered in §9.5, below.

Mediopassive/transitive pairs are illustrated in (233).

(233) Mediopassive -iː and paired transitive -rv ~ -rⁿv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| a. stance, position
| tûŋ-ː    | ‘X kneel’                 |                                              |
| tûŋtⁿrⁿː | ‘Y cause X to kneel’      |                                              |
| ìg-ː     | ‘X stand; X stop’         |                                              |
| ìgître  | ‘Z erect X; Z stop X’     |                                              |
| wàw-ː    | ‘(bird, quadruped) lie down on belly’ |                              |
| wàwi-rː  | ‘carry (child) with its belly on one’s shoulder’ | |

173
b. holding/carrying

\[bòm-î:\] ‘X carry (child) on back’
\[bòmí-ri\] ‘Z help X carry (child) on back’

\[dìw-î:\] ‘lean (on sth)’, ‘be up close to (sth)’
\[dìwi-ri\] ‘carry at one’s side or at one’s abdomen’

\[dùw-î:\] ‘X carry Y on head’
\[dùwí-ri\] ‘Z load X’, ‘Z have X carry Y on head’

c. wearing garments

\[dùg-î:\] ‘X (woman) gird oneself (with a wrap)’
\[dùgí-ri\] ‘Y gird X (with a wrap)’

\[tàng-î:\] ‘X put on shoes’
\[tàngí-ri\] ‘Y put shoes on X’

\[kúw-î:\] ‘X put on a hat’
\[kúwí-ri\] ‘Y put a hat on X’

d. other

\[in-î:\] ‘X bathe’ (with noun \[díf\] ‘water’)
\[lin-ri\] ‘Y bathe X’ (with the same noun \[díf\])

\[bàn-î:\] ‘X hide (self)’
\[bànú-ri\] ‘Y hide X’

\[lèg-î:\] ‘X slip itself into (narrow space)’
\[lègi-ri\] ‘Y slip X into (narrow space)’

In (234), the unsuffixed stem functions as the transitive counterpart to the suffixed mediopassive. In the last two sets there there is also a transitive form with \[-ri\] suffix.

(234) Unsuffixed stem versus mediopassive \[-i:\]

\[gòró\] ‘X cover Y (with blanket)’
\[gòr-î:\] ‘Y cover self (with blanket)’

\[jèré\] ‘X hang Y (on a hook or nail)’
\[jèr-î:\] ‘Y be hanging; Y cling to’

\[mìnê\] ‘X fold Y, X roll up Y’
\[mìn-î:\] ‘X be rolled up’

\[bàrâ\] ‘X expand Y’
\[bàr-î:\] ‘Y expand’

\[dígè\] ‘join, link (objects)’
\[díg-î:\] ‘(objects) be joined’; ‘follow’
\[dígí-ri\] ‘cause to follow; arrange (in order)’
tíwé  ‘(sb) support oneself on (e.g. walking cane)’
tíw-i:  ‘X (e.g. stick) be leaning against (e.g. wall)’
tíwi-ři  ‘Y lean X (against sth)’

Some of these mediopassives have a corresponding causative that obviates the need for a transitive with -rv ~ -r²v.

Examples of mediopassives that are (to judge from present lexicographical data) without a paired transitive are in (235). Further lexical study may remove some of them from the list.

(235)  Unpaired mediopassives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɔ́rⁿ-i:</td>
<td>‘squat’; ‘(bird) alight’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pɔ́n-i:</td>
<td>‘put on one’s pants’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>síw-i:</td>
<td>‘put on (boubou)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>túw-i:</td>
<td>‘freeze’ ‘(milk) form a film’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tãr-i:</td>
<td>‘endure, be able to stand’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tẽp-i:</td>
<td>‘(water) become clear’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>têw-i:</td>
<td>‘bow and place hands on knee’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>têp-i:</td>
<td>‘balance (load) on head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēr-i:</td>
<td>‘escape’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hãmp-i:</td>
<td>‘chew (tobacco)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíř-i:</td>
<td>‘jump’ (with noun kiri)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| sîy-i: | ‘wear (garment)’ (variant sîw-i:)
| sãrⁿ-i: | ‘become lost’ |
| kîj-i: | ‘X encounter, meet Y’ |
| nɔ́ŋ-i: | ‘(stone, stick) be caught (in tree)’ |
| kɔ́l-i: | ‘(garment) be hooked or caught (in tree)’ |
| nîy-i: | ‘become tangled’ |
| pîr-i: | ‘rub in (oil, lotion)’ |
| nɔ́wⁿ-a:i: | ‘go to sleep’ (with noun gìn) |
| sîp-i: | ‘carry (child) on both shoulders’ |
| tãr-i: | ‘(e.g. lizard) be on wall’ |
| tɔ́n-i: | ‘calm down’ |
| nîy-i: | ‘become tangled’ |
| kɔ́r-i: | ‘sort by category’ |
| sãwⁿ-i: | ‘be in oversupply’ |

| b. /LH/-toned |
| děŋ-i: | ‘sit’ |
| wãrⁿ-a:i: | ‘(vine) spread out’ |
| wɔ́rⁿ-a:i: | ‘(vine) twist itself around’ |
| dãg-i: | ‘become good, turn out well’ |
| bãr-i: | ‘(wedding, festival) be held’ |
| dîn-i: | ‘hold (in hands)’ |
| nẽŋ-i: | ‘circulate [intr]’ |
| dãrⁿ-i: | ‘carry Y on shoulder’ |
| mɔ́rⁿ-i: | ‘assemble [intr]’ (cf. causative mɔ̌-ń) |
dım-ì: ‘wait for’
dìm-ì: ‘worship’
yày-ì: ‘play (board game), with noun kòrò.

There are also many trisyllabic stems ending in a syllable rv that is possibly segmentable, but in the absence of a paired mediopassive we cannot clearly determine the function of the ending. An example is gègí-rì ‘(bowl) tilt to the side’, compare adverbial gègí→ ‘tilting’.

Another is seen in the phrase (cognate nominal plus verb) tìgì-ɛ́tígìrì ‘(griot) call out the names of ancestors’. In a transitive pair like yìgé ‘shake (off)’ and yìgí-rì ‘jiggle, shake’, the absence of a valency change makes analysis difficult.

Representative singular- and plural-subject inflected forms of a mediopassive verb are in (236). Note the variation between -i: and presuffixal (and imperative) -e:.

(236) Inflected forms of mediopassive ‘sit’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perfective</td>
<td>dèn-ì:</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-sèn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfective negative</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-lí</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-lù:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfective</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-nù</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-nù</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfective negative</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-rò</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-rè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative</td>
<td>dèn-ì:</td>
<td>dèn-ì:-ỳ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.3.2 Passive suffix (-mv)

The only morphological passives recorded are bè-ì ‘be obtainable, available’ from transitive bèrè ‘get, obtain’, and ì-ì ‘be seen, be (easily) visible’ from ì: ‘see’.

The suffix is phonologically indistinguishable from the productive causative suffix, but it is sharply limited lexically. The application of rv-Deletion in bè-ì is regular (§3.5.3.2).

There is a more general construction meaning ‘be VERB-able’ using mediopassive bir-ì: ‘be done’, see §17.3.12.

9.4 Ambi-valent verbs without suffixal derivation

Given its rich derivational morphology (including mediopassive/transitive pairs), and the very frequent use of default objects (cognate nominals or other conventional objects), ambi-valent verbs are not typical of TgK. In general, one doesn’t ‘sweep’, one ‘sweeps the ground’; one doesn’t ‘eat’, one ‘eats a meal’, and so forth.

9.5 Deadjectival inchoative and factitive verbs

Adjectival concepts like ‘sweet’ and ‘red’ constitute word-families including an adjective (used in modifying and predicative function), an inchoative verb ‘X become ADJ’, and a factitive (causative) verb ‘Y make X ADJ’. The factitive is often a morphological causative of the inchoative; in other cases the factitive is identical in form to the inchoative.
This section describes the morphological relationship between the adjective and the inchoative verb. This relationship varies from case to case, and it is usually not possible to show that either is derived morphologically from the other. This is probably because inchoative verbs are (for the most part) subject to the usual phonological constraints on verb-stem shapes, while adjectives are not. An interesting exception to this is that when the adjective has an initial voiced obstruent and begins with an H-tone, this tone is carried over into the inchoative, although verbs otherwise require an L-initial melody on stems beginning in voiced obstruents. The examples of this are gɛ́-ǹ ‘become black’ and déméré-ǹ ‘become fat’.

(237) Adjectives and their inchoatives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adj</th>
<th>‘become ADJ’</th>
<th>‘make ADJ’</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Inchoative unsuffixed&lt;br/&gt;factitive -nvê</td>
<td>jô  jô-ǹ</td>
<td>jô-ǹ</td>
<td>‘full’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ë  ë-ǹ</td>
<td>ë-ǹ</td>
<td>‘tight’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factitive -gvê</td>
<td>y̥ɔ́jú y̥ɔ́rò</td>
<td>y̥ɔ́rò-gì</td>
<td>‘soft, supple’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gɔ́nû gɔ́nò</td>
<td>gɔ́nû-gù</td>
<td>‘bent, curved’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factitive -mvê</td>
<td>ëm ëmé</td>
<td>ëmé-m</td>
<td>‘cramped’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kãj kãjá</td>
<td>kãjá-m</td>
<td>‘big’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ɔ́wɔ́ɔ́ ɔ́wɔ́á</td>
<td>ɔ́wɔ́á-m</td>
<td>‘in good condition’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>y̥ò:gu y̥ò:gi</td>
<td>y̥ò:gi-m</td>
<td>‘slow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factitive also unsuffixed&lt;br/&gt;factitive unattested</td>
<td>pɔ́:nû pɔ́:nì</td>
<td>pɔ́:nì</td>
<td>‘fermenting (earth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kûrûgû kûrûgù</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>‘dense (forest)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Inchoative -nû&lt;br/&gt;factitive -nû-mûv</td>
<td>wá: wá-nì</td>
<td>wá-ná-m</td>
<td>‘wide’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dègë dègë-nì</td>
<td>dègë-né-m</td>
<td>‘short; narrow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dûgû dûgû-nì</td>
<td>dûgû-nû-m</td>
<td>‘heavy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gêⁿ gê-nù</td>
<td>gê-nù-m</td>
<td>‘black’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ùjù ùjù-nì</td>
<td>ùjù-nû-m</td>
<td>‘small; slender’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pîrì pîrì-nì</td>
<td>pîrì-nê-m</td>
<td>‘white’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wôrò wôrò-nì</td>
<td>wôrò-nû-m</td>
<td>‘deep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nêrⁿì nêrⁿì-nì</td>
<td>nêrⁿì-nê-m</td>
<td>‘lightweight’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mûnû mûnû-nû</td>
<td>mûnû-nû-m</td>
<td>‘bad’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factitive also -nû&lt;br/&gt;factitive unattested</td>
<td>ëlì ëli-nì</td>
<td>ëli-nì</td>
<td>‘sweet, good-tasting’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>déméré déméré-ǹ</td>
<td>déméré-ǹ</td>
<td>‘fat’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| factitive unattested | ënhû ënh-nì | — | ‘near’ (verb: ‘approach’)
|      | gàrá gàrá-nì | — | ‘big; thick’ |
|      | màrⁿì màrⁿì-nì | — | ‘massive, stout’ |
|      | gùrû gùrû-nì | — | ‘tall’ |
The adject 

The adject ‘good’ is séⁿ. It has a suppletive inchoative dàg-ì: ‘be good, be suitable’, with factitive dàní-gì ‘make good; repair’.

Inchoatives with -gì, arguably denominal (cf. the following section), are bò:mí-gì ‘become stupid’ from bò:mó ‘stupid’ (also noun ‘stupidity’), and nám-gì ‘become poor (indigent)’ from noun or adjective nàm-gíⁿ ‘impoverished (person)’.

No morphological inchoative or factitive verb was elicitable for kàná ‘new’. The construction used is with ‘become’ and ‘transform, cause to become’ verbs: kàná táng-ì: ‘become new’ and kàná táni-gì ‘make (sth) new’. Similarly with pèré ‘other’.

9.6 Denominal verbs

There are no productive processes for converting nouns into verbs. There are many word families including both a noun and a verb; see the list of cognate nominals in §11.1.5.2. However, it is usually not possible to derive one from the other, except when the nominal has the form of a verbal noun.

Verb pó:-n ~ pó:-nù is related to noun pó: ‘greeting’, which also occurs in the collocation pó: kún ‘put (=make) a greeting’.

Noun dúw: ‘load, burden’ is related to verb dúw-ì: ‘carry (sth) on one’s head’.

Noun tì: ‘family name’ is relate to verb tì: ‘(griot) call out names of ancestors’.

Verb baw:úrù ‘wound’ and noun bár:úw:á ‘wound, injury’ are related. Most languages in the zone have barme (omitting any tones).

9.7 Obscure verb-verb relationships

ná: ‘spend night’ is obscurely related to ná:-w:á ‘greet in the morning’, see §19.7.
10 Verbal inflection

10.1 Inflection of regular indicative verbs

Inflected indicative verbs are followed by an aspect-mood-negation (AMN) suffix, which (minimally) distinguishes perfective/imperfective and positive/negative. There is only very limited pronominal-subject inflection on verbs; some categories have only one form used for all subject categories, while the others express a binary distinction between singular and plural subject forms; see summary in §10.3.1, below.

Especially for nonmonosyllabic stems, the AMN suffixes have a slightly different morphophonology for a) stems ending in a high vowel {i u}, and b) stems ending in any nonhigh vowel.

Imperatives and hortatives are treated separately, see §10.6.

10.1.1 Suffixes versus chained auxiliary verbs

Because verbs have the same phonological form before certain inflectional suffixes that they have in nonfinal position in chains, the question arises whether the inflectional suffixes in question are treated morphosyntactically as (auxiliary) verbs, rather than suffixes. In the morphology, we want to see to what extent the verb stem interacts phonologically with the inflectional morpheme. In the syntax, we want to see if any other element can intervene between the two.

The imperfective suffix -jú nasalizes to -nù after a nasal syllable in the stem, so this suffix is not a candidate for separate verb status. The imperfective negative interacts phonologically with the stem, lengthening its final vowel and giving it a falling tone. The perfective negative suffix controls tone-dropping on the stem. Several rhotic-medial CvCv stems reduce to Cv- in all three of these categories by rv-Deletion (§3.5.3.2). So there is good evidence that these are suffixal rather than auxiliary categories.

Therefore the only real candidates for auxiliary-verb status are recent perfect jè and experiential perfect -tè-jè. A reasonable case can be made for a word boundary between at least jè and the verb stem.

Before recent perfect jè, the verb either has its bare stem form (as in direct chains), or a form with intervening -è:, depending on the phonological shape of the verb stem. Thus págà jè ‘has finished tying’, and nú-è: jè ‘has finished going in’. Since there is a same-subject anterior subordinator -è: (of variable tone) used in chain-like constructions, overall there is a clear affinity between the recent perfect and two major types of verb chain. Furthermore, rv-Deletion does not apply to the stem in this combination: bìrè jè ‘has finished doing’, compare e.g. imperfective bìr-jù ‘will do’.

Since experiential perfect -tè-jè arguably includes a variant of the recent perfect morpheme jè, compare experiential perfect negative tè-lí (but see below for conflicting evidence), -tè-jè has the look of an auxiliary verb. However, unlike jè by itself, -tè-jè does induce rv-Deletion of the stem, as in nà-tè-jè ‘has given birth’ from nàr’á. So the morphological tests suggest that jè might be a separate word while -tè-jè is a suffix complex, and I will hyphenate (or not) accordingly.
The syntactic test of whether an inflectional suffix is treated like an ordinary chain-final verb is in nonsubject relatives and other subordinated clauses that allow or require a pronominal subject immediately before the final verb. If the inflectional morpheme counts as the final verb of a chain, the subject pronoun should intervene between the verb stem and the inflectional morpheme. The data show that the latter is the case. (238a) illustrates this for the recent perfect, (238b) for the experiential perfect.

\[(238)\]

a. \( \text{ɲà}: \text{L} \quad \text{ɲí}: \text{L} \quad \text{Po} \quad \text{Hjé} \)
meal\( ^{\text{L}} \) eat.meal 1SgSbj HRecPf.Rel
‘the meal that I have finished eating.’

b. \( \text{ànà}: \text{L} \quad \text{yâ}: \text{L} \quad \text{Po} \quad \text{Htē-jē} \)
village\( ^{\text{L}} \) go 1SgSbj HExpPf-RecPf.Rel
‘(a/the) village that I have (once) gone to’

So if we prioritize syntactic evidence over morphological, we must conclude that both jē and tē-jē are auxiliary verbs, unlike the other inflectional categories. In the case of tē-jē, the contraction of a preceding Cvrv stem to Cv- suggests that it is subsequently fused into a single word with the stem, justifying the initial hyphen in -tē-jē.

Incidentally, (238b) provides evidence against interpreting the -jē formative in experiential perfect tē-jē as identical to the recent perfect morpheme. If tē-jē were itself a chain ending in auxiliary jē, the preverbal 1Sg subject pronoun in (238b) would have been placed between tē and jē (the latter in H-toned relative-clause form). Instead, the pronoun precedes the undivided relative form tē-jē.

10.1.2 Overview of indicative categories

The basic inflectional categories for active indicative verbs are those in (239).

\[(239)\]

a. perfective positive system
   simple perfective
   recent perfect
   experiential perfect

b. imperfective positive system
   imperfective
   progressive

c. perfective negative system
   perfective negative
   experiential perfect negative

d. imperfective negative system
   imperfective negative
   progressive negative

Statives do not distinguish perfective from imperfective and are therefore treated separately (§10.4).
10.1.3 Verb stem shapes

The **bare stem** is used here as a citation form and might be taken as the “psychologically real” lexical form, though this could be contested in view of the modifications undergone by stems before AMN suffixes.

For native Dogon verb stems beginning with a voiced stop \{b d g\}, the lexical melody is /LH/ (monosyllabic \(CV,\) bisyllabic \(CV.CV,\) etc.). For those beginning with a voiceless obstruent \{p t k s\}, the lexical melody is /H/ (monosyllabic \(CV,\) bisyllabic \(CV.CV,\) etc.). Stems with initial sonorant, and vowel-initial stems, have a lexical choice between /LH/ and /H/.

The lexical melody is observed in the bare stem and in some AMN inflections. The correlation of initial consonant with lexical melody applies only to verbs (i.e. not to nouns or adjectives), and even for verbs it is overridden by overlays controlled by some AMN suffixes (and in the unsuffixed imperative category).

It is useful to distinguish verbs whose bare stem ends in a high vowel \{i u\} from those whose bare stem ends in any nonhigh vowel \{e e a o\}. However, the high-final-vowel verbs have allomorphs with a final nonhigh vowel, the choice of form depending on the morphological environment. The distinction between the two types of verbs is less useful for monosyllabic verbs (\(CV, CV:\)), most of which show no vowel-quality alternations.

See chapter 9 for discussion of verb-stem derivation (causative, reversive, inchoative, factitive). For purposes of this chapter on verbal inflection, derived and underived verbs can be treated alike unless otherwise noted.

### 10.1.3.1 \(CV\) and \(CV:\) verb stems

The following is a complete inventory of known monosyllabic verb stems. The lexical melody may be /H/ or /LH/, and for irregular ‘take away’ (240d) it is /HL/. The lexical tone is often overridden by suffixally controlled overlays. Stative quasi-verbs like \(wɔ̀\) ‘be (somewhere)’ are excluded from the list. Note the vowel-length pair \(nú: ‘go in’ versus \(nú:\) ‘die’, and the tonal minimal pair \(ná:\) ‘spend night’ versus \(nǎ:\) ‘make rope’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(240)</th>
<th>stem</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. short oral vowel; see also (d) below</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
<td>imperative (\ddot{s}-n\ddot{s})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
<td>simple perfective (n\ddot{u}-\ddot{y}n)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tí</td>
<td>‘send’, ‘do first’</td>
<td>see §15.1.6.3, §15.2.2.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. long nasal vowel</td>
<td>/H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k\ddot{a}:n)</td>
<td>‘shave’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(s\ddot{a}:n)</td>
<td>‘disperse [intr]’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p\ddot{a}:n)</td>
<td>‘(pond, well) dry up’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te:n</td>
<td>‘fold up (rope)’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ë:n</td>
<td>‘(woman) get married to (man)’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p\ddot{e}:n)</td>
<td>‘get old’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(s\ddot{f}:n)</td>
<td>‘urinate’ with noun (^5)sir(^5)í</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k\ddot{s}:n)</td>
<td>‘weep’ with noun (k\ddot{s})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k\ddot{s}:n)</td>
<td>‘(gun) fire’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(t\ddot{s}:n)</td>
<td>‘(milk, urine) fill up’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
t̩áː ‘coil up’; ‘roll up’
súː ‘douse (fire)’
túː ‘measure’

/LH/-toned
wáː ‘brandish’
gáː ‘twist’
dēː ‘get tired’
jīː ‘fart’
grīː ‘steal’

/jīː/ with noun jīː

/c. long oral vowel (regular)
/H/-toned
áː ‘catch’
náː ‘spend the night’
káː ‘hone, sharpen (blade)’
káː ‘harvest (after main harvest)’

/láː/ ‘step on (slime)’
láː ‘(parents) engage (girl) to be married’
láː ‘lay claim to (land)’
sáː ‘sneeze’
táː ‘avoid, respect (a taboo)’
táː ‘taste’
táː ‘(bone) be fractured’
táː ‘shoot (arrow)’
táː ‘(tool handle) be broken’
táː ‘become tight’
kéː ‘pick out (lice)’
léː ‘make slash in earth (to sow)’
téː ‘weave’
séː ‘trim’
ʃíː ‘eat (meal)’
ʃíː ‘fine (someone)’
míː ‘become fine (powdery)’
ʒː ‘see’
pɔ̃ː ‘inform on’
pɔ̃ː ‘strip off’
kɔː ‘(larva) bore through (stem)’
kɔː ‘scoop (with ladle)’
kɔː ‘raise (young)’
sɔː ‘take a handful’
tɔː ‘(plant) sprout’
tɔː ‘uproot (millet)’
tɔː ‘snap finger’
tɔː ‘set (date)’
tɔː ‘take out (daily provisions)’
tɔː ‘quarrel, squabble’
tɔː ‘turn one’s back’
tɔː ‘break (with hammer)’

ɲíː ‘eat (meal)’
ɲíː ‘fine (someone)’
míː ‘become fine (powdery)’
ʒː ‘see’
pɔ̃ː ‘inform on’
pɔ̃ː ‘strip off’
kɔː ‘(larva) bore through (stem)’
kɔː ‘scoop (with ladle)’
kɔː ‘raise (young)’
sɔː ‘take a handful’
tɔː ‘(plant) sprout’
tɔː ‘uproot (millet)’
tɔː ‘snap finger’
tɔː ‘set (date)’
tɔː ‘take out (daily provisions)’
tɔː ‘quarrel, squabble’
tɔː ‘turn one’s back’
tɔː ‘break (with hammer)’

182
só: ‘dip (briefly)’
só: ‘(wind) come up’
pó: ‘remove (sediment)’
nú: ‘die’

/LH/-toned
jà: ‘dig’
bà: ‘learn’
bà: ‘be enough’, ‘be equal to’
bà: ‘heal, recuperate’
dà: ‘tell (proverb)’
dà: ‘signal to stop’ with noun nùmɔ̀-dá
mà: ‘shape (pottery)’
jà: ‘dig’
nà: ‘make rope (with rolling motion)’
bè: ‘put down, lay’
bè: ‘defecate’ with noun bè:
jè: ‘scoop (with shovel)’; ‘lift out (coals)’
mì: ‘be ground’
bɔ̌: ‘unsheathe’
nɔ̀: ‘drink’; ‘smoke (tobacco)’
mɔ̀: ‘laugh’ with noun mɔ̀
dɔ: ‘arrive’
jɔ̀: ‘overflow’, ‘become full’
gò: ‘go out’
wò: ‘eat (crushed millet with water)’
jù: ‘wake up’ with noun gìné

d. long oral vowel except Ce in bare stem and simple perfective
yè ‘go’ yà:- in other forms
jè ‘take away’ jà:- in other forms

nú ‘go in’ and nú: ‘die’ have partially homophonous paradigms, namely in inflectional categories where Cv is lengthened to Cv:. As shown by these verbs, along with njè ‘eat (meal)’, there is no prohibition of high vowels, and for these monosyllabic stems the high vowel is stable throughout the AMN paradigm.

10.1.3.2 Irregular Cv and Cv: stems

ó ‘give’ has irregular imperative s-nɔ̀ but is otherwise regular.

nú ‘go in’ has simple perfective nù-ɔ́” but is otherwise regular.

The most important irregularities among monosyllabics are those with ‘go’ and ‘take away’ (yèrè ‘come’ and jèrì ‘bring’ are bisyllabic). For ‘go’ the bare stem is yè and the simple perfective is yè-ɔ́, while other forms are based on a stem-variant yà:- subject to regular modifications (imperative yà:, imperfective yà:-jú, imperf. neg. yà:-rò, perfective neg. yà:-lò).

For ‘take away’, the short gloss I use for the verb that expresses ‘convey (sth, somewhere)’ or ‘remove (sth, from here)’, the bare stem is jè, with a lexical falling tone not otherwise found in monosyllabic bare stems, and the simple perfective is jè-ɔ́. Other forms are based on jà:- (imperative jà:, imperfective jà:-jú, imperfective negative jà:-rò, perfective
negative $jä:-lî$). This verb is irregular in many Dogon languages. It began as a verb-verb chain with a transitive verb ‘take’ followed by intransitive ‘go’. ‘Bring’ (TgK $jē:ri$) had a similar chain structure (‘take’ plus ‘come’). The original combinations are best preserved in Donno So.

10.1.3.3 Bisyllabic stems

All non-monso syllabic stems end in a short vowel. Bisyllabics may be $CvCv$, $CvCCv$, or $Cv:Cv$. The initial $C$ position may be unfilled ($vCv$, etc.).

The basic division is between stems that end in a high vowel (in the bare stem) and those that end in a nonhigh vowel. However, the high-final-vowel stems do have a form ending in a mid-height vowel {e $e$ o $ɔ$} before several of the AMN suffixes.

10.1.3.4 Bisyllabic stems with final nonhigh vowel

For the nonhigh-final-vowel verbs, the attested vocalic sequences are illustrated in (241). Any nonhigh vowel quality may be repeated (241a). If the first vowel is high, the following vowel must be harmonic to it with respect to front/back and rounded/unrounded features and must be mid-height, not $a$ (241b). These restrictions apply to native Dogon vocabulary, not necessarily to recent loanwords.

(241) $CvCv$ stem with final nonhigh vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. identical non-high vowels</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téwé</td>
<td>‘shoot’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téré</td>
<td>‘pound (in mortar)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āŋá</td>
<td>‘cross (arms)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɔwɔ</td>
<td>‘go up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bɔgó</td>
<td>‘(dog) bark’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| b. high vowel followed by mid-height vowel | |
| pídé | ‘swell’ |
| dìgɛ | ‘drive out’ |
| ūjɔ | ‘build’ |
| súgó | ‘go down’ |

10.1.3.5 Bisyllabic stems with final high vowel

The other major class of bisyllabic verbs is characterized by a final L-toned high vowel $i/ə$ or (if the verb has a rounded vowel) $ũ/i$ in the bare stem, and by a simple perfective suffix $-i$. The short high vowel can apocope after $i/ə$ and after nasals. In other AMN categories, these verbs have a presuffixal stem that is indistinguishable from the stem shape of a nonhigh-final-vowel verb, including the vowel-sequence restrictions. In particular, stems with initial-syllable $u$ have a lexical choice between $o$ and $ɔ$ for the final vowel, and those with initial-syllable $i$ have a lexical choice between $e$ and $e$ for the final vowel. It is therefore not always
possible to predict the presuffixal form from the bare stem, or vice versa, which forces us to use double citation forms, e.g. kún kúǹ ‘put’ (bare stem kún, presuffixal kúǹ), especially in the lexicon. Note in particular the opposition between sí:r- ‘cook (meal)’ and sí:ré- ‘point at’ in (242a), which merge as sí:rì in the bare stem.

(242) Bisyllabic stem with final high vowel (in bare stem)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>presuffixal</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. high vowels, final vowel shifting to mid-height</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kún</td>
<td>kúǹ</td>
<td>‘put’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wírí</td>
<td>wír-</td>
<td>‘whistle’ (with noun wírë)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kírí</td>
<td>kír-</td>
<td>‘jump’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kílí</td>
<td>kílí-</td>
<td>‘be resolved’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pf:rí</td>
<td>pf:r-</td>
<td>‘puff up (cheek)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sf:rí</td>
<td>sf:r-</td>
<td>‘cook (meal)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sí:rí</td>
<td>sí:r-</td>
<td>‘point at’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sú:rù</td>
<td>sú:r-</td>
<td>‘lower (head)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ:ǹ</td>
<td>ñ:n-</td>
<td>‘make lie down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. high vowels, no shifts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíw“í</td>
<td>kíw“í-</td>
<td>‘tremble’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sír“í</td>
<td>sír“í-</td>
<td>‘cut off (strip)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pír“í</td>
<td>pír“í-</td>
<td>‘pinch’, ‘milk (a cow)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mír“í</td>
<td>mír“í-</td>
<td>‘swallow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. initial nonhigh vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pál (&lt;pálù)</td>
<td>pálá-</td>
<td>‘pick (fruit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pól</td>
<td>póló-</td>
<td>‘break up (bread)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sá:ñí</td>
<td>sá:ñá-</td>
<td>‘let out (a yawn)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bá:ñí</td>
<td>bá:ñá-</td>
<td>‘send’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mí:ñ-ǹ</td>
<td>mí:ñ:n-</td>
<td>‘assemble’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pë:gù</td>
<td>pë:gé-</td>
<td>‘break apart’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gë:rí</td>
<td>gë:ré-</td>
<td>‘whisper’ (with gë:ru)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.1.3.6 Contracting and non-contracting Cvr and Cvr:v stems

A further complication is that a number of important bisyllabic verbs ending in a rhotic {r r’} plus short vowel undergo contraction before several AMN suffixes, resulting in the deletion of the rhotic and the stem-final vowel. The stem’s melody is reapplied to the remaining syllable. The stems in question are a subset of Cvr and Cvr:v stems, plus one Cvr:v verb (‘bring’). Other verbs of the same shapes do not contract. Contraction does not apply to any trisyllabic or longer stem. The split between contracting and noncontracting bisyllabic stems cuts across the division between high-final-vowel and nonhigh-final-vowel verbs. The imperfective form illustrates the difference in contraction (243).
(243) Contracting and noncontracting rhotic-medial bisyllabic verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. noncontracting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>írë</td>
<td>írë-jú</td>
<td>‘ripen’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kërë</td>
<td>kërë-jú</td>
<td>‘bite’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tôrë</td>
<td>tôrë-jú</td>
<td>‘begin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>têrë</td>
<td>têrë-jú</td>
<td>‘ pound (in mortar)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tôrô</td>
<td>tôrô-jú</td>
<td>‘ gather up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tôrô</td>
<td>tôrô-jú</td>
<td>‘ emit (spit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kîrį</td>
<td>kîrį-jú</td>
<td>‘ jump’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lôrõ</td>
<td>lôrõ-jú</td>
<td>‘ become pregnant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàră</td>
<td>bàră-jú</td>
<td>‘ send’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bërë</td>
<td>bërë-jú</td>
<td>‘ do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nàrɔ́’á</td>
<td>nàrɔ́-jú</td>
<td>‘ give birth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàrɔ́’á</td>
<td>dàrɔ́-jú</td>
<td>‘ kill’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yërë</td>
<td>yë-rë-jú</td>
<td>‘ come’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàrā</td>
<td>bàră-jú</td>
<td>‘ gather (into pile)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàrā</td>
<td>bàră-jú</td>
<td>‘ go past’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàrā</td>
<td>bàră-jú</td>
<td>‘ get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàrā</td>
<td>bàră-jú</td>
<td>‘ say’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jë:rî</td>
<td>jë-rë-jú</td>
<td>‘ bring’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For contracting verbs, the contraction occurs before (underlyingly) syllabic suffixes beginning with a consonant, of which \{t j l m n w\} can be cited. The main ones are the imperfective (shown above), experiential perfect (-të-jë), progressive (-të-pë), perfective negative (-lõ), prohibitive (-lë), causative -më (underlying -më with an underspecified high vowel), different-subject ‘while’ subordinator -nì ~ -nå, and progressive negative -wɔ-rõ. From bàrā ‘gather’, typical forms are bàră-të-jë ‘has (once) gathered’, bà-të-pë ‘is gathering’, bà-rì ‘did not gather’, bà-lë ‘don’t gather’’, bà-më ‘cause to gather’, bà-nì ‘while (DS) gathers’, bà-wɔ-rõ ‘is not gathering’. Imperfective negative -rõ induces contraction but then applies its vowel-lengthening power to the remaining Cv- of the stem: bàr–rõ ‘does/will not gather’.

Contraction does not occur in bare stem bàrā, perfective bàr-ë ‘gathered’, imperative (positive) bàrë (plural-subject bàrë́y), verbal noun bàr-ù, or agentive tì-n-bàrë ‘firewood-gatherer’, none of which fit the phonological conditions for contraction (following syllabic C-initial suffix).

10.1.3.7 Verbs with -i: in bare stem and perfective only

The irregularity of gër-ë: ‘look’ is that the bare stem and the simple perfective consist of what looks like a suffixed mediopassive form gër-ë:, while other suffixed forms are based on /géré/, showing the same morphophonology as e.g. bërë ‘get’. All of the forms with /géré/ are subject to rv-Deletion (§3.5.3.2).
(244) ‘look’

   a. gɛ̀-ʁ-iː bare stem
      gɛ̀-ʁ-i  perfective
      gɛ̀-ʁ-∅ verbal noun

   b. gɛ̀-lì  perfective negative
      gɛ̀-jú  imperfective
      gɛ̀-rò  imperfective negative

I know of two other verbs with a similar limited distribution of the mediopassive suffix: bɔ̀-ʁ-iː ‘(event) take place’ (§11.2.5.3) and ñw-ʁ-iː  ‘fear, be afraid’ (§11.2.5.4).

10.1.3.8 Verbs with -ɛː except in in bare stem and perfective

The paradigm of the verb in (245) is structurally the inverse of that for ‘look’ (preceding section). That is, the mediopassive (MP) suffix is present in forms other than the bare stem and perfective. This is the only verb known to me that has this paradigm.

(245) ‘be courageous/energetic’

   a. mǎn bare stem
      mǎn-ːi ~ mǎn-∅ perfective

   b. mǎn-ɛː-ːlì perfective negative
      mǎn-ɛː-ːjú imperfective
      mǎn-ɛː-ːrò imperfective negative

10.1.3.9 Trisyllabic stems

All known trisyllabic stems end in a high vowel in the bare stem. They therefore pattern morphophonologically with the high-final-vowel bisyllabics described in the preceding section. Specifically, they have a shape C_vCuCu in the bare stem (to which -i is added to form the simple perfective).

The main tonal division, as for other verb shapes, is between those with initial H-tone and those with initial L-tone. In the bare stem, the C_vCvCv sequence is heard with H.L.L or H.H.L tone, for the H-initial type. The choice between H.L.L and H.H.L correlates almost perfectly with another split in these verbs, concerning whether the medial vowel remains high in the presuffixal stem, or shifts to the same vowel as in the final syllable in this stem (246a), The L-initial type, corresponding to /LH/ verbs with shorter shapes, is realized as L.H.L in the bare stem.

As usual, an initial voiceless obstruent requires one of the H-initial melodies, an initial voiced obstruent requires L-initial melody, and other stems (those beginning with a sonorant, or with no vowel) are split lexically into H-initial and L-initial types.

There are two subtypes with regard to vocalism of the presuffixal stem, cutting across the tonal opposition. In one, the medial and final vowels are identical and non-high. My examples of this subtype involve a rhotic consonant in the final syllable (CvCvr, CvCvrtv), one case with l after metathesis of lv-ː to rv-ː, and one case of CvCvnlv In the other subtype, the medial
vowel remains high in the presuffixal form, while the final vowel appears as one of the mid-height vowels. My examples of this subtype have a final syllable beginning with a non-rhotic consonant; the attested consonants are \{g j n p l w\} with g and j accounting for a sizeable percentage. The consonant of the final syllable is indicated ("with g" etc.) in (246).

(246)  Trisyllabic verb with final high vowel in bare stem

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>presuffixal</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. H.L.L and H.H.L tone patterns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.L.L., identical non-high medial and final v’s before suffixes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kígíři</td>
<td>kígér-</td>
<td>‘return’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pégíři</td>
<td>pégér-</td>
<td>‘remove (blade)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áwíři</td>
<td>áwárá-</td>
<td>‘lay out (mat)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ságúřù</td>
<td>sáwárá-</td>
<td>‘lay (brick mortar)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pógúřù</td>
<td>pógárá-</td>
<td>‘(hair) be disheveled’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sógù-rú</td>
<td>sógá-ró-</td>
<td>‘unlock’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pógúřù</td>
<td>pógárá-</td>
<td>‘wave (torch)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>úgúřù</td>
<td>úgoró-</td>
<td>‘bake’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with rⁿ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sápú́ř-ú</td>
<td>sápú́rá-</td>
<td>‘replaster (wall)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| sápí-
   ū | sápí-
   rá- | ‘(lightning) flash’ |
| sán-
   ū | sán-
   rá- | ‘un-fence’ |
| kúmú-
   ū | kúmú-
   rá- | ‘be rekindled’ |
| kúw-
   ū | kúw-
   rá- | ‘open (eyes)’ |
| símú-
   ū | símú-
   rá- | ‘go back down (slope)’ |
| pínt-
   ū | pín-
   rá- | ‘open (door)’ |
| H.H.L., identical non-high medial and final v’s before suffixes |
| with n |
| ñwíni | ñwéné- | ‘like, love’ |
| H.H.L., medial vowel remains high before suffixes |
| with g |
| píńú́gí | píńú́gé- | ‘be near death’ |
| tánú-
   ū | tánú-
   gá- | ‘transform’ |
| súńú-
   ū | súńú-
   gó- | ‘take down’ |
| šrí-
   ū | šrí-
   gó- | ‘soften’ |
| kúřúgú | kúřúgó- | ‘be dense’ |
| ámúgú | ámúgá- | ‘hold on chest’ |
| pójúgú | pójúgó- | ‘crush’ |
| with j |
| líjújí | líjújó- | ‘mix (by stirring)’ |
| líjújú | líjújó- | ‘poke around’ |
| pújújú | pújújó- | ‘mash’ |
| kójújú | kójújó- | ‘cough’ |
| with a nasal |
| kúmúńú | kúmúńó- | ‘blink’ |
| píń-
   ū-ní | píń-
   ū-nó- | ‘become white’ |
| š’ét-
   ūní | š’ét-
   ūnó- | ‘become smooth’ |
| pér-
   ū-t-ńí | pér-
   ū-t-nó- | ‘become lightweight’ |

| 188 |
with a semivowel
kájúwù  kájúwá-  ‘pay attention’
with a lateral
súrlù  súrló-  ‘pour back and forth’
with l (after metathesis)
kérí-lí  kérí-lé-  ‘become cold’ (kélú)

b. L. H. L tone pattern
L. H. L, identical non-high medial and final v’s before suffixes
with r
yúgúri  yúgùrù-  ‘foam up’
wògúrù  wògùrù-  ‘take (sth) out or off’
ùnjúri  ùnjóró-  ‘get up, arise’
bògúrù  bògùrù-  ‘turn over (earth)’
wègírì  wègèrè-  ‘rub (eye)’
gègírì  gègèrè-  ‘tilt (sth)’
ìgírì  ìgèrè-  ‘stop (sb)’
bin-ri  bìnè-ré-  ‘put (garment) on right’
dògùrù  dògó-  ‘face upward’
with rⁿ
jànjúrì  jánjúrù-  ‘do spot-sowing’
wànjúrù  wànjúrù-  ‘bubble up’
L. H. L, medial vowel remains high before suffixes
with g
jànú-gù  jánú-gójù-  ‘ruin’
jànú-gú  jánú-gójù-  ‘awaken’ [note homonymy]
bújúgù  bújúgù-  ‘revive’
wòrúgù  wòrúgù-  ‘unbuild, take apart’
bigígú  börígú-  ‘do magic tricks’
jàriyúgú  járiyújù-  ‘criticize’
gònnú-gù  gònnú-gójù-  ‘make crooked’
with j
búgújù  búgújù-  ‘shake off’
with a nasal
dògún-  dògùn-  ‘become heavy’
gárn-  gárn-  ‘become thick, big’
dèn-  dègn-  ‘become narrow’
mànn-  mànn-  ‘be bad’

10.2 Positive indicative AMN categories

10.2.1 Perfective positive system (including perfect)

There is an unsuffixed simple perfective (§10.2.1.1), a suffixed recent perfect (§10.2.1.3), and a suffixed experiential perfect (§10.2.1.2). The “suffixes” are arguably auxiliary verbs. That the latter two belong in the perfective system is shown by their negatives, which include the perfective negative; see §10.2.3.1, below. The simple perfective has a reduplicated variant (§10.2.1.5). There is also a periphrastic combination that I call the perfect of continuing possession (§10.2.1.4).
10.2.1.1 Simple perfective (\(-{e/-e/-i}, -{s}\text{ê}^{n}, -{t}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n}\))

The transcribed forms below show the tones heard in isolation or in very simple sentences with only a pronominal subject preceding. At the end of longer clauses, these simple perfectives (like other inflected verb forms) are often heard with \{L\} tones.

For plural subjects (1Pl, 2Pl, and especially with human reference 3Pl), the simple perfective optionally adds a suffix \(-{s}\text{ê}^{n}\) to the stem. If the stem-final vowel of a nonmonosyllabic stem is lexically high, it is replaced by an augment \(-{t}\text{-}\). The same vowel quality may extend to a preceding vowel (if medial in a trisyllabic stem).

For singular subjects (nonhuman plurals are treated as singular for this purpose), the simple perfective ends in \(-{e/-e/-i}\) for verbs whose bare stem (otherwise) ends in a non-high vowel, and in \(-i\) for stems ending in a high vowel \{u i\} (or \(-\emptyset\) after Apocope of a high vowel). Plural subjects also optionally use this form when a plural pronoun or NP occurs in subject position.

Stems ending lexically in a non-high vowel are exemplified in (247). Singular \(-{e/-e/-i}\) replaces a final non-high vowel \{o o a e e\} for nonmonosyllabics, and forms a kind of diphthong with the final non-high vowel of a monosyllabic (which is shortened). The choice between \(-e/-e\) and \(-e\) depends on the vowel-harmonic class of the stem, whereby \{o a e\} stem vocalism requires \(-e\), \{o e\} stem vocalism requires \(-e\), and high vowels are neutral (§3.4.6). Since \{e o a\} vocalism is more common than \{e o\} vocalism in lexical verb stems, the suffix allomorph \(-e\) is more common than \(-e\).

Verb stems ending lexically in a non-high vowel have the shapes \((C)v\) (‘give’), \(Cv\), and \(Cv Cv\). If the stem is /H/-toned, \(-e/-e\) is L-toned. If the stem is /LH/-toned, \(-e\) is \(<HL>-\)toned.

The plural suffix \(-{s}\text{ê}^{n}\) is added directly to the bare stem for these verbs, except in \(\delta-{t}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n}\) ‘they give’ (the only \(Cv\) stem in the set), which has the \(-{t}\text{-}\) augment.

(247) Simple perfective of verbs with final nonhigh vowel, except \(Cv\)-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>simple perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. /H/ toned monosyllabics, (Cv) (only known example)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\delta)</td>
<td>(\delta\text{-})</td>
<td>(\delta\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[\delta\text{-}\text{shortens to} \delta\text{-}\emptyset \text{before} d\text{-}\text{‘if’}]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. /H/ toned monosyllabics, long-voweled (Cv): (all known examples)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\dot{a})</td>
<td>(\dot{a}\text{-})</td>
<td>(\dot{a}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n\dot{a})</td>
<td>(n\dot{a}\text{-})</td>
<td>(n\dot{a}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k\hat{\jmath}\text{-}n)</td>
<td>(k\hat{\jmath}\text{-}\hat{\jmath}\text{-}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
<td>(k\hat{\jmath}\text{-}\hat{\jmath}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p\hat{\jmath}\text{-}n)</td>
<td>(p\hat{\jmath}\text{-}\hat{\jmath}\text{-}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
<td>(p\hat{\jmath}\text{-}\hat{\jmath}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. /LH/ toned monosyllabics, (Cv): (all known examples)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular perfective (&lt;LHL&gt;-\text{toned})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\delta)</td>
<td>(\delta\text{-})</td>
<td>(\delta\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular perfective (&lt;LH&gt;-\text{toned})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\hat{j}\dot{a})</td>
<td>(\hat{j}\dot{a}\text{-})</td>
<td>(\hat{j}\dot{a}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n\dot{\jmath})</td>
<td>(n\dot{\jmath}\text{-})</td>
<td>(n\dot{\jmath}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d\dot{\jmath})</td>
<td>(d\dot{\jmath}\text{-})</td>
<td>(d\dot{\jmath}\text{-s}\text{ê}^{n})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
bǎː  bǎ-è  bǎː-ṣeⁿ  ‘be enough’
gōː  gō-è  gōː-ṣeⁿ  ‘go out’

singular perfective <LH> toned, e to e in plural
bèː  bè-è  bèː-ṣeⁿ  ‘put down’
   [bèː-ṣeⁿ homophonous with ‘(they) defecated’]

d. /H/ toned bisyllabics, CvCv
téřé  téř-è  téřé-ṣeⁿ  ‘pound’
págá  pág-è  págá-ṣeⁿ  ‘tie’
újš  új-è  újš-ṣeⁿ  ‘build’
téwé  téw-è  téwé-ṣeⁿ  ‘shoot’
súgó  súg-è  súgó-ṣeⁿ  ‘go down’

e. /LH/ toned bisyllabics, CvCv
dówš  dów-è  dówš-ṣeⁿ  ‘go up’
yěřé  yěř-è  yěřé-ṣeⁿ  ‘come’
yówš  yów-è  yówš-ṣeⁿ  ‘accept’
jáŋjá  jáŋ-è  jáŋjá-ṣeⁿ  ‘pick up’
dígé  díg-è  dígé-ṣeⁿ  ‘drive out’
bógó  bóg-è  bógó-ṣeⁿ  ‘(dog) bark’

Occasional segmental homophony between the 3Sg simple perfective and the bare stem, viz., among /LH/ toned nonmonosyllabics ending lexically in {e e} such as ‘drive out’ in (247e), is resolved by tones and by position (the bare stem occurring nonfinally in a verb chain).

The two somewhat irregular Ce- verbs (§10.1.3.1) are in (248).

(248) Simple perfective of Ce stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jê (jâː-)</td>
<td>jê-ŷ</td>
<td>jê-êː-ṣeⁿ  ‘take away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yê (yâː-)</td>
<td>yê-ŷ</td>
<td>yê-êː-ṣeⁿ  ‘go’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[jê-ŷ and yê-ŷ shorten to jê-∅ and yê-∅ before dè ‘if’]

Monosyllabic stems with high vowel, and CiCi bisyllabics, are illustrated in (249). These verbs have a final high vowel that does not shift to a mid-height vowel before suffixes such as the imperfective. They have a perfective -ŷ (monosyllabic) or -ǐ ~ -i (bisyllabic), so in the perfective they have morphological affinities to the (mostly heavier) stems with changeable final high vowel to be described later. This is especially so with the Cv stems in (249a), which show the -êː- augment before the plural suffix.
Simple perfective of stems with fixed final high vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>perfective singular</th>
<th>perfective plural</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| a. /H/ toned CvV
  
  [-y dropped before dè ‘if’, e.g. nù-∅ dè]
  
  nù: nù-∅² nù-∅²-sə² ‘go in’
  tì: tì-∅² tì-∅²-sə² ‘do first’
  gí: gí-∅² gí-∅²-sə² ‘say’

b. /H/ toned monosyllabics, long voweled (all known examples)
  
  [-y not dropped before dè ‘if’, e.g. nù-∅² dè]
  
  nù: nù-∅² nù-∅²-sə² ‘eat’
  nú: nú-∅² nú-∅²-sə² ‘die’

c. CiCi stems
  
  CiCi with -i
  
  pír²-í² pír²-sə² ‘milk (a cow)’
  
  CiCi with -i
  
  mìr²-í² mìr²-sə² ‘swallow’

‘Go in’ and ‘die’, whose bare stems differ in vowel length, have the same (singular-subject) nù-∅² but differ in the plural-subject form. Before dè ‘if’, nù-∅² ‘went in’ shortens to nù-∅, but nù-∅² ‘died’ does not shorten.

The remaining large class of verbs is those of CvCV or heavier shapes with a changeable final high vowel. The final high vowel is heard in the bare stem and in the perfective (singular-subject). The perfective always ends in -i, while the bare stem may end in ʊ or ɪ, with variation between the two for some stems. Since /u/ is more prone to Apocope than /i/, sometimes the alternation is heard as final zero (i.e. final consonant) in the bare stem versus -i in the perfective.

All heavy stems (three vocalic moras or more) belong to this class. Also belonging to this class are CvCi stems with an initial syllable vowel other than i.

Simple perfective of stems with changeable final high vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>Perfective Sg</th>
<th>Perfective Pl</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| a. CvCV (not CiCi)
  
  [-i may apocope before dè ‘if’, e.g. kūn-∅ dè]
  
  /HL/-toned
  
  pāl: pāl-ī² pāl-ī²-sə² ‘pick (fruit)’
  kūn: kūn-ī² kūn-ī²-sə² ‘put’
  pórù: pór-ī² pór-ī²-sə² ‘say’
  
  /LHL/-toned
  
  gùŋ: gùŋ-ī² gùŋ-ī²-sə² ‘take out’
  [gùŋ-ī²-sə² can be realized as [gùŋ-εⁿ]]
b. \textit{Cv:Cv}

[-i] may apocope before \textit{dɛ̀} ‘if’, e.g. \textit{bàr-Ø} \textit{dɛ̀}

\textit{/HL/-toned}

\begin{tabular}{lll}
\textit{pó:n} & \textit{pó:n-i} & \textit{pó:n-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘greet’} & & \\
\text{\textit{/LH/-toned}} & & \\
\textit{bà:r} & \textit{bà:r-i} & \textit{bà:r-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘send’} & & \\
\textit{jà:n} & \textit{jà:n-i} & \textit{jà:n-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘cook in pot’} & & \\
\textit{mò:-n(ù)} & \textit{mò:n-i} & \textit{mò:n-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘assemble’} & & \\
\textit{jè:r} & \textit{jè:r-i} & \textit{jè:r-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘bring’} & & \\
\end{tabular}

\textit{c. trisyllabic}

\textit{with changeable final and medial vowels (in other categories)}

\begin{tabular}{lll}
\textit{ùnù} & \textit{ùnù-} & \textit{ùnù-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘get up’} & & \\
\textit{kí} & \textit{kí-} & \textit{kíɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘return’} & & \\
\textit{áwù} & \textit{áwù-} & \textit{áwùɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘lay out (mat)’} & & \\
\textit{pòwù} & \textit{pòwù-} & \textit{pòwùɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘(hair) be disheveled’} & & \\
\end{tabular}

\textit{with fixed medial high vowel and changeable final vowel}

\begin{tabular}{lll}
\textit{kògù} & \textit{kògù-} & \textit{kògù-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘cough’} & & \\
\textit{pírì} & \textit{pírì-} & \textit{pírìɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘be near death’} & & \\
\textit{sùnù} & \textit{sùnù-} & \textit{sùnù-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘take down’} & & \\
\end{tabular}

d. Mediopassive \textit{-i}: [note the orthography]

\begin{tabular}{lll}
\textit{ìg} & \textit{ìg-} & \textit{ìg-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘stand’} & & \\
\textit{tág} & \textit{tág-} & \textit{tág-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n \\
\text{‘put on shoes’} & & \\
\end{tabular}

[bare stem \textit{-i}; and perfective \textit{-i} are homophonous]

All of these verbs take the extended plural-subject form \textit{-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n, as do \textit{Cv} stems with high vowel, see (249a) above.

Plural-subject suffix \textit{-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n is optional. Verbs that do not take the augment \textit{-ɛ̀-} before \textit{-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n therefore have two forms, a grammatically unmarked form (required for singular subject and optional for plural subject), and an optional, grammatically marked plural-subject form. Verbs that take the augment \textit{-ɛ̀-}, on the other hand, have three forms. The grammatically unmarked form is required for singular subject. For plural subject, the optional fully marked form is \textit{-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n, but when the plural-subject suffix \textit{-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n is omitted, the augment \textit{-ɛ̀-} often remains. It therefore can itself function as a (perfective positive) plural-subject marker. For example, perfective ‘got up’ is \textit{ùnù-ɛ̀} for singular (occasionally plural) subject, and either \textit{ùnù-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n or just \textit{ùnù-ɛ̀-}: for plural subject.

The distinction in (250c) between trisyllabic stems whose medial vowel is subject to shift between high and nonhigh (from one category to another), and those with fixed medial high vowel, is irrelevant to the perfective.

Mediopassive verbs have a perfective \textit{-i-}, homophonous to (but here orthographically distinguished from) the bare stem with suffix \textit{-i-}, as in \textit{jà jày-ɛ̀-} ‘he/she had a fight’ (with cognate nominal \textit{jà}). The plural-subject form is \textit{jà jày-ɛ̀-sɛ̀}^n ‘they had a fight’.

Sample paradigms including the preverbal subject pronouns are in (251).
(251) Pronominal paradigm (simple perfective)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>category</th>
<th>‘go down’</th>
<th>‘pick (fruit)’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>íⁿ súg-è</td>
<td>íⁿ pál-ì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>émé súgó-séⁿ</td>
<td>émé pál-è:-séⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>ú súg-è</td>
<td>ú pál-ì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>é súgó-séⁿ</td>
<td>é pál-è:-séⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>wó súg-è</td>
<td>wó pál-ì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>bé súgó-séⁿ</td>
<td>bé pál-è:-séⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonh</td>
<td>kó súg-è</td>
<td>kó pál-ì</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural-subject form -séⁿ, like perfective participial sáⁿ in relative clauses, undoubtedly reflects an original perfective suffix *-so- or *-sa- (perhaps combined with another morpheme). This category is called perfective-2 or resultative in some of my other Dogon grammars. The suffix is related to the ‘have’ quasi-verb that appears in TgK as sà (§11.5.1).

Prost describes a “passé composé” which has singular-subject “sa” corresponding to plural-subject -seⁿ, e.g. “wo yere sa” ‘he has come’. For Prost, this category is distinct from the unsuffixed perfective (“passé simple”). However, he also notes that the common singular-subject form is that of the passé simple, while the common plural-subject form is that of the passé composé, so the difference between Prost’s description (pp. 40, 49, 59) and mine is less great than initially appears.

10.2.1.2 Experiential perfect ‘have ever’ (-té-jè)

The (positive) experiential perfect is expressed by adding -té-jè (invariant for subject number). There is syntactic evidence that this is an auxiliary verb that can be separated from the preceding verb (by a preverbal subject pronominal in a nonsubject relative); see §10.1.1. However, this conflicts with morphophonological evidence that it is suffixal rather than a separate word; namely, rhotic-medial CvCv stems undergo rv-Deletion (§3.5.3.2) before -té-jè, but not in verb-chains: biré ‘do’, experiential negative bí-té-jè ‘has (ever) done’. One can reconcile the two findings by suggesting that it starts out as a separate word (auxiliary) but then merges with the verb as a suffix (complex).

With one minor exception (‘see’), the stem before -té-jè has the same segmental and tonal form as before imperfective -jú. Thus nú-té-jè ‘has (ever) gone in’, kígéré-té-jè ‘has (ever) gone back’ (from kígèrì, jùnú-gó-té-jè ‘has (ever) ruined’. ‘See’ is <LH> toned in ʃ-té-jè ‘has (ever) seen’, but H-toned in imperfective jú ‘sees, will see’.

(252) a. íⁿ  íⁿ  ná-té-jè
    1SgSbj  child  give.birth-ExpPF-RefPF
    ‘I have (at least once) given birth.’ (nàr’á)

b. émé  yí  kó  kún-té-jè
    1PlSbj  there  NonhObj  put-ExpPF-RecPF
    ‘We have (at least once) put it in there.’

194
This category can be translated as ‘have (ever) VERB-ed’. It is especially common with ‘see’ (i.e. something unusual), ‘go’ (i.e. to a distant place) and similar verbs denoting events that create a permanent state (such as a memory).

The (positive) form is -tɛ̀-jɛ̀, invariant for subject number. It is tempting to interpret this as the combination of a stem-like element (-tɛ̆) plus recent perfect jɛ̀, rather than as a perfective tɛ́-jɛ̀ (from a putative stem tɛ́-jɛ̀), since tɛ́-jɛ̀ agrees with recent perfect -jɛ̀ in not distinguishing singular from plural subject, whereas a stem tɛ́-jɛ̀ should have a plural-subject form #tɛ́-jɛ̀-sɛ́ⁿ, compare tɛ́-jɛ́-sɛ́ⁿ ‘they shot’. However, the syntactic evidence (from nonsubject relative clauses) fails to confirm the analysis of (-tɛ̀-jɛ̀) as (-tɛ́) plus the recent perfect -jɛ́ in not distinguishing singular from plural subject, whereas a stem tɛ́-jɛ́ should have a plural -subject form #tɛ́-jɛ́-sɛ́ⁿ, compare tɛ́-sɛ́ⁿ ‘they shot’.

The category is common in questions (‘have you ever …?’). It is also common with negation (‘have never …’), see §10.2.3.2, below.

10.2.1.3 Recent perfect (jɛ̀)

The auxiliary verb (see below) jɛ̀ added to the main verb produces a recent perfect translatable as ‘already/just VERB-ed’ or as ‘have (just) finished VERB-ing’. There is no morphological distinction between singular and plural subjects.

The form taken by the verb before jɛ̀ is either the bare stem (as in direct verb chains), or a form with suffix -ɛ̀: (as in same-subject anterior chains), depending on the form of the stem. The suffix -ɛ̀: is found with the few Cv stems, and with verbs whose bare stem ends in a high vowel, including all stems heavier than bimoraic CvCv (254). This morphology suggests that jɛ̀ could be interpreted as an auxiliary verb, to which a preceding VP can be chained. The syntactic evidence in §10.1.1, above, also supports the auxiliary-verb analysis.

(254) Recent perfect of stems with lexical stem-final high vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>recent perfect</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Cv stems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ɔ́-ɛ́: jɛ́</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú-ɛ́-jɛ̀</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. stem-final fixed vowel</td>
<td>final nonhigh vowel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔ́:</td>
<td>ɔ́: jɛ́</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔ́:</td>
<td>ɔ́: jɛ́</td>
<td>‘see’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nɔ́:</td>
<td>nɔ́: jɛ́</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biré</td>
<td>biré jɛ̀</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yɛ́rɛ́</td>
<td>yɛ́rɛ́ jɛ̀</td>
<td>‘come’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

195
págá  págá jê  ‘tie’
súgó  súgó jê  ‘go down’

CiCi
pírăí  pírăí jê  ‘milk (a cow)’
mìrăí  mìrăí jê  ‘swallow’

c. Ce/Ca: stems (irregular)
 jê (jâ:-)  jé-ë: jê  ‘take away’
yê (yâ:-)  yê-ë: jê  ‘go’

d. stem-final high vowel, Cv:
 jî:  nî: jê  ‘eat’
nî:  nû: jê  ‘die’

e. stem-final changeable high vowel (including all heavy stems)
pâl  pâl-ë: jê  ‘pick (fruit)’
je:ri  je:ri-ë: jê  ‘bring’
gûj  gûj-ë: jê  ‘take out’
mðn-ì  mðn-ë: jê  ‘assemble’

trisyllabic with changeable medial and final vowels
kìgírì  kìgër-ë: jê  ‘return’

trisyllabic with fixed medial high vowel
sûnûgù  sûnûg-ë: jê  ‘take down’

jê has a vowel and tone that are compatible with perfective morphology. It could therefore be transcribed as j-ë, though I do not do this in practice. One argument against this analysis is that the usual plural-subject perfective form with -sêⁿ is not used.

A typical perfective-like example is (255a). The imperfective jê-jû ‘will have finished (doing), will have already (done)’ is less common, but attested in clause-final {L}-toned form (255b).

(255)  a. [wàrù L  géⁿ”L]  wàrá  jê  dè,  kò  kà:”n
   [farming L  black.Def”L]  do.farming RecPerf  if,  Nonh  too
   ‘When (you) have finished doing the black farming, (there is) that (other) one too.’ (2011.1a.04)

   b. ü  wi:  [kò  kà”]  tò-tò:  bà”-lì  dè,
   2SgSbj  be.early  [Nonh  on]  tin.can  beat-PfvNeg  if,
   nè:,  sàjú  sà:”n  jògò  Ljê-jû
   now,  bird  all  peck  ‘RecPf-Ilpv
   ‘If you-Sg don’t beat (=bang) tin cans at them (=birds) early, the birds will have already finished pecking (=eating) all (of the fast millet).’ (2011.1a.07)

Pronominal-subject categories are distinguished by clause-initial pronouns (256). There is no distinct plural-subject suffixed form of the verb.
Pronominal paradigm (recent perfect)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>‘go down’</th>
<th>‘pick (fruit)’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>ëⁿ súgó jë</td>
<td>ëⁿ pál-ë: jë</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>émé súgó jë</td>
<td>émé pál-ë: jë</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>ú súgó jë</td>
<td>ú pál-ë: jë</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>é súgó jë</td>
<td>é pál-ë: jë</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>wó súgó jë</td>
<td>wó pál-ë: jë</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>bé súgó jë</td>
<td>bé pál-ë: jë</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.2.1.4 Perfect of continuing possession (-ë: ~ -ë: ~ -ë: plus sâ, plural sê)

Another perfect, attested once in a text, ends in a same-subject anterior subordinated verb with suffix -ë: ~ -ë: ~ -ë: plus the ‘have’ quasi-verb sâ in <HL>-toned form sâ. The plural-subject form is sê, the negation is sà:-râ (plural sè:-rê).

In (257), from an animal tale, Fly reports to his mistress the reason given by Crowned Crane as to why he has a strange cowry shell stuck on his forehead. The perfect sense seems rather literal: ‘stuck it on and (still) has it’.

(257) [[[dimë Lkè] yš:] èné [lnàrₐ⁺ gë:] tår-ë: sâ] wà affix-and.SS have Quot
‘(It) said, (he says) he has stuck that of (=on) his forehead for showing off.’
(2011.1b.02)

10.2.1.5 Reduplicated perfective (Çv-...-ë/ë/ë)

A form consisting of the simple perfective with overlaid {HL} stem tone, plus initial L-toned Çv- reduplication, e.g. dà-dág-ë from dág-ë ‘left (sth)’, was elicited. My assistant suggested that the reduplicated form was used in contexts of factual uncertainty. For example, hearing a child outside the house who has begun to weep, one might say là-lág-ë ‘(someone) hit him/her’, hypothesizing something that may have happened.

Further examples of the form are in (258). Vowel-initial stems have a phonetic glottal stop at the hiatus point between the reduplicant vowel and the initial base vowel.

(258) Reduplicated perfective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>regular</th>
<th>redup Pfv</th>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Çv</td>
<td>lexically /H/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò-ë</td>
<td>ò-òò-ë</td>
<td>ó</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú-ỳⁿ</td>
<td>nú-nú-ỳⁿ</td>
<td>nú</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.2.2 Imperfective positive system

There is a basic imperfective used in habitual-present and in future contexts, and a progressive that denotes actions that are in progress at the moment of speaking (or other reference point).

10.2.2.1 Imperfective (positive) (-\textit{jù} ~-\textit{jù}, -\textit{jí} ~-\textit{jù})

The unmarked imperfective form is characterized by a suffix whose basic form is -\textit{jù}. It is normally H-toned but is L-toned in \textit{jà:jù} ‘takes away’ with the only lexically /HL/-toned verb. (L-toned -\textit{jù} also occurs in relative clauses, §14.1.9.2.)

There is an optional plural-subject form -\textit{jí}, so it is possible to distinguish e.g. \textit{yè:jù} (singular) from \textit{yè:jí} (plural) ‘come(s)’. However, the distinction between singular and plural is even less reliably marked in this category than elsewhere, due to the lax articulation of
word-final short high vowels combined with the fronting effect of alveopalatal \( j \). Readers of my Togo Kan texts should not rely on the transcriptional distinction between \(-jú\) and \(-jí\). Prost gives the plural-subject form as “dye,” i.e. \(-jé\).

The suffix nasalizes to \(-ɲú \sim -ɲí\) after a nasal syllable. In \( pí\)-\( pí \) ‘eat (meal)’, the suffixal vowel is regularly heard as \( i \) even for singular subject. This particular type of Nasalization-Spreading (§3.5.1.1) is distinctive to the imperfective suffix, and does not apply to other \( j\)-initial verb suffixes. There are some synchronically nasal syllables that etymologically were nonnasal, and these do not shift the suffix from \(-jú \sim -jí\) to \(-ɲú \sim -ɲí\). An example is \( ténegjú\) ‘blocks, cuts off’ or ‘hobbles (an animal)’, whose stem reconstructs as \(*\text{téngé}\) (Ben Tey and Pergue \( \text{téngé}\).)

This category is used for the habitual present (‘every year he gives me a sheep’) and for the future (‘he will give me a sheep tomorrow’), but not (specifically) for progressive aspect.

The suffix preserves lexical tones of the stem. For stems ending in final high vowel in the bare stem and perfective, except for lexical \( CiCi\), the suffix takes its usual presuffixal form with final nonhigh vowel.

For stems ending lexically in a nonhigh vowel, and for monosyllabic stems, the suffix is added to the bare stem. This is also the case for lexical \( CiCi\), see ‘milk [a cow]’ in (259c). For other bisyllabic stems with final lexical high vowel, the suffix is added to a form of the stem ending in a nonhigh vowel that harmonizes with the first stem vowel. If the first vowel is nonhigh, its quality is copied, but if the first vowel is high, we get final o corresponding to u and final e corresponding to i (259d). Trisyllabic stems ending lexically in a high vowel, with H.L.L. tone pattern, harmonize both the medial and final vowels with the first vowel in the same fashion (259e).

Rhotic-medial bisyllabic stems divide into contracting and non-contracting types. The latter are grouped with other regular \( CvCv\) stems. The contracting stems form \( Cv\acute{jú} (Cv\acute{ɲú})\) for \( /H/\) toned stems, \( CV\acute{jú} (CV\acute{ɲú})\) for \( /LH/\) toned stems (259f).

(259) Imperfective of stems with lexical stem-final high vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. short-voweled ( Cv) stems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{lexically} /H/-toned)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{o})</td>
<td>( \acute{o\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{nú})</td>
<td>( \acute{nú\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{tí})</td>
<td>( \acute{tí\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘send’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{lexically} /LH/-toned shift to {H})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{á:})</td>
<td>( \acute{á\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘see’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. long-voweled ( Cv) stems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{lexically} /H/-toned)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{á:})</td>
<td>( \acute{á\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{ñí:})</td>
<td>( \acute{ñí\text{-jú}}, \acute{ñí\text{-jí}})</td>
<td>‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{nú:})</td>
<td>( \acute{nú\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘die’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{lexically} /LH/-toned shift to {H})</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{nź:})</td>
<td>( \acute{nź\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{yě (yě:)})</td>
<td>( \acute{yě\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{jiː:\text{}})</td>
<td>( \acute{jiː\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘fart’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{lexically} /HL/, only example)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{jě (jě:)})</td>
<td>( \acute{jě\text{-jú}})</td>
<td>‘take away’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. bisyllabic stems with fixed final vowel (including CiCi)

**lexically /H/-toned**

- págá
  - págá-jú: ‘tie’
- sügó
  - sügó-jú: ‘go down’
- pírⁿí
  - pírⁿí-pú: ‘milk (a cow)’

**lexically /LH/-toned**

- dâgá
  - dâgá-jú: ‘leave’
- bâgá
  - bâgá-jú: ‘fall’
- mirⁿí
  - mirⁿí-pú: ‘swallow’


d. bisyllabic stems with changeable high vowel

**lexically /HL/-toned, CvCv and Cv:Cv**

- pâl
  - pálá-jú: ‘pick (fruit)’
- kírì
  - kíré-jú: ‘jump’
- kún
  - kún-nú: ‘put’
- pó:n
  - pó:nó-pú: ‘greet’

**lexically /LHL/-toned, Cv:Cv and Cv:Cv**

- gûhör
  - gûhör-pú: ‘take out’
- mû:h-n
  - mû:h-nó-pú: ‘assemble’


e. trisyllabic stems

**lexically /H/-toned, changeable medial and final vowels**

- kígìrì
  - kígéré-jú: ‘return’
- áwürù
  - áwárá-jú: ‘lay out’

**lexically /LH/-toned, changeable medial and final vowels**

- sûnú-gù
  - sûnú-gó-jú: ‘take down’

**lexically /LH/-toned, fixed medial high vowel**

- nûnú-gù
  - nûnú-gó-jú: ‘ruin’

f. contracting rhotic-medial stems

**regular**

- bìrë
  - bì-jú: ‘do’
- gârâ
  - gâ-jú: ‘go past’
- dârüⁿ
  - dâ-nú: ‘kill’
- bërë
  - bë-jú: ‘get’
- pórù
  - pó-jú: ‘say’

**irregular**

- yèrë
  - yè-jú: ‘come’
- jë:rì
  - jë:-jù: ‘bring’

Paradigms are in (260).

(260) Pronominal paradigm (imperfective)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>category</th>
<th>‘go down’</th>
<th>‘pick (fruit)’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>ìⁿ sùgó-jú</td>
<td>ìⁿ pálá-jú</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>ëmé sùgó-jú (-jì)</td>
<td>ëmé pálá-jú (-jì)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2Sg  ú súgó-jú  ú pálá-jú
2Pl  é súgó-jú (-jí)  é pálá-jú (-jí)
3Sg  wó súgó-jú  wó pálá-jú
3Pl  bé súgó-jú (-jí)  bé pálá-jú (-jí)
Nonh kó súgó-jú  kó pálá-jú

10.2.2.2 Reduplicated imperfective (C¬-…-jú)

The imperfective with suffix -jú (-ŋuí) can co-occur with an initial L-toned reduplication. There is no change in the tones of the stem itself when the reduplicant is added. The reduplicated form is used only with future time reference (‘I will go down’, ‘I intend to go down’), while the unreduplicated form can be used in either present or future time contexts. Further study may show that verb-focalization is part of the sense.

Examples with verbs that have an initial lexical L-tone element that is preserved in this form: jú-njú-njú-gó-jú ‘will ruin’, dà-dàgá-jú ‘will leave (sth)’. Examples with verbs that have an initial lexical H-tone element: pà-págá-jú ‘will tie’, ə-ʔō-jo ‘will give’.

10.2.2.3 Paired alternative imperfective (-jō; -jê):

A form with suffix -jō; plural-subject -jê; occurs frequently in the first of two parallel imperfective clauses denoting alternative possibilities (e.g. ‘sometimes we do it this way, sometimes we do it that way’). Both clauses are therefore somewhat irrealis, and translations with ‘might VP’ are often appropriate. Adverb gámá ‘sometimes’ may be present.

The suffix -jō: can be added directly to a verb stem, or to a verb-chain ending bèré ‘get, obtain’ in the sense ‘be able to’ (§17.5.1.1), forming bè-jō; plural-subject bè-jē: . The form of the stem is the same as before imperfective -jú and allomorphs (§10.2.2.1 above). Thus bì-jō: ‘can do’, òwárá-jō: ‘can lay out’, pôrôjō: ‘can milk (a cow)’, mediopassive kîj-é:-jō ‘can coincide (with)’.

A good example of paired imperfectives is (261). The first imperfective has -jō: and the second has -jū. One could also translate loosely with ‘might’ instead of ‘sometimes’.

(261)  é→ kéjé kéjé gámá [kã tûrû wə→],
yes cut cut sometimes [row one each],
gámá  [jn̂ 1-jûrû tûrû] bè  kîj-é-jō;
sometimes  [mîlîtü  one] Inst coincide-MP-Ipfv;
gámá  [jn̂ 1-jûrû lṣy] bè  kîj-é-jú
sometimes  [mîlîtü  two] Inst coincide-MP-Ipfv

‘Yes, (they) keep cutting (millet grain spikes), sometimes each row, sometimes it (=each row) coincides with (=corresponds to) one millet pile, sometimes it coincides with two millet piles.’ (2011.1a.12)

In (262), the verb (dûw-é:) of the second clause looks vaguely perfective in form, but this is because the second of two paired imperfectives optionally omits imperfective -jú.
It is possible to have more than one nonfinal -jò: (plural -jê:) clause, plus a final simple imperfective clause. In (263), the speaker is describing the various crops that can be planted in millet fields after the millet sprouts.

(263) \[[\underline{birè}^L \quad pèrè] \quad yò \quad kò,\]  
\[\text{[work}^L \text{ other]} \quad \text{Exist be:NonhSbj,}\]  
\[\underline{pòhà}^L \quad \underline{wàjê:-→}, \quad \text{[fè:re}^L \underline{nà:]} \quad \underline{léjê:-→},\]  
\[\text{fonio do.farm.work-Ipfv.PIbj,}\]  
\[\underline{fè:re}^L \quad \underline{mùpùrùà}] \quad \underline{lèjê:-jà},\]  
\[\text{[nut}^L \quad \text{Mossi]} \quad \text{plant-Ipfv}\]  
‘There is other work. (The people) grow fonio [a grain], they plant groundnuts, and/or they plant peanuts.’ (2011.1a.18)

It is also possible for the first of the parallel imperfective clauses to be positive while the second is negative (264).

(264) \[[\underline{gàmà}^L \quad \underline{h nà} \quad \underline{bòjê:-},\]  
\[\text{[certain}^L \quad \text{H person]} \quad \text{do-Ipfv.PIbj,}\]  
\[\underline{gàmà}^L \quad \underline{h nà} \quad \underline{bìjê-re} \quad \text{do-IpfvNeg.PIbj}\]  
‘Some people might do (them), some (other) people might not do (them).’ (2011.1a.31)

10.2.2.4 Delayed future (-jà sà)

Prost (p. 50) described a distant future (“futur éloigné”), e.g. “lagadyasa” ‘he will hit’, including the ‘have’ quasi-verb. This was recognized by my assistant, who explained that it involves an action that is due to be carried out but that is delayed (for example, by other business). A free translation with ‘eventually’ or with ‘sooner or later’ seems to work for most examples.

The ‘have’ quasi-verb, sà or plural-subject sé, is <HL>-toned in this construction (sà, sé). It is preceded by an entirely {L}-toned word consisting of the verb stem and -jà. Segmentally, the verb form with -jà is identical to that used in the ‘before VP-ing’ construction (rv-Deletion is applicable to relevant stems in both). However, in the ‘before’ construction the -jà suffix requires an {H} - rather than an {L}-toned stem (§15.4.2). For example, dàròsì ‘sell’ has delayed future dòn-jà sà, but in the ‘before’ construction its subordinated form is dòn-jà.

(265) a. \(\underline{ùjò-jà}^L \quad \text{újò-jà}^L \quad \underline{h l sà} \quad \text{1SgSbj house build-Fut}^L \quad \text{hl have}\]  
‘I will eventually build a house.’
b. ṛ̀rⁿu yè-jà¹ lHI sâ come-Fut lHI have
‘Rain will eventually come.’

c. ìⁿ gùrⁿí bè-jà¹ lHI sâ
1SgSbj house get-Fut lHI have
‘I will eventually get a house.’
(said by someone who has so far searched in vain)

d. [gàm lHI ná] = ñ [kír lHI dâgá] yè-jà¹ lHI sâ
[certain lHI person]=Dat [hardship lHI small] come.Fut lHI have
‘a small crisis (i.e. food shortage) will eventually come for some people.’
(2011.1a.19)

10.2.2.5 Progressive (-táŋà, -téŋè)

Suffix -táŋà creates a progressive form for singular subject (‘I am working’), though it also
competes with the imperfective for habitual present. It is added to the bare stem of
monosyllabic verbs (266a) and of longer stems ending in a lexical nonhigh vowel (266b). ɔ́:
‘see’ is H-toned and short: ɔ́-táŋà. However, Çv: stems do not shift to {H}. For
nonmonosyllabic stems ending in a lexical high vowel, the final vowel harmonizes with the
first stem vowel (266c), and if the latter is non-high this change extends to the medial vowel
in trisyllabics (266d). rv-Deletion applies to the relevant bisyllabic stems (266e).

The optional (but frequent) plural-subject form is -téŋè.

(266) Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>progressive</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Çv:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó:</td>
<td>ó-táŋà</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú:</td>
<td>nû-táŋà</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Çv:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á:</td>
<td>á:-táŋà</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pí:</td>
<td>pí:-táŋà</td>
<td>‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú:</td>
<td>nû:-táŋà</td>
<td>‘die’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Çv:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ɔ́: | ɔ́-táŋà | [!]
| nɔ́: | nɔ́-táŋà | ‘drink’ |
| jà: | jà-táŋà | ‘dig’ |
| irregular |              |       |
| jê (jâ-:) | jâ:-táŋà | [!]
| [for jê:-táŋà see ‘bring’, below] | | |

b. nonmonosyllabic stems with fixed final vowel
/H/-toned

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>págá</td>
<td>págá-táŋà</td>
<td>‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súgó</td>
<td>súgó-táŋà</td>
<td>‘go down’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The progressive is unusual among suffixally marked inflections in that it can be combined with the otherwise defective locational-existential ‘be’ quasi-verbs (§11.2.2.2): *wá-táŋà* (human singular), *wé-téŋé* (human plural). These quasi-verbs are otherwise stative (aspectless), but can be made progressive (durative) in this manner.

The paradigm is (267). The pronouns are clause-initial.

(267) Pronominal paradigm (progressive)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>category</th>
<th>‘go down’</th>
<th>‘pick (fruit)’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>íⁿ súgó-táŋà</td>
<td>íⁿ pálá-táŋà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>émé súgó-téŋé</td>
<td>émé pálá-téŋé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>ú súgó-táŋà</td>
<td>ú pálá-táŋà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>é súgó-téŋé</td>
<td>é pálá-téŋé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>wó súgó-táŋà</td>
<td>wó pálá-táŋà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>bé súgó-téŋé</td>
<td>bé pálá-téŋé</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10.2.6 Reduplicated progressive (*C-...-tâŋ*)

A reduplicated form of the progressive was elicited, with the usual L-toned reduplicant and with no change in the form of the regular progressive. Examples: sù-sùgô-tâŋ ‘is going down’, dɔ̀-dɔ̀wɔ̀-tâŋ ‘is going up’. There seems to be no systematic difference in sense between the regular and reduplicated forms.

10.2.3 Negation of active indicative verbs

Morphologically distinct negative forms are found for the perfective, the experiential perfect, the recent perfect, the imperfective, and the progressive.

Stative verbs, and defective (stative) quasi-verbs, have their own negative clitics, singular-subject = lá and plural-subject = lé, with no aspectual distinction. See §10.4 and §11.4.2, below.

10.2.3.1 Perfective negative (-lî, -lâ:)

The perfective negative is formed by adding singular-subject -lî or plural-subject -lâ: to a tone-dropped form of the verb stem. There are no exceptions to the tone-dropping feature for this category. The perfective negative suffixes are also added to the experiential perfect and recent perfect suffixes, demonstrating that these latter categories belong to the larger perfective system.

Nonmonosyllabic stems ending in a lexical high vowel harmonize noninitial stem vowels with the first stem vowel (268d-e). Contracting rhotic-medial stems undergo the contraction (268f).

(268) Perfective negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>perfective negative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. short-voweled monosyllables (all known examples)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ò-lî</td>
<td>ò-lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nù</td>
<td>nù-lî</td>
<td>nù-lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. long-voweled monosyllables</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á:</td>
<td>á: -lî</td>
<td>á: -lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná:</td>
<td>ná: -lî</td>
<td>ná: -lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nɔ́:</td>
<td>nɔ́-lî</td>
<td>nɔ́-lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gɔ́:</td>
<td>gɔ́-lî</td>
<td>gɔ́-lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kɔ́:n</td>
<td>kɔ́:n-î</td>
<td>kɔ́:n-lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɲí:</td>
<td>ɲí:-lî</td>
<td>ɲí:-lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú:</td>
<td>nú:-lî</td>
<td>nú:-lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jê (jà:-)</td>
<td>jà:-lî</td>
<td>jà:-lâ:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. nonmonosyllabic stems with fixed final vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem -lí</th>
<th>Stem -lá:</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>píné</td>
<td>pínè-lí</td>
<td>pínè-lá:</td>
<td>‘shut (door)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>págá</td>
<td>págà-lí</td>
<td>págà-lá:</td>
<td>‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìgè</td>
<td>ìgè-lí</td>
<td>ìgè-lá:</td>
<td>‘drive out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pírⁿí</td>
<td>pírⁿ-lí</td>
<td>pírⁿ-lá:</td>
<td>‘milk (a cow)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirⁿí</td>
<td>mirⁿ-lí</td>
<td>mirⁿ-lá:</td>
<td>‘swallow’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem -lí</th>
<th>Stem -lá:</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pâl</td>
<td>pàlà-lí</td>
<td>pàlà-lá:</td>
<td>‘pick (fruit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kùn</td>
<td>kùnò-lí</td>
<td>kùnò-lá:</td>
<td>‘put’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mìnⁿ-ñ</td>
<td>mìnⁿ-ní</td>
<td>mìnⁿ-ní:</td>
<td>‘assemble’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem -lí</th>
<th>Stem -lá:</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kígìrì</td>
<td>kígèrè-lí</td>
<td>kígèrè-lá:</td>
<td>‘return’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âwàrù</td>
<td>âwàrà-lí</td>
<td>âwàrà-lá:</td>
<td>‘lay out (mat)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sùnúgù</td>
<td>sùnúgò-lí</td>
<td>sùnúgò-lá:</td>
<td>‘take down’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem -lí</th>
<th>Stem -lá:</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yèré</td>
<td>yè-lí</td>
<td>yè-lá:</td>
<td>‘come’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jè:rì</td>
<td>jè-lí</td>
<td>jè-lá:</td>
<td>‘bring’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bìrë</td>
<td>bì-lí</td>
<td>bì-lá:</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gàrë</td>
<td>gà-lí</td>
<td>gà-lá:</td>
<td>‘go past’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàrⁿá</td>
<td>dàⁿ-lí</td>
<td>dàⁿ-lá:</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bërë</td>
<td>bë-lí</td>
<td>bë-lá:</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pòrë</td>
<td>pò-lí</td>
<td>pò-lá:</td>
<td>‘say’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sample paradigms are (269).

(269) Pronominal paradigm (perfective negative)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>category</th>
<th>‘go down’</th>
<th>‘pick (fruit)’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>íⁿ sùgò-lí</td>
<td>íⁿ pàlà-lí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>ésé sùgò-lá:</td>
<td>ésé pàlà-lá:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>ú sùgò-lí</td>
<td>ú pàlà-lí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>é sùgò-lá:</td>
<td>é pàlà-lá:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>wó sùgò-lí</td>
<td>wó pàlà-lí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>bé sùgò-lá:</td>
<td>bé pàlà-lá:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonh</td>
<td>kó sùgò-lí</td>
<td>kó pàlà-lí</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a reversed tone pattern with H-toned verb and L-toned perfective negative suffix in focalized clauses, see (403) in §13.1.1.
10.2.3.2 Experiential perfect negative (tè-li, tè-là:)

The experiential perfect (tè-), see §10.2.1.2 above, has a common negative counterpart with regular perfective negative suffixal morphology. The forms are tè-li for singular subject, tè-là: for plural subject. The preceding verb also drops its tones to {L}, which does not occur with ordinary verb chains when the final verb is negated (§15.1.4).

(270) a. íⁿ [dùŋùⁿ L nà:] ʒ: L tè-li 1SgSbj [elephant] see L ExpPf-PfvNeg
   ‘I have never seen an elephant.’

   ‘We have never seen an elephant.’

10.2.3.3 Recent perfect negative (jè-li, jè-là:)

The negative counterpart of recent perfect jè is formed by adding the regular perfective negative suffixes -lí and plural subject -lâ: to it. The preceding verb is not tone-dropped. These details strengthen the argument for taking jè as a chained auxiliary verb (rather than as a suffix).

Negation is generally found in the sense ‘have finished VP-ing’.

(271) a. íⁿ pà: njí: jè-li 1SgSbj meal eat RecPf-PfvNeg
   ‘I haven’t finished eating the meal.’

   ‘We haven’t finished eating the meal.’

   c. émé té nỳ: jè-là: 1PlSbj tea drink RecPfRecPf-PfvNeg.PlSbj
   ‘We haven’t finished drinking the tea.’

   ‘the earth hasn’t (yet) completely finished drying’

10.2.3.4 Imperfective negative (-rò, -rè)

The imperfective negative is expressed by suffixing -rò for singular subject, -rè for plural subject. The rhotic is not nasalized after a nasal syllable. The suffixes are added to a form of the verb ending in a long <HL>-toned vowel. Otherwise the lexical tone is preserved, and CV: (i.e. <LH>) stems appear as CV:-rò with bell-shaped <LHL> toned stem. ‘See’ has ʒ:-rò instead of #5:-rò, based on /3/- as in imperfective ʒ-jù and some other inflected forms, rather than on the bare stem ʒ.
Nonmonosyllabic stems (other than causatives) ending in a lexical high vowel harmonize medial vowels with the first stem vowel (272c-d). Contracting rhotic-medial verbs contract (272e). Causative -m̀, which does not alter the vocalism of the preceding stem, becomes -mû: (272e), parallel to monosyllabic nû: ‘doesn’t go in’ or ‘doesn’t die’.

(272) Imperfective negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>imperfective negative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó:-rò</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nù</td>
<td>nù:-rò</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ</td>
<td>ñ:-rò ['l]</td>
<td>‘see’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á</td>
<td>á:-rò</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nõ:</td>
<td>nõ:-rò</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pí:</td>
<td>pí:-rò</td>
<td>‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú:</td>
<td>nú:-rò</td>
<td>‘die’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yé (yá:)</td>
<td>yá:-rò</td>
<td>‘go’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé (já:)</td>
<td>já:-rò</td>
<td>‘take away’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. bisyllabic stems with fixed final vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>págá</td>
<td>págá:-rò</td>
<td>‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súgó</td>
<td>súgó:-rò</td>
<td>‘go down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàgá</td>
<td>dàgá:-rò</td>
<td>‘leave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pír̩i</td>
<td>pír̩i:-rò</td>
<td>‘milk (a cow)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mìr̩i</td>
<td>mìr̩i:-rò</td>
<td>‘milk (a cow)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. bisyllabic stems with final changeable high vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pál</td>
<td>pál:-rò</td>
<td>‘pick (fruit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kírì</td>
<td>kírì:-rò</td>
<td>‘jump’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kún</td>
<td>kún:-rò</td>
<td>‘put’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gúŋ</td>
<td>gúŋ:-rò</td>
<td>‘take out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mń:-ñ</td>
<td>mń:-ñ:-rò</td>
<td>‘assemble’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. trisyllabic stems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with changeable medial and final vowels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kígírì</td>
<td>kígírì:-rò</td>
<td>‘return’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áwúrù</td>
<td>áwúrù:-rò</td>
<td>‘lay out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with fixed medial high vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súmúgù</td>
<td>súmúgù:-rò</td>
<td>‘take down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. rhotic-medial stems subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèré</td>
<td>yè:-rò</td>
<td>‘come’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé:rù</td>
<td>jé:-rò</td>
<td>‘bring’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pó:rù</td>
<td>pó:-rò</td>
<td>‘say’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biré</td>
<td>biré:-rò</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gárá</td>
<td>gárá:-rò</td>
<td>‘go past’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dár&quot;:á</td>
<td>dár&quot;:á:-rò</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bêré</td>
<td>bê:-rò</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
f. causative

\[ jǔg\-m\-rō \quad jǔg\-m\-û\-rō \]

‘inform’, ‘distinguish’

Sample paradigms are in (273).

(273) Pronominal paradigm (imperfective negative)

category | ‘go down’ | ‘pick (fruit)’
--- | --- | ---
1Sg | ñ\- súg\-rō | ñ\- pál\-rō
1Pl | émé \- súg\-rē | émé \- pál\-rē
2Sg | ú úg\-rō | ú pál\-rō
2Pl | é \- súg\-rē | é \- pál\-rē
3Sg | wó súg\-rō | wó pál\-rō
3Pl | bé súg\-rē | bé pál\-rē
Nonh | kó súg\-rō | kó pál\-rō

The imperfective negative likely reflects contraction of an original suffix or suffix complex \*-(C)÷ro with the stem. Compare progressive negative -wò-rō, discussed below.

10.2.3.5 Variant imperfective negative (-já:, -jé:)

Prost (p. 50) described another category that he describes as ‘négatif intentionnel,” giving as example “lagadyaa” ‘il n’est pas pour frapper’ with plural-subject variant “lagadjee,” cf. verb lágá ‘hit’.

My assistant recognized the form after some reflection. One relevant construction is that with parallel positive and negative imperfective verbs, with -já: or plural-subject -jé: expressing the negation (instead of the usual imperfective negative -rō). The juxtaposition indicates uncertainty as the agent hesitates. That is, the positive and negative events are in the mind of the agent (274).

(274) a. wó lágá-jú lágá-já:

3SgSbj hit-Ipfv hit-IpfvNeg

‘He/She is undecided (hesitant) whether to hit.’

b. bé lágá-jú lágà-jé:

3PlSbj hit-Ipfv hit.IpfvNeg.Plsbj

‘They are undecided (hesitant) whether to hit.’

By itself, a similar form with H-toned -já: or plural-subject -jé: can be used in cases like (275), where the speaker in effect expresses surprise at the addressee’s hesitation in carrying out an action.

(275) ú má lágá-já:

2SgSbj 1SgObj hit-IpfvNeg

‘(How come) you-Sg don’t hit me?’
10.2.3.6 Progressive negative (-wɔ-r̩ ~ -wè-rɛ)

A negative version of the progressive is expressed by -wɔ(·)-r̩ for singular subject and -wè(·)-rɛ for plural subject. At the end of a noninterrogative clause they are pronounced with L-tones, i.e. as -wɔ(·)-r̩ and -wè(·)-rɛ. The shortened {L}-toned forms -wɔ-r̩ and -wè-rɛ are common.

These forms are based on wɔ- ‘is not (somewhere)’ and its plural wè: ‘are not (somewhere)’, i.e., the (stative) negative forms of locational quasi-verb wɔ (plural wè) ‘be (somewhere)’ (§11.2.2.2). I have occasionally heard the long vowel in the progressive negative, but only in elicitation.

The stem preserves its lexical melody. Nonmonosyllabic stems ending in a high vowel harmonize the medial vowels with the initial vowel (276c-d). Contracting rhotic-medial stems contract (276e).

(276) Progressive negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>progressive negative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>ó-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>nú-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɔː</td>
<td>ɔː-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>ɔː-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áː</td>
<td>áː-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>áː-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nɔː</td>
<td>nɔː-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>nɔː-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nùː</td>
<td>nùː-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>nùː-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yè (yañ-)</td>
<td>yəː-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>yəː-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jè (jɔː-)</td>
<td>jəː-wɔ-r̩</td>
<td>jəː-wè-rɛ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. bisyllabic stems with fixed final vowel

| págá      | págá-wɔ-r̩          | págá-wè-rɛ | ‘tie’ |
| sùgó      | sùgó-wɔ-r̩          | sùgó-wè-rɛ | ‘go down’ |
| dáɡá      | dáɡá-wɔ-r̩          | dáɡá-wè-rɛ | ‘leave’ |
| pìr̩í      | pìr̩í-wɔ-r̩       | pìr̩í-wè-rɛ | ‘milk (a cow)’ |
| mìr̩í      | mìr̩í-wɔ-r̩       | mìr̩í-wè-rɛ | ‘swallow’ |

c. bisyllabic stems with changeable final high vowel

| pâl       | pâl̩-wɔ-r̩          | pâl̩-wè-rɛ | ‘pick (fruit)’ |
| kùh       | kùn̩-wɔ-r̩          | kùn̩-wè-rɛ | ‘put’ |
| gùj̩      | gùj̩-wɔ-r̩          | gùj̩-wè-rɛ | ‘take out’ |
| mɔː-ːn̩   | mɔː:n̩-wɔ-r̩        | mɔː:n̩-wè-rɛ | ‘assemble’ |

d. trisyllabic stems

| with changeable medial and final vowels |
| kìg̩r̩i     | kìg̩r̩i-wɔ-r̩      | kìg̩r̩i-wè-rɛ | ‘return’ |
| áwàr̩ù      | áwàr̩ù-wɔ-r̩    | áwàr̩ù-wè-rɛ | ‘lay out’ |
| with fixed medial high vowel |
| sùnúgù      | sùnúgù-wɔ-r̩    | sùnúgù-wè-rɛ | ‘take down’ |
e. rhotic-medial stems subject to rv-Deletion

irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Pl</th>
<th>‘come’</th>
<th>‘bring’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yèrè</td>
<td>yé-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>yé-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘come’</td>
<td>‘bring’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jè:rè</td>
<td>jè-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>jè-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘come’</td>
<td>‘bring’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

other

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Pl</th>
<th>‘say’</th>
<th>‘do’</th>
<th>‘go past’</th>
<th>‘kill’</th>
<th>‘get’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pòrù</td>
<td>pò-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>pò-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘say’</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
<td>‘go past’</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birè</td>
<td>bf-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>bf-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
<td>‘go past’</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gàrà</td>
<td>gà-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>gà-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘go past’</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàr”á</td>
<td>dà”-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>dà”-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bèrè</td>
<td>bè-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>bè-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f. mediopassive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Pl</th>
<th>‘jump’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kír-i:</td>
<td>kír-é:-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>kír-é:-wè-rè</td>
<td>‘jump’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is a suffixal distinction between singular and plural subject (277). Since the suffixes are based on ‘not be’ quasi-verbs, there is also a human/nonhuman distinction.

(277) Pronominal paradigm (progressive negative)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>‘go down’</th>
<th>‘pick (fruit)’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>ìº súgó-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>ìº pálá-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>ëmé súgó-wè-rè</td>
<td>ëmé pálá-wè-rè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>ú úgó-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>ú pálá-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>é súgó-wè-rè</td>
<td>é pálá-wè-rè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>wó súgó-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
<td>wó pálá-wɔ̀-rɔ̀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>bè súgó-wè-rè</td>
<td>bè pálá-wè-rè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonh</td>
<td>kó súgó-kɔ̀rɔ̀</td>
<td>kó pálá-kɔ̀rɔ̀</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.2.3.7 Reduplicated progressive negative (Cv…-wɔ̀-rɔ̀)

It was possible to elicit a reduplicated form of the progressive negative. The reduplicant is the usual L-toned Cv-, and there is no change in the form of the imperfective negative stem or suffix. The limited data do not suggest a systematic difference in meaning. Example: sù-súgó-wà-rɔ̀ ‘is not going down’.

10.3 Pronominal paradigms for non-imperative verbs

10.3.1 Subject pronominal suffixes

There are no full suffixal paradigms for pronominal subject of verbs. Some verbal inflectional categories have a binary distinction between an unmarked singular-subject form (1Sg, 2Sg, 3Sg) and a marked plural-subject form (1Pl, 2Pl, and especially human 3Pl). Even this binary distinction is not rigorous, as the unmarked form is often heard when a plural subject NP is expressed earlier in the clause.
The relevant data for the inflectional categories are summarized in (278), repeating information given in the relevant sections above.

(278) category singular plural Sg = Pl

a. perfective system (positive)
   simple perfective -è ~ -è -sèⁿ
   recent perfect
     — — jè
   experiential perfect
     — — -tè-jè

b. imperfective system (positive)
   imperfective -jú ~ -jú -jí ~ -jí
   progressive -tãjè -tãjè

c. negative
   perfective negative -lì -lã:
   experiential perfect negative tè-lì tè-lã:
   imperfective negative -rò -rè
   progressive negative -wò-rò -wè-rè

The distinctively plural-subject suffixes are idiosyncratic to each category. Historically, -sèⁿ is probably an old 3Pl form of a perfective or resultative suffixal category based on the quasi-verb ‘have’. In the perfective negative, -lã: reflects an old 3Pl form of -lì, but segmentation is no longer transparent in Togo Kan. The progressive negative forms are parasitic on negative forms of stative quasi-verb ‘be (somewhere)’.

10.3.2 Nonhuman versus 3Sg subject

In most verbal inflectional categories, the verb form used with nonhuman pronoun kò, and with nonhuman subject NPs, is the same as the 3Sg form used for humans. In the progressive negative, the fact that forms of ‘not be (somewhere)’ are used means that nonhuman and (human) 3Sg are distinct; see §11.2.2.2.

10.4 Derived stative form of verbs (reduplicated and unreduplicated)

Some verbs additionally have a derived stative form that does not mark aspectual categories. The verbs in question also occur in the full range of (active) AMN categories with mediopassive suffix -i: ~ -i:́ (§9.3.1). The stative form denotes a static position or other state, rather than the event of taking that position. The mediopassive suffix is absent in the stative.

The stative verb has an initial Cv- reduplication in simple positive utterances that have no preceding element that could be interpreted as focalized. In practice, any locational expression counts as “focalized” for this purpose, and is therefore followed by the unreduplicated form of the stative. In the absence of a focalized constituent, the stative is either reduplicated or provided with existential proclitic yè (§11.2.2.1), but not both.

All attested statives are of (C)vCV shape omitting the reduplicant. The final vowel in the stative is a non-high vowel, either copying the first vowel quality (in the cases of a and mid-height vowels) or at least harmonizing with it in backness and rounding (in the cases of high vowels). In the reduplicated form, the initial syllable of the stem is H-toned, while the
reduplicant and the final syllable are L-toned. In the defocalized form following a locational, and before the stative negative, the stem is {L}-toned.

The reduplicant takes the form $Cv^-$ with a copy of the first two stem segments if the stem is of the shape $CvTv$ with nonnasal consonant $T$ ($Cv-CvTv$). If the initial consonant position is unfilled and the medial consonant is oral, the reduplicant takes the form $v-$, with a glottal stop separating the two vowels ($v-$). The reduplicant vowel is nasalized if the stem begins with no consonant or with a nonnasal consonant, but has a medial nasal. Specifically, $TvNv$ becomes $Tv^-TvNv$, and $vNv$ becomes $v^-ʔvNv$.

Negation is by stative negative = lá (plural-subject = lé) added to the tone-dropped, unreduplicated stative form.

The forms in (279) show representative singular-subject forms. Verbs with CeC-i: mediopassive vocalism shift to CaCa in the stative (‘circulate’, ‘sit’). ‘Lie down’ shifts from im-i: to umo (279d); for the vocalism compare archaic causative ú:-ǹ ‘lay, put down (large object)’ (232c).

(279) Derived stative form of verbs (singular subject)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>stative</th>
<th>reduplicated</th>
<th>unreduplicated</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$pēŋ$-i:</td>
<td>‘circulate’</td>
<td>$pā$-$pāŋ$</td>
<td>X $pāŋ$</td>
<td>$pāŋ$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$wiw$-i:</td>
<td>‘flip [intr]’</td>
<td>$wī$-$wīyē$</td>
<td>X $wīyē$</td>
<td>$wīyē$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$kār$-i:</td>
<td>‘hang [intr]’</td>
<td>$kā$-$kārō$</td>
<td>X $kārō$</td>
<td>$kārō$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$mō$-$a$-i:</td>
<td>‘be together’</td>
<td>$mō$-$mōa$</td>
<td>X $mōa$</td>
<td>$mōa$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$iγ$-i:</td>
<td>‘stand’</td>
<td>$iγ$-$iγē$</td>
<td>X $iγē$</td>
<td>$iγē$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$dēŋ$-i:</td>
<td>‘sit’</td>
<td>$dā$-$dāŋ$</td>
<td>X $dāŋ$</td>
<td>$dāŋ$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$pī́$-i:</td>
<td>‘be shut’</td>
<td>$pī$-$pīnē$</td>
<td>X $pīnē$</td>
<td>$pīnē$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$bāγ$-i:</td>
<td>‘hide [intr]’</td>
<td>$bāγ$-$bāγā$</td>
<td>X $bāγā$</td>
<td>$bāγā$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$tūŋ$-i:</td>
<td>‘kneel’</td>
<td>$tūŋ$-$tūŋō$</td>
<td>X $tūŋō$</td>
<td>$tūŋō$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$im$-i:</td>
<td>‘lie down’</td>
<td>$ūm$-$ūmō$</td>
<td>X $ūmō$</td>
<td>$ūmō$ = lá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The corresponding plural-subject form has $e$ replacing the final vowel of the singular stative. For some stems the vocalic difference from singular to plural extends to the first stem syllable, and (therefore) to the reduplicant. Specifically, the mutations described above for verbs like ‘sit’ and ‘lie down’ in the singular-subject stative are undone in the plural, which is therefore directly based on the (nonstative) stem. Only reduplicated forms are shown in (280), but the unreduplicated and negative plural-subject forms have the same vocalism as the singular. Some stems do not usually take human subjects for semantic reasons and are omitted.
Stative form of verbs (singular versus plural subject)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>stative singular</th>
<th>stative plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. final vowel to e, no other difference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàŋ-i:</td>
<td>‘hide [intr]’</td>
<td>bàⁿ-bàŋà</td>
<td>bàⁿ-bàŋè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḣg-î:</td>
<td>‘stand’</td>
<td>i-牯é</td>
<td>i-牯é</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūŋ-i:</td>
<td>‘kneel’</td>
<td>tūⁿ-tūŋò</td>
<td>tūⁿ-tūŋè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. first vowel also different</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dèng-i:</td>
<td>‘sit’</td>
<td>dâⁿ-dâŋà</td>
<td>dèⁿ-dèŋè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ḣnèŋ-i:</td>
<td>‘be restless’</td>
<td>ḣnâ-ŋâŋà</td>
<td>ḣnè-ŋèŋè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>im-î:</td>
<td>‘lie down’</td>
<td>ũⁿ-ʔúmò</td>
<td>ũⁿ-ʔímè</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.5 Post-verbal temporal particles

10.5.1 Past clitic absent

There is no past clitic or suffix comparable to =bē- and similar forms in other Dogon languages.

10.6 Imperatives and hortatives

10.6.1 Imperatives and prohibitives

The sections below focus on morphology. Imperatives, prohibitives, and hortatives mark addressee plurality on the verbs. For the syntax see §10.6.3.

10.6.1.1 Positive imperatives (imperative stem, plural addressee -ỳ)

The imperative stem is used without further suffixation as the singular-addressee positive imperative (‘go!’). Adding a suffix -ỳ (note the low tone) to the same stem produces the plural-addressee positive imperative.

The imperative stem is sometimes identical to the bare stem, but this is not systematic. Nonmonosyllabic verbs whose bare stem ends in a high vowel show the non-high vowel variant in the imperative. In addition, prosodically light (up to two vocalic moras) /LH/- and /LHL/-toned verbs shift to {H} tone in the imperative stem. The exception is yē ‘go’, which has imperative yâ:. The vowel shift e → a also occurs in the semantically corresponding transfer verb jē ‘take away’, which has imperative jâ:. There is no vowel shift for ‘come’ or ‘bring’. Prosodically heavy /LH/-toned verbs preserve the initial L-tone. Two verbs, ó ‘give’ and pórl ‘say’, have irregular imperative stems with a -nɔ formative.
(281) Imperative (singular addressee)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>imperative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabics, /H/ and /HL/ toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á:</td>
<td>á:</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pí:</td>
<td>pí:</td>
<td>‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/HL/-toned (only example, irregular)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jê (jâ:-)</td>
<td>já:</td>
<td>‘take away’ [irregular]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yê (yâ:-)</td>
<td>yâ:</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. nonmonosyllabic stems with fixed final vowel, /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>págá</td>
<td>págá</td>
<td>‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súgó</td>
<td>súgó</td>
<td>‘go down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pířⁿí</td>
<td>pířⁿí</td>
<td>‘milk (a cow)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. nonmonosyllabics with changeable final vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pâl</td>
<td>pálá</td>
<td>‘pick (fruit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíři</td>
<td>kíré</td>
<td>‘jump’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kú̃ŋ</td>
<td>kú̃ŋ̣</td>
<td>‘put’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gúŋ̣</td>
<td>gúŋ̣̣</td>
<td>‘take out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisyllabic, with changeable medial and final vowels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kígírì</td>
<td>kígéré</td>
<td>‘return’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áwúrú</td>
<td>áwárá</td>
<td>‘lay out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisyllabic, with fixed medial high vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súñú-gù</td>
<td>súñú-gó</td>
<td>‘take down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pùñú-gù</td>
<td>pùñú-gó</td>
<td>‘ruin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mediopassive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìg-i:</td>
<td>ìg-é:</td>
<td>‘stand up; stop’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kí-ř:</td>
<td>kí-ré:</td>
<td>‘fly’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular (partial mediopassive morphology)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gér-i:</td>
<td>géré</td>
<td>‘look’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jígě-m̩</td>
<td>jígé-m(ü)</td>
<td>‘churn (butter)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. /LH/-toned stems shift to {H}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nô:</td>
<td>nô:</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gô:</td>
<td>gô:</td>
<td>‘go out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèré</td>
<td>yèré</td>
<td>‘come’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bířé</td>
<td>bířé</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dâñːá</td>
<td>dâñːá</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gàrá</td>
<td>gàrá</td>
<td>‘go past’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bëřé</td>
<td>bëřé</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirⁿi</td>
<td>mirⁿi</td>
<td>‘swallow’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
e. /LHL/-toned stems shift to {LH}

- /LHL/-toned stems preserve the initial L-tone.
- /Cvrv/ and /Cvrv/ stems contract to /Cv/ before the prohibitive suffix. Vowel shifts occur in stems of basic motion/transfer verbs, e → a for ‘go’ and ‘take away’ (283a), and e → e for ‘come’ and ‘bring’. /jɛ̌r/ ‘bring’ and /yɛ́r/ ‘come’ also undergo rv-Deletion, resulting in /jɛ́-lè/ and /yɛ́-lè/ in (283e). Because of the vowel shifts, /yɛ́-lè/ is the prohibitive of /jɛ́r/ ‘come’, not of /yɛ́/ ‘go’.

(283) Prohibitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>prohibitive</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú-lè</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó-lè</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á:</td>
<td>á:-lè</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

f. irregular imperatives with final -nv

The plural-addressee form is phonologically unremarkable. Examples of singular/plural pairs are in (282).

(282) gloss imperative (positive) singular addressee plural addressee

| ‘go’   | yǎ:       | yǎ:-y |
| ‘come’ | yɛ́r       | yɛ́r:-y |

Since the 1Sg pronoun is the only NP with accusative marking in direct objects function, the syntactic issue of the case-marking of imperative direct object NPs is usually moot. However, 1Sg accusative /má/ is found in imperatives: /má págá/ ‘tie me up!’.

10.6.1.2 Prohibitives (-lé, plural addressee -lé-ŷ)

The negative of the imperative, i.e. the prohibitive, is characterized by a suffix -lé. The same plural-subject -ŷ seen above with imperatives is added to this to produce plural-addressee prohibitive -lé-ŷ.

The stem takes the same form segmentally as in the imperative (and some other inflections), except for a few verbs with irregular imperative and/or irregular prohibitive. /LH/-toned stems preserve the initial L-tone.

Contracting /Cvrv/ and /Cvrv/ stems contract to /Cv/ before the prohibitive suffix. Vowel shifts occur in stems of basic motion/transfer verbs, e → a for ‘go’ and ‘take away’ (283a), and e → e for ‘come’ and ‘bring’. /jɛ́r/ ‘bring’ and /yɛ́r/ ‘come’ also undergo rv-Deletion, resulting in /jɛ́-lè/ and /yɛ́-lè/ in (283e). Because of the vowel shifts, /yɛ́-lè/ is the prohibitive of /jɛ́r/ ‘come’, not of /yɛ́/ ‘go’.
/HL/-toned (only example), vowel shift

jê (jâ:−)  jâ:-lè  ‘take away’
yê (yà:−)  yâ:-lè  ‘go’

b. nonmonosyllabic stems with fixed final vowel, /H/-toned

págá  págá-lè  ‘tie’
súdo  súdo-lè  ‘go down’
pírí  pírí-lè  ‘milk (a cow)’

bisyllabic

pâl  pâl-lè  ‘pick (fruit)’
kírî  kírî-lè  ‘jump’
kùn  kùn-s-lè  ‘put’
gûjì  gûjì-lè  ‘take out’

trisyllabic with changeable medial and final vowels

kígîrî  kígîrî-lè  ‘return’
áwùrù  áwùrù-lè  ‘lay out’

trisyllabic with fixed medial high vowel

súnú-gù  súnú-gù-lè  ‘take down’

with irregular vowel shift

kígìrî  kígìrî-lè  ‘return’
áwùrù  áwùrù-lè  ‘lay out’

with fixed medial high vowel

púnú-gù  púnú-gù-lè  ‘ruin’

with changeable medial and final vowels

wògùrù  wògùrù-lè  ‘take (sth) out or off’

e. rhotic-medial bisyllabics subject to rv-Deletion

regular

bìrê  bì-lè  ‘do’
gárá  gá-lè  ‘go past’
bèrê  bè-lè  ‘get’
póruzì  póruzì-lè  ‘say’
dàrâzì  dàrâzì-lè  ‘kill’

with irregular vowel shift

yèrê  yè-lè  ‘come’
jèrì  jè-lè  ‘bring’

f. trisyllabic and longer /LH/ or /LHL/ stems

with fixed medial high vowel

púnú-gù  púnú-gù-lè  ‘ruin’

with changeable medial and final vowels

wògùrù  wògùrù-lè  ‘take (sth) out or off’
Examples of singular/plural-addressee pairs are in (284).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(284)</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>prohibitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>singular addressee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘drink’</td>
<td>nɔː</td>
<td>nɔː-ːlé</td>
<td>nɔː-ːlé-ːy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘take out/off’</td>
<td>wɔ́gùrù</td>
<td>wɔ́gɔ̃rɔ̃-ːlé</td>
<td>wɔ́gɔ̃rɔ̃-ːlé-ːy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the prohibitive verb form in ‘lest’ clauses, a kind of negative purposive clause, see (625a-b) in §17.6.1.1, below.

Prohibitive -lé is grammatically and morphophonologically distinct from the -lé used in a verb-iteration construction, see §11.6.5. The latter controls an {H} overlay on the verb stem, and does not show the segmental contractions (rv-Deletion, contracted forms for ‘come’, ‘bring’, and ‘take away’) that occur in the prohibitive.

10.6.2 Hortatives

10.6.2.1 Positive hortatives (-má, plural addressee -má-ːyⁿ)

First-person (inclusive) hortatives are structured morphologically like imperatives, as though addressed only to the listener. There is accordingly a morphological distinction between a singular-addressee first-person hortative, as in ‘let’s (me and you-Sg) go!’ , and a plural-addressee first-person hortative, as in ‘let’s (all three of us) go!’. The hortative suffix is -má, used without further affixes for singular addressee. Unlike the morpheme má used in ‘good to eat’ type expressions (§6.3.3.3), hortative -má does not control tone-dropping on the verb stem.

The plural-addressee counterpart is -má-ːyⁿ, with the same plural-addressee suffix seen in imperative and prohibitive forms.

The morphophonology including tonology is similar to that described just above for the prohibitive, including the vowel shifts for basic motion/transfer verbs (285a). ‘Bring’ also adopts the tonal form of its antonym ‘take away’. ‘Go’ additionally shifts initial y to ñ, resulting in já-má, likely from *yá-má via *yⁿá-má by (diachronic) backward nasalization-spread.

(285) Hortative (positive)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>hortative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabics, /H/ and /HL/ toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó-má</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú-má</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á:</td>
<td>á:-má</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pí:</td>
<td>pí:-má</td>
<td>‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/HL/-toned (only examples)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé (já:-)</td>
<td>já:-má</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jê:ri (jê:-)</td>
<td>jê:-má</td>
<td>‘bring’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yé (yá:-)</td>
<td>pá-má</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. \textit{CvCv} with fixed final vowel, /H/-toned

\begin{itemize}
  \item págá  \quad \text{págá-má}  \quad \text{‘tie’}
  \item súgó  \quad \text{súgó-má}  \quad \text{‘go down’}
  \item pírʰí  \quad \text{pírʰí-má}  \quad \text{‘milk (a cow)’}
\end{itemize}

c. stems with changeable final vowel

\textit{bisyllabic}

\begin{itemize}
  \item pál  \quad \text{páλá-má}  \quad \text{‘pick (fruit)’}
  \item kírì  \quad \text{kíré-má}  \quad \text{‘jump’}
  \item kúù  \quad \text{kúṃ što- má}  \quad \text{‘put’}
  \item guŋ  \quad \text{guŋš-má}  \quad \text{‘take out’}
\end{itemize}

\textit{trisyllabic with changeable medial and final vowels}

\begin{itemize}
  \item kígírì  \quad \text{kígéré-má}  \quad \text{‘return’}
  \item áwùrù  \quad \text{áwárá-má}  \quad \text{‘lay out’}
\end{itemize}

\textit{trisyllabic with fixed medial high vowel}

\begin{itemize}
  \item súnú-gù  \quad \text{súnú-gó-má}  \quad \text{‘take down’}
\end{itemize}

d. /LH/-toned mono- and bisyllabics

\begin{itemize}
  \item nɔ:  \quad \text{nɔ:-má}  \quad \text{‘drink’}
  \item gɔ:  \quad \text{gɔ:-má}  \quad \text{‘go out’}
  \item dɔwɔ:  \quad \text{dɔwɔ:-má}  \quad \text{‘go up’}
  \item mirʰí  \quad \text{mirʰí-má}  \quad \text{‘swallow’}
\end{itemize}

e. rhotic-medial bisyllabics subject to \textit{rv-Deletion}

\textit{regular}

\begin{itemize}
  \item bírɛ  \quad \text{bí-má}  \quad \text{‘do’}
  \item dàrˈá  \quad \text{dá-má}  \quad \text{‘kill’}
  \item gàrɑ́  \quad \text{gá-má}  \quad \text{‘go past’}
  \item bɛré  \quad \text{bɛ-má}  \quad \text{‘get’}
  \item póɾù  \quad \text{pó-má}  \quad \text{‘say’}
\end{itemize}

\textit{irregular rhotic-syllable truncation and vowel shift}

\begin{itemize}
  \item yɛrɛ  \quad \text{yɛ-má}  \quad \text{‘come’}
\end{itemize}

f. trimoraic and longer /LH/ or /LHL/ stems preserve lexical tone

\begin{itemize}
  \item mɔ:  \quad \text{mɔ:-ná}  \quad \text{‘assemble’}
  \item pùnù-gù  \quad \text{pùnù-gó-má}  \quad \text{‘ruin’}
  \item wɔgùrù  \quad \text{wɔgùrù-má}  \quad \text{‘take (sth) out or off’}
\end{itemize}

In (286), the interviewer suggests moving to another topic. There is only one addressee, so \textit{-má} rather than \textit{-má-ýn} is used.

\textbf{(286)} \quad \text{né:}  \quad \text{kà:ná}  \quad \text{yɔ:}  \quad \text{[nù:]  \quad \text{[kɛ=]  \quad \text{là:}  \quad \text{mà,}}}

\text{now now NearDist [millet \textit{1}Poss]=it.is tagQ Q,}

\text{maintenant \textit{édé}  \quad \text{dágà→ \quad \text{[ɛ:ʁɛ \quad \text{[kɛ \quad \text{kà:]}]} \quad \text{dágà→ \quad \text{tǐŋɛ-má}}}}

\text{now \textit{1}PSbj a. little [peanut \textit{1}Poss also] a. little speak-Hort}

\text{‘(Up to) now, that (=what we have discussed) is for millet, right? Now let’s talk a little about peanuts.’} \quad (2011.1a.18)
10.6.2.2 Hortative negative (-mlé, plural addressee -mlé-y)

The negation of the hortative is by a suffix complex -mlé, presumably containing prohibitive suffix -lé. The stem vocalism is as in the positive hortative. Again the plural-addressee form adds a suffix -y.

(287) Hortative negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>hortative negative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabics, /H/ and /HL/ toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó-m-lé</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú-m-lé</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á:</td>
<td>á:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pí:</td>
<td>pí:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘eat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/HL/-toned (only examples)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé (já:-)</td>
<td>já:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé:ří (jě:-)</td>
<td>jě:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘bring’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yě (yǎ:-)</td>
<td>yǎ:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. CvCv with fixed final vowel, /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pá:ɡá</td>
<td>pá:ɡá-m-lé</td>
<td>‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sú:ɡó</td>
<td>sú:ɡó-m-lé</td>
<td>‘go down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>píří</td>
<td>píří-m-lé</td>
<td>‘milk (a cow)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. stems with changeable final vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pál</td>
<td>pálá-m-lé</td>
<td>‘pick (fruit)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kú:</td>
<td>kú:n-m-lé</td>
<td>‘put’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guŋ</td>
<td>guŋ:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘take out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisyllabic with changeable medial and final vowels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíɡírì</td>
<td>kíɡírì-m-lé</td>
<td>‘return’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á:wú:rù</td>
<td>á:wú:rù-m-lé</td>
<td>‘lay out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisyllabic with fixed medial high vowel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sú:nú-gú</td>
<td>sú:nú-gó-m-lé</td>
<td>‘take down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. /LH/-toned monosyllabics and CvCv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nó:</td>
<td>nó:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gó:</td>
<td>gó:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘go out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɔwɔ</td>
<td>dɔwɔ:-m-lé</td>
<td>‘go up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mìrì</td>
<td>mìrì-m-lé</td>
<td>‘swallow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. rhotic-medial stems subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bìrì</td>
<td>bì-m-lé</td>
<td>‘do’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà:řá</td>
<td>dà:ř-m-lé</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gá:rá</td>
<td>gá:m-lé</td>
<td>‘go past’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běrì</td>
<td>bě-m-lé</td>
<td>‘get’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
irregular rhotic-syllable truncation and vowel shift

\( \text{pórù} \quad \text{pó-m-lé} \) ‘say’
\( \text{yèré} \quad \text{yè-m-lé} \) ‘come’

f. heavy /LH/ or /LHL/ stems preserve lexical tone
\( \text{mɔ́̀h} \quad \text{mɔ́̀nɔ́-m-lé} \) ‘assemble’

tri-syllabic with fixed medial high vowel
\( \text{ɲù-nú-gù} \quad \text{ɲù-nú-gó-m-lé} \) ‘ruin’

tri-syllabic with changeable medial and final vowels
\( \text{wɔ̀gùrù} \quad \text{wɔ̀gɔ̀rɡɔ́-m-lé} \) ‘take (sth) out or off’

g. mediopassive
\( \text{kí-r-l} \quad \text{kí-r-é-m-lé} \) ‘jump’

10.6.3 Syntactic status of second-person subject in imperatives

The “subject” of a regular second person imperative is covert, except for the plural -\( \text{̀y} \) in the imperative verb itself. The fact that such agreement occurs could be taken as evidence that the presence of a 2Sg or 2Pl subject in imperative clauses is recognized by the morphosyntax.

When the imperative verb is chained to another verb or VP (in which case it is understood that the imperative force applies to the entire chain), the nonfinal verb appears either in bare-stem form (to create a direct chain) or in a pseudo-conditional clause with \( \text{dè} \) ‘if’. Both direct chains and pseudo-conditions elsewhere (i.e. with indicative final verb) require same subjects in the two clauses. This suggests that the interclausal syntax can detect imperative subjects and verify the sameness (i.e. coindexation), or at least non-disjointness, of the subjects of two chained verbs. Examples with imperatives are in (288).

(288) a. \( \text{dɔ́w} \quad \text{súgó} \)
\( \text{go.up} \quad \text{go.down..Imprt} \)
‘Go up and come-2Sg (back) down!’
(direct chain)

b. \[\text{dɔ́w-} \quad \text{dè}\] \( \quad \text{súgó} \)
\[\text{go.up-Pfv} \quad \text{if}\] \( \quad \text{go.down.IMPRT} \)
‘Go up and come-2Sg (back) down!’
(pseudo-conditional)

Likewise for plural subject imperative: \( \text{dɔ́w} \text{súgó-} \text{̀y} \) or \[\text{dɔ́w-} \text{dè}\] \( \text{súgó-} \text{̀y} \).

However, there is a glaring syntactic difference between imperative subjects and other subjects, viz., the inability of imperative subjects to serve as antecedents for anaphors, specifically reflexives. In indicative (289a), a second person subject (like any subject) requires that a coindexed clausemate object appear as the reflexive morpheme \( \text{sà} \). The imperative version, however, shows a regular 2Sg object pronominal, as one would get with a referentially disjoint subject.

(289) a. \( \text{ú} \quad \text{sà} \quad \text{kéj-è} \)
\( \text{2SgSbj} \quad \text{Refl} \quad \text{cut-Pfv} \)
‘You-Sg cut-Past yourself.’
b. ū kējé
   2SgObj cut.Imprt
   ‘Cut-2Sg yourself!’

c. ū kējé-ké
   2SgObj cut-Proh
   ‘Don’t-2Sg cut yourself!’

Likewise for plural subject: indicative é [săⁿ bèj] kējé-sēⁿ ‘you-Pl (have) cut yourselves’ but imperative é kējé-ỳ ‘cut yourselves’.

So, on one hand, the morphology of the imperative verb itself recognizes the difference between singular and plural addressee, and (arguably) the interclausal syntax can detect imperative subjects and verify their referential identity. On the other hand, the (mostly) clause-internal anaphora system is unable to recognize an imperative subject.

In addition to reflexive sāⁿ, there is a same-subject subordinating connector má in relative clauses, functioning as another anaphoric element. This too is disallowed in imperatives, showing again that the imperative addressee does not function as a referential subject in anaphora. The crucial examples are non-imperative (471b) versus imperative (471c-d) in §14.1.10.

The syntax of hortative subjects differs from that of imperatives. Hortatives agree with imperatives in the morphology of the verb itself, and in the use of same-subject bare stems (direct chains and pseudo-conditionals). However, hortatives normally show a clause-initial 1Pl subject émé (290a-b), which is omitted under the same conditions as in indicatives, whereas imperatives cannot have an initial 2Sg or 2Pl pronoun except in vocative function. In addition, hortative subjects (1Pl) are perfectly good antecedents for reflexives (290c).

(290) a. émé d₃wó súgó-má-ỳⁿ
   1PlSbj go.up go.down-Hort-PlSbj
   ‘Let’s (three or more) go up and come (back) down!’
   (direct chain)

b. émé [d₃wé dè] súgó-má-ỳⁿ
   1PlSbj [go.up-Pfv if] go.down-Hort-PlSbj
   [=?(a)]
   (pseudo-conditional)

c. émé [săⁿ bèj] kējé-má-ỳⁿ
   1PlSbj [ReflObj Pl] cut-Hort-PlSbj
   ‘Let’s (three or more) cut ourselves!’
   (reflexive object)

The conclusion is that imperative and hortative verbs index addressee number, that indicatives and hortatives have full-fledged referential subjects, but imperatives are treated as lacking referential subjects.

The shaky syntactic status of imperative subjects may be compared with that of (pseudo-)subjects in fixed subject-verb collocations of the ‘night fell’ type (§11.1.4).
10.6.4  Imperative and hortative verbs with non-second person subject

10.6.4.1  Imperative with third person subject

This construction is used in wishes and imprecations of the type ‘may God VERB X’. The verb is in imperative form.

(291)  a.  àmá  ú  bárá
     God  2SgObj  help.**Imprt**
     ‘May God assist you.’

       b.  àmá  bá:sí  pógó
          God  trouble  brush.off.**Imprt**
          ‘May God brush off any trouble!’ (2011.1a.01)

The imperative verb here is invariant in unmarked (elsewhere singular-subject) form, though the preverbal subject NP may be plural (292). This restriction was also noted by Prost, who called the non-second person imperative the “subjonctif” (p. 56).

(292)  [är“à[^L]  gàrá  bè]  ú  bárá
        [man[^L]  big  Pl  2SgObj  help.**Imprt**
        ‘May the old people assist you.’

A similar construction is used in jussives of the type ‘Tell them to come!’ (§17.1.5.1, below).

10.6.4.2  Imperative with implied first person singular subject

The imperative verb form is also used in utterances expressing uncertainty whether the addressee (or someone else who sent the addressee) wants the speaker to do something. For 1Sg subject, the usually accusative form má is used; for other nouns and pronouns there is no difference between subject and object morphology.

(293)  má  yéré  má
        1SgAcc  come.**Imprt**  Q
        ‘(Do you want) me to come?’

10.6.4.3  Hortative with second or third person subject

The hortative can occur with a third person subject (294a) in wishes. With a second person subject, it gives the addressee permission to do something that he/she wishes. For example, (294b) could be used in a context where the speaker knows that the addressee is anxious to go.

(294)  a.  [pérè  ʒí  kɔ̀  dè]  [kò  lɲà-mà]
       [other  Exist  be.NonSbj  if]  [NonSbj  lgo-**Hort**
       ‘If there is another (tale), may it go (=proceed)!’
b. [ú₁ kè] jná-má
   [2Sg₁ Topic] go-Hort
   ‘You-Sg may go (now).’
11 VP and predicate structure

11.1 Regular verbs and VP structure

11.1.1 Verb types (valency)

There is no overt case-marking of nonpronominal subjects or objects (§6.7), but the distinction between them is clear. There is a clause-initial subject position, especially for nonpronominal subject NPs including pronouns. There is optional subject-number agreement on verbs (§10.3.1). In nonsubject relatives, a preverbal pronominal proclitic expressing the subject is required (§14.1.8). However, not all subjects and not all objects are created equal.

11.1.1.1 Defective or absent subjects

Covert (virtual) second person subjects of imperatives constitute an analytical problem. Morphologically, the presence of a (covert) subject appears to be indexed by the distinction between singular and plural subject forms on the verb itself: yéré ‘come-2Sg!’, yéré-y ‘come-2Pl!’. Likewise, the interclausal syntax seems to recognize imperative subjects as being coindexed (“same subject”) or at least non-disjoint in verb/VP chains, allowing the use of direct chains (§15.1) and of pseudo-conditionals (§15.2.2.6). However, the clause-internal syntax fails to recognize the imperative subject as an antecedent for reflexives, unlike (referential) subjects in indicative clauses (including first and second person pronouns), and even unlike hortative subjects. So there is an apparent mismatch between the imperative-verb morphology and the clausal and interclausal syntax. The solution is that imperative and hortative verbs mark addressee (rather than subject) number. Imperatives have no true subjects, while indicatives and hortatives do have 1Pl subjects (as well as singular or plural addressee). See §10.6.3 for examples and discussion.

In indicative sentences, true subject NPs are clause-initial. However, there is a construction with a fixed collocation of a noun and a verb, including meteorological expressions similar to English day broke or night fell, along with emotional expressions involving kéné ‘heart’. Here the apparent subject (‘night’, ‘heart’) does not display full subject qualities and follows rather than precedes adverbs. This raises the possibility that these clauses may be subjectless. There are also cases (‘get angry’, ‘have a bloody nose’) that have both a fixed noun (‘heart’ or ‘nosebleed’) with defective subject properties and a true subject. These defective subjects, like imperative subjects, take the “same-subject” subordinator in chains, though this may simply mean that the two subjects are not disjoint. It is not possible to test them for anaphoric-antecedent properties. See §11.1.4 for examples and discussion.

11.1.2 Objects

In main clauses, object NPs follow subject NPs and some adverbial elements. Subjects, but not objects, have limited agreement in the verb, in the form of an optional marking of
plurality of subject (295a). Because this agreement does not distinguish pronominal person categories, independent pronouns in subject position are common (295b).

(295) a. [àrⁿá bè] [éwé bîn] një 5-sëⁿ
[man PI] [market in] woman see-Pfv.IPlSbj
‘The men saw the woman in the market.’

b. émé yá: bú:dú béré-sëⁿ
1PlSbj yesterday money get-Pfv.IPlSbj
‘We got the money yesterday.’

The simple transitive construction exemplified in (295) is typical for impact transitives like ‘hit’ and perception verbs like ‘see’. It is also valid for verbs of carrying and holding, although they are morphologically mediopassive in form, like bôm-ë: ‘carry (child, on back)’, which occurs in stative form in (296).

(296) íⁿ [sâⁿ l:iⁿ] bómò
1SgSbj [ReflPoss 1child] carry.on.back.Stat
‘I am carrying my child (on my back).’

As in other Dogon languages there are many conventionalized objects, including cognate nominals, that have limited independent reference. For examples see §11.1.5.1-2, below.

Motion verbs like ‘go’ have locational complements, typically expressed by spatial adverbial phrases or by place names. In (297), the destination is expressed by a tonal locative.

(297) íⁿ éwèⁿ⁻L yá:-jú
1SgSbj market.Loc⁻L go-Ipfv
‘I am going to (the) market.’

‘Give’ and ‘show’ each have a direct object (theme) without case-marking, and a dative indirect object (298).

(298) a. wó má= à [témdéré ly] 1Sg=Dat [hundred two] 1l:give-Pfv
‘He/She gave me 200.’

b. íⁿ [ú H súgë:ën] = à [pëjù L már“ú”] tó:ró-jú
1SgSbj [2SgPoss Hyounger.sib] = Dat [sheepL big] show-Ipfv
‘I will show a big sheep to your-Sg younger (same-sex) sibling.’

‘Say’ also has a direct-object (theme) when the quotation is resumed as a noun, pronoun, or ‘what?’ interrogative. In any case, the original addressee is expressed as a dative indirect object.

(299) ú = à igé 1l:pàr-i
2Sg=Dat what 1l:say-Pfv
‘What did he/she say to you-Sg?’

‘Put’ and ‘take out’ verbs have a direct-object (theme) and a locational expression denoting the relevant container or containing space. The locational expression does not indicate
directionality (‘to X’, ‘from X’), which is the responsibility of the verb. Therefore both (300a) and (300a) have static locative ‘in the house’ as locationals.

(300) a. ëmé dëɔ [girⁿi bìn] kùn-ẹ:-sëⁿ
1PlSbj waterjar [house in] put-Pfv.PIsbj
‘We put the waterjar in the house.’

b. ëmé dëɔ [girⁿi bìn] gùn-ẹ:-sëⁿ
1PlSbj waterjar [house in] take.out-Pfv.PIsbj
‘We took the waterjar out of the house.’

11.1.2 Valency of causatives

With the productive causative in -m, the embedded subject appears in dative form. This applies to embedded intransitive as well as transitive clauses. If the embedded clause is transitive, its direct object undergoes no change as part of causative clause union. (301e) is an example of a causative based on a transitive verb, with both a surface direct object and a dative.

(301) a. wò àrⁿá=ǹ dēn-ẹ:-m-Ø
3SgSbj man=Dat sit-MP-Caus-Pfv
‘He/She had/made/let the man sit.’

b. wò mà=ǹ ɲá: ɲị-ẹ-m-ị
3SgSbj 1Sg=Dat meal eat.meal-Caus-Pfv
‘He/She had/made/let me eat (a meal).’

c. wò mà=ǹ ɲ:n píñ-ẹ-m-Ø
3SgSbj 1Sg=Dat child shut-Caus-Pfv
‘He/She made me shut up (=imprison) the child.’

d. ñ ǹ=ǹ gō:-mí-ná
1SgSbj 2Sg=Dat go.out-Caus-lpfv
‘I will make you-Sg go out.’

e. [bàrà L’yè] kérá wò=ǹ ñùrō-ẹ:-Ø dë
[outback L’go] stem 3Sg=Dat gather.up-Caus-Pfv
‘(step-mother) would go into the bush, making her (=girl) go into the bush to collect (millet) stalks, (then…).’ (2011.1b.01)
[for L’yè see §15.1.6.1]

This valency does not apply to frozen and irregular causatives, which are treated like ordinary transitives. Thus pnùn-ẹ-gi ‘damage (sth)’, sùnù-ẹ-gi ‘take down’, gùn-e ‘take out’, and ù:-nà ‘lay, put down’ take simple NP and pronominal objects, including 1Sg accusative mà.
11.1.3 Verb Phrase

The notion of VP is most useful in the grammar in connection with chaining, especially same-subject loose chaining with a subordinator like -nî: ‘while’. The concept of VP is also useful in connection with anaphoric pronouns that have clausemate subjects as antecedents (chapter 18).

11.1.4 Fixed subject-verb collocations

Tightly-knit subject-verb collocations are not widespread, but are fairly typical of temporal expressions (in a broad sense: time of day, weather, seasons), and emotional expressions. Some collocations whose first element has subject-like qualities are in (302).

(302) Subject-verb collocations

a. temporal
   dà:gó dê: ‘night fall(s)’ (only known use of verb dê:)
   pàrá gô: ‘cloudy weather go out’ (= ‘be autumn’)
   jù-nù nù ‘cold season enter’ (= ‘… begin’)
   àrù láwɔ: ‘rain fall’ (lāwɔ: elsewhere ‘carve, chop out’)

b. emotional
   [X h-kêné] ká: ‘X’s heart weep’ (= ‘be sad’)
   X kêné pàrá ‘X heart rub on [lotion]’ (= ‘be angry’)

c. body function
   X kìr’î-né gô: ‘[X’s nose] bleed, X have a bloody nose’

However, the “subject” status of the nominals here is not full-fledged. True subjects are clause-initial in normal main clauses, preceding adverbials. By contrast, the fixed subject-like nominals in (302a) follow setting adverbials. Compare (303a-b) with true subjects to (303c), which has a subject-like nominal, showing different linear orders in spite of sharing an adverb and a verb.

(303) a. ínung [nê: w3a] l-gô-è
   1SGSBJ [NOW TOP] l-go.out-Pfv
   ‘I have gone out now.’

b. péjú [nê: w3a] l-gô-è
   sheep [NOW TOP] l-go.out-Pfv
   ‘The sheep-Sg has gone out now.’

c. [nê: w3a] l-gô-è
   [NOW TOP] cloudy.weather l-go.out-Pfv
   ‘The cloudy weather has gone out (=it is autumn).’

The situation is particularly striking for ‘X’s nose bleed(s)’, which appears to have two distinct subjects. [kìr’î-né] gô: by itself makes sense as a subject plus intransitive verb: ‘[nose-blood] go out’. However, there can also be another subject NP denoting the person (or
animal), and the two are separated if an adverb is present. In (304), ‘nose-blood’ is what ‘goes out’, but the human is the full-fledged subject, even to the extent of determining plural-subject agreement on the verb ‘go out’ (304b). See also the ‘get angry’ construction in (306b) below.

(304) a. sè:dú yá: kirⁿ-ńé l-gò-è
   S yesterday noseⁿ-blood l-go.out-Pfv
   ‘Seydou had a bloody nose yesterday.’

b. émé yá: kirⁿ-ńé gò-séⁿ
   1PlSbj yesterday noseⁿ-blood go.out.Pfv.PlSbj
   ‘We had bloody noses yesterday.’

If ‘nosebleed’ in (304) is a pseudo-subject, ending up in an adverb-like position, one could extrapolate this to cases like ‘cloudy weather’ in (303c). From this perspective, (303c) has no true subject NP.

To be sure, same-subject past anterior subordinator -e: (§15.2.2.1) can be used in two-clause sequences like (305) with fixed subject pàrá, but it could be debated whether -e: requires true referential coindexation or whether it is an unmarked subordinator used whenever the two subjects are not clearly disjoint.

(305) pàrá nú-ɛ̀: l-gò-è
   cloudy.weather go.in l-go.out-Pfv
   ‘Cloudy weather (=rainy season) came in and went out.’

Regarding the emotion expressions with kéné ‘heart’ (more accurately ‘liver-heart complex’) in (302b), there is a structural difference between ‘heart weep’ and ‘heart rub.on’. In the first, ‘heart’ is a possessed noun, as seen clearly in the 1Sg combination kéné mà ‘my heart’. However, it still follows setting adverbs (306a). In ‘heart rub.on’, if indeed párá in this collocation is the verb ‘rub on (e.g. lotion)’, ‘heart’ is not treated as a possessed noun. Instead, there is a separate subject denoting the person (306b), as in the ‘nosebleed’ examples above. If the subject is plural, the verb may agree with it (306c).

(306) a. íyé [kéné mà] kọⁿ-è
    today [heart 1SgPoss] weep-Pfv
    ‘My heart wept.’ (=‘I was sad.’)

b. íⁿ íyé kéné pár-è
    1SgSbj today heart rub.on-Pfv
    ‘I got angry today.’

c. émé íyé kéné párá-séⁿ
    1PlSbj today heart rub.on-Pfv.PlSbj
    ‘We got angry today.’
11.1.5 Fixed verb-object combinations

11.1.5.1 Verb and noncognate noun

Examples of fixed phrases consisting of a verb and a noncognate object verb are in (307).

(307) Verb-object combinations

a. noun carries main activity sense, verb is semantically light
   òsëgù sá: ‘sneeze’ (sá: ‘answer, speak up’)
   kõmõ tá: ‘wage war’ (tá: ‘shoot’)
   sáⁿ-ligí ā: ‘perform ablutions’ (ā: ‘catch’)
   ònjò sá:ŋi ‘yawn’ (sá:ŋi ‘stretch, spread’)
   ònjò dã:ri ‘yawn’ (cf. dã:ri ‘dare’)
   ò:gú tã:ri ‘sweat’ (tã:ri ‘hatch’ or ‘begin’)

b. noun carries main activity sense, verb not attested elsewhere
   giné nòwⁿ-ì: ‘go to sleep’
   iⁿsirⁿf së:ⁿ ‘urinate’
   tâ:lë:ⁿ dâ: ‘say a proverb’

c. verb carries main activity sense
   gîrê kûmùnû ‘blink’ (gîrê ‘eyes’)
   káⁿ lûgô ‘rinse out one’s mouth’ (káⁿ ‘mouth’)
   dî: in-î: ‘bathe, take a bath’ (dî: ‘water’)

11.1.5.2 Formal relationships between cognate nominal and verb

The collocations in this section are between a verb and a cognate nominal that functions as default direct object. In some cases the verb seems to be lexically primary and the cognate nominal adds little to the meaning. In other cases the noun has an independent meaning and the verb appears to be parasitic on it.

As an example, consider the data in (308). The collocation with cognate nominal in (308a) is the common expression for the act by which a farmer turns over a little earth with a slash of the pick-hoe (French pioche), after which a second person (often a child or woman) drops seeds into the disturbed earth and tamps it down with his/her feet. The pick-hoe slashing is the central action in planting seeds, and the phrase in (308a) is the loose translation of ‘plant, sow’ (French semer). There are, however, some more specialized planting techniques that are described by noncognate collocations (308b).

(308) a. lê lë: ‘slash earth in field to sow’

   b. lêⁿ-lîgîjî lë: ‘make slashes irregularly (not in rows)’
      [bînîgî bè] lë: ‘sow (seeds) in a pit with manure’
      lêⁿ-lônrî lë: ‘oversow (seeds) widely’

The collocations in (308) involve underived nouns and verbs of closely similar segmental shapes, generally differing (if at all) only in tones and/or (for nonmonosyllables) in final vowel (even after factoring out mediopassive -i: on some verbs). These differences are
partially ascribable to the very strict constraints on lexical tones and on vocalism that apply to verb stems but not to nouns. For example, initial voiced obstruents force an /LH/ melody on verbs but not on nouns, and nonmonosyllabic verbs have tight restrictions on vowel sequences.

However, there are also a number of cases where the noun has one of the shapes CV, CVČ with final sonorant, or CVČú, which are segmentally and tonally identical to the corresponding verbal noun with suffix -ú or (monosyllabic) -Ø (§4.2.4, above). On the other hand, there are also many cognate nominals that have the segmental form of a verb noun,

(309) Verbs and simple cognate nominals

a. verb and noun monosyllabic
   noun CV with short vowel (verbal noun?)
   kɔ̃ kɔ̃: ‘weep’
   noun CV with short vowel
   mɔ̃ mɔ̃: ‘laugh’
   noun with long vowel
   bɛ́: bɛ́: ‘defecate’
   gɛ́: gɛ́: ‘commit theft’
   gɔ́: gɔ́: ‘dance a dance’
   jɪ́: jɪ́: ‘fart’
   dɔ́: dɔ́: ‘make an insult’
   noun with long vowel, vowel-quality shift
   jɛ́: jɛ́: ‘eat meal’

b. verb bisyllabic, noun monosyllabic
   noun CV (divergent in vocalism from verbal noun)
   sɔ̀ sɔwɔ̀ ‘give an injection’
   noun CV, verb CVČv with medial {y r r’}
   jà jày-jà: ‘have a fight’
   sà̀ sàr”à ‘pray’
   tì’ tìr”ì ‘go get firewood’
   bɔ̀ bɔr”ɔ ‘convoke, send out a summons’
   noun CVČ with final sonorant (verbal noun?)
   bɛ̀ bɛ̀ ‘go swimming’
   noun CVČ with final sonorant
   jèw jèwè ‘utter a curse’ (cf. sà” jèwè ‘take an oath’)
   mɔ́n mɔ́mɔ́ ‘carry out second round of weeding’
   gɛ́t gɛ́tè ‘beg, do pleading’

c. verb and noun bisyllabic
   CvČv with noun CVČú (verbal noun?)
   dàbú dàbà ‘tell fortunes’
   mûnjú mûnɔ́ ‘tie a knot’
   jàtú jàtɔ́ ‘do a calculation’
   gɛrú gɛrè ‘do the harvest’
   nɔ̀ nɔ́nɔ́ ‘copulate’
   bàdú bàdà ‘hold a meeting’
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jàmú jàmá</td>
<td>‘betray, break a promise’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tòñú tòñì</td>
<td>‘do writing’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imú im-ì:</td>
<td>‘lie down, go to bed’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CvCv with noun CvCú**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>èná ènè</td>
<td>‘tell a story’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nèŋú nèŋé</td>
<td>‘squeeze out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jàŋú jàŋá</td>
<td>‘engage in studies’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tògú tògó</td>
<td>‘have a chat’, cf. dà:ɡà-tògú tògó ‘have a night-chat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sègú sègé</td>
<td>‘pay dues, ante’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nùŋú nùŋó</td>
<td>‘sing a song’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tèrù tèrè</td>
<td>‘clear (a field, with an axe)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jògú jògá</td>
<td>‘(bird) eat by pecking’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàrú wàrá</td>
<td>‘do farm work’ (cf. wòrú ‘field’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bògú bògó</td>
<td>‘(dog) bark’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jàŋú jàŋá</td>
<td>‘engage in studies’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tògú tògó</td>
<td>‘have a chat’, cf. dà:ɡà-tògú tògó ‘have a night-chat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sègú sègé</td>
<td>‘pay dues, ante’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nùŋú nùŋó</td>
<td>‘sing a song’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tèrù tèrè</td>
<td>‘clear (a field, with an axe)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jògú jògá</td>
<td>‘(bird) eat by pecking’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wàrú wàrá</td>
<td>‘do farm work’ (cf. wòrú ‘field’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bògú bògó</td>
<td>‘(dog) bark’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CvCv with noun CvCi**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kìrí kìr-ì:</td>
<td>‘take a jump’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìrí ìrè</td>
<td>‘stutter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iĳì iĳé</td>
<td>‘(quadruped) buck’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jìŋjì jìŋé</td>
<td>‘take sides, support one side’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jìŋjì jìŋé</td>
<td>‘emit an odor’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìnjé ìnjé</td>
<td>‘breathe’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bírì bìrì</td>
<td>‘do work’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sìŋè sìŋé</td>
<td>‘make noise’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pàr<em>è pàr</em>ì</td>
<td>‘tell a riddle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sìjé Sìjé</td>
<td>‘draw lines’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gùrò Gùrò</td>
<td>‘vomit’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sùrò Sùrò</td>
<td>‘make a heap’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kèrè Kèn-ì:</td>
<td>[!] ‘make a heap’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tùn* Tùn*</td>
<td>‘compete’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dùw* Dùw-ì:</td>
<td>‘bear a burden, take responsibility for’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dùw* Dùw*</td>
<td>‘(blacksmith) do forging’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sùw* Sùw*</td>
<td>‘(skin of dates) become wrinkled’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dùgò Dùgò</td>
<td>‘cast spells’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lùgò Lùgò</td>
<td>‘count (numbers)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tàgà Tàg-ì:</td>
<td>‘put on shoes’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CvCv with noun ending in nonhigh vowel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tìŋè Tìŋé</td>
<td>‘speak’, cf. [tìŋéL báŋú] Tìŋé ‘speak secret words’, tìŋéL - kìrù tìŋé ‘tell a joke’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bìrè Bìrè</td>
<td>‘do work’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sìŋè Sìŋé</td>
<td>‘make noise’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pàr<em>è Pàr</em>ì</td>
<td>‘tell a riddle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sìjé Sìjé</td>
<td>‘draw lines’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gùrò Gùrò</td>
<td>‘vomit’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sùrò Sùrò</td>
<td>‘make a heap’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kèrè Kèn-ì:</td>
<td>[!] ‘make a heap’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tùn* Tùn*</td>
<td>‘compete’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dùw* Dùw-ì:</td>
<td>‘bear a burden, take responsibility for’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dùw* Dùw*</td>
<td>‘(blacksmith) do forging’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sùw* Sùw*</td>
<td>‘(skin of dates) become wrinkled’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dùgò Dùgò</td>
<td>‘cast spells’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lùgò Lùgò</td>
<td>‘count (numbers)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tàgà Tàg-ì:</td>
<td>‘put on shoes’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CvCv with noun ending in mid-height nasalized vowel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wìrèn Wìrì</td>
<td>‘give out a whistle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sìjèn Sìjè</td>
<td>‘blow a horn (or a whistle)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Cv: Cv with noun Cv:Cú**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wà:jú Wà:jú</td>
<td>‘preach, give a sermon’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jà:ɡú Jà:ɡú</td>
<td>‘do business’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gà:nú Gà:nú</td>
<td>‘pester’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gè:rú Gè:rí</td>
<td>‘whisper’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A few of the forms in (309) above have additional irregularities, flagged by “[!]” after the collocation. An irregular shift between [+ATR] and [-ATR] is found in só sówɔ́ ‘give an injection’ (compare sɔ́wɔ́-∅, regular verbal noun of sɔ́wɔ́). An irregular consonantal shift occurs in kɛ̀rɛ̀ kɛ́n-i: ‘have fun’.

In a significant number of further cognate collocations, the noun and verb differ morphologically. In tígɛ́ tígɛ́ (griot) call out the names of ancestors’, the verb probably has (or originally had) a derivational suffix -rv (§9.1, §9.3.1). In most cases, however, the verb is morphologically simple while the noun is morphologically complex in one of the following ways: a) it begins with an arguably segmentable atég-N- morpheme of unclear function (§4.1.7); b) it has an initial reduplication (§4.1.4); or c) the noun is compound (or is a noun-adjective combination) and the verb is cognate to only one of the stems (usually the final). The data in (310) are organized around these morphological categories.

(310) Verbs and morphologically complex cognate nominals

a. noun with initial à- or àN-
noun à(N)CvCú
    àn-dàŋù dàŋá ‘fry large soft millet cakes’
    à-téŋú téŋé ‘stand on tiptoes’
    à-màmú màmá ‘bite one’s lower lip’

b. noun with apparent initial Cv- reduplication
    pɔ̀-pɔ́: pɔ́: ‘accuse’

c. only the final element of compound noun is cognate to the verb
    compound final -Cv
    kɛ̀rɛ̀-kà kà: ‘harvest millet (after the main harvest)’
    númɔ̀-dà dá: ‘signal to stop’
    compound final -Cv:
    kùⁿ-ɔ́: ɔ́: ‘see (foretell) the future’
The relationship in form and sense between the verb and the cognate nominal often makes the latter redundant, essentially a pro-forma or default object, as in ‘dance a dance’. In cases like ‘dance’, one can also have more specific objects (‘dance a jig’), whereas with ‘whistle (=give out) a whistle’ or ‘dream (=have) a dream’ there may be no such alternatives.

11.1.5.3 Grammatical status of cognate nominal

The relationship in form and sense between the verb and the cognate nominal often makes the latter redundant, essentially a pro-forma or default object, as in ‘dance a dance’. In cases like ‘dance’, one can also have more specific objects (‘dance a jig’), whereas with ‘whistle (=give out) a whistle’ or ‘dream (=have) a dream’ there may be no such alternatives.
In any event, the cognate nominal can function syntactically as a true object NP, and it can be modified. The collocations vary as to the propensity of the nominal to be directly modified by an adjective, numeral, or demonstrative. An example that only occasionally shows NP-internal modification is gúrɔ́ gúrɔ́ ‘vomit (=emit) vomit’. The adverb ‘a lot’ in (311a) and the adverbial phrase ‘three times’ in (311b) do not form part of the NP with gúrɔ́, although it would have been syntactically possible to say ‘… vomited [much vomit]’ or ‘… emitted [three vomits]’. However, gúrɔ́ basically means ‘vomit(n)’, and it can be modified adjectivally, e.g. with ‘red (brown)’ in (311c).

(311) a. wó gúrɔ́ gàr-á→ Lgùr-è
3SgSbj vomit(n) a.lot Lvomit-Pfv
‘He/She vomited a lot.’

b. wó [kúwɔ́ tǎ:n] gúrɔ́ Lgùr-è
3SgSbj [time three] vomit(n) Lvomit-Pfv
‘He/She vomited three times.’

c. wó [gùrɔ́L bá’n] Lgùr-è
3SgSbj [vomit(n)L red] Lvomit-Pfv
‘He/She vomited red (or brown) vomit.’

On the other hand, in a collocation like sìjé sìjé ‘draw lines’, the nominal denotes a bounded unit and therefore lends itself to quantification as well as to other forms of modification (312).

(312) a. wó [sìjé tǎ:n] Lsìj-è
3SgSbj [line three] Ldraw-Pfv
‘He/She drew three lines.’

b. wó [sìjéL gùrú] Lsìj-è
3SgSbj [lineL long] Ldraw-Pfv
‘He/She drew a long line.’

11.2 ‘Be’, ‘become’, and other statives

11.2.1 ‘It is’ clitics

11.2.1.1 Positive ‘it is’ (= y, = i; = ; = Ø)

The ‘it is’ clitic may be added to a pronoun or any other NP, singular or plural, to create an identificational predicate. Its function is to identify a referent that is physically present, or that has been introduced into the discourse. This referent may appear as a topicalized NP just before the ‘it is’ clause, but it is often omitted by virtue of being mutually understood.

The segmental form of the clitic is = y after a vowel in most cases, and = i; after a consonant except y. The = y variant can be nasalized after a nasal syllable. The clitic is segmentally zero ( = Ø) after y, as in X sático = Ø ‘it is X only’. The semivowel in the first variant is sometimes barely audible or is dropped entirely, reflecting the general tendency of TgK to delete word-final semivowels. It is regularly heard as simple vowel lengthening after front mid-height vowel in a few combinations: 1Pl pronoun émè = ‘it is us’, bè = with
plural marker. With rare exceptions, the consonant-final cases are human nouns. For an extra -n suffix, see (315) at the end of this section.

The tones are as follows for an unpossessed vowel-final stem. A short-voweled <LH>-toned monosyllabic (CV) is raised to H-tone, hence CV = y (313b). An /H/-toned nonmonosyllabic shifts to {HL}, realized on a trisyllabic as H.H.L, i.e. with only the final syllable L-toned, hence CVCV = ĕ (313c). There no tonal change for a bimoraic or longer /LH/ stem (L.H, L.L.H, or long-voweled monosyllabic <LH>), hence CV(CV)CV = y and so forth. A noun or NP already ending in an L-toned syllable (which can be a NP with plural bè, an /HL/-toned proper noun, or a heavy possessed noun) likewise undergoes no change, hence …CV = ĕ (313a).

The clitic itself is partially atonal, often getting its tone by spreading from that of the syllable it cliticizes to. However, it is L-toned after a long H-toned vowel (313d). It is also L-toned when directly added to any possessed noun stem. The regular possessor-controlled overlays are {H} for prosodically light stems and {HL} for heavy stems, so the L-tone on the enclitic is noticeable only after the {H}-toned type (§6.2.1.1). If X represents the prenominal possessor, monosyllabic possessed [X CV] and [X CV:] have ‘it is’ forms [X CV] = y and [X CV:] = ĕ, respectively. Bimoraic bisyllabic possessed [X CVCV] has an ‘it is’ form [X CVCV] = ĕ, whose entire second syllable is L-toned (313e).

(313) ‘It is’ clitic after vowel-final stems and NPs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun or NP</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>‘it is …’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. no tone change</td>
<td>noun or NP with final L-toned syllable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.fname</td>
<td>(woman’s name)</td>
<td>fántà = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bè</td>
<td>‘women’</td>
<td>jn bè = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ü İH tògùrù</td>
<td>‘your-Sg basket’</td>
<td>ü İH tògùrù = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/LH/-toned stem, bimoraic or longer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gɔ̌:</td>
<td>‘granary’</td>
<td>gɔ̌: = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ər na:</td>
<td>‘male’</td>
<td>ər na: = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(differs tonally from ər na:–ȳ n ‘boy’, (97a) in §5.1.7)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tòwó</td>
<td>‘stone’</td>
<td>tòwó = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tògùrù</td>
<td>‘basket’</td>
<td>tògùrù = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. CV to CV = ĕ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɲè</td>
<td>‘female’</td>
<td>ɲè = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà</td>
<td>‘person’</td>
<td>nà = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jà</td>
<td>‘flexible branch’</td>
<td>jà = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mɔ́</td>
<td>‘gum (resin)’</td>
<td>mɔ́ = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. /H/-toned nonmonosyllabic to {HL} = ĕ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>túnjùr na:</td>
<td>‘stool’</td>
<td>túnjùr na: = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lú:r na:</td>
<td>‘snake’</td>
<td>lú:r na: = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. final H-toned long vowel (…CV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ǐ:n</td>
<td>‘child’</td>
<td>ǐ:n = ĕ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tò-tò:</td>
<td>‘tin can’</td>
<td>tò-tò: = ĕ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
e. {H}-toned possessed nouns (\(X^H\text{Cv}, X^H\text{Cv}^\cdot; X^H\text{CvCv}\))
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ú} ^H\text{ká}^n & \quad \text{‘your-Sg mouth’} \quad [\text{ú} ^H\text{ká}^n] = \acute{\text{y}}^n \\
\text{ú} ^H\text{bē}: & \quad \text{‘your-Sg excrement’} \quad [\text{ú} ^H\text{bē}:] = \acute{\text{y}} \\
\text{ú} ^H\text{gū}^n\text{í} & \quad \text{‘your-Sg house’} \quad [\text{ú} ^H\text{gū}^n\text{í}] = \acute{\text{y}}^n
\end{align*}
\]

The clitic is common with pronouns. \(\text{kó} = \acute{\text{y}}\) ‘it is’ is used like English that’s it, either as an identification with a discourse-definite object, or to mark the end of a time-limited activity or situation.

The semivowel \(\text{y}\) is audible after all 2nd and 3rd person pronouns. After 1Pl \(\text{émē}\) there is no \(\text{y}\), just lengthening of the final vowel to \(\text{émē} = \grave{\text{y}}\) (314c). 3Pl pronoun \(\text{bē}\) and the plural particle \(\text{bē}\) in nonpronominal NPs likewise just lengthen their final vowel. The 1Sg form is phonetic \([\text{mi}]:\), which could be marked up as \(\text{mī} = \acute{\text{y}}^n\), as \(\text{mī} = \acute{\text{y}}\), or as \(\text{mī}:\), see discussion following (54) in §4.3.1 and discussion of (317c) below. The \(\text{y}\) is clear after \(\text{u}\) in the 2Sg pronoun (314a), but nonmonosyllabic nouns ending in \(\text{Cu}\) often combine with \(=\text{y}\) as monophthongized \(\text{Ci} = \grave{\text{y}}\) (indistinguishable from \(\text{Ci} = \grave{\text{y}}\)).

(314) a. \(\text{ú} = \acute{\text{y}}\)
2Sg=it.is
‘It’s you-Sg.’

b. \(\text{wó} = \acute{\text{y}}\)
3Sg=it.is
‘It’s him/her.’

c. \(\text{émē} = \grave{\text{y}}\)
1Pl=it.is
‘It’s us.’

d. \(\text{mī} = \acute{\text{y}}^n\)
(alternatively transcribable as \(\text{mī} = \acute{\text{y}}\) or \(\text{mī}:\))
1Sg=it.is
‘It’s me.’

Nonhuman \(\text{kó} = \acute{\text{y}}\) ‘it’s it’ is commonly used like English that’s it!, for example confirming the correctness of an interlocutor’s pronunciation.

If the predicate is a human singular noun other than a personal name like ‘Fanta’ (313a), a kin term, or the noun \(\text{nā}\) ‘person’, a human singular suffix \(-n\) is often but not always present before the clitic. This suffix optionally appears after 1Sg possessor \(\text{mā}\) before the clitic. When \(-n\) is present, the ‘it is’ clitic takes its postconsonantal form \(=\text{i}\); whose tones are similar to those for postvocalic \(=\text{y}\) (H-tone after a single H-toned syllable, L-tone after an L-tone or after two H-toned syllables). Historically, the suffix \(-n\) is a vestige of the once general human singular suffix \(*-\text{n(u)}\). Its synchronic status is obscure, and one might argue that the \(\text{n}\) is now part of an allomorph of the clitic. Or one might write \(-\text{ni} = \grave{\text{y}}\), since the segmentation is not transparent.

(315) a. \(\text{jémē} -\text{n} = \text{i}:\)
blacksmith-HumSg=it.is
‘It’s (or: He/She is) a blacksmith.’ (\(\text{jémē}\)

237
b. $gɔ̀g-\text{Hum} n=î:\n$ dance(n)$-\text{Hum} n=dance.Agent-HumSg=it.is$

‘It’s (or: He/She is) a dancer.’

c. $sùg: \text{nà}=î:\text{mà}=\text{ym}:
$ younger.sib $1\text{SgPoss}(-\text{HumSg})=it.is$

‘It’s (or: He/She is) my younger same-sex sibling.’

d. $f-\text{n}=î:\text{child-HumSg}=it.is$

‘It’s (or: He/She is) a child.’

e. $nè\text{dÈgé}=î:\text{short-HumSg}=it.is$

‘It’s (or: He/She is) a short woman.’

f. $nò\text{à}sà:rå=î:\text{Prox white.person-HumSg}=it.is$

‘This is a white person’

For the tonal adjustment in $dɔ̀gɔ̃-n=î:\ ‘(it’s) a Dogon’$, from $dɔ̀gɔ̃-\text{Pl} ‘\text{Dogon (person)}’, see §3.7.4.5.

Singular $-n$ can be added to some but not all kin terms (most of which, in Jamsay, do not allow number-marking suffixes except in special contexts). ‘Mother’ and ‘father’ terms normally do not occur with $-n$.

\[(316) [Ú \text{mother}]=\text{ym} n=î:\text{mother}=\text{it.is}\]

‘It’s (or: He/She is) your-Sg mother.’

NPs ending in $sà:y ‘\text{only}’ have no audible ‘it is’ clitic, but a phonologically zero ‘it is’ is presumably present in examples like (317a). For any pronoun other than $1\text{Sg}$, the ‘it is only you/us/him/her/them’ form has no ‘it is’ clitic on the pronoun, so it must be on the ‘only’ word, as in (317b). However, the $1\text{Sg}$ form is phonetic $[mì:]$ with long vowel even in this construction (317c), which suggests that this may now be an unsegmentable form.

\[(317) a. \text{dɔ̀gɔ̃} bè \text{sà:y}=\varnothing \text{Dogon Pl only}=\text{it.is}\]

‘It’s only the Dogon-Pl.’

b. $ú \text{sà:y}=\varnothing \text{2Sg only}=\text{it.is}$

‘It’s only you-Sg.’

c. $mì=\text{ym} \text{sà:y}=\varnothing \text{1Sg}=\text{it.is only}=\text{it.is}$

‘It’s only me.’
The ‘it is’ predicate is not suffixally conjugated (to mark the “subject” that is being identified). A “subject” NP or pronoun may appear clause-initially. It is best considered to be a topical NP.

(318)  a.  índ ñántà = ñ
      1Sg  Fanta= it.is
      ‘I am Fanta.’

      b.  sè:dú  dù-díng⁴-n = i:
          Seydou  sorceror-Sg= it.is
          ‘Seydou is a sorceror.’

11.2.1.2  ‘It is not’ ( = y = lò, = i: = lò)

By adding negative = lò to the positive ‘it is’ clitic, we get the negative counterpart.

(319)  a.  sè:dú = y = lò
      Saydu= it.is= Neg
      ‘It isn’t Seydou.’

      c.  ñántà = y = lò
          Fanta= it.is= Neg
          ‘It isn’t Fanta.’

      c.  émé = := lò
          1Pl= it.is= Neg
          ‘It isn’t us.’

      d.  nɔ́:  tūwɔ́ = y = lò
          ProxSg  stone= it.is= Neg
          ‘This isn’t a stone.’

      e.  [nɔ́:  nà]  [nè  bè] = := lò
          [Prox  Pl]  [woman  Pl]= it.is= Neg
          ‘These are not women.’

The postconsonantal allomorph = i: of the ‘it is’ clitic appears with H- rather than L-tone in this combination.

(320)  gɔ́:⁵ñ  gɔ́:ñ = i: = lò
dance¹⁻H-dance.Agent-Sg= it.is= Neg
      ‘It isn’t (or: He/She is not) a dancer.’

To negate an NP ending in ‘only’ (sày), the combination sày lò is used.

(321)  [dɔ́gɔ́  bè  sày] = lò
dog-Pl  only= it.is= Neg
      ‘It isn’t only the Dogon-Pl.’
For *lò mà* as rhetorical tag question (*n’est-ce pas*?), see §13.2.1.2.

11.2.1.3 ‘It is’ clitic in complement of ‘become’ and ‘transform’

The verb *tāŋá* ‘become, turn into’ and its causative *tánū-gù* ‘transform, convert’ take complements consisting of a NP plus the ‘it is’ clitic (§11.2.5.2).

(322) a. [sáma kà:*] pèré nè: ná = ýⁿ tāŋ-è
[S also] other now person=it.is become-Pfv
‘Sama too became a (full-grown) person.’ (2011.1b.02)

b. ná = ýⁿ tán-g-è: mà
person=it.is become-Caus-and.SS and.then
‘(God) made them into people (=adults).’ (2011.1b.04)

c. dùwɔ́ sāⁿ ná = ýⁿ tán-g-è: mà
vulture ReflObj person=it.is become-Caus-and.SS and.then
‘Vulture turned itself into a human.’ (2011.1b.02)

11.2.2 Existential and locative quasi-verbs and particles

11.2.2.1 Existential (*ýé ~ ýɔ*)

A particle *ýé* (for assimilated variant *ýɔ*, see below) is used with the ‘have’ quasi-verb and other statives, including derived statives. It is disallowed in negative clauses (323b), in relative clauses (§14.1.9.6), after a focalized constituent (§13.1), and with reduplicated forms of verbs such as derived statives (§10.4).

With ‘have’ it is obligatory in positive main clauses without a focalized constituent (323a). Its absence from negative clauses is illustrated in (323b).

(323) a. íⁿ [girʰí tárú] ýé sà
1SgSbj [house one] Exist have
‘I have a house.’

b. íⁿ girʰí sə:-rã
1SgSbj house have-Neg
‘I don’t have a/any house.’

*yɔ* with (irregular) vocalic assimilation occurs before locational-existential ‘be’ quasi-verbs (with human *wɔ* or nonhuman *kɔ*, which are L-toned in this combination). It is required in an unfocalized positive sentence if no specific locational is given. If there is a locational, *yɔ* is optional, and when present it tends to emphasize existence (‘there is a bird in the house’) rather than simple localization (‘the bird is in the house’). For more on ‘be’ quasi-verbs, see the following section.

(324) a. ú ní yɔ wɔ
2SgSbj here Exist be.HumSgSbj
‘You-Sg are here.’
b. Ṽí ní wɔː-rɔ́
   2SgSbj here be.HumSgSbj-Neg
   ‘You-Sg are not here.’

In addition to defective stative quasi-verbs like sà ‘have’ and sò ‘be in’, yǘ is also common with unreduplicated variants of positive statives derived from regular verbs (§10.4).

(325) nɛ́:
   [sǎⁿ ¹kè] yé ¹tɔ́rɔ́
now [Refl ¹Top] Exist ¹perch.Stat
   ‘Now as for him(-self), (he) was (still) perched (on the tree)’ (2011.1b.02)

The reduplicated variants of these statives omit yé.

Existential yé is also attested in texts twice with progressive verbs (suffix -tànà, plural-subject -tèngè). The example in (326a) was part of the response to a question about which techniques for planting fonio (grain) are practiced in Togo country. The context for (326b) has more of a presentative (‘here’s …’) flavor.

(326) a. [kó bìn] [lè lè:-jù kà:] yé bì-tèngè
   [Nonh in] [planting plant-lpfv also] Exist do-Prog.Plsbj
   ‘They also (in fact) practice planting (fonio seeds) on that (disturbed earth surface).’ (2011.1a.01) (bìr ‘do’)

b. iⁿtàyⁿ ïg-ɛ́:
   my.friend stand-MP.Imptr Quot (repeats)
   [sɔ́:tànši] [tɔ́ tɔ́] sɔ́: yé pò-tànà
   [thing one] [here around] thing Exist say-Prog
   ‘(He said:) “My friend, stand (=wait)! Something is saying something over here.”’ (2011.1b)

A presentative context is also apparent in (327), with a regular imperfective verb, which is uttered (in a tale) as a warning of impending danger.

(327) [nè-网约 wà] [[[kó bɔ́rɔ́] ¹nù] wà]
   [girl QuotSbj] [[[Nonh under] ¹go.in.Imptr] Quot]
   [raider Exist come-lpfv beware]
   ‘She (=step-mother) told the girl, “go in (=hide) under it (=pile of stalks) quickly, (since) raiders are coming!”’ (2011.1b.01)

This highly grammaticalized existential particle is probably related historically to yé (§4.4.2.1), a discourse-definite ‘there’ adverb that typically occurs in immediate preverbal position. It is compatible with any verb, active or stative, positive or negative. It refers back to a location established in prior discourse. The falling tone of yé ‘there’ might even explain (historically) why the quasi-verbs are L-toned after existential yǘ. However, if the existential particle evolved out of a ‘there’ adverb, it did so long ago, since it occurs as a specialized existential particle with statives like ‘be’ and ‘have’ in many Dogon languages. In TgK, care must be taken to distinguish the two in texts. In (328), the two actually co-occur, with the ‘there’ adverb preceding the existential particle.
Locational(-existential) copula (wɔ̀, kɔ̀, negative wɔ̀ːrɔ́, kɔ̀ːrɔ́)

As in Jamsay and Yorno So, the locational (and existential) ‘be (somewhere)’ predicate distinguishes human from nonhuman forms. Both are phonologically related to pronouns (human 3Sg wɔ̀, human 3Pl bɛ́, nonhuman kɔ̀). These forms can be used with or without an explicit locational expression. The human/nonhuman opposition is generally maintained in locational senses (‘be present’, ‘be here’), but the nonhuman form is generalized in existential contexts (‘there exists’, ‘there is none’). These copulas are also used as auxiliaries to make adjectives predicative (§11.4.1.1).

The forms are summarized in (329). Those in the ‘be present’ column include existential yɔ́ ~ yɛ́, which is used as a default complement in unfocalized positive utterances. Here the copula is L-toned, even e.g. before dɛ̀ ‘if’ (yɔ́ wɔ̀ dɛ̀ ‘if he/she is present’). The vowel of the existential particle assimilates to the copula in the front/back feature (but not in ATR). The central ‘be at X’ column shows forms used after a marked locational expression (e.g. a postpositional phrase). Here the tone is falling, in careful speech styles. In allegro speech, the copula is often heard with low pitch. The second column from the right shows forms used after expressive adverbials, which again normally have a falling tone, reflecting the syntactic relationship between expressive adverbials and locational expressions. However, the copula becomes H-toned in relative clauses (rightmost column). It also becomes H-toned after an /L/-toned expressive adverbial, see (213f) in §8.4.6.1 and (332b) in §11.2.2.2.

(329) Locational-existential copulas

| Human Sg | yɔ́ wɔ̀ | X wɔ́ | wɔ́ |
| Human Pl | yɛ́ wɛ́ | X wɛ́ | wɛ́ |
| Nonhuman | yɔ́ kɔ̀ | X kɔ́ | kɔ́ |

Examples with existential yɔ́ ~ yɛ́ are in (330).

(330)

a. sè:dú yɔ́ wɔ̀
Seydou Exist be.HumSgSbj
‘Seydou is present.’

d. pɛ́jú yɔ́ kɔ̀
sheep Exist be.NonhSbj
‘(A) sheep is present.’

c. rɛ́ yɔ́ kɔ̀
fire Exist be.NonhSbj
‘(A) fire is present.’
Either the ‘be present’ or the shorter ‘be (somewhere)’ forms are also used after explicit locationals. The ‘be present’ forms tend to have an existential flavor, establishing the existence of a discourse referent, as in ‘there is some money in the village’ as opposed to ‘the money is in the village’ (which specifies the location of an already understood referent). Examples are in (331a-c). Some common nouns denoting locations like gir‘i’ ‘house’ (= ‘at home’) and ‘village’ (‘in the village, in town’) may appear without explicit determiners or postpositions.

For the use of these copulas in adjectival predicates, see §11.4.1.1-2 below.

Copulas with expressive adverbials, most of which have no other way to become predicates, are in (332). A few EAs are /L/-toned, see (213f) and (216c), and these require H-toned kɔ̀ (332b) by a minor Tone Polarization process (§3.7.3.4).

Negative counterparts are in (333). There is no morphological distinction between the forms used in the general sense ‘be absent, not exist’ and those used in ‘not be (in a place)’ with a locational, or ‘not be’ with an adverbial. This is because existential yɛ́ ~ yɛ́ is incompatible with negation. One can detect a negative element -rv with variable vowel (due to assimilation), cf. sà:-rà ‘not have’.
‘Be absent’, ‘not be (somewhere)’

Human Sg     \( wò\text{-}rò \)
Human Pl      \( wè\text{-}rè \)
Nonhuman     \( kò\text{-}rò \)

Further examples of negative copulas are in (334).

(334) a.  \( pì\)  \( kò\text{-}rò \)
    fire    be.NonhSbj-Neg
    ‘Fire is absent.’ = ‘There is no fire.’

b.  \( í^n \), \( ìná \), \( wò\text{-}rò \)
    1SgSbj village be.HumSgSbj-Neg
    ‘I am not in the village (= in town).’

c.  \( [nè \, bè] \), \( wè\text{-}rè \)
    [woman Pl] be.HumPlSbj-Neg
    ‘(The) women are absent (= not here).’ = ‘There are no women.’

Although \( wò \) and \( kò \) are stative quasi-verbs, and normally do not take aspectual marking, they can combine with progressive -tàŋà when they are used to make an expressive adverbial conjugatable (335). Before -tàŋà the copula is H-toned.

(335) \( ìrò\text{-}y^n \), \( kèw^n\rightarrow wò\text{-}tàŋà \)
    man-child silent be.HumSgSbj-Prog
    ‘The young man was silent.’ (2011.1b.03)

11.2.2.3 Inchoative ‘become’ (\( kè\), \( wè\)) related to ‘be (somewhere)’ quasi-verbs

The (stative) locational-existential copulas (\( kò\), \( wò\), \( wè\)) described above do not combine with aspectually marked inflectional categories and have no imperative or hortative.

There are, however, alternative stems, nonhuman \( kè\) and human \( wè\), that are conjugated like ordinary active verbs. Representative forms, all quite regular, are in (336). There are also causative derivatives, e.g. \( kè\text{-}mè \) ‘cause (sth) to become (adverbial)’.

(336) Forms of active copulas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>HumSg</th>
<th>HumPl</th>
<th>NonhSg</th>
<th>NonhPl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perfective</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}è )</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}è\text{-}sè^n )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}è )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}è\text{-}sè^n )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfective negative</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}lì )</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}lì )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}lì )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}lì )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}jú )</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}jú )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}jú )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}jú )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative negative</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}rò )</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}rè )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}rò )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}rè )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative</td>
<td>( wè )</td>
<td>( wè\text{-}y )</td>
<td>( kè )</td>
<td>( kè\text{-}y )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The active copula forms are used to “conjugate” expressive adverbials, which have no other way to combine with AMN inflections. Most instances of active copulas in my data involve adverbials.
(337a) shows the (static) copula, and (337b) an aspectually marked active (i.e. dynamic) copula. The active copula is glossed ‘become’ in interlines.

(337) a.  \textit{timé} gègi→ k\textsubscript{3} \\
    tree tilted \textit{be.NonhSbj} \\
    ‘The tree is tilted.’

    b.  \textit{timé} gègi→ kè:jú \\
    tree tilted \textit{become.Nonh-Lpfv} \\
    ‘The tree will tilt (become tilted).’

Active copulas can also be used with locational expressions (338b), which however are much more common with stative copulas (338a)

(338) a.  wò gîrⁿ í wò \\
    3SgSbj house exist \textit{be.HumSbj} \\
    ‘He/She is at home.’

    b.  wò gîrⁿ í wé:jú \\
    3SgSbj house \textit{become.HumSbj-Lpfv} \\
    ‘He/She will be at home (e.g. tomorrow).’

    ‘He/She should be (=probably is) at home.’

\textit{ké}: and \textit{wé}: have no precise cognates in other Dogon languages known to me. An intransitive verb ‘stay, remain’ with forms like \textit{bě}: (Jamsay), \textit{bē}: (Yorno So), and \textit{biyé}: (Yanda Dom) is used in several of the languages to make EAs into dynamic (nonstative) predicates. I conjecture that TgK split *\textit{bě}: or *\textit{bē}: into human \textit{wé}: and nonhuman \textit{ké}: on the model of copulas \textit{wō} and \textit{kō}:, which already function as (stative) auxiliaries with EAs in many Dogon languages. TgK does use \textit{bē}: as an auxiliary, but in factitive (i.e. causative) sense with EAs derived from adjectives (§11.4.4).

11.2.2.4 Perfective copulas (\textit{kí-i}, \textit{wí-i}) ‘be’

The nonhuman active copula \textit{ké}: can be used as a simple predicate without an adverbial to mean ‘(something) happen, take place’. In this sense, the perfective form \textit{ké-é} given above is replaced by \textit{kí-i} ‘it happened, it took place’. There is no change in other inflectional categories, as shown by perfective negative \textit{ké-í} ‘it didn’t happen’ and imperfective \textit{ké-jú} ‘it does/will happen’.

\textit{kí-i} can also function as a nonfinal chained verb in the phrase \textit{kí-i bē-jú} ‘it is possible, it can/could happen’. Imperfective \textit{kē-jú} seems to have a dubitative modal sense (‘might happen’ or ‘might be the case’). Thus [ú kē] \textit{kē-jú} ‘it might be yours-Sg’ versus [ú kē] \textit{kí-i} ‘it’s (definitely) yours-Sg’.

The human counterpart of \textit{kí-i} is \textit{wí-i}. In (339) the sense is clearly ‘remain’.

(339) \textit{nē}: [gǐ: bínì] nā nû-\textsubscript{O} dè,  \\
    now [granary in] person go.in-Pfv if, \\
    \textit{né}: [dà:rá tɔ] nā wí-i dè, \\
    now [outside at] person \textit{be.HumSbj-Pfv} if, …
‘Now, someone goes inside the granary, now someone (else) remains outside, (and …)’ (2011.1a.16)

Compare sí-ì as a special form of sà ‘have’ (§11.5.2).

11.2.3 Positional statives (sò ‘be in’, nàŋà ‘be on’, wàwà ‘be on’)

The most important of the more specific positional statives are those in (340). The enclosed entity with sò may be dry (e.g. grain) or liquid.

(340) Positional statives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. ‘be in (container)’</td>
<td>yé sò</td>
<td>sò:-ró</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. ‘be (put) up on (horizontal surface)’</td>
<td>yé nàŋà</td>
<td>nàŋà = lá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. ‘be on (vertical surface)’</td>
<td>yé wàwà</td>
<td>wàwà = lá</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

nàŋà and wàwà, but not sò, are morphologically parallel to regular derived stative verbs (§10.4). They (therefore) also have reduplicated variants without yé, viz., nà- nàŋà and wà- wàwà, and they have {HL}-toned unreduplicated variants nàŋà and wàwà after a locational. wàwà corresponds to a regular mediopassive verb wà-î: ‘lie down on one’s belly’.

nàŋà is historically related to the archaic causative ná-î ‘put up on (wall)’, (232d) in §9.2.2. sò ‘be in’ corresponds functionally to ‘be in’ quasi-verbs in related languages that have initial t (Tomo Kan and Toro So tò, Donno So tò, Tommo So tò), but whether TgK sò is a mutation from *tò is unclear.

11.2.4 ‘Know’ and ‘want’

11.2.4.1 ‘Know’ (îⁿ wò, negative íné)

‘Know’ is a transitive predicate consisting of uninflected îⁿ (homophone of ‘child’) plus a copula: human singular wò or human plural wê. It translates French savoir and connaître. It can take an NP object, as in (341a-b). (341b) illustrates how a relative clause can be used to translate an English embedded interrogative.

(341) a. îⁿ sè:dú îⁿ wò
1SGSbj S know be.HumSGSbj
‘I know Seydou (man’s name).’

b. [nà L wó H yé] îⁿ wò
[place L 3SGSbj GO.PFV.REL] know be.HumSGSbj
‘I know the place (=I know where) he/she went.’
Prepausally, \( wɔ \) is heard with low pitch in this combination, but if another word follows in the same (prosodic) phrase the initial H-tone component is clear.

The negative counterpart is the irregular \( \text{iné} \) ‘not know’, with no copula and no plural-subject agreement.

\[(342) \quad \text{émé} \quad \text{bàmàkọ} \quad \text{iné} \]
\[1\text{PlSbj} \quad \text{B} \quad \text{not know} \]

‘We do not know (= are not familiar with) Bamako (city).’

For factive clausal complements of ‘know’ see §17.2.1, below.

A semantically similar regular verb \( jùgọ \) means ‘recognize (the identity of)’. The cognate noun \( jùgọ \) means ‘knowledge’.

11.2.4.2 ‘Want’ (\( \text{iyé} \))

In clause-final position after a NP object, the usual form of the positive ‘want’ predicate is an {L]-toned \( \text{iyé} \). When pronounced in isolation, with a pronominal object, or before polar interrogative \( mà \), fuller forms are heard: singular-subject \( \text{iyé} \), plural-subject form \( \text{iyé} \). These variants contain contracted versions of copulas \( wɔ \) and plural \( wɛ \), suggesting that the lexically basic form of the predicate is \( \text{iyé} \).

\[(343) \quad \begin{array}{lll}
\text{a.} & \text{ù} & \text{iyé} & \text{iyé} \\
\text{2SgSbj} & \text{what?} & \text{want} \\
\text{‘What do you-Sg want?’} \\
\text{b.} & \text{émé} & \text{kògọ} & \text{iyé} \\
\text{1PlSbj} & \text{chicken-egg} & \text{want} \\
\text{‘We would like some (chicken) eggs.’} \\
\text{c.} & \text{í} & \text{kó} & \text{iyé} \\
\text{1SgSbj} & \text{NonhObj} & \text{want} \\
\text{‘I want it.’} \\
\text{d.} & \text{í} & \text{ná} & \text{iyé} \\
\text{1SgSbj} & \text{Dist} & \text{want} \\
\text{‘I want that (pointing).’} \\
\end{array} \]

The negative counterpart is \( \text{iyé} = \text{lá} \) ‘not want’, optional plural-subject form \( \text{iyé} = \text{lé} \). The noun from the same word-family is \( \text{iyé} \) ‘wanting, desire’.

For clausal complements of ‘want’, see §17.3.6, below.

A semantically closely related verb is \( \text{déné} \) ‘seek, look for’ (cf. Jamsay \( \text{déné} \) ‘want’).

11.2.5 Morphologically regular verbs

11.2.5.1 ‘Remain’ (\( \text{sígé} \))

‘Remain, stay’ is \( \text{sígé} \), a regularly inflected verb. In relative clauses it is common in the sense ‘(the) remaining (ones)’. Unlike (noncognate) synonyms in other Dogon languages, ‘remain’
is not used in TgK to make expressive adverbials into dynamic predicates (‘become ADV’). See §11.2.2.3.

11.2.5.2 ‘Become’ ( táŋá), ‘transform’ ( tánú-gù)

‘X become Y’, where Y is a NP, is expressed by the verb táŋá following the relevant ‘it is’ predicate (§11.2.1.3). There is a transitive counterpart ‘Z transform/convert X into Y’ with the verb tánú-gù (§9.2.2).

\[(344) \] a. wó àªºárá-n = ³: táŋ-è ³: become-Pfv

3SgSbj white.person-HumSg=it.is ‘He/She has become a white person.’

b. íⁿ àªºárá = ý wó tán(u)-g-i ³: become-Caus-Pfv

1SgSbj white.person=it.is 3SgObj ‘I transformed him/her into a white person.’

táŋá ³: yè-Ø dè ‘if (it happens that)’ in conditional antecedent clauses, following an inflected clause (§16.1.3.1), is historically related but is grammatically specialized. ³: yè-Ø is the perfective form of ‘go’ used before dè ‘if’.

Progressive suffix -táŋá (§10.2.2.5) may or may not be related historically.

11.2.5.3 ‘Take place’ ( bɔ̀-i:)

An event (concert, hunt, holiday) can be said to ‘take place’ using the verb bɔ̀-i: (simple perfective). The -i: is the mediopassive suffix. Other inflected forms are based on /bɔ̀-i:/ without the mediopassive suffix, hence bɔ̀-jú ‘will take place’, bɔ̀-lì ‘did not take place’, and bɔ̀-rò ‘will not take place’. The morphology, only slightly irregular, is the same as that for gèr-i: ‘look’ (§10.1.3.7) and lîw-i: ~ lîy-i: ‘fear’ (§11.2.5.4, just below).

11.2.5.4 ‘Fear, be afraid’ ( lîw-i: ~ lîy-i:)

The ‘X fear Y’ (i.e. ‘X be afraid of Y’) verb has a basically regular paradigm based on stem lîwé ~ lîyé, e.g. imperfective lîwé-jú ~ lîyé-jú. However, the bare stem and the simple perfective are lîw-i:, with a variant lîy-i: that is sometimes heard as lî:. This limitation of an apparent mediopassive suffix -i: to the bare stem and simple perfective is a feature shared with gèr-i: ‘look’ (§10.1.3.7) and bɔ̀-r-i: ‘take place’ (§11.2.5.3, above).

Stative forms of this verb have not been observed. Perfective forms are used with present reference: íⁿ lîw-i: ‘I was afraid’ or ‘I am afraid (have become afraid)’.

The noun ‘fear’ is lîwé. The irregular causative ‘X scare Y, X make Y afraid’ is lî: -rè- rõ, including an apparent transitive suffix -rv- (§9.3.1) preceding the causative suffix.

\[(345) \] a. íⁿ ki-kjí lîwé-jú

1SgSbj bat fear-Pfv

‘I am afraid of bats.’
b. ú úr"iː lí-rä-mí-nú
   2SgSbj children fear-Caus-Pres
   ‘You-Sg frighten (the) children.’

For clausal complements of ‘be afraid (to VP)’, see §17.3.10.

11.3 Quotative verb

11.3.1 ‘Say’ verbs

These conjugatable verbs are often omitted in favor of quotative particle wà. This particle occurs at the end of a quoted clause, and also at the end of a subject or vocative NP; see §17.1.3-4.

11.3.1.1 póù ‘say, speak’

One common verb meaning ‘say, speak’ is póù (perfective póù-i). It is subject to rv-Deletion (§3.5.3.2) before most suffixes, e.g. imperfective pó-jú. The imperative is irregular: pò-nó ‘say!’ The -nó formative, see (281f) in §10.6.1.1, occurs elsewhere only in the imperatives of ‘give’ (s-nó) and the other ‘say’ verb (§11.3.1.2 just below).

The basic meaning of póù is ‘speak’. It can accompany a quotation (346c), but often it takes a nominal complement (‘that’, ‘anything’, ‘what?’) functioning as a pro-form resuming a quotation (346a-b), or describing a topic discussed (346d). It is also common in relative clauses (346e).

(346) a. wó [ú ni] ìŋé 1póù-i
   3SgSbj [2Sg Dat] what? 1say-Pfv
   ‘What did he/she say to you-Sg?’

b. [jò jò] 1pò-lí
   [thing none] say-PfvNeg
   ‘He/She didn’t say anything.’

c. [bé wà], sàjú dígé pó-jé:
   [3PlSbj QuotSbj], bird chase.Imprt say-lpfv
   ‘They (=people) may tell them (=children) to drive away the birds, …’
   (2011.1a.07)

d. jìr’ìŋé pó-rè:sèn, rainy.season speak-Pfv-PlSbj,
   ëmé [nüŋù-bár’á 1kè kà:] dág-à → pó-rè:sèn
   1PlSbj [dry.season 1Poss also] a.little speak-Pfv-PlSbj
   ‘(We) have spoken about the rainy season. We have also spoken a little about the dry season.’ (2011.1a.33)

e. [[áːr’ë: i 1pó-jú’íí] gi:]’
   [[previously 1SgSbj say-lpfv.Refl]] like]
   ‘as I was saying previously’ (2011.1a.06)
For perfective pórdi after a chained verb in the sense ‘immediately’, see §15.1.9.

11.3.1.2  gi ‘say’

Another ‘say’ verb is gi (perfective gi-I and plural gi-ë:-sëm, imperfective gi-jù, irregular imperative gi-nê). It is more of a pure quotative than pórdi, and it typically follows a quoted segment. In (347a), the ‘say’ verb is itself embedded in a quotation, hence the following quotative particle.

(347) a. yô: [èné bè] ììnà: = lò gi-ë: wà
   NearDist [(Logo Pl) ìimother] = not.be say-Pfv.3Pl Quot
   ‘(people said:) “they (=twins) said, that one is not their mother.”’ (2011.1b.04)

   previously 2SgSbj [decompose-Pfv if] say-PfvNeg
   ‘Didn’t you-Sg say previously (=just now), “when it has decomposed”? ’
   (2011.1a.25)

c. kò, [è:re’-l -wòrú ìjnú] gi-jì
   Nonh, [peanut-field ìis roselle] say-Plfv.PlSbj
   ‘that, (they) call (it) “peanut-field’s roselle.” ’ (2011.1a.26)

The very common same-subject anterior form is normally pronounced gé-ë(-). The more regular gi-ë: was also elicited, but it did not occur in this function in texts, perhaps because it is homophonous with the rather common plural-subject perfective form gi-ë: ‘we/you-Pl/they said’ as in (347a) above. Examples of gé-ë() are in (348).

(348) a. yô: wó gé-ë
   like that 3SgSbj say-and.SS
   [after a song] ‘When she said (= sang) like that, …’ (2011.1b.01)

b. [ì:’-n+i [ììnà:] mòr-ë-ë]
   [child.Def-1 [ìimother] be.lost-MP-and.SS go-Pfv]
   gé-ë, wó yô: say-and.SS, 3SgSbj like that
   L.n+i [bàrù jë-ë: ] tè:r’ë: mà
   child.Def-1l [outback convey-and.SS] burn-and.SS and.then
   ‘(He said:) “on the grounds that the child’s mother was lost (=died), you took the child like that into the bush and burned it, …” ’ (2011.1b.01)

This verb is also the source of purposive postpositions gé: and gi (§8.3.1.1), and of gë, gi, and g-I dë in purposive clauses (§17.6.1). Purposives involve mental activity (planning), and since thought can be treated as though spoken out loud in quotatives, the connection between purposive morphemes and ‘say’ makes sense. For example, ‘he came here for the honey’ can be rephrased as ‘saying/thinking “honey” he came here’, and ‘he sat down in order to eat’ can be rephrased as ‘saying/thinking “I/he will eat” he sat down’.

For gi-në dë ‘when, after’ (different subject), see §15.2.2.10.

For the form of the quoted material, see §17.1.
11.4 Adjectival predicates

This section treats predicates consisting of an adjective stem (in more or less the same form as in modifying function) plus a copula or stative negative clitic.

For deadjectival inchoative and factitive verbs with senses like ‘become heavy’ and ‘make (sth) heavy’, and with regular verbal inflectional morphology, see §9.5.

11.4.1 Positive adjectival predicates

11.4.1.1 Simple adjective stem plus copula

An adjective can function as a positive predicate when combined with a locational-existential copula (§11.2.2.2). The copula is optionally omitted.

(349) a. [sùŋù¹ nɔ̀jː] gùrű (kɔ) [rope¹ Prox] long (be.NonhSbj)
   ‘This rope is long.’

b. [ú¹ dèː*] ʒugu (wɔ̂) [2SgPoss elder.sib] fast (be.HumSgSbj)
   ‘Your older (same-sex) sibling is fast.’

c. [ú¹ dèː nɔ̀] bè ʒugu (wɛ) [2SgPoss elder.sib Pl] fast (be.HumPl)
   ‘Your elder (same-sex) siblings are fast.’

11.4.1.2 Adverbial extension of adjective stem (e.g. -ɪ→) plus copula

The predicative construction with overt copula favors the use of the adverbial extension -ɪ→ or allomorph thereof (interlinear gloss “-Adv”) with stems that allow it, like dògú ‘heavy’. The extension is absent when the adjective is an NP-internal modifier (350a). When the adjective is predicative, the form with the adverbial extension (350b) and that without the morpheme (350c) are grammatical. This syntactic behavior is typical of expressive adverbials (§8.4.6), as is the fact that the adverbial extension cannot be used before stative negative =lá (see the following section).

(350) a. nà¹ dògú
   person¹ heavy
   ‘a heavy person’

b. ũ¹ dòg-i→ wɔ
   1SgSbj heavy-Adv be.HumSgSbj
   ‘I am heavy.’

c. ũ¹ dògú wɔ
   1SgSbj heavy be.HumSgSbj
   [= (b)]
Some adjectives do not allow the adverbial extension. For those that do, the form taken by the extension depends on the phonological form of the adjective. It was possible to elicit adverbial forms from the adjectives listed in the left-hand column of (351) below. Several adjectives with final high vowel \{u i\}, ranging from CvCv to longer shapes, allow the adverbial extension in the form -i→, and preserve the lexical tone (351a-b). Some monosyllabic stems with final nonhigh vowel add -y→ (351c). Bisyllabic CvCv stems with final nonhigh vowel lengthen that vowel and keep the /LH/ melody (351d), but similar stems with lexical /H/ melody have an extended form with \{HL\} pattern (351e). Two stems with a-vowel have a final falling tone (351f). One C-final stem is attested with -i→ as the extension, keeping the lexical /LH/ melody but spreading it over the two syllables of the extended form (351g). All of the adverbial forms in (351) occur with a following stative or dynamic copula, positive or negative (e.g. nonhuman kɔ̀‘be’, negative kɔ̀-rɔ́ ‘not be’, dynamic kě: ‘become’). Some can also be used as nonpredicative adverbs (‘far away’ etc.).

(351) Adverbial extension of predicative adjective

a. stem ends in \(u\) or \(i\), /LH/ melody

\(dògú\) → dòg-í
\(dògú\) ‘heavy’

\( ámbú\) → ámb-í
\( ámbú\) ‘rotten’

\(újú\) → új-í
\(újú\) ‘slender’

\(yù:gú\) → yù:g-í
\(yù:gú\) ‘slow’

\(kùrúgú\) → kùrúg-í
\(kùrúgú\) ‘dense’

b. stem ends in \(u\) or \(i\), /H/ melody

\(yérú\) → yér-í
\(yérú\) ‘blue’

\(pírí\) → pír-í
\(pírí\) ‘white’

c. monosyllabic with final nonhigh vowel

\(gêⁿ\) → gêⁿ-yⁿ
\(gêⁿ\) ‘black’

\(báⁿ\) → báⁿ-yⁿ
\(báⁿ\) ‘red’

\(máⁿ\) → máⁿ-yⁿ
\(máⁿ\) ‘dry’

\(êⁿ\) → êⁿ-y
\(êⁿ\) ‘tight’

d. CvCv stem with /LH/ melody and final non-high vowel

\(gàrá\) → gàr-á
\(gàrá\) ‘big’, also adverbial ‘a lot, greatly’ (§8.4.2)

\(wàgá\) → wàg-á
\(wàgá\) ‘far, distant’

\(dègé\) → dèg-é
\(dègé\) ‘short’

\(sèré\) → sèr-é
\(sèré\) ‘diluted’

\(kìr\) → kìr-é
\(kìr\) ‘difficult’

e. CvCv with final L-toned non-high vowel in extension

\(dágá\) → dág-á
\(dágá\) ‘small’, also adverbial ‘a little’ (§8.4.2)

\(má:rⁿ\) → má:rⁿ-á
\(má:rⁿ\) ‘big’

\(wóró\) → wór-ò
\(wóró\) ‘deep’

f. others whose extension ends with falling tone

\(wá:\) → wá-á
\(wá:\) ‘wide’

\(nà:rⁿ\) → nà:rⁿ-á
\(nà:rⁿ\) ‘easy’
11.4.2  Negative adjectival and stative predicates (\(=\text{lä}, =\text{lē}\))

The stative negative clitic \(=\text{lä}\) (plural subject \(=\text{lē}\)) is added to an \{L\}-toned form of the adjective to form a negative predicate. The adverbial extension described above does not occur before the stative negative. This is because the extensions are adverbials rather than adjectives syntactically, and can only be “inflected” via copulas.

(352)  a.  \(\text{sùgú} \ gûrà^L =\text{lä}\)  
rope \(\text{long}^L=\text{StatNeg}\)  
‘The rope is not long.’

b.  \(\text{dògù}^L =\text{lä}\)  
heavy\(^L=\text{StatNeg}\)  
‘He/She/It is not heavy.’ (\#dòg-\(\to\) =\(\text{lä}\) rejected)

11.4.3  Emphatic reduplicated adjectival predicate (Rdp\(^L,\text{HL Adj}\))

An emphatic adjectival predicate (‘be very ADJ’, ‘be too ADJ’) is formed from the adjectival stem by superimposing an \{HL\} overlay, and adding an L-toned reduplicative syllable similar in form to reduplications of inflected verbs. The \{HL\} overlay suggests a connection with comparative forms of adjectives, which has the same overlay (\(\text{nà:r}^\text{a} ‘\text{easy}’, \text{comparative nà:r}^\text{a} ‘\text{easier}’\)).

(353)  \([\text{numòt bë] kè^\text{HL kəgù]} [\text{bàjú] gò:‐rò}\]  
\([\text{hand Inst] Rdp^\text{HL hard]} [\text{pull-VblN go.out‐IpfvNeg}\]  
‘(The earth) is too hard for (uprooting peanut plants) by hand. Pulling (peanut plants) doesn’t come out (=doesn’t work).’ (2011.1a.21)

The form of the reduplication is further exemplified in (354).

(354)  gloss  adjective  reduplication

a.  monosyllabic  
‘dry, hard’ \(mā\)  \(mā‐māy^n\)

b.  bisyllabic  
‘sweet’ \(ēlū\)  \(ē‐ēlū\)  
‘heavy’ \(dógū\)  \(dō‐dógū\)  
‘easy’ \(nà:r^nā\)  \(nā‐nā:r^nā\)

c.  trisyllabic  
‘bitter’ \(kάgàrā\)  \(kā‐kάgàrā\)  
‘dense’ \(kůrūgū\)  \(kū‐kůrūgū\)
A speaker rejected a (further) reduplication of already lexically reduplicated tɔ́ⁿ-tɔ́ⁿ ‘sour’ or sìⁿ-sìⁿ ‘small’. Neither has the final falling tone pattern of the reduplications in (354).

11.4.4  Factitive adjectival predicates (bè:)

Transitive verb bè:, also used elsewhere as a simple transitive ‘put (down)’, can be used as an auxiliary with EAs, both underived (355a) and those derived from adjectives (355b). The sense is factitive: ‘X cause Y to be EA/Adj’. With an ATR shift, bè: has plural-subject perfective form bè:-sèⁿ, which is homophonous to ‘(they) defecated’. Confusion is unlikely since ‘defecate’ always co-occurs with cognate nominal bè: ‘excrement’.

(355)  a. kúwɔ̀ sèrǐ→ bè-è
     foot sticking.out.foot(EA) put-Pfv
     ‘It (patas monkey) held its foot out (showing the sole).’
     (thought to be a gesture of contempt)

     b. lè:-lè:-lè:-lè: káⁿ,
       slash-slash-slash-slash narrowly,
       èm-i→ èm-i→ bè:-sèⁿ dè, ...
       crowded-Adv crowded-Adv put-Pfv.PlSbj if, ...
     ‘They make slashes (with the daba), closely spaced, and make (them) crowded together.’ (2011.1a.18)

11.5  Possessive predicates

11.5.1  ‘Have’ (sà, sè)

This is another stative quasi-verb, allowing no perfective/imperfective distinctions. The forms are in (356). In the positive combinations, yé is the same existential morpheme found (with a phonological disguise) in the locational construction ‘be (somewhere)’, §11.2.2.2, above.

(356)  singular subject    plural subject

  ‘have’    yé sà       yé sè
  [for sà, sè without yé, see below]

  ‘not have’ sà:-rá     sè:-ré

The existential morpheme yé is always present in positive ‘X has Y’ constructions in elicitation, but it is disallowed in negative counterparts. Examples are in (357).

(357)  a. ₁ⁿ gîrⁿf yé sà
     1SgSbj house Exist have
     ‘I have a house.’

     b. èmè nàŋá jò→ yé sè
     1PlSbj cow many Exist have.PlSbj
     ‘We have lots of cows.’
These predicates may be used in past-time contexts.

(358) ́Ió kòkè: girzì yé ́á sà

1SgSbj formerly house Exist have
‘I had a house (in the past).’

For relative clauses with positive sá or negative ́á-rá, see §14.1.9.6. The existential morpheme is absent in such relatives.

Under some conditions the existential particle is omitted even in positive main clauses, and in this case the quasi-verb takes <HL> tones (sá, plural sè). This happens systematically in the delayed future construction with -jà sá (§10.2.2.4). In the regular ‘have’ construction it is attested in texts (but not in elicitation) in examples with a heavy NP as object, as in (687a) in §19.4.1.

11.5.2 Special form of ‘have’ (sí-í)

§11.2.2.4 described special variants of the locational-existential quasi-verbs wò and kò, namely wí-í and kí-í. The special variants are used under limited conditions as perfectives, or chained to a following imperfective form of béré ‘get’ in the sense ‘it is possible, it could happen’.

There is a parallel form sí-í for the ‘have’ quasi-verb. It too is attested with ‘get’ (359).

(359) [kó ́zì:] hà:jé sí-í bē-̀-rò

[NonhPoss ́child] need(n) have-Pfv get-IpfvNeg
‘There is no need (for) its fruits.’ (2011.1a.20)

11.5.3 ‘Belong to’ predicates ([X kè]=:)

Any alienably possessable noun may occur as the subject (or topic) of a ‘belong to’ predicate, which identifies the owner. The NP or pronoun denoting the owner is followed by possessive kè=:. It contains the ‘it is’ clitic and a noun-like element (etymologically ‘thing’) denoting the possessed item. The negation with =lò (360d) is shared with the ‘it is’ clitic.

(360) a. girzì́ [à: ́kè]=:

[who? Poss]=it.is
‘(The) house belongs to whom?’

b. ́Ió ́kè=: [1SgPoss ‘Poss’]=it.is

‘It (= house) is mine.’ = ‘It belongs to me.’
c.  péjú [sè:dú 1kè]=; sheep [Seydou 1Poss]=it.is ‘(The) sheep-Sg belongs to Seydou.’

d. [1" 1kè]=; =lò [1SgPoss 1Poss]=it.is=Neg ‘It isn’t mine.’

11.6 Verb iteration

TgK is quite rich in verb-iteration patterns, found particularly in narratives and with expressive functions in conversation. In addition to the phrasally self-contained iterations in the sections below, see also §15.1.5 for a construction involving iterated {HL}-toned verbs followed by a motion verb.

11.6.1 Iteration of inflected verb forms

An inflected verb form may be iterated one or more times. This is typical of imperfective-system verbs (imperfective, progressive). It emphasizes duration, naturally enough. In narrative it indicates that a particular state continues for a long time (until the next dramatic event).

The subtype in (361a) with preverbal subject pronoun could be interpreted as a headless adverbial relative, or as a focus construction. This does not seem possible for the subtype in (361b) with omitted (though referentially specific) subject pronoun.

(361)  a. [yɔ̃ŋ wó 1bi-jù] [wó 1bi-jù] [wó 1bi-jù] [wó 1bi-jù]  
       [like.that 3SgSbj 1do-Ipfv] (iterations)  
       duwɔ́ vulture ‘She went on doing like that (until) Vulture …’ (2011.1b.02)

       b. [bé 1lɔ:] yɔ̃ŋ 1yè-jù,  
          [3Pl 1two] like.that 1come-Ipfv,  
          yɔ̃ŋ bi-táŋa bi-táŋa [fyɛ́ 1kè] yè-ɛ́: mà  
          like.that do-Prog do-Prog [today 1Top] go-and.SS and.then  
          ‘The two of them (girl and step-mother) were coming like that. (She) kept doing that. This time, …’ (2011).

11.6.2 Simple iteration of bare verb stems (self-chaining)

Very often a verb stem is iterated in bare stem form. In other words, a verb is directly chained to itself.

In (362a-c), one or more iterations precede a final inflected form of the same verb. I usually hyphenate the iterations in bare-stem form, but separate a final inflected form.
(362) a. kéjé-kéjé-kéjé-kéjé-kéjé-se_{a} dè
cut-cut-cut-cut-cut cut-Pfv.PlSbj if
‘when (they) have cut and cut’ (2011.1a.09)

b. kún-kún-kún kún-Ø dè
put-put-put put-Pfv if
‘if/when he/she has put and put’ (kún-Ø is for kún-i)

c. nò:-nò:-nò:
drink-drink-drink drink-Pfv if
‘if/when (he/she) has drunk and drunk’

In this case, when the final inflected form requires the augment -è:-, i.e. for certain types of verb stem before perfective plural-subject -se_{a}, the augment also appears on the otherwise uninflected nonfinal occurrences. Examples where this happens, like (363), mimic those with same-subject anterior subordinator, see the preceding section.

(363) kún-è: kún-è: kún-è: kún-è:-se_{a} dè
put-Pfv put-Pfv put-Pfv put-Pfv if
‘if/when they have put and put’

Likewise, when the final iteration is itself in same-subject anterior subordinating form, with suffix -è:- or allomorph (§15.2.2.1), the suffix can be repeated on the nonfinal iterations. This is sometimes used in narrative to denote extended duration of a state, before the narrator has formulated the following clause (so “same-subject” may not always turn out to be correct).

(364) a. jé jów-è: jów-è: [fò → dè_{a}-è:-]
run(n) run-and.SS run-and.SS [until get.tired-Pfv]
‘He ran and ran until he was weary.’

b. bè nà: nì:-ì:-
3PlSbj meal eat.meal-and.SS eat.meal-and.SS
[pà → [sà_{a} bè tì:bìn] ]
[until [[RefPoss Pl] belly] be.full-Caus-Pfv]
‘They ate and ate until they had filled their bellies (=were satisfied).’

c. [nù:-dùgš kà:-n] [nà wò→]
[fly also] [place all]
tó_{a}:-è: tó_{a}:-è: gàr-è dè
perch-and.SS perch-and.SS go.past-Pfv if
‘Fly too (=for his part) would perch all over (their bodies) and keep going, …’
(2011.1b.02)

d. [kùnL-kènè:-yò:] lágér-è: lágér-è: lágér-è;
[head.DefL NearDist] shed-and.SS (iterations)
yò: nè:rè:-tànà mà
[NearDist suffer-Prog and.then]
‘That head (of hers) was shedding its hair. That (woman) was suffering, …’
(2011.1b.02)
The iterated verb may also be in bare stem form nonfinally in a chain. In this case all of the iterations can be in the bare stem form (365). See the sections below for more complex iteration constructions.

(365)  

a. émé gú-gúrà'ld dár"á-dár"á Ldágà-jù  
1PlSbj grass.Def kill-kill leave-lpfv  
‘we keep killing the weeds and (we) leave them’ (2011.1a.02)

b. [dérɛ́ wárà-wárà-wárà-wárà gàr-á bě:]  
crops do.farming-do.farming-… a.lot put  
[bě gí-nà dè]  
[3Pl say-and.DS if]  
‘after they had kept farming the crops a lot (=for a long time) and had let it (=field) rest’ (2011.1b.05)

11.6.3 Verb iteration with initial reduced to one syllable (reduplication)

At several points in the recordings, the first member of a simple verb iteration (two tokens of the stem) is reduced in form, the result resembling Cv-reduplication. In (366a-d), the second iteration has its lexical segmental and tonal form, e.g. -kámá in (366a), but an initial-syllable long vowel is shortened (366d). The first iteration is reduced to one syllable, heard with H-tone if the stem is /H/ (366a,d), and as <LH> if the stem is /LH/ (366b-c). The stems in question have a medial nasal or rhotic, and the forms in (366) are phonologically similar to iterative distributives that have undergone rv-Deletion (§3.5.3.2), like tū-tūrū ‘one (by) one’ (§4.6.1.6).

(366)  

a. é kā"-kámá Ldágà-jù  
2Pl toss-toss leave-lpfv  
you-Pl keep tossing and leaving (them)’ (2011.1a.19)

b. [birè L sig-è] nà  
[[work(n)] L remain-Pfv.Rel] Pl  
bà" mš-[mšɛ-ː-i];  
manner assemble-[assemble-MP],  
pú: L kè, [bàâ L bé Hbir-ɛ] gi:"  
millet L Poss, [manner L 3PlSbj Hdo-Pfv.Rel]] like  
‘the (same) way they (=people) kept getting together to do the jobs that remained (for) millet’ (2011.1a.25)

c. [gàm L Hnà] [kó Hdógó] tò  
[some L person] [[Nonh Hafter] around]  
gàmà kèrù bá-bárá mš-ː-nɛ-ː-sé" dè  
[some stem gather-gather assemble-Caus-Pfv-PlSbj if]  
‘Some people, after that, they sometimes keep gathering the stems together,…’ (2011.1a.31)

d. té-térè té-ré-jù bě→  
chop-chop burn-lpfv and  
‘there is chopping and burning the small bushes, (and)…’ (2011.1a.01)
In (367), two verbs are iterated in a special prosodic pattern with H-toned Cv- first iteration and \{L\}-toned unreduced second iteration. Except for the syllabic reduction of the first iteration, this is reminiscent of a minor distributive iteration of adjectives (§4.5.2).

\[(367)\]

a. \[[nà^l \ túnɔ̀^l] \ wɔ́-nị;\]
\[[place^l \ one.Loc^l] \ be.HumSgSbj-while.SS\] carry-MP-IPfv
\[[kò^H \ [kòlò-m]\] \ bà^H \ bàrà\]
\[[go.around^H \ [go.around-Caus]\] gather^H \ gather\]
\[jè:r-ì \ dè;\]
\[dùw-ɛ́;\]

‘(You) carry (it) being in one place (in one method), (and) you carry (it) after (you) have gone all over and gathered it (from the small piles) and brought it (in the other method).’ (2011.1a.12) \((kólò-m, bàrà)\)

b. \[ɛ́ \ mɛ́\]
\[[ɲú:] kɛ́nɛ̀ \ gù-gù́rù^L \ Hsò]\n\[1PlSbj \ [millet among] \ be.in.Rel\]
\[kó \ kò:jù \ dàⁿ-jê:\]
\[NonhObj \ dig.up^H \ dig.up \ kill-IPfv\]

‘We might keep digging up (with a daba) and killing the (old) weeds that are among the millet (sprouts), (and) …’ (2011.1a.02) \((kò:jù)\)

c. \[bé \ gün-gûŋ \ sù^H \ sù:rù \ tí-tάŋà\]
\[3PlObj \ take.out-take.out \ move.down^H \ move.down \ send-Prog\]

‘(from his perch on top of the tree he) kept sending them (=the children) down away from (there)’ (2011.1b.02) \((sù:rù)\)

11.6.4 Iteration with presuffixal vocalism of verb stem

There is also an example in the texts involving iterated verbs that are chained to a different inflected verb (‘gather’), and that have presuffixal vocalism (368). This vocalism is clear in ù:nà, but ambiguous in gérè.

\[(368)\]

\[gérè \ gérè-sèⁿ \ dè,\]
\[cut.off \ cut.off-Pfv.PlSbj \ if,\]
\[nù^l \ -jù:nà \ ù:nà \ ù:nà \ ù:nà \ gà:rá-sèⁿ \ dè, \ldots\]
\[millet^l-pile \ lay \ lay \ lay \ gather-Pfv.PlSbj \ if, \ldots\]

‘(you) will cut off grain spikes and gather and lay them in several small piles …’ (2011.1a.12)

My assistant suggested that the presuffixal vocalism may be an idiosyncrasy of certain speakers, and he preferred ù:nà (bare stem, or possibly perfective) instead of ù:nà. Note that ù:nà has the same tones as ù:nà, and that ù:nà has these tones does not correspond to any normal inflected form (contrast imperative ù:nà). So I take (368) to be a stylized expressive construction that has developed out of an original iterative chain.
11.6.5 Verb iteration of type [verb₁\(^{\text{H}}\)-lé (gá:) verb₁-(inflection)]

Another iteration type involves one instance of the verb stem with \{H\} overlay followed by suffix -lé, then optional gá; then a second occurrence of the verb stem in whatever inflection is appropriate in the larger sentence. Additional iterations of the bare stem may be added between the two. It appears that some speakers use gá: while others do not.

This construction is attested in contexts involving demonstrations of how a continuous or repetitive action is performed (e.g. in teaching a child, or showing a foreigner, how to use a hoe). For gá: in constructions describing parallel alternative eventualities, see §19.2.2. More doubtful is a connection with possessed noun gá: meaning ‘something like X’ (with possessor X), see §8.4.1.

The suffix -lé in this construction is distinct from prohibitive suffix -lé, which does not impose an \{H\} overlay on the stem (§10.6.1.2). However, the two -lé forms are homophonous after lexically /H/-toned stems, e.g. á: ‘catch’. The idiosyncratic segmental changes (for ‘come’, ‘bring’, and ‘take away’) that apply to prohibitive suffix -lé (yě-lé, jě:-lě, jà:-lě) do not occur in this construction, hence yěře\(^{\text{H}}\)-lé (gá:) yěřé ‘keep coming (like this)’. These three verbs, however, do not appear to be widely used in this iterative construction. Verbs like biré ‘do’ do not undergo rv-Deletion in the iterative construction; compare prohibitive bí-lé ‘don’t do!’ with iterative bíře\(^{\text{H}}\)-lé (gá:) biré ‘do (like this)’.

\[(369)\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{a. } & [nú: \, \text{l}^{\text{yá}}] \, tš-ë \, dë, \, píl-ě \, \text{gê-gêřé-jú}, \quad \text{millet (NearDist) sprout-Pfv if, again Rdp-cut.off-Ipfv,} \\
& [\text{gêře}^{\text{H}}-lě] \, [\text{gêřé-jù}] \\
& [\text{cut.off}^{\text{H}}-\text{Iter}] \, [\text{cut.off-Ipfv}] \\
& [kó \, \text{b}^{\text{hőf}}] \, gěr-ű \, gi-jí, \\
& [\text{NonhPoss} \, \text{Name}] \, \text{cut.off-VblN say-Ipfv.PlSub}\end{align*}\]

‘When (they) have hacked down that millet, they will also (=subsequently) cut off the grain spikes (with a knife). They keep cutting off the grain spikes. They call it “cutting off (the grain spikes).” ’ (2011.1a.09)

\[\begin{align*}
\text{b. } & [gàmà \, \text{l}^{\text{ná}] \, [mòmò^{\text{H}}-lě \, mòmò \, mòm-ë \, dë] \quad \text{[some} \, \text{person]} \, \text{[uproot}^{\text{H}}-\text{Iter}] \, \text{uproot uproot-Pfv if]} \\
& [kàmà-kàmà \, \text{b}^{\text{hóć}}] \, \text{dàgà-jú],} \\
& \text{[throw-throw leave-Ipfv]} \\
& \text{‘Some people thoroughly uproot (all the weeds, by hand) and toss and leave (them).’} \ (2011.1a.20)
\]

The -lé suffix in the iterative construction probably reflects an original verbal noun suffix (cognates in Najamba-Kindige and Yanda Dom).

---

11.6.6 Verb iteration of type [verb₁-Pfv mà → ë → verb₁-Pfv]

In another type of iteration, expressing definitiveness (rather than repetition) of the denoted event, two identical perfective verbs are juxtaposed. The first is followed by mà (yes-no interrogative, also the ‘or’ disjunction), and this is separated from the second occurrence by ë → ‘yes’. The construction therefore contains a miniature question-answer sequence.
(370)  a. gèrê-śè Gingère-Çè
dè, Gingère-
cut.off-Pfv.PI3sbj if, cut.off-and.PI3
[né: Gingère-ù Dòg-è mà → é → Dòg-è dè], …
[now cut.off-VbN end-Pfv Q yes end-Pfv if], …
‘When (they) had cut off the grain spikes, they cut them off and then, when the
cutting off was well and truly finished, …’ (2011.1a.09)

b. kún-i mà → é → kún-i
put-Pfv Q yes put-Pfv
‘(he/she) (had) definitively put’

c. kún-è̥-śè Gingère-Çè
mà → é → kún-è̥-Pfv à
put-Pfv-PI3sbj Q yes put-Pfv-PI3sbj
‘(they) (had) definitively put’

11.6.7 Verb iteration plus mà

In textual passage (371), the verb ‘listen’ is iterated and followed by mà. The vocalism of
‘listen’, elsewhere [+ATR] këñiri (imperative këñéré) but here mixed-ATR, suggests that this
is an iterative variation on këñèrè: mà ‘listened and …’ (same subject anterior). For the non-
iterative version see §15.2.2.

(371) [yè-ŋ Wò Gingère]
[like.that 3SgSbj say-and.PI3]
[yẹ̀-l Nà] këñèrè-këñèrè mà
[woman l old listen-listen and.then,
î: … Wà, hey! … Quot,
‘When she (=spirit of dead girl) said (= sang) like that, an old woman was listening.
She (=old woman) said, wow!…’ (2011.1b.01)
12 Comparatives

12.1 Asymmetrical comparatives

12.1.1 Asymmetrical comparatives without gá:rá ‘more’

12.1.1.1 Predicative adjective with là ‘than’ and comparandum

In positive adjectival predicates (‘be long’), the adjectival stem may be extended with adverbial -i→ (or variant), and it is often followed by a copula. In negative adjectival predicates, the extension is absent and the adjective, in {L}-toned form, is followed by stative negative clitic =lá. See §11.4.1.2 for positive and §11.4.2 for negative predicates.

In one common positive comparative adjectival predicate construction (‘be longer than X’), the adjectival stem follows the comparandum (‘than X’), which has the form X là. There is no copula, and no final extension on adjectives like dògú ‘heavy’, so the construction is rather tight (almost compound-like) and is not merely a regular adjectival predicate plus a comparandum (372).

(372) a. wó [má là] gùrù
    3SgSbj [1Sg than] long
    ‘He/She is longer (=taller) than I (am).’

    b. tùwó [ú là] dògú
       #dògú k5
       #dòg-i: k5
    stone [2Sg than] heavy
    ‘The rock is heavier than you-Sg (are).’

The adjective may drop its tones (to gùrù, dògù, etc.), especially at the end of a fairly long clause with no following particle. This is parallel to tone-dropping in verbs in this position.

The negative counterpart is illustrated in (373). The adjective takes its usual negative predicative form, {L}-toned with following stative negative clitic. Here the only difference between the comparative and the regular construction is the addition of the comparandum.

(373) tùwó [ú là] dògùL = lá
    stone [2Sg than] heavyL=StatNeg
    ‘The rock is not heavier than you-Sg (are).’

A slightly different construction for positive adjectival comparatives involves the addition of sigé ~ sigé ‘more’. In this case, the predicate is identical to the regular (noncomparative) adjectival predicate. Specifically, a copula is often present, and adjectives like ‘heavy’ may take their extended adverbial form (374).

(374) tùwó [ú là] sigé dòg-i: k5
    stone [2Sg than] more heavy-Adj be.NonhSbj
    ‘The rock is heavier than you-Sg (are).’
12.1.1.2 Verbal predicate plus sigé ~ sigé ‘more’ and là ‘than’

Any verb or other predicate can be expanded into an asymmetrical comparative by adding sigé ‘more’, preceded by a comparandum phrase X là ‘than X’. sigé is often heard as {L}-toned sigè, especially (by tonal dissimilation) before a verb or other word beginning with an H-tone.

The syntax of sigé ~ sigé can be clarified by glossing it adverbially, i.e. as ‘to a greater extent (than X)’. However, it directly follows the comparandum and may be prosodically bracketed with it.

The verb (or quasi-verb) has exactly the same form as in clauses without sigé. As usual when following one or more other nonpronominal constituents, the imperfective (positive) verbs in (375a-b) usually drop tones. Also as usual, the optional plural-subject form of the verb is allowed (375d).

(375) a. wó [má là] sigè kẹnè L\n3:+-nù
3SgSbj [1Sg than] more millet.beer Ldrink-lpfv
‘He/She drinks millet beer to a greater extent than me.’
[= ‘… drinks more millet beer than I (do)’]

b. ìn [ú là] sigè bè-ju L\n1SgSbj [2Sg than] more lget-lpfv
‘I will get more than you-Sg (will).’
[tone-dropped from bè-ju]

c. ìn [ú là] sigè bë:-rò
1SgSbj [2Sg than] more get-lpfvNeg
‘I won’t get more than you-Sg (will).’

d. bè [ú là] sigè bë:-rò
3PlSbj [2Sg than] more get-lpfvNeg.PlSbj
‘They won’t get more than you-Sg (will).’

e. ìn [ú là] sigè péjú sà
1SgSbj [2Sg than] more sheep have
‘I have sheep to a greater extent than you-Sg.’
[= ‘… have more sheep than you (do)’]

When sigé is followed by a positive or negative perfective verb, as in (376a-b) below, the verb gets an {HL} overlay (for more examples of this overlay see the constructions with gá:rá ‘more’ in §12.1.2). The overlay is applied in the same way as the {HL} overlay on perfective verbs after a focalized subject (§13.1.1). For trisyllabics, the tone pattern is H.L.L for positive perfective verbs, as in gègèr-i ‘tilted’, sigè ìl. gègèr-i ‘tilted more (than...)’. A monosyllabic example is gò-è ‘went out’, sigè ìl. gò-è ‘went out more (than...)’. See (402) for further examples with focalized subjects. For negative perfective verbs, the tone break is at the stem-suffix boundary; for examples with focalized subjects see (403).

When sigé is followed by an H-tone, as it always is when it precedes an {HL}-toned perfective verb, sigé normally surfaces with {L} tones. Synchronically this could be analysed as an {HL} overlay on the verb, followed by a low-level tone dissimilation (sigé → sigè before H-tone). Diachronically, it could be that the final H-tone of sigè shifted to the right in a subset of such constructions and generalized from there.

264
(376a) illustrates sigé in a perfective positive clause. Noncomparative clauses without sigé show the normal tones of the verb, without the {HL} overlay (376c-d). In (376e) the two comparanda are non-subjects.

(376) a. ìⁿ [ú là] sigéL HL bèr-è
1SgSbj [2Sg than] moreL get-Pfv
  ‘I got (=obtained) more than you-Sg (did).’

b. ìⁿ [ú là] sigéL HL bèr-li
1SgSbj [2Sg than] moreL get-PfvNeg
  ‘I did not get more than you-Sg (did).’

c. ìⁿ isí L bèr-è
1SgSbj dog get-Pfv
  ‘I got a dog.’
[< bèr-è ]

d. ìⁿ isí bè-lí
1SgSbj dog get-PfvNeg
  ‘I didn’t get a dog.’

e. ìⁿ péjú [èrⁿè là] sigè HL làg-è
1Sg sheep [goat than] more HL hit-Pfv
  ‘I hit-Past (the) sheep more than (I hit) (the) goat.’

There is no positive construction directly expressing the sense ‘VP less than X’. This sense can be expressed using a negation of bà: ‘equal’ (§12.2.1, below).

12.1.2 Asymmetrical comparatives with gá:rá ‘more’

12.1.2.1 {HL}-toned predicative adjective with gá:rá ‘more’, sógò ‘than’

In another asymmetrical comparative construction with a predicative adjective, the adjective is preceded by gá:rá ‘more’. The adjective itself has {HL} overlay, suggesting that gá:rá (or some other preverbal constituent) is treated as focal. In textual examples, gá:rá is sometimes omitted, so the {HL} tone on the adjective is diagnostic of this construction, as opposed to that described in §12.1.1.1. The copula, e.g. kɔ́ ‘be (nonhuman)’ as in (non-comparative) nà:rⁿà kɔ́ ‘it is easy’, is absent. The comparandum (if overt) is expressed as [X sógò] ‘than X’, i.e. ‘in comparison to X’. sógò implies more conceptual effort by the person doing the comparison than does là, and one could translate [X sógò] as ‘in comparison to X’ or ‘with respect to X’. Elsewhere [X sógò] can also be translated ‘because of X’, again with emphasis on human reasoning.

The construction is exemplified in (377) with nà:rⁿà ‘easy’ and gùrú ‘long’. (377b) represents the type with gá:rá omitted. sógò ‘than’ is present in (377c).

(377) a. [lè-kɔ́ bè] gá:rá HL nà:rⁿà
[pick.hoe with] more HL easy
  ‘It (=planting) is easier with a pick-hoe.’
b. \([kó \ bë] \quad \text{HL}_{\text{easy}} ná:r^\text{â} \]
   \([\text{Nonh with}] \quad \text{HL}_{\text{easy}} \]
   ‘It (=planting) is easier with it (pick-hoe).’ (2011.1a.01)

c. \([kɔ̃ sógò] \quad \text{HL}_{\text{long}} \]
   \([\text{daba than}] \quad \text{pick-hoe more} \quad \text{HL}_{\text{long}} \]
   ‘A pick-hoe is longer than a daba (short-handled hoe).’

Monosyllabic adjectives realize \{HL\} as falling tone: \(\text{wá: ‘wide, spacious’}, \quad \text{gá:rá ‘wá: ‘wider’}\). Trisyllabic adjectives realize \{HL\} as H.L.L, i.e. with the tone break near the left edge: \(\text{déméré ‘fat’}, \quad \text{gá:rá \text{HL}_{\text{déméré ‘fatter’}}, \quad \text{yúgùjú ‘short, runty’}, \quad \text{gá:rá \text{HL}_{\text{yúgùjú ‘shorter, runtier’}}.}\)

The \([X \ sógò]\) comparandum is preclausal, unlike \([X \ là]\) in the other comparative construction. This can be seen by the positions of the two 1Sg comparanda relative to the clause-initial subject pronouns in (378a-b), confirmed by the position of the nominal comparandum in (377c) above. Note also that different forms of the 1Sg pronoun are used in (378a) and (378b). Compare the difference in English between ‘you are taller than I/me’ and ‘compared to me, you are taller’.

(378) a. \([mí: \quad sógò] \quad ú \quad \text{gá:rá \text{HL}_{\text{gúrú}}} \]
   \([1\text{Sg than}] \quad 2\text{SgSbj more} \quad \text{HL}_{\text{long}} \]
   ‘You-Sg are taller than I (am).’

b. \(ú \quad [má \quad là] \quad (\text{sigé}) \quad \text{gúrú} \]
   \([2\text{SgSbj \quad [1\text{Sg than}] (more) long} \quad [=\text{(a)}] \]

Negation is expressed by an \{H\}-toned adjective followed by an L-toned form \(=\text{là}\) of the stative negative clitic. In effect, the \{HL\} overlay controlled by \text{gá:rá} is realized on the entire negative predicate, with the tone break at the stem-suffix boundary. This tone pattern matches that of perfective negative verbs when defocalized, see (403) in §13.1.1. Compare \(\text{HL}_{\text{ná:r^â}}=\text{là}\) in (379) below with non-comparative \(\text{ná:r^â}^L=\text{là}\) ‘it is not easy’, where the H-toned form of the stative negative controls tone-dropping on the adjective \(\text{ná:r^â}.\)

(379) \(kà:ná \quad \text{gá:rá} \quad \text{HL}_{\text{ná:r^â}}=\text{là} \]
   \(\text{now more} \quad \text{HL}_{\text{easy}}=\text{StatNeg} \]
   ‘It is not easier now (than before).’

12.1.2.2 \{HL\}-toned verb plus \text{gá:rá} ‘more’ and \(sógò\) ‘than’

The combination of \text{gá:rá} ‘more’ and \(sógò\) ‘than’ can also occur with verbs as predicates. If \text{gá:rá} precedes a (positive or negative) perfective verb, the verb gets the \{HL\} overlay (380a-b). This happens even when \text{gá:rá} is separated from the perfective verb by an object NP or other constituent (380c-d). In (380c), \(sɔ̃ \text{‘horse(s)’} \) is heard as \{L\}-toned \(sɔ̃\) before the initial H-tone of the verb; this is another case of low-level tonal dissimilation, see §12.1.1.2 above for similar treatment of \(\text{sigé ‘more’}\). There is no tonal dissimilation with an /H/-toned noun like ‘sheep’ in (380d). In (380d) the two comparanda are non-subjects (temporal adverbs).
The {HL\}-toned form of the perfective verb used in these comparatives does not allow plural-subject marking. While elsewhere we find bër-è ‘got’ and optional plural-subject bër-è-së, the {HL\} form in comparatives is always HL\ bër-è even with plural subject (381b). Correlated with this is the fact that a subject (minimally, a pronoun) is obligatory before gá:rá. So the plural-subject in non-comparative (381a) can be expressed either by a clause-initial pronoun (optional, and often omitted in textual passages) or by verbal suffixation. In comparative (381b), the 3Pl subject pronoun is obligatory and the verb, which now has the {HL\} overlay, cannot mark plural subject.

\[(381)\] a. (bë) péjú bër-è / bër-è-së
(3PlSbj) sheep get-Pfv(-PlSbj)
‘They got a sheep.’

b. [ú sógò] bé gá:rá HL\ bër-è (#-së)
[2Sg than] 3PlSbj more HL\ get-Pfv
‘They got more than you-Sg (did).’

The {HL\} tone does not appear on verbs other than perfective (positive and negative). The imperfective (positive) is therefore frequently subject to tone-dropping (382a), while the imperfective negative has its usual tonal shape (382b).

\[(382)\] a. [ú sógò] mì: gá:rá bë-jù
[2Sg than] ISg more Ì\ get-Ipfv
‘I will get more than you-Sg (will).’
[tone-dropped from bë-jù]
The {HL} overlay on predicates (adjectives, perfective verbs) is found not only in comparative constructions, but also with adverbials gá:rá and sény ‘a lot, very much’, adverbial dágà ‘a little, somewhat’, and with numerals. In other words, the {HL} overlay occurs in constructions where the quantity (degree) of the quality or eventuality is explicitly specified. However, the {HL} overlay is used with ‘a lot’ and ‘a little’ in a more restricted range of contexts than with asymmetrical comparatives. ‘A lot’ and ‘a little’ also normally directly precede the predicate, while gá:rá ‘more’ often precedes intervening constituents such as an object NP.

For perfective verbs, compare dág-è ‘left, abandoned’ in (383a) and plural-subject dágá-séⁿ in (383b), where the quantity is not at issue, with invariant {HL}-toned dág-è after ‘a lot’ or ‘a little’ in (383c-e).

(383) a. íⁿ tòwó dág-è
   1SgSbj stone leave-Pfv
   ‘I left a stone (there).’

   b. bé tòwó dágá-séⁿ
   3PlSbj stone leave-Pfv.PlSbj
   ‘They left a stone (there).’

   c. wó gá:r-à → HL dág-è
   3SgSbj a.lot HL leave-Pfv
   ‘He/She left a lot (there).’

   d. bé gá:r-à → HL dág-è (#dág-è:-sèⁿ)
   3PlSbj a.lot HL leave-Pfv
   ‘They left a lot (there).’

   e. íⁿ dágà → HL dág-è
   1SgSbj a.little HL leave-Pfv
   ‘I left a little (there).’

The {HL} overlay also appears on the verb after object NPs ending in a numeral (384a-b). Again, explicit plural-subject marking is not allowed (384b). Verbs after object NPs ending in a noun, adjective, or ‘all’ quantifier have their regular forms, including optional plural-subject marking (384c-e).

(384) a. íⁿ [péjú pérú] ḗ l dág-è
   1SgSbj [sheep ten] HL leave-Pfv
   ‘I left ten sheep.’
b. \( \text{bé } \text{péjú } \text{pérú} \)  
\( 3PL\text{Sbj } \text{sheep } \text{ten} \)  
\( \text{HL } \text{dág-è } (\#\text{dágà-sê}^n) \)  
\( \text{HL } \text{leave-Pfv} \)  
‘They left ten sheep.’

c. \( \text{bé } \text{péjú}^L \text{márá}^L \text{dàgá-sê}^n \)  
\( 3PL\text{Sbj } \text{sheep}^L \text{big} \)  
\( \text{leave-Pfv-PLSbj} \)  
‘They left a big sheep.’

d. \( \text{bé } \text{péjú } \text{dàgá-sê}^n \)  
\( 3PL\text{Sbj } \text{sheep} \)  
\( \text{leave-Pfv-PLSbj} \)  
‘They left a sheep.’

e. \( \text{bé } \text{péjú}^sâ:\eq \text{dàgá-sê}^n \)  
\( 3PL\text{Sbj } \text{sheep } \text{all} \)  
\( \text{leave-Pfv-PLSbj} \)  
‘They left all the sheep.’

My assistant did not apply \{HL\} to perfective negative verbs after ‘a lot’ or ‘a little’ or after a numeral. So \( \text{dágà-lì} \) has its regular tonal form in (385a-c), with tone-dropped stem and H-toned suffix, in contrast to the \{HL\} overlay in \( \text{HL } \text{dágà-lì} \) in a sentence with \( \text{gá:rá } \) ‘more’ (385d). Explicit plural-subject marking is allowed (385b,e). The direct object ‘sheep’ precedes ‘a lot’ (385a) but follows ‘more’ (385d).

\( (385) \)

a. \( \text{wó } \text{péjú } \text{gàr-á } \text{dàgà-lì} \)  
\( 3SG\text{Sbj } \text{sheep } \text{a.lot } \text{leave-PfvNeg} \)  
‘He/She didn’t leave a lot of sheep (there).’

b. \( \text{bé } \text{péjú } \text{gàr-á } \text{dàgà-lá}: \)  
\( 3PL\text{Sbj } \text{sheep } \text{a.lot } \text{leave-PfvNeg-PLSbj} \)  
‘They didn’t leave a lot of sheep (there).’

c. \( \text{í } \text{péjú } \text{pérú} \text{dàgà-lì} \)  
\( 1SG\text{Sbj } \text{sheep } \text{ten } \text{leave-PfvNeg} \)  
‘I didn’t leave ten sheep (there).’

d. \( [\text{mí: } \text{sógò } \text{wó } \text{gà:rá } \text{péjú } \text{HL dágà-lì}] \)  
\( 1SG\text{Sbj } \text{than } 3SG\text{Sbj } \text{more } \text{sheep } \text{HL leave-PfvNeg} \)  
‘He/She didn’t leave more sheep than I (did).’

e. \( [\text{mí: } \text{sógò } \text{bé } \text{gà:rá } \text{péjú } \text{HL dágà-là}:] \)  
\( 1SG\text{Sbj } \text{than } 3PL\text{Sbj } \text{more } \text{sheep } \text{HL leave-PfvNeg} \)  
‘They didn’t leave more sheep than I (did).’

12.1.4 ‘Be better, more’ (\textit{íré})

\textit{íré} is a stative quasi-verb meaning ‘be better’. The comparandum takes postposition \( \text{là } \) ‘than’ (386). In (386a-b), \textit{íré} is heard with \{L\}-tones because it is preceded by other constituents. The rising melody is heard in (386c-d). I know of no special plural-subject suffixal form.
(386) a. \[ wó \ lá \ \overset{1}{irè} \]
\[ 1\text{SgSbj} \ [3\text{Sg than}] \ \overset{1}{\text{be.better}} \]
‘I am better than he/she (is).’

b. \[ mángóró \ [bùyà:gú \ lá] \ \overset{1}{irè} \]
\[ \text{mango} \ [\text{guava than}] \ \overset{1}{\text{be.better}} \]
‘Mangoes are better than guavas.’

c. \[ wó \ \overset{1}{irè} \]
\[ 3\text{SgSbj} \ \overset{1}{\text{be.better}} \]
‘He/She is better (than someone).’

d. \[ bé \ \overset{1}{irè} \]
\[ 3\text{PlSbj} \ \overset{1}{\text{be.better}} \]
‘They are better.’

The negative counterpart is with \[ i^1 = lá \] (reduced from /\overset{1}{irè} = lá/), containing stative negative clitic \[ =lá \].

(387) \[ wó \ \overset{i^1 = lá}{irè} \]
\[ 1\text{SgSbj} \ [3\text{Sg than}] \ \overset{i^1 = lá}{\text{be.better=StatNeg}} \]
‘I am not better than he/she (is).’

The construction in (388) means ‘(sick person) be recovering, be (feeling) better’. Here \[ \overset{1}{irè} \rightarrow \] is an adverb, and requires a copula.

(388) a. \[ bé \ \overset{1}{irè \rightarrow wê} \]
\[ 3\text{PlSbj} \ \overset{1}{\text{better be.HumPlSbj}} \]
‘They are getting well.’

b. \[ f^n \ \overset{1}{irè \rightarrow wɔ̃} \]
\[ 1\text{SgSbj} \ \overset{1}{\text{better be.HumSgSbj}} \]
‘I am feeling better.’

c. \[ ìsí \ \overset{1}{irè \rightarrow kɔ̂} \]
\[ \text{dog} \ \overset{1}{\text{better be.NonhSbj}} \]
‘The dog is getting well.’

d. \[ f^n \ \overset{1}{irè \rightarrow wɔ̀-rɔ́} \]
\[ 1\text{SgSbj} \ \overset{1}{\text{better be.HumSgSbj-Neg}} \]
‘I’m not feeling any better.’

12.1.5 ‘Best’

Superlatives are just a special case of the regular comparative when the comparandum denotes the whole set, although this twists the logic a bit. (389) can be used whether ‘he/she’ is or is not a member of the set ‘us’.

270
12.2 Symmetrical comparatives

12.2.1 ‘Be equal to’ (bà:

The uninflectable predicative element bà: is used in contexts like ‘X is the same age as Y’ and ‘X is worth as much as Y’. It denotes a static equivalence rather than an event of closing the gap; contrast dɔ̌: ‘arrive, reach’ in the sense ‘become as good as’ (§12.2.4, below). bà: is followed by a copula that agrees with the subject. If the domain of comparison is specified, it takes the form of a possessed noun, like ‘price’ in (390c).

(390) a. sè:dú èmàdú bà: wɔ
S A equal be.HumSbj
‘Seydou is the same (age) as Amadou.’

b. bé má bà: wé
3PlSbj 1SgObj equal be.HumPlSbj
‘They are the same (age) as me.’

[one] [price] equal be.NonhSbj
‘The price of one sack (of millet) equals the price of four goats.’
[= ‘One sack is worth four goats’]

Negation is expressed by perfective negative bà:-lì ‘is not equal to’ for singular subject, bà:-là: ‘for plural subject.

bà: can also be used with non-copula negative predicate to translate ‘less than’ (391a).

My assistant prefers gi:“ ‘like’ (§8.4.1) to bà: in corresponding positives that are not of the copula type (391b).

(391) a. wò [mà bà:] bíré bì:-rò
3SgSbj [1Sg equal] work(n) do-LpfvNeg
‘He/She does not do work equal to me.’
[= ‘… does less work than I (do).’]

b. wò [mà gi:“] bíré bì:-jù
3SgSbj [1Sg like] work(n) do-Lpfv
‘He/She works like me (=as much as I do).’

12.2.2 ‘As much as’ (bà→)

A form related to the verb bà: ‘equal’ (preceding section), but L-toned and often intonationally prolonged (like expressive adverbials) occurs directly after the comparandum in symmetrical comparatives and their negations. More generally, bà→ means ‘up to (a limit); in (392b) I try to capture the nuance using ‘full’ in the free translation.
‘That now (=peanuts), to some extent it can’t be as dense (closely-spaced) as groundnuts.’ (2011.1a.20)

‘Well, for that (reason), (there is) counting days a little (=for a while), (anytime) once the full fifteen days have arrived (=elapsed), then they begin.’ (2011.1a.03)

‘Well, it’s because of that, as early as (=even) this year, if you-Sg block it in advance (=pre-empty it), now next year the weeds should become better (=less troublesome) in the fields than that (=than otherwise), …’ (2011.1a.04)

‘(Exactly) equal’ (kéw-kéw, ké-kéw)

‘(Exactly) equal’ (e.g. in height or some other dimension other than age) is expressed by the iterative adverb kéw-kéw or by its reduplicative variant ké-kéw. The comparanda are expressed by a conjoined NP ‘X and Y’ or some other plural NP. The domain of comparison is expressed by a noun such as ‘height’ with its lexical tones. Compare the predicate kéw kɔ̀ ‘it (= garment) fits, it is the right size (=the same size as the wearer).’
Negation is with the usual stative negative, which controls tone-dropping: \( kè-kèw = l₁. \) Unlike their Jamsay cognates, \( kₐw \) and related forms in TgK do not also function as universal quantifiers (‘all Xs’).

12.2.4 ‘Attain, equal’ (\( d₃ \))

\( d₃ \): ‘arrive at, reach, attain’ can be used in a more abstract comparative sense ‘attain the level of (someone, in some respect)’. Although it usually describes a situation, it presupposes a process of catching up rather than a permanent equality.

\begin{equation}
\text{now} \quad \text{height} \quad \text{join} \quad \text{arrive-Pfv}
\end{equation}

‘Now he has attained the same height as his older brother.’

For a special use of L-toned \( d₃ \): in a complex ‘from X to Y’ construction, see §15.5.4.

12.3 ‘A fortiori’ (\( s₃; \ nₑ; \ yₑ, sₐ:-g₃ʳₐ \))

An element \( s₃ \), related to noun \( s₃ \) ‘(abstract) thing, matter, issue’ but with falling tone, occurs as an ‘it is (not)’ predicate in two constructions that emphasize the impossibility of one eventuality by denying the possibility of an easier or more likely eventuality of the same type.

In one construction, the easier eventuality is negated, with \( nₑ \) as a clause-linking form (not the same as \( nₑ \): ‘now’). I gloss it as ‘even’, but it is confined (to my knowledge) to this construction. The more unlikely or difficult eventuality follows, perhaps with some shared phrasing pruned, ending with \( s₃ = l₀ \), which contains a negative clitic \( =l₀ \) ‘it is not’ (§11.2.1.2). Compare English \textit{not to mention} or \textit{never mind} in similar contexts. In (396), it is presupposed that cows are much more expensive than goats.

\begin{equation}
\text{[goat money] 3PSubj buy-Lpfv} \quad \text{have-Neg} \quad \text{even,}
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\text{cow} \quad \text{(buy-Lpfv)} \quad \text{thing=it.is.not}
\end{equation}

‘I don’t (even) have the money to buy a goat with, never mind (the money) (to buy) a cow (with).’

In the other attested construction, the easier eventuality is negated with \( yₑ \) (with optional intonational prolongation) as the clause-final linking element. Again, I gloss it as ‘even’, but it is not the usual ‘even’ particle (on which see §19.1.9). The \( yₑ \) clause is followed by \( sₐ:-g₃ʳₐ \) ‘a fortiori’ at the beginning of the (perhaps pruned) more difficult eventuality. The final element is \( s₃ \) with (positive) ‘it is’ clitic.

\begin{equation}
1\text{SgSubj millet get-PfvNeg} \quad \text{even,}
\end{equation}

\begin{equation}
\text{a.fortiori sorghum thing=it.is}
\end{equation}

‘I didn’t even get (any) millet, never mind (any) sorghum.’
The background of (397) is that sorghum requires more rain than millet, so a poor millet harvest normally entails an even worse sorghum harvest.
13 Focalization and interrogation

13.1 Focalization

A NP or adverb in a clause may be singled out for focus, as in answers to WH-questions. In free translations, I underline the focalized constituent and add “[focus]” after it, as in ‘It is you-Sg [focus] who will buy the sheep.’

Focalization is ordinarily not expressed by the form of the focalized constituent itself, except perhaps by extra prominence. As often in TgK grammar, the exception to this generalization is the 1Sg pronoun. In subject function, it is heard as [mǐ:] with long vowel as focalized subject, versus ð as subject in ordinary clauses. I analyse [mǐ:] as mǐ=yⁿ ‘it’s me’; for other options see §4.3.1 and §11.2.1.1. In the dialect described by Prost (p. 34ff.) the ‘it is’ clitic is added to other focalized pronouns and NPs, as in e.g. Jamsay.

Existential particle yɛ́ ~ yɔ́, which is required or allowed in some stative predicates (§11.2.2.1), is systematically absent from focalized clauses. Compare (398a) with focalized (398b), and (398c) with focalized (398d). (398b,d) also illustrate the special 1Sg focalized form.

(398) a. ð ðá yɛ́ sà
   1SgSbj cow Exist have
   ‘I have a cow.’

b. mǐ=yⁿ ðá sà
   1Sg=it.is cow have
   ‘It is I [focus] who have a cow.’
   (ðá mǐ=yⁿ sà is also grammatical in this sense)

c. sèːdú yɔ́ wɔ̀
   S Exist be.HumSgSbj
   ‘Seydou is present (here).’

d. mǐ=yⁿ wɔ̀
   1Sg=it.is be.HumSgSbj
   ‘It is I [focus] who am here.’

Focalization is also expressed in part by linear position. In particular, a focalized subject follows, rather than precedes, a direct object (§13.1.1, below).

Finally, the presence of a focalized non-verb constituent (NP, PP, adverb) may be indexed indirectly by tonal changes and morphological restrictions on the clause-final verb. In effect, the verb is defocalized, reflecting the backgrounding of the remainder of the entire clause after the highlighted constituent is singled out. The difference in form between a normal and a defocalized verb is most audible in clauses whose verb is immediately preceded by a focalized subject pronoun. Details on the form of defocalized verbs are given in the section on subject focalization below, but to some extent they also apply to clauses with focalized constituents other than subjects.
A more distinct focalization construction is a cleft of the type ‘[the person who bought the sheep] is X’, with a relative clause followed by an identificational ‘it is’ expression. It is useful to have this construction available, since clause-internal focalization is not always easily recognized.

I know of no syntactic mechanism for focalizing a VP (‘sweeping the courtyard is what I’m doing’). The truth value of a complete proposition can be emphasized (focalized) by using a clause-final emphatic particle (§19.5).

13.1.1 Subject focalization

The distinction between unfocalized and focalized subjects is most easily seen in transitive clauses with a nonpronominal object. The linear order in an unfocalized clause is S-O-V (399a,c). When the subject is focalized, whether pronominal or nominal, it shifts to preverbal position (399b,d).

(399) a. ú írí yùw-è 2SgSbj milk ⑵spill-Pfv
‘You-Sg spilled the milk.’

b. írí ú yìw-è milk ⑶yùw-è 2SgSbj
‘It was you-Sg [focus] who spilled the milk.’

c. [nè bè] é:xé téwⁿ-é-sè ⑶[woman Pl] peanut crunch-Pfv-PISbj
‘The women ate the peanuts.’

d. é:xé [nè bè] téwⁿ-è peanut ⑶[woman Pl] crunch-Pfv
‘It was the women [focus] who ate the peanuts.’

Specifically, the shifted focalized subject follows preverbal constituents except pronominal direct objects and datives, which behave like proclitics to the verb. The focalized constituent follows a spatial PP in (400a), a nonpronominal direct object in (400b,c), and a nonpronominal dative in (400c). It precedes a pronominal dative PP in (400b), and a pronominal direct object in (400d).

(400) a. [girⁿi bìn] mì=ýⁿ nù-ŋù [house in] 1Sg=it.is go.in-Pfv
‘It is I [focus] who will go into the house.’

b. bú:dú sè:dú [má nì] 1Sg=it.is give-Pfv money Seydou [1Sg Dat]
‘It is Seydou [focus] who gave me the money.’
c. \( \text{sè:dú} = \text{nú} \quad \text{bú:dú} \quad \text{é} \quad \text{ó:jú} \)

\text{S=Dat} \quad \text{money} \quad \text{PlSbj} \quad \text{give-lpfv}

‘It is you-Pl [focus] who will give the money to Seydou.’

d. \( \text{Sè:dú} \quad \text{ú} \quad \text{HL lág-è} \)

\text{Seydou} \quad \text{2SgObj} \quad \text{hit-Pfv}

‘It is Seydou [focus] who hit you-Sg.’

If two or more verbs are more or less tightly chained (chapter 15), the focalized subject appears before the first verb (401-b).

\begin{align*}
(401) & \quad a. \quad \text{nàjá} \quad \text{mí} = \text{ýⁿ} \quad \text{dárⁿ-é:} \quad \text{HL dág-è} \\
& \quad \text{cow} \quad \text{1Sg=it.is} \quad \text{kill-and.SS} \quad \text{HL leave-Pfv} \\
& \quad \text{‘It is I [focus] who killed the cow and left it (there).’} \\

& \quad b. \quad \text{gírⁿ} \quad \text{mí} = \text{ýⁿ} \quad \text{újá} \quad \text{1bè-jú} \\
& \quad \text{house} \quad \text{1Sg=it.is} \quad \text{build} \quad \text{I get-lpfv} \\
& \quad \text{‘It is I [focus] who can build houses.’}
\end{align*}

A perfective verb in a clause containing a preceding focalized subject has an \{HL\} overlay. It is realized as H.L.L on trisyllabics. It may be obscured by clause-final tone-dropping of the verb.

To begin with perfective examples just given, the \{HL\} overlay has applied to the defocalized verb in (399b,d) and (400b,d). The constraint against overt plural marking is evident in the comparison of (399d) with (399e).

The overlaid \{HL\} is not audible for verbs whose simple perfective already has this melody in the perfective. It is audible for verbs with lexical /LH/ melody, whose perfective otherwise begins with an L-tone. The tonal distinction is relatively easy to hear when the verb is preceded by only a focalized subject pronoun. Elsewhere, the \{HL\} overlay is perhaps virtually present, but it is difficult to hear or entirely inaudible because of clause-final tone-dropping. Some examples of the forms with \{HL\} overlay are in (402).

\begin{align*}
(402) & \quad \text{Simple perfective under defocalization (subject focus)} \\
& \quad \text{gloss} \quad \text{simple perfective} \\
& \quad \text{ordinary} \quad \text{defocalized} \\

& \quad a. \quad \text{monosyllabic} \\
& \quad \text{no reliably audible change} \\
& \quad \text{‘give’} \quad \text{ó-è} \quad \text{HL ó-è} \\
& \quad \text{‘weep’} \quad \text{kɔ̀-ɛ̀-è} \quad \text{HL kɔ̀-ɛ̀-è} \\
& \quad \text{‘go in’} \quad \text{nú-ýⁿ} \quad \text{HL nú-ýⁿ} \\
& \quad \text{audible change} \\
& \quad \text{‘drink’} \quad \text{nɔ-è} \quad \text{HL nɔ-è} \\

& \quad b. \quad \text{bisyllabic} \\
& \quad \text{no reliably audible change} \\
& \quad \text{‘shoot’} \quad \text{tɛ́w-è} \quad \text{HL tɛ́w-è} \\
& \quad \text{audible change} \\
& \quad \text{‘go up’} \quad \text{dɔ́w-è} \quad \text{HL dɔ́w-è}
\end{align*}
The perfective negative also shows a tone-shift. Instead of \{L\}-toned stem followed by H-toned suffix, as in ordinary clauses, a defocalized perfective negative verb reverses this and has \{H\}-toned stem and L-toned suffix. The tonal difference illustrated in (403) is audible in short clauses, but as with the other categories it tends to be neutralized at the end of longer clauses. The same tone reversal occurs in perfective negative verbs in nonsubject relative clauses, see (475) in §14.1.9.3.

(403) Perfective negative under defocalization (subject focus)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>perfective negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ordinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘give’</td>
<td>ò-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘go in’</td>
<td>nù-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘weep’</td>
<td>kɔ̀ⁿ-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘drink’</td>
<td>nɔ̀-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. bisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘shoot’</td>
<td>tèwè-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘go up’</td>
<td>dɔ̃wɔ̃-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. trisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘return’</td>
<td>kígírè-li</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ruin’</td>
<td>nùnù-gò-li</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the imperfective positive, the tonal difference between subject-focalized and unfocalized clauses is particularly hard to hear. In careful elicitation, my assistant drops the stem and suffixal tones to \{L\} in a defocalized imperfective. This potentially distinguishes it from the regular form, which has the lexical /H/ or /LH/ of the stem plus H-toned suffix, although the lexical tone is often obscured by clause-final tone-dropping. The best chance of hearing a distinction is with a lexically /LH/-toned stem when there is a minimum of preceding material within the clause. One can hear a tone break in the /LH/-toned stem in (404a), whereas the entire verb form in (404b) has flat pitch.

(404) a. ù dɔ̃wɔ̃-jú
   2SgSbj go.up-Ipfv
   ‘You-Sg will go up.’

b. ù \L dɔ̃wɔ̃-jù
   2SgSbj \L go.up-Ipfv
   ‘It’s you-Sg [focus] who will go up.’
The remaining high-frequency indicative category is the imperfective negative. With a focalized subject, the stem has a tone pattern consisting of H-toned syllables ending with a terminal long <HL>-toned vowel. For lexically /H/-toned verbs, this is indistinguishable from the regular tone of the imperfective negative. For lexically /LH/-toned verbs, the absence of an initial L-tone signals that the verb is defocalized.

(405) Imperfective negative under defocalization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>imperfective negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ordinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no audible change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘give’</td>
<td>ō:-rò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘go in’</td>
<td>nû:-rò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘weep’</td>
<td>kɔːⁿ-rò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audible change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘drink’</td>
<td>nɔː-rò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. bisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no audible change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘shoot’</td>
<td>tewẽ:-rò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audible change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘go up’</td>
<td>dɔwɔ:-rò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. trisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no audible change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘return’</td>
<td>kigirẽ:-rò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audible change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘ruin’</td>
<td>pûnû-gô:-rò</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of the distinction are in (406). As usual, the tonal distinction is most likely to be audible in short clauses like these.

(406) a. íⁿ dɔwɔ:-rò  
1SgSbj go.up-IpvNeg  
‘I will not go up.’

b. mǐ = ḤL d5wɔ:-rò  
1Sg=it.is ḤL go.up-IpvNeg  
‘It’s I [focus] who will not go up.’

13.1.2 Object focalization

Because main clauses already have SOV order, if we suppose that a focalized object moves into the same preverbal position as a focalized subject, this movement is not audible. There is also no difference between the focalized and unfocalized forms of the 1Sg pronoun, whose special accusative form má is used in both contexts.
This leaves the form of the verb as the best hope of detecting syntactic focalization (short of extraposition). In positive clauses, the verb is regularly tone-dropped after a focalized nonsubject, and otherwise optional plural-subject marking is usually absent. However, it doesn’t take much emphasis on a preverbal constituent to count as “focus” for this purpose, so the difference between unfocalized and object-focalized clauses is less conspicuous than for subjects.

In (407a), the \{L\} tone pattern and the absence of perfective plural-subject suffix \(-sèλ\) favor a nonsubject focus reading. In isolation the verb would be \(5-è\) or optional plural \(5-\mathbf{sèλ}\). If the subject were singular, the distinction would be much subtler phonetically, with unfocalized \(5-è\) versus defocalized \(1\mathbf{5-è}\). (407b-c) are object-focus negative clauses. They have the same \{HL\} overlay, with the break at the stem-suffix boundary, as in negative subject relatives.

\[(407)\]

a. \[\text{é m\=á} L\mathbf{5-è}\]
   \(2\text{PlSbj} 1\text{SgObj}\) \(1\text{see-Pfv}\)
   ‘It’s me [focus] that you-Pl saw.’

b. \[\text{ú m\=á} \text{HL} \mathbf{5-\=l\=i}\]
   \(2\text{SgSbj} 1\text{SgObj}\) \(\text{HL see-PfvNeg}\)
   ‘It’s me [focus] that you-Sg did not see.’

c. \[\text{é\=m\=é i\=n\=é} \text{HL s\=ún\=ó\=g\=ó-\=là}\]
   \(1\text{PlSbj} \text{what?} \text{HL go.down-Caus-PfvNeg PlSbj}\)
   ‘What didn’t we take down (=unload)?’

### 13.1.3 Focalization of PP or other adverb

Focalized PPs, and adverbial adjuncts more generally, may be identifiable by linear position if there is a nonpronominal object NP. Position between such an object and the verb is compatible with focalized status (408b,d,f). Of course this test is of little use with intransitive verbs like ‘come’, but the frequency of default objects (including cognate nominals) is advantageous in this respect. As with other focalized constituents, the form of the verb may also be useful, but since PPs are prosodically heavy their presence favors clause-final tone-dropping anyway, leaving the verb with low pitch so that tonal distinctions are difficult to hear or inaudible.

\[(408)\]

a. \[\text{é\=m\=é [d\=á\=g\=ó\=l\=ú b\=í\=n]} \text{n\=á:} L\mathbf{p\=i\=:-\=n\=í}\]
   \(1\text{PlSbj} \text{[courtyard in]} \text{meal} \text{Ipfv eat.meal}\)
   ‘We will eat the meal in the courtyard.’

b. \[\text{é\=m\=é n\=á: [d\=á\=g\=ó\=l\=ú b\=í\=n]} L\mathbf{p\=i\=:-\=n\=í}\]
   \(1\text{PlSbj} \text{meal} \text{[courtyard in]} \text{Ipfv eat.meal}\)
   ‘It’s in the courtyard [focus] that we will eat the meal.’

c. \[\text{é\=m\=é ë\=y\=é d\=á\=g\=ó\=l\=ú} L\text{s\=èm\=è-\=n\=á}\]
   \(1\text{PlSbj} \text{today courtyard} \text{Ipfv sweep}\)
   ‘We’ll sweep the courtyard today.’
d. ẽmé  dâ:gólú  iyé  1sèmè:pù
   1PLSbj  courtyard  today  1sweep-Lpfv
   ‘It’s today [focus] that we will sweep the courtyard.’

e.  [kɔⁿ  bè]  wárú  1wà-jù
   [daba  with]  farming  1do.farm.work-Lpfv
   ‘We do farm work with a daba (hoe).’

f.  wárú  [kɔⁿ  bè]  1wà-jù
   farming  [daba  with]  1do.farm.work-Lpfv
   ‘It’s with a daba [focus] that we do farm work.’

13.1.4  Focalization of postpositional complement

In (408b,d) and other relevant examples, the entire PP (or adverbial phrase) is syntactically focalized. It is not possible to focalize just the NP complement of the postposition. In other words, in TgK one says the equivalent of ‘It’s in the courtyard [focus] that we will eat’, not ‘It’s the courtyard [focus] that we will eat in’.

13.2  Interrogatives

13.2.1  Polar (yes/no) interrogatives

13.2.1.1  Simple polar interrogatives (mà)

The particle mà at the end of an indicative sentence converts it into a polar question. “Q” is the interlinear gloss.

A polar question is always implicitly a disjunction of two propositions, one perhaps unstated. In TgK, the following alternative proposition is often stated at least in pruned-down form (e.g. with NPs not overtly repeated). mà→, L-toned and often with intonational prolongation, occurs at the end of the first proposition. The second, if overt, follows with or without a brief pause (comma).

(409)  

a.  ú  yê-jù  mà→  yê:-rò
   2SgSbj  come-Lpfv  Q  come-Lpfv:Neg
   ‘Are you-Sg coming, or not?’

b.  émé  nǐ:  jì:-nì  mà→,  kògó  kúwó-jú
   1PLSbj  cow.peas  eat.meal-Lpfv  Q,  chicken  eat.meat-Lpfv
   ‘Will we eat cow-peas, or chicken?’

c.  wó  yê:-rò  mà
   3SgSbj  come-Lpfv:Neg  Q
   ‘He/She isn’t coming?’

Examples like (409c) with the alternative proposition omitted may be interpreted as reductions of the fuller construction with parallel propositions in (409a-b). Therefore it is possible to equate polar interrogative mà with disjunctive particle mà ‘or’ (§7.2.1).
13.2.1.2 Rhetorical tag question with lò mà, lò→

lò mà after a statement functions as a rhetorical tag question, like French n’est-ce pas? Here lò can be identified with negative clitic = lò in = y = lò ‘it is not’ (§11.2.1.2). Interrogative mà is not intonationally prolonged or pitch-raised in this combination. There is also no pause or other notable prosodic break between the end of the statement and the lò mà, which has the flavor of a simple clause-final emphatic particle (cf. §19.5). In (410) I translate it (twice) as a tag question, but it could simply be disregarded in a free translation without distorting the conversational structure.

(410) [né: wò"] [yɔː: fù→] gàr-ë dè,
[now Top] [NearDist all] pass-Pfv if,
[né: wò"] jùː ìř-ë .IsMatch lò mà,
[now Top] millet ripen-Pfv see-Pass-Pfv not.be Q,
[né: wò"] jùː-ìš-sàː .IsMatch lò mà,
[now Top] millet'-grain see-Pass-Pfv not.be Q,
[jùː-ìš-sàː: .IsMatch dè] [millet'-grain see-Pass-Pfv if]
‘Now, when all of that is done, now is it not (true) that the millet is visibly (=clearly) ripe? Is it not true that the millet grains are visible? When the millet grains are visible, …’ (2011.1a.06)

When mà is absent, lò is optionally prolonged intonationally as lò→.

13.2.1.3 Tag question with là.; làː mà

làː at the end of a statement, with no pause or other marked prosodic break, functions as a tag question (‘you did the work, didn’t you?’). Interrogative particle mà is optionally added, especially when the speaker wishes to continue speaking. The statement itself may be positive (411a) or negative (411b). To a greater extent than with lò mà, here the questioner expects confirmation from the interlocutor, either overtly or tacitly.

(411) a. B: [yɔː: wò"] [lè kè] làː
A: [yɔː: wò"] [lè kè] sɔː-sɔː yàː-tájà
B: That is of (=for) planting, isn’t it?
A: That is of (=for) planting, all together. (2011.1a.02)

b. ǔ yàː-rò làː mà
2SgSbj go-IPfvNeg tagQ Q
‘You-Sg aren’t going, are you?’

làː is likely related etymologically to negative morphemes, cf. ‘it is not’ clitic = lò (§11.2.1.2), and stative negative = là in adjectival predicates and after stative verbs and quasi-verbs (§10.4, §11.4.2).

13.2.2 ‘Who?’ (ǎː)

This interrogative is illustrated in (412).
(412)  a.  ã: = ý
   who? = it.is
   ‘Who is it?’

   b.  ú  ã: = ý
   2SgSbj who? = it.is
   ‘Who are you-Sg?’

   c.  ã:
      HL bág-è
      who?
      HL fall-Pfv
   ‘Who fell?’

   d.  ú  ã:
      1SgSbj who?
      1see-Pfv
   ‘Who(m) did you-Sg see?’

A plural ã: bè ‘who-Pl?’ was elicited, but is sparingly used. It is optional in (413).

(413)  a.  é  [ã: bè] = ý
   2PlSbj [who? Pl] = it.is
   ‘Who are you-Pl?’

   b.  é  ã: = ý
   2PlSbj who? = it.is
   [= (a)]

13.2.3 ‘What?’ (înåé), ‘with what?’, ‘why?’

‘What?’ as simple NP is înåé. It is unrelated in form to other content interrogatives. The expected plural înåé bè is not used. If it were, it would be homophonous with the common interrogative ‘with what?’, see below. Instead, an iterated înåé-înåé is used when multiplicity is emphasized (414c). The ý in înåé = ý (414b) is not fully nasalized, probably because înåé derives from *înåé with medial cluster (Pergue înåé, etc.).

(414)  a.  ú  înåé  s-tánè
   2SgSbj what? see-Prog
   ‘What do you-Sg see?’

   b.  nó:  înåé = ý
   Prox what? = it.is
   ‘What is that?’

   c.  émè  înåé-înåé  plí:-plí
   1PlSbj what?-what? eat.meal-1pfv
   ‘What things will we eat?’

PPs based on ‘what?’ include purposive înåé gè: ‘why?’ and instrumental înåé bè ‘with (by means of) what?’
13.2.4 ‘Where?’ (yā: ~ yǎ:)

‘Where?’ and ‘whither?’ (= ‘to where?’) is yā:. It is pronounced yā: with <LHL> tones when adverbial, while yǎ: occurs with locational-existential quasi-verbs (‘be’), or as possessor or compound initial. yā: = ṣ where is it?’ is compatible with underlying /yā:/ but probably also with /yǎ:/, which leads me to conclude that adverbial yā: is a tonal locative.

Following the usual Dogon pattern, locative (‘at, in’), allative (‘to’), and ablative (‘from’) senses are distinguished by accompanying verbs rather than by adpositions. In (415f), yā: is syntactically a possessor.

(415) a. ū yā: ̈ L.yā:-jù
   2SgSbj where? L.go-lpfv
   ‘Where are you-Sg going?’

b. [iⁿbáyⁿ-bóⁿ]-[kùn-ú] yā: kɔ̀
   [newborn-name]-[put-VblN] where? be.NonhSbj
   ‘Where is the name-giving ceremony?’

c. é yǎ: ́ wè
   2PlSbj where? be.HumPlSbj
   ‘Where are you-Pl?’

d. yǎ: = ū
   where?=it.is
   ‘Where is it?’

e. ū yā: ̈ L.go-̣
   2SgSbj where? L.go.out-Pfv
   ‘Where did you come from?’

f. nɔ́: [yǎ: ̈ Hná] bè = ū
   Dist [[where? ̈ H.person] Pl]=it.is
   ‘Those are people of (=from) where?’

‘Around where?’ or ‘whereabouts?’, inquiring about approximate location, can be expressed by yǎ: tɔ̀, cf. §8.2.14.

The morpheme yā: is also found as part of ‘which?’ and ‘when?’ interrogatives.

13.2.5 ‘When?’ (yā: dógùrà, yā: tέŋé bè)

The interrogative morpheme yā: also found in the senses ‘where?’ and ‘which?’ combines with a noun denoting a time period to produce ‘when?’ interrogatives. yā: ̈ H.dógùrà, literally ‘(at) the time of which?’ is apparently preferred when the set of possible responses extends over a period of days. The alternative combination, which can be used in more constricted temporal contexts, is [yā: ̈ tέŋé] bè, literally ‘by means of (the) time of which?’. The nouns dógùrà and tέŋé both mean ‘point in/period of’ time. Compound final -dógùrà occurs in season terms like ṣ:gù-dógùrà ‘hot season’.
13.2.6 ‘How?’ (ɲąŋ)

The interrogative manner adverbial is ɲąŋ ‘how?’ (i.e. ‘in what manner?’). It is unrelated in form to other content interrogatives. In predicative form, an additional ɲ is added before the ‘it is’ clitic (417c). Compare the vestigial -n- suffix between some human singular nouns and the ‘it is’ clitic, cf. (315) in §11.2.1.1.

(417) a. ɛ́m ɲąŋ ɬ bi-ɭi
   1PlSbj how? 1do-lpfv.PlSbj
   ‘What (lit. “how”) will we do?’

b. ú tògú ɲąŋ ɬ tògò-ɭi
   2SgSbj shed how? 1build.shed-lpfv
   ‘How are you-Sg going to build the shed?’

c. ɲąŋ-n = i:
     how?=it.is
     ‘How is it?’ (common greeting)

ɲąŋ is frequently iterated as ɲąŋ-ɲąŋ. In this form, it leaves the door open for a complex answer denoting more than one manner or method. In allegro speech style it is heard as [ɲąnàŋ].

For ‘by means of what?’ see §13.2.3, above.

13.2.7 ‘How much/many?’ (à:ŋá)

The content interrogative for cardinal quantities is à:ŋá. It has no transparent relationship in form to other interrogatives, but it has a vague resemblance to ‘who?’ and ‘what?’. Although à:ŋá directly follows the NP that it has scope over (when the latter is overt), it is syntactically adverbial rather than part of that NP. The distributive iteration is in (418d). The ordinal (§4.6.2.2) is à:ŋá-‘nir”i ‘how many-eth?’ (Fr quantième).

(418) a. ú súgɔ́rɔ́ à:ŋá ɬ ɛw-ɛ
   2SgSbj sugar how.much? 1buy-Pfv
   ‘How much sugar did you-Sg buy?’

b. bé pèjú à:ŋá s-è
   3PlSbj sheep how.many? have-PlSbj
   ‘How many sheep do they have?’
c. ūr‘lì: àrîá àrîá
children how.many? come-lpvf PlSbj
‘How many children will come?’

d. kóngró árîá-àrîá dí°-tényè
fish how.much? how.much? sell-Prog PlSbj
‘How much (each) are they selling fish for?’

e. árîá = yî°
how.many? = it.is
‘How many (of them) are there?’

f. [nàrâ [l° kóbà] kénè, nàrâ àrîá ñù-y
[cow [1SgPoss lPoss] among, cow how.many? die-lpvf
‘Among my cows, how many cows died?’

An optional extended variant árîá bà: ends with an element that my assistant associates with plurality, cf. plural morpheme bè in NPs. For an example, see (421) in §13.2.10, below.

13.2.8 ‘Which?’ (yà:-kɔ̀)

The ‘which?’ interrogative adjective is yà:-kɔ̀. It is heard as yà:-kɔ̀ in combination with the ‘it is’ clitic (419a). Compare yà: ‘where?’ and its derivative ‘when?’. yà:-kɔ̀ can function predicatively (419a) or as a modifying adjective. In the latter case, a preceding noun drops tones as before other adjectives (419b). In (419d) yà:-kɔ̀ becomes an {l}-toned compound initial.

(419) a. [gir‘lì [ú ñù-y]
yà:-kɔ̀ = yî°
[house [2SgPoss lPoss] which? = it.is
‘Your-Sg house is which (one)?’

b. émé [[gir‘lì yà:-kɔ̀] bîn] ñù-y
1PlSbj [house which? in] ñù-y
‘Which house will we sleep in?’

c. [nàrâ lù dí-yú]
yà:-kɔ̀ = yî°
[cow l 2SgSbj sell-lpvf which? = it.is
‘Which of your-Sg cows are you selling?’
[lit. “The cow that you are selling, it is which?”]

d. kò [[yà:-kɔ̀]l-tôgfî = ɔ́]
NonhSbj [[which?]l-type] = it.is
‘What type (of roselle) is it?’ (2011.1a.26)

With encliticized postposition nî (e.g. in dative function), the form is yà:-kɔ̀ = nî.
13.2.9 ‘Whatchamacallit?’ (ɔ́jɔ̀ →)

ɔ́jɔ̀ →, an intonational modification of the noun ɔ́jɔ̀ ‘thing’, is used as a ‘whatchamacallit?’ form when the speaker is trying to recall a word or name.

When the word or phrase being searched for is a predicate, the phrasing is ɔ́jɔ̀-bìrí bìrè ‘do whatchamacallit?’. This consists of noun ɔ́jɔ̀ ‘thing’, verb bìrè ‘do’, and an alternative cognate nominal for the verb (compare the usual cognate nominal, bìrè ‘work’).

13.2.10 Embedded interrogatives

The elicitation frame here is ‘I don’t know’ plus an embedded interrogative.

The favored construction replaces the interrogative content word (‘who?’, ‘what?’, ‘where?’, etc.) by the corresponding semantically light noun (‘person’, ‘thing’, ‘time’, etc.), as head of a relative clause. For example, ‘I don’t know who will go’ is expressed as ‘I don’t know the person who will go’ (420a).

(420) a. ɪⁿ  [nà L person go-Lpv]  L:inè
     1SgSbj ‘I don’t know who will go.’
     [lit. “I don’t know [the person who will go].”]

b. ɪⁿ  [ɔ́jɔ̀ L thing eat.meal-Lpv]  L:inè
     1SgSbj ‘I don’t know what we will eat.’

c. ɪⁿ  [nà L place spend.night-Lpv]  L:inè
     1SgSbj ‘I don’t know where we will spend the night.’

d. ɪⁿ  [bàmàkɔ́ tèŋè L time go-Lpv]  L:inè
     1SgSbj ‘I don’t know when we will go to Bamako.’

e. ɪⁿ  [tùwó árà L stone on.top.of manner go.up-Lpv]  L:inè
     1SgSbj ‘I don’t know how we will go up the mountain.’

This construction does not apply to polar (yes-no) interrogatives. It is also not available for ‘how many?’ in the absence of a corresponding abstract noun (‘quantity’). It is also awkward when the head NP is the complement of a postposition. In all these cases, the complement has the form of an unembedded interrogative clause, ending with interrogative particle  mà(→) (421).

(421) a. ɪⁿ  [bé yèr-é-sèn mà→]  L:inè
     1SgSbj ‘I don’t know whether they have come.’
b. íⁿ [nà ∂àŋ bà:] yàː-jú mà] ¹inè
1SgSbj [person how.many Pl] go-lp Q] ¹not.know
‘I don’t know how many people will go.’

c. íⁿ [émé [ànà ¹ yàː-káng ñ] yàː-jú mà] ¹inè
1SgSbj [1PISbj [village¹ which?=Dat] go-lp Q] ¹not.know
‘I don’t know which village we will go to.’

d. íⁿ [bé [iné gè:] yèː-è: ma→] ¹inè
1SgSbj [3PISbj [what? for] go-Pfv PlSbj Q] ¹not.know
‘I don’t know why they went.’
14 Relativization

14.1 Basics of relative clauses

The following features characterize TgK relative clauses.

- the verb of the relative clause retains its basic inflectional category (aspect and negation);
- verbs in subject and nonsubject relatives are partially distinguished, primarily by tones;
- suffixal plural-subject marking (as in main clauses) is allowed in relatives wherever it is expressed by vocalic mutations in the regular suffix, but perfective plural-subject -sëⁿ is not allowed in relatives;
- there are no participial or relative morphemes as such, except that a perfective relative morpheme sëⁿ follows the verb in perfective positive subject (and, less often, nonsubject) relatives;
- the inner portion of the head NP, maximally noun, adjective, and numeral, occurs inside the relative clause in the relativization site, where it can have any grammatical function, but both the noun-adjective sequence and the numeral are simultaneously tone-dropped;
- the linear order of adjective and numeral is optionally inverted in the head NP when both are present (§6.4.2);
- if the head NP contains a possessor, the possessor is restructured as an appositional possessive (‘X’s thing’) preceding the head NP, which now has the same form as an unpossessed head NP;
- if the possessor itself is the head NP (‘the man whose house collapsed’), both the possessor NP and the possessed NP are tone-dropped;
- if the NP complement of a postposition is the head NP, both the head NP and the postposition are tone-dropped;
- demonstratives, plural bè, and ‘all’ quantifiers that are logically part of the head NP are separated from it and are positioned after the verb (bifurcation);
- in nonsubject relatives, a subject that denotes a specific referent is obligatorily expressed as a pronoun immediately before the verb, even if the subject is also expressed as a full NP in clause-initial position;
- the relative clause proper may be followed by an {L}-toned form of a noun that resumes or agrees with the head NP, namely human singular bàŋá ‘owner’, plural nà, and spatiotemporal nouns like niŋjiri’i ‘day’ and dēŋ ‘place’;
- in the absence of such an {L}-toned terminal element, in some inflectional categories (but not perfective or stative positive), the inflectional suffix itself drops to L-tone if not already L-toned, and the preceding stem shifts from /LH/ to {H}-tone; this happens in the imperfective positive (subject and nonsubject relatives), and in the perfective and imperfective negative (nonsubject relatives only); one can argue that the suffixal L-tone is related to the L-tone of terminal elements described just above;
- there is a special same-subject morpheme má used when the subject of a nonsubject (e.g. object) relative is coindexed with the subject of the main clause.
14.1.1 Coordinated relatives with a shared head

It is not possible to conjoin two relative clauses with a shared head. Instead, the first clause is expressed in the appropriate chaining or subordinated form, so that only the final clause is relativized. For example, in (422) the initial ‘spend night’ clause has pseudo-conditional form, so only the ‘pass’ clause is relativized as such.

(422) \( l^o \) [yèrìⁿL [nì [dà:ğá türü]]
1SgSbj [guestL [here night one]]
\( \text{hl} \) ná-è dè] gā-jú] iyè
\( \text{hl} \) spend.night-Pfv if] pass-Lpfv] want
‘I love a visitor who spends (=stays for) one night, then moves on.’

14.1.2 Tone-dropping in an unpossessed NP as head of relative clause

The NPs whose form in main clauses is shown in the left-hand column of (423) appear in the form shown in the middle column when they function as heads of relatives. Underlining in the middle column indicates tone-dropping that is specifically due to the relative clause, disregarding the tone-dropping of the noun in (423b) that already applies in the nonrelative form. In (423d), the order of the modifying adjective and the numeral is also optionally inverted.

(423) Tone-dropping in unpossessed head NP in relative clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>regular</th>
<th>relative head</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. noun</td>
<td>pèjú</td>
<td>pèjúL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. noun plus adjective</td>
<td>pèjúL márⁿā</td>
<td>[pèjú márⁿā]L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. noun plus numeral</td>
<td>pèjú kùrè:</td>
<td>[pèjú kùrè:]L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. noun plus adjective plus numeral</td>
<td>[pèjúL márⁿā] kùrè:</td>
<td>[pèjú kùrè: márⁿā]L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or:</td>
<td>[pèjú márⁿā kùrè:]L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of these NPs as relative heads are in (424). (424d) shows Adjective-Numeral Inversion (§6.4.2), which is common but not obligatory in relative-clause heads.

(424) a. pèjúL sheepL \( l^o \) 1SgSbj \( \text{hl} \) dårⁿ-é kill-Pfv.Rel
‘the sheep-Sg that I killed (slaughtered).’

b. [pèjú márⁿā]L [sheep big]L \( l^o \) 1SgSbj \( \text{hl} \) dårⁿ-é kill-Pfv Rela
‘the big sheep-Sg that I killed (slaughtered).’
The tonosyntactic brackets and superscripts in (424) are based on the assumption that the relative clause enforces tone-dropping on the entire head NP. Alternatively, one could first allow regular tonosyntax to apply, as in the left-hand column of (423), then have the relative clause complete the tonosyntactic operation by tone-dropping those words that were not already tone-dropped.

14.1.3 Addition of a possessor NP to a relative-clause head NP

A possessed NP functioning as relative-clause head is restructured as an appositional possessive of the type \([X \text{ kë}] Y\) ‘(the) Y of X’, literally ‘[X’s thing] Y’ with Y in apposition to ‘thing’; see §14.1.3. This applies both to nonappositional possessed NPs, elsewhere \([X \text{ [H]H Y}]\) except for 1Sg possessor \([Y \text{ mà}]\), and to appositional possessed NPs of the form \([Y \text{ [X \text{ kë}] X}]\). In other words, the distinction between appositional and nonappositional possessive constructions is neutralized in relative-clause head function. The restructuring also applies equally to possessed kin terms (classic inalienables) and to other possessed NPs. In relative-clause head NP function, the combination including \(1 \text{ kë}\) precedes rather than follows the main possessed NP.

Since \(kë\) is already L-toned we cannot determine if it would have been tone-dropped by the relative clause. The possessor NP itself (X in the formulae above) has its regular form (tonally and otherwise).

(425) Restructuring of possessed NP functioning as relative-clause head

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>regular</th>
<th>head NP</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. pronominal possessor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dë:(n) mà</td>
<td>(1 \text{ kë}) dë:(n)L</td>
<td>‘my elder same-sex sib’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gir‘f mà</td>
<td>(1 \text{ kë}) gir‘fL</td>
<td>‘my house’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gir‘f</td>
<td>(1 \text{ kë}) gir‘fL</td>
<td>‘your house’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ü (\text{ H isi})</td>
<td>(1 \text{ kë}) isiL</td>
<td>‘your-Sg dog’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. nonpronominal possessor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sè:ðà (\text{ H gir‘f’})</td>
<td>(1 \text{ kë}) gir‘fL</td>
<td>‘Seydou’s house’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The possessor in this appositional construction has no tonal effect on the possessum. That is, there are no tonosyntactic-island effects by which a possessor-possessum combination has its tones locked, so that a relative clause or a demonstrative cannot effect tone-dropping within the island.

Instead, in TgK the possessum as head of a relative undergoes tone-dropping (and optional reordering of adjective and numeral) in exactly the same way that it would have without the possessor. The relationship between regular and relative-head forms of
possessums, using ‘Seydou’ as possessor, is shown in (426). As before, underlining indexes tone-dropping due specifically to the relative clause (from the perspective of an unpossessed NP in its regular form). If we remove [sè:dú 1 kè] from the middle column, there would be no change in the possessum.

(426)  Tone-dropping in possessed head NP in relative clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>regular</th>
<th>relative head</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. noun</td>
<td>sè:dú ḃ péjú</td>
<td>[sè:dú 1 kè] pèjú L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. noun plus adjective</td>
<td>sè:dú ḃ [pèjú mār支柱]</td>
<td>[sè:dú 1 kè] [pèjú mār支柱] L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. noun plus numeral</td>
<td>sè:dú ḃ [pèjú kūrè:]</td>
<td>[sè:dú 1 kè] [pèjú kūrè:] L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. noun plus adjective plus numeral</td>
<td>sè:dú ḃ [pèjú mār支柱 kūrè:]</td>
<td>[sè:dú 1 kè] [pèjú mār支柱 kūrè:] L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or:</td>
<td></td>
<td>[sè:dú 1 kè] [pèjú kūrè: mār支柱] L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While true (referential) possessors have not been found directly preceding relative heads, the definite morpheme kó (originally possessive ‘its’ and still controlling a possessive-type overlay on the following noun) is attested in a relative head. The phrase kó H báŋá, originally ‘its (=that one’s) owner’ can mean ‘the fellow, the chap’, denoting a nonspecific discourse referent. Both words are tone-dropped as relative head in (427).

(427)  [[kò báŋá]L sè: yê:rò]  
[[Def owner]L thing accept-IpfvNeg.Rel]  
‘the guy who wouldn’t accept the thing’ (2011.1a.15)

14.1.4  Restrictions on the head noun in a relative clause

A personal pronoun may not directly head a relative. Instead, we get an autonomous relative clause containing ‘person’ or ‘owner’, with the pronoun on the margins in apposition.

(428)  émé [nàL nî yèrè sàª nà]  
1PLSbj [personL here come Pfv.Rel PI]  
(émé) yɔwɔ-lá:  
(1PLSbj) accept-PfvNeg.PLSbj  
‘We (the people) who have come here do not agree.’

14.1.5  Relative clause with conjoined NP as head

NPs are conjoined by juxtaposition, with dying-quail intonation (final syllable prolonged, with declining pitch unless already L-toned), see §7.1.1. It is possible for the conjoined NP as
a whole to function as head NP of a relative. In this case, both conjuncts are subject to tone-dropping (unlike the usual situation in Jamsay, for example). The dying-quail intonation persists, but since the nouns are now {L}-toned the only audible effect of this intonation is prolongation. The verb can be morphologically plural, and the relative-clause final plural morpheme nà is used, even in (429b) where the conjuncts are individually singular.

(429)  

a. [àrⁿà. ŋè.:.] já jày-é-è:-sèⁿ
[man. & woman. &] fight(n) fight-MP-Pfv-PlSbj
‘A man and a woman had a fight (squabble).’

b. [àrⁿà à ŋè→] kê jày-é-è: sàⁿ nà
[man. & woman. &] Pl fight(n) fight-MP PfV.ReI Pl
‘the man and the woman who had the fight’

Expressions with double plural bè like ‘men and women’ in (430a) that usually do not have an audible dying-quail effect also undergo tone-dropping as relative head (430b). It is not possible to determine whether plural bè, which is already L-toned, would have undergone tone-dropping.

(430)  

a. [àrⁿa bè] [nè bè] jà jày-é-è:-sèⁿ
[man PI] [woman PI] fight(n) fight-MP-Pfv-PlSbj
‘The men and the women had a squabble.’

b. [àrⁿà bè] [nè bè] jà jày-é-è: sàⁿ nà
[man PI] [woman PI] Pl
fight(n) fight-MP-Pfv PfV.ReI Pl
‘the men and the women who had a fight’

14.1.6 Headless relative clause

Elicitation attempts suggested that headless relatives are not readily allowed. At least a semantically light head noun (‘person’, ‘thing’, ‘place’, etc.) appeared in elicited examples, even in most adverbial relatives. However, a relative clause with no overt internal head is possible in adverbial clauses, see §15.5.3.

14.1.7 Resumptive {L}-toned element after relative

In this construction, which appears to occur chiefly in temporal, spatial, and manner adverbial clauses, the head NP (‘time’, ‘place’, ‘manner’ or the like) occurs as usual inside the relative clause, but a resumptive copy in {L}-toned form also appears after the relative clause (i.e. after the verb). The {L} tone pattern suggests that the copied noun may have originally been treated (tono-)syntactically as “possessed,” but synchronically this is less apparent in TgK than in the other Dogon languages that allow such resumptive copies, since the common possessor-controlled overlays in TgK are {H} and {HL}, with {L} limited to two common nouns (§6.2.1.3). So TgK native speakers are free to reanalyse the construction in other ways, possibly as a surface-y copying process (since the clause-internal head noun is also tone-dropped).
Examples with ‘day’ are in (431). For more examples of this general pattern see §15.3 (temporal adverbial clauses), §15.5.1 (spatial adverbial clauses), and §15.5.2 (manner adverbial clauses).

(431) a. \[nìŋìrⁿì \text{L} \quad ú \quad \text{M} \text{yérë} \quad \text{L} \text{nìŋirⁿì} \]
    \[\text{day} \text{L} \quad 2\text{SgSbj} \quad \text{come.Pfv} \quad \text{L} \text{day}\]
    ‘(on) the day when you-Sg came’

b. \[nìŋìrⁿì \text{L} \quad \text{yérë} \quad ú \quad \text{L} \text{bè-jiù} \quad \text{L} \text{nìŋirⁿì} \]
    \[\text{day} \text{L} \quad \text{come} \quad 2\text{SgSbj} \quad \text{get-Ipfv} \quad \text{L} \text{day}\]
    ‘(on) the day when you-Sg can come’

I have one elicited example, (432), with the same meaning as (431b), where a linking morpheme mà appears between the verb and the resumptive copy.

(432) \[nìŋìrⁿì \text{L} \quad \text{yérë} \quad ú \quad \text{L} \text{bè-jiù} \quad \text{L} \text{nìŋirⁿì} \]
    \[\text{day} \text{L} \quad \text{come} \quad 2\text{SgSbj} \quad \text{get-Ipfv} \quad \text{L} \text{day}\]
    ‘(on) the day when you-Sg can come’

In Jamsay, where mà is the alienable possessive morpheme, its regular presence before the resumptive copy confirms the synchronic nature of the construction as possessive: “(the) day of [the day when you can come].” In TgK, by contrast, it is difficult to assign a function to this infrequently occurring mà, or to determine its connection (if any) to the use of H-toned mà connecting a nonsubject relative to a main clause with a shared subject (§14.1.10). It can hardly be directly equated to 1Sg possessor mà, unless the latter is taken as a default possessor.

The adverbial relative type with copied head noun is structurally parallel to a relative type with a postverbal {L}-toned noun or particle that agrees with, but is not lexically identical to or synonymous with, the internal head. This includes relatives with postverbal \( \text{L} \text{bàŋà} \) ‘owner’ for singular human head, \( \text{mà} \) for plural head, or \( \text{L} \text{dày} \) ‘all’. Examples of all three are in (442b-d) in §14.1.9.1. Also belonging here are manner adverbial relatives ending in \( \text{gi} \) ‘like’, since \( \text{gi} \) ‘like’ is rather noun-like; see (202) in §8.4.1.

Postpositions can be added to the relative clause plus \{L\}-toned final element.

(433) a. \[nà \text{L} \quad \text{yérë} \quad \text{sà} \quad \text{bàŋà} \text{= nà}\]
    \[\text{person} \quad \text{come} \quad \text{Pfv.Rel} \quad \text{owner}\text{=}\text{Dat}\]
    ‘to the person who came’

b. \[nà \text{L} \quad \text{yérë} \quad \text{sà} \quad \text{nà} \text{= nà}\]
    \[\text{person} \quad \text{come} \quad \text{Pfv.Rel} \quad \text{PI}\text{=}\text{Dat}\]
    ‘to the people who came’

However, in (450f) in §14.1.9.2, a postposition bè is added to the postverbal noun, and in this construction instead of \{L\}-toned \( \text{tèpé} \) ‘time’ we find \{H\}-toned \( \text{tèpè} \), which is the regular tone overlay for a possessed \text{CVCV} noun. This is an indication that this noun retains something of its original syntactic character as a possessed noun. Compare (205) in §8.4.3.1.
14.1.8 Preverbal subject pronominal in relative clause

When the head NP is other than the subject of the relative clause, the subject must be expressed by an immediately preverbal proclitic subject pronoun, provided that it denotes a specific referent (434b). It has the same form as a clause-initial subject pronoun in a main clause (434a). In particular, the 1Sg form is íⁿ in both cases. The subject pronoun is required even when a fuller subject NP has already appeared clause-initially (434c).

(434) a. íⁿ yá: péjú dårⁿ-é
   1SgSbj yesterday sheep kill-Pfv
   ‘I killed (=slaughtered) a sheep yesterday.’

b. yá: péjúⁿ iⁿ H dårⁿ-é
   yesterday sheep¹ 1SgSbj H kill-Pfv
   ‘the sheep-Sg that I killed yesterday’

c. sè:dú yá: péjúⁿ wó H dårⁿ-é
   S yesterday sheep¹ 3SgSbj H kill-Pfv
   ‘the sheep-Sg that Seydou killed yesterday’

In main clauses, verbs are optionally marked for plurality of subject. In relative clauses, it would seem to be unnecessary to mark plurality in the verb since this information is already given elsewhere in the clause. In nonsubject relatives, as just indicated, an overt subject proclitic is obligatory. In subject relatives, the subject normally appears as a tone-dropped overt head NP, and (for human heads) plurality is marked by clause-final particle nà. However, plural-subject marking within the verb itself does occur in relatives. This is clearly the case with (perfective and imperfective) negative verbs, and with the progressive, all of which express subject plurality by vocalic mutations. It may also be the case with the imperfective (positive), but the difficulty of distinguishing -ju from plural-subject -ji (with H- or L-tones) makes this less certain. On the other hand, in the perfective (positive), the plural-subject suffix -sɛⁿ is not used in relatives, most likely because it occupies the same slot as the (perhaps historically related) perfective relative sáⁿ found chiefly in subject relatives. So main clause (435a) loses its -sɛⁿ suffix in relatives (435b).

(435) a. bé yá: péjú dårⁿá-sɛⁿ
   3PlSbj yesterday sheep kill-Pfv.PlSbj
   ‘They killed (=slaughtered) a sheep.’

b. yá: péjúⁿ bé H dårⁿ-é (#dårⁿá-sɛⁿ)
   yesterday sheep¹ 3PlSbj H kill-Pfv
   ‘the sheep-Sg that they killed yesterday’

14.1.9 Relative-clause verb

The following sections describe the form of the verb in relative clauses. The primary inflectional categories in main clauses (perfective/imperfective, positive/negative) are maintained in relative clauses. Given the general lack of suffixal morphology for nouns and pronouns in TgK, it is difficult to determine whether the verb in a relative clause is basically a verb or an adjective.
(436) is a brief summary of the data for the main inflectional categories that are given in more depth in the following sections. There are additional tonal changes on the stems from main clause to relative clause, except in the imperfective negative.

(436) Relative-clause verb (S = subject relative, NS = nonsubject relative)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>category</th>
<th>relative clause</th>
<th>main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perfective</td>
<td></td>
<td>sáⁿ (S) -e ~ -e ~ -i, plural sëⁿ ~ sëⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-e ~ -e ~ -i (NS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfective</td>
<td></td>
<td>-jú ~ -jù</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-jú, plural -jé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfective negative</td>
<td></td>
<td>-lí, plural -lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-lí, plural -lâ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfective negative</td>
<td></td>
<td>-rò, plural -rè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-rò, plural -rè</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.1.9.1 Positive perfective-system verbs in relative clauses

The suffixed plural-subject perfective forms in (-ë-)sëⁿ that occur in main clauses are not possible in relatives. In perfective nonsubject relatives, the perfective has its regular form segmentally, but with an {H} tone overlay. Nonsubject relatives from verbs whose perfectives end in {-e ~ -e} are exemplified in (437). The corresponding main-clause perfective form is shown in parentheses. Since the main-clause plural-subject suffix -sëⁿ is not allowed in relatives, these verbs cannot be marked for plurality.

(437) Perfective nonsubject relatives with final -ë ~ -ë

a. nà¹ L 1SgSbj H 5-ë  Pl
   person H see-Pfv.Rel
   ‘the people that I saw’ (5-ë)

b. nàŋà¹ L 1SgSbj H pág-ë
   cow H tie-Pfv.Rel
   ‘the cow that I tied’ (pág-ë)

c. tůwò¹ L 1SgSbj H dág-ë
   stone H leave-Pfv.Rel
   ‘the stone that I left’ (dág-ë)

d. [ʒɔ̀] ge:ɔ² L 3PlSbj H dág-ë
   [thing for] H leave-Pfv.Rel
   ‘the thing (=reason) for which they have abandoned (it)’ (2011.1a.15) (dág-ë)

e. [ûpùrùú] [ú HL háklél], pà¹ L H dš-ë
   [question [2SgPoss HL mind], place H arrive-Pfv.Rel
   ‘a question where your-Sg mind has arrived’ (2011.1a.17) (dš-ë)

f. pà¹ L 1SgSbj H nàŋ-ë
   place H forget.Pfv.Rel
   also ‘any place (=topic) that I have forgotten’ (2011.1a.17) (nàŋ-ë)
g.  \([\text{bà}^{1L} \quad \text{bé} \quad \text{H}\text{bir-e}] \quad \text{gi:}^{a}\)  
\([\text{manner}^{k} \quad \text{3PISbj} \quad \text{Hdo-Pfv.Rel}] \quad \text{like}\)  
‘the (same) way they did’ (2011.1a.25) (\text{biré})

h.  \([\text{nàjù} \quad \text{pà}^{L} \quad \text{kó} \quad \text{Hgò-é} \quad \text{kà:}^{a}] \quad \text{míè}\)  
\([\text{song} \quad \text{place}^{L} \quad \text{NonhSbj} \quad \text{Hgo.out-Pfv.Rel} \quad \text{even}] \quad \text{1not.know}\)  
‘(They) didn’t even know where the song came from’ (2011.1b.03) (\text{gò-é})

Nonsubject relatives with verbs whose perfective ends in a high vowel are in (438). Again, suffix \(-sē^{a}\) is not allowed, but the augment \(-è\): that in main clauses precedes \(-sē^{a}\) can indicate subject plurality (438c).

(438) Perfective nonsubject relatives with final high vowel

a.  \(\text{bà}^{1L} \quad i^{a} \quad \text{Hpór-í}\)  
\([\text{manner}^{k} \quad \text{1SgSbj} \quad \text{Hspeak-Pfv.Rel}]\)  
‘the way I spoke’ (2011.1a.02) (\text{pór-í})

b.  \(\text{jó} \rightarrow \quad \text{pà}^{L} \quad \text{ú} \quad \text{Hmò:-n-ú}\)  
\(\text{a.lot} \quad \text{place}^{L} \quad \text{2SgSbj} \quad \text{Hassemble-Caus-Pfv.Rel}\)  
‘the place where you-Sg have gathered together a lot (of it)’ (2011.1a.11) (\text{mò:-n-ú})

c.  \(\text{nè:} \quad \text{[sà]:} \quad \text{jò:}^{L} \quad \text{émé} \quad \text{Hpór-rè}\)  
\(\text{now} \quad \text{[thing} \quad \text{many}]^{L} \quad \text{1PISbj} \quad \text{Hspeak-Pfv.PISbj.Rel}\)  
‘the many things that we have spoken of’ (2011.1a.32)

A more systematic presentation of the verb forms is (439).

(439) Verbs in perfective nonsubject relative clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>main clause</th>
<th>nonsubject relative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. monosyllabic with -e/-è</td>
<td>(\text{HL/ to {H}})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\(\text{ó-è} \quad \text{Hó-è}\)  
‘give’
\(\text{á-è} \quad \text{Há-è}\)  
‘catch’  
\(\text{HL/ to \{H\}}\) | 
\(\text{é-è} \quad \text{Hé-è}\)  
‘see’
\(\text{nà-è} \quad \text{Hnà-è}\)  
‘drink’

b. monosyllabic with -y | \(\text{HL/ to \{H\}}\) |  
\(\text{pí-ýn} \quad \text{Hpí-ýn}\)  
‘eat (meal)’
\(\text{nú-ýn} \quad \text{Hnù-ýn}\)  
‘go in’
\(\text{HL/ to \{H\}, no -y} \) | 
\(\text{jé-ý} \quad \text{Hjé}\)  
‘take away’
\(\text{HL/ to \{H\}, no -y} \) | 
\(\text{ýé-ý} \quad \text{Hyé}\)  
‘go’
c. bisyllabic

/HL/ to {H}

 pá-ɡè H pá-ɡé ‘tie’

/LHL/ to {H}

dáɡ-è H dáɡ-è ‘leave’

/LHL/ to {H}

ɡúŋ-ì H ɡúŋ-ì ‘take out’

bá:r-ì H bá:r-ì ‘send’

d. trisyllabic

/HL/ to {H}

súnú-g-ì H súnú-g-ì ‘take down’

/LHL/ to {H}

ɲúŋú-g-ì H ɲúŋú-g-ì ‘ruin’

As shown just below, a morpheme sáⁿ is obligatory in perfective subject relatives. Rarely, a perfective nonsubject relative includes this morpheme after the verb, which has bare-stem form. The only nonsubject example I have, (440), occurred in elicitation, in a spatial adverbial clause (§15.5.1) with a following tone-dropped terminal noun (‘place’).

(440)  [[nàŋa nà L bàɡá sáⁿ L dèn] yà:]

[[cow place fall Pvf.Rel 1place] go.Imprt ‘Go-2Sg to the place where the cow fell!’

(also [nàŋa nà L bàɡ-é L dèn])

In perfective subject relatives, the verb is followed by perfective relative sáⁿ. This and same-subject mà are the only specifically relative morphemes in any inflectional category. sáⁿ is obscurely related to perfective plural-subject morpheme -sêⁿ, and (even more distantly) to the ‘have’ quasi-verb sà (and variants). Care should be taken to distinguish perfective relative sáⁿ from universal quantifier sâⁿ:ⁿ ‘all’ (long vowel) and from reflexive sǎⁿ (<LH> tone).

Cv: and most CvCv stems add sáⁿ to the bare stem, which always ends in an H-tone. Lexical tones, /H/ versus /LH/, are respected.

(441)  Perfective subject relatives, sáⁿ added to bare stem

a.  nà L yèrè L sáⁿ

person come Pvf.Rel
‘the person who came’

(less often extended as: nà yèrè sáⁿ bànjà)

b.  nà L yèrè L sáⁿ nà

person come Pvf.Rel Pl
‘the people who came’

c.  tôwò L bàɡá L sáⁿ

stone fall Pvf.Rel
‘the stone that fell (off)’
d. \(\text{kà:ná [nù:] kàná} \ yèr-ɛ:\ \text{émé} \ \text{témé} \ \text{sá}^n\)
   now \(\text{[millet}^l \ \text{new}] \ \text{come-and.SS} \ \text{IPIObj} \ \text{find} \ \text{Pfv.Rel} \)
   ‘Now the new (kind of) millet that came and found us (=that was introduced recently)’ (2011.1a.07)

e. \(\text{àr}^a-\text{ùr}^u \ [nù:] \ \text{nà} \ \text{sá}^n\)
   \(\text{boy}^l \ \text{woman} \ \text{take} \ \text{Pfv.Rel} \ \text{Pl} \)
   ‘boys who have taken a woman’ (i.e. married men) (2011.1a.14)

For the plural \(\text{sá}^n \ \text{nà}\), another speaker gave a variant \(\text{sé nà}\), with \(\text{e-} \)vowel marking plurality, as in several verb inflectional suffixes.

Verbs whose bare stem and (main-clause) perfective end in a high vowel, including all heavy stems (trimoraic and longer) as well as some \(\text{CvCv}\) stems, plus all extra-short \(\text{Cv}\) stems, have \(\text{-ɛ̀: sá}^n\) regardless of subject number (442a-e). Compare plural-subject perfective \(\text{-ɛ̀: sé}^n\) for the same verbs (with the same tones), and plural-subject \(\text{-ɛ̀:}\) in perfective nonsubject relatives. Prepausally, \(\text{-ɛ̀: sá}^n\) is heard as \(\text{-ɛ̀: sà}^n\), with the \(\text{L-}\) tone extended into the particle (442a), but the \(\text{H-}\) tone is restored (\(\text{-ɛ̀: sá}^n\)) when there is a following \(\text{L-}\) toned terminal element (442b-e).

(442)  Perfective relatives, \(\text{-ɛ̀: sá}^n\) (\(\text{-ɛ̀: sà}^n\) before terminal element)

a. \(\text{nà}^l \ \text{kó} \ \text{pór-ɛ̀:} \ \text{sá}^n\)
   \(\text{person}^l \ \text{NonhObj} \ \text{say-Pfv} \ \text{Pfv.Rel} \)
   ‘the person who said that’

b. \([\text{sàjù}^l \ \text{kír-ɛ̀:} \ \text{sá}^n\] \ \text{dày}^n\)
   \([\text{bird}^l \ \text{fly-Pfv} \ \text{Pfv.Rel} \ \text{all} \)
   ‘all the birds that flew away’

c. \([\text{nà} \ \text{gìr}^q \ \text{nùnú-g-ɛ̀:} \ \text{sá}^n\] \ \text{l.bàŋà}\)
   \([\text{person}^l \ \text{house} \ \text{be.ruined-Caus-and.SS} \ \text{Pfv.Rel} \ \text{l.owner} \)
   ‘the person who ruined the house’

d. \([\text{nà}^l \ \text{gìr}^q \ \text{nùnú-g-ɛ̀:} \ \text{sá}^n\] \ \text{nà}\)
   \([\text{person}^l \ \text{house} \ \text{be.ruined-Caus-and.SS} \ \text{Pfv.Rel} \ \text{Pl} \)
   ‘the people who ruined the house’

e. \([\text{nà}^l \ \text{yò:} \ \text{pór-ɛ̀:} \ \text{sá}^n\] \ \text{l.bàŋà}\)
   \([\text{person}^l \ \text{NearDist} \ \text{say-and.SS} \ \text{Pfv.Rel} \ \text{l.owner} \)
   ‘the person who said that’
   (\(\text{pór-i}\) rejected in this context)

Table (443) presents the verb forms more systematically.
Verbs in perfective subject relative clauses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular</th>
<th>In Subject Relative</th>
<th>Bare Stem</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Cv with -è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>lexically /H/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó-è</td>
<td>ó-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>ó</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú-ỳⁿ</td>
<td>nú-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>nú</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lexically /HL/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé-ý</td>
<td>jé-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>jé</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lexically /LH/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yé-ý</td>
<td>yé-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>yé</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Cv: with bare stem plus sà⁰</td>
<td>lexically /H/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pí-ỳⁿ</td>
<td>pí: sà⁰</td>
<td>pí:</td>
<td>‘eat (meal)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>á-è</td>
<td>á: sà⁰</td>
<td>á:</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lexically /LH/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ-è</td>
<td>ñ: sà⁰</td>
<td>ñ:</td>
<td>‘see’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nñ-è</td>
<td>nñ: sà⁰</td>
<td>nñ:</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. bisyllabic ending in nonhigh vowel, with bare stem plus sà⁰</td>
<td>lexically /H/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pág-è</td>
<td>págá sà⁰</td>
<td>págá</td>
<td>‘tie’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lexically /LH/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dág-è</td>
<td>dágá sà⁰</td>
<td>dágá</td>
<td>‘leave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. bisyllabic ending in high vowel, with -è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>lexically /H/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pór-i</td>
<td>pór-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>pórù</td>
<td>‘say’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lexically /LH/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gùŋ-ì</td>
<td>gùŋ-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>gùŋ</td>
<td>‘take out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bā:-r-ì</td>
<td>bā:-r-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>bā:-rì</td>
<td>‘send’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. trisyllabic, with -è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>lexically /H/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūnú-ɣ-i</td>
<td>sūnú-ɣ-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>sūnú-ɣì</td>
<td>‘take down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lexically /LH/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋùnú-ɣ-i</td>
<td>ŋùnú-ɣ-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>ŋùnú-ɣì</td>
<td>‘ruin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. mediopassive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kír-i</td>
<td>kír-è: sà⁰ (~ sà⁰)</td>
<td>kír-ì</td>
<td>‘jump’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As in other inflectional categories, the verb of a perfective relative clause may be immediately followed by a {L}-toned terminal element. The common ones are human singular {L}bàŋà, plural {L}nà, {L}dày-’all’, near-distant demonstrative {L}yò; and {L}-toned nouns (‘day’, ‘place’, etc.) in spatiotemporal and manner adverbial clauses. The one restriction is that human singular {L}bàŋà is generally omitted after sà⁰ in subject relatives, see (441) above. An informant grudgingly accepted sà⁰ {L}bàŋà as grammatical but I have no examples from
texts or free elicitation. However, its plural *sá* *nà* is regular. Examples with terminal elements are in (444).

(444) a. \( \text{nà}^\text{L} \quad \text{i}^\text{m} \quad \text{H}sùmù-g-ǐ \quad \text{nà} \)
person\(^{L}\) 1SG\(n\)bj \(\text{H}g\)o.\(d\)own-Caus-\(Pf\v\)Rel \(\text{Pl}\)
‘the people that I brought down’

b. \( \text{nà}^\text{L} \quad \text{i}^\text{m} \quad \text{H}sùmù-g-ǐ \quad \text{yà}: \)
person\(^{L}\) 1SG\(n\)bj \(\text{H}g\)o.\(d\)own-Caus-\(Pf\v\)Rel \(\text{l}^\text{NearDist}\)
‘that person that I brought down’

c. \( [\text{nìŋ}^\text{m} \text{Ir}^\text{m} \text{L}] \quad \text{i}^\text{m} \quad \text{H}yér-ě \quad \text{l}^\text{nìŋ}^\text{m} \text{Ir}^\text{m} \text{L} \quad \text{day} \)
[day\(^{L}\) 1SG\(n\)bj \(\text{H}c\)ome-\(Pf\v\)Rel] \(\text{l}^\text{day}\)
‘the day when I came’

Except in spatiotemporal and manner adverbials like (444c), there is no default terminal element after a nonsubject (e.g. object) relative with nonhuman head NP, though for such nouns plurality is optionally expressed by *nà* as for humans.

The experiential perfect (-\( t\)ě-\( j\)ě) can also be relativized. A subject relative is in (445).

(445) \( [\text{nà}^\text{L} \quad \text{bàmàkɔ} \quad \text{yà}:\text{-H}tě-\text{jě}] \quad \text{l}^\text{bàŋà} \)
[person\(^{L}\) B \(\text{g}o.\text{HExp\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v\v..
Nonsubject imperfective relatives, /H/-toned stem

a. ę:réὲ-[bùgùj-ú] bé pó-jù +L
   peanut-[turn.over.earth-VblN] 3PlSbj say-Lpvf.Rel +L
   ‘what they say (=call) “turning over (earth) for peanuts” ’ (2012.1a.20)

b. jù +L iⁿ pó-jù +L
   place 1SgSbj speak-Lpvf.Rel +L
   ‘the place (=topic) that I am speaking (=asking about) ’ (2011.1a.02)

c. [fè:réὲ-wòrú bìn] bé páŋá-jù +L
   peanut-field in 3PlSbj crossplant-Lpvf.Rel +L
   [kò [l[yà:-kɔ̀]-tògí]=:] [NonhSbj [[which?]L-type]=it.is]
   ‘What they cross-plant in the peanut field, what type (of roselle) is it?’
   (2011.1a.26)

d. [tògùrú bìn] bé kún ɔ̀-ɲù +L
   basket in 3PlSbj put-Lpvf.Rel +L
   ‘(the way) they put (millet) in a basket’ (2011.1a.13)

e. ù=ǹ uppùrù +L iⁿ uppùrùs-ɲù +L
   2Sg=Dat question 1SgSbj inquire-Lpvf.Rel +L
   ‘the question that I will ask of you-Sg’ (2011.1a.29)

f. né: pùrù +L [kò bè] bé téré-jù +L
   now cream.of.millet [Nonh with] 3PlSbj pound-Lpvf.Rel +L
   ‘(the type) such that they pound (and cook) cream of millet with it (they call it …’)
   (2011.1a.27)

g. mù +L [wòrú bìn] bé páŋá-jù +L
   cow.pea-field in 3PlSbj crossplant-Lpvf.Rel +L
   ‘the cow-peas that they cross-plant in the field, …’ (2011.1a.29)

Clause-final word-level tone-dropping does not seem to be common in relative forms of /H/-toned verbs, but it does occur in (447), with a monosyllabic verb stem.

(447) [kè: bà→ ] [sɔ̀aL nà 1:`-jù] y₅ k₃
   [formerly] [horseL person 1catch-Lpfv] Exist be.NonhSbj
   ‘Formerly, there were horse(-men) who captured people.’ (2011.1b.01) (< ɑ:-jù)

When such an imperfective relative verb is followed by an {L}-toned terminal element, the suffix is raised to H-toned -jù ~ -ɲù (448). See also (450) below.

(448) a. [nàL bé lágá-jù +H] 1bàŋà
   [person 3PlSbj hit-Lpvf.Rel +H] 1owner
   ‘the person who(m) they will hit’
b. [núŋú ɲáL wó núŋš-núH] 1Ldēŋ
[song placeL 3SgSbj sing-IPv.ＲｅｌH] 1place
‘the place where he sings’

\[\text{\[nú: báL ë [lê-]:júH\}}\]
[millet mannerL 2PISbj slash.earth-IPv.ＲｅｌH] 1like
‘like the way you-Pl slash (=plant) millet’ (2011.1a.30)

c. [nú: báL wó pó-júH] 1LH
[mannerL 3SgSbj say-IPv.ＲｅｌH] 1like
‘the way she was saying’ (2011.1b.03)

A possible historical explanation for the final-syllable tone alternations is that the final L-tones in (446) above were generalized from the tonal definite, and that the terminal elements in (448) were incompatible with such definite marking. But this cannot be extended to perfective positive relative verbs (which end in H-tones), or even to other imperfective forms (see below), so it will not work as a general synchronic analysis.

The tonal treatment of imperfective relative verbs from lexically /LH/-toned stems is more variable. There are two basic treatments, one of which is also subject to two further contingent modifications, for a total of four output possibilities.

The first treatment is to keep the /LH/ melody for verb stems of more than two moras, followed by an H-toned imperfective suffix regardless of syntactic context. Prosodically light /LH/-toned stems (CV, CVC, CVCV) get an {H} overlay, plus the same H-toned suffix.

The second treatment applies to ordinary imperfective relatives clauses, i.e. those with more or less referential subjects. This pattern differs from that just described for instrumental like the way you-Pl slash.earth-milled (2011.1a.30)

In my data, prosodically light (up to two moras) /LH/-toned stems are always tone-dropped except in very short relative clauses as in (449e) with just a head noun and a pronominal subject.

\[(449)\]

a. [nàL 1Lyè wògòtòrò bé nùnù-gô-jùL]
[placeL 1Lgo cart 3PISbj be.ruined-Caus-IPv.ＲｅｌL]
‘the place where they ruin carts’

b. [nàL 1Lyè ū mì:nš-jùL]
[placeL 1Lgo 2PISbj assemble-Caus-IPv.ＲｅｌL]
‘the place where you-Pl go and assemble (them)’ (2011.1a.12)

c. [nàL [nàL tínnšH]
[placeL [one.LocH] 3PISbj assemble-Caus-IPv.ＲｅｌL]
‘the place where they collect (the roselle) in one spot’ (2011.1a.28)
d. \( \text{nà}^L \text{ bë}^L \text{ h₃-nù}^L \)  
place\(3\text{PLSbj}\) h\text{drink-Ipfv.Rel}^L 
‘the place where they drink’

e. \( \text{lò:tù}^L \text{ bë}^L \text{ dágá-jù}^L \)  
hairstyle\(3\text{PLSbj}\) h\text{leave-Ipfv.Rel}^L 
‘the crest that they leave (in braiding hair)’ (2011.1b.03)

(448) above showed that a following \{L\}-toned terminal element induces the imperfective suffix to shift back to H-tone. Further examples of this are (450a-b). The same tone pattern occurs before a universal quantifier (450c), same-subject m\(á\) (450d), or a postposition (450f).

(450) a. \[ \text{gìr}ⁿ \text{ bà}ⁿ^L \text{ kó}^H \text{ yé-jù}^{+H} \]  
[house manner\(^L\) Nonh\(^Sbj\) h\text{come-Ipfv.Rel}^{+H}] \text{ dàwùrù} 
‘the solution (=technique) by which it (=millet) will come to the houses’ (2011.1a.13) (\text{yé-jù} from \text{yèrè})

b. \[ \text{bà}ⁿ^L \text{ wá-jù}^{+H} \]  
[manner\(^L\) h\text{do.farming-Ipfv.Rel}^{+H}] \text{ dày}ⁿ 
‘the same way (you) farm groundnuts’ (2011.1a.20) (stem \text{wàrà})

c. \[ \text{dà:ɡà}ⁿ \text{ dè:-jù}^{+H} \]  
[night\(^L\) h\text{night.fall-Ipfv.Rel}^{+H}] \text{ wò}→ 
‘(on) each night that fell’ (2011.1a.15) (stem \text{dè})

d. \[ \text{ú}^L \text{ g₃-pù}^{+H} \text{ má} \]  
[2\text{SgSbj} be.able-Ipfv.Rel^{+H} Rel.\text{SS}] \text{ dày}ⁿ 
‘all that (=as much as) you-\text{Sg} could (carry) of it (=millet)’ (2011.1a.13) (for \text{má}, see §14.1.10) (stem \text{g₃-rⁿ})

e. \[ \text{é:xé} \text{ bà}ⁿ^L \text{ bùɡújó-jù}^{+H} \]  
[peanut/groundnut manner\(^L\) turn.\text{over-Ipfv.Rel}^{+H}] \text{ gi}ⁿ 
‘the (same) way (they) turn over (earth) (for) nuts’ (2011.1a.23)

f. \[ \text{ɡú-ɡúrù} \text{ bë} \text{ mòmò-jù}^{+H} \]  
[grass 3\text{PLSbj} uproot-Ipfv.Rel^{+H}] \text{ tèně} \text{ bë} 
‘at the time when they are uprooting the weeds’ (2011.1a.20)

On the other hand, an /LH/-toned verb often appears in imperfective relatives in tone-dropped form (451). This is the usual output for prosodically light /LH/-toned stems (C\(\text{̆}V\), C\(\text{̆}C\)\(\text{̆}V\)) in the absence of a terminal \{L\}-toned element, though it is also attested before \text{gi}ⁿ ‘like’ and (possessed) \text{gi}ⁿ-k\(\text{à}\) ‘something like’ (451e-f). Since clause-final tone-dropping of imperfective (and other) verbs also happens in main clauses, and since it is optional (though frequent) in both main and relative clauses, I regard this as a lower-level tone-dropping process.
Nonsubject imperfective relative, \{L\}-toned from lexical /LH/ 

a. \(wářú\) \(\text{bà}^{aL}\) \(\text{wà-}jú\) \(\text{farming manner}^{L} \text{do.farming-Ipfv.Rel}\) ‘the way one does farming’ (2011.1a.01) (\(wá-\)jú from \(wàřú\))

b. \(jù:\) \(\text{[sà}^{a} \text{Hjám]} \text{bà}^{nL} \text{kó}^{L} \text{bè-}jú\) \(\text{millet [ReflPoss } \text{peace manner}^{L} \text{NonhSbj \get-Ipfv.Rel}\) ‘Millet, the way it gets its well-being’ (2011.1a.04) (\(bè-\)jú from \(bèrè\))

c. \(jù^{L} \text{únr}^{a} \text{ú}^{L} \text{bè-}jú\) \(\text{place}^{L} \text{ask} \text{2SgSbj \get-Ipfv.Rel}\) ‘a place (=topic) that you can ask about’ (2011.1a.17) (\(bè-\)jú imperfective of \(bèrè\))

d. \(sàjú\) \(\text{bé}^{L} \text{dìg}^{L} \text{bè-}jú\) \(\text{bird} \text{3PlSbj \chase.out-Ipfv.Rel}\) ‘as they drive the birds away’ (headless) (2011.1a.07) (\(dìg-\)jú)

e. \([ùr^{H}\text{dág-à} \text{sà:}^{L} \text{jùg}^{H} \text{kà}^{a}\text{HL} \text{gì:}^{a}\text{HL}\text{sth.like}\) \(\text{[children}^{L} \text{a.little thing}^{L} \text{know-Ipfv.Rel] \text{HL} \text{sth.like}\) ‘(those) children who have something like awareness (=maturity)’ (2011.1a.07) (\(jùg-\)jù)

f. \([à\text{ɲú}^{L} \text{jà:ñ}^{L} \text{bé}^{L} \text{nà:}^{L} \text{nù}\text{HL} \text{gi}^{a}\text{HL}\text{drin}\) \(\text{[roselle}^{L} \text{boil} \text{3PlSbj \drink.Ipfv.Rel] \text{like}\) ‘the roselle that they boil and drink’ (2011.1a.27) (\(nà\))

g. \([ùr^{L} \text{ù}\text{ì:}^{a}\text{ì:}^{L} \text{dág-}jú\text{kà:}^{L}\text{rà}:\text{HL} \text{sth.like}\) \(\text{[thing}^{L} \text{1PlSbj \leave-Ipfv.Rel} \text{be.NonhSbj-Neg}\) ‘There is nothing that we are omitting.’ (2011.1a.32)

Given this analysis, I conclude that the basic imperfective relative forms for /LH/-toned verb stems are \{LH\}-toned heavy stem and \{H\}-toned light stem, plus L-toned suffix. Representative examples for both /H/- and /LH/-toned verbs are in (452).

Verbs in imperfective nonsubject relatives

a. monosyllabic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lexical /H/ to {H}+L</th>
<th>imperfective relative</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ò) (\text{-jú}^{L})</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ά:) (\text{-jú}^{L})</td>
<td>‘catch’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nì:) (\text{nì-jú}^{L})</td>
<td>‘eat (meal)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lexical /LH/ to {H}+L</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ò:) (\text{-jú}^{L})</td>
<td>‘see’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nò:) (\text{nò-jú}^{L})</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lexical /HL/ to {HL}+L</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(jè (jà:)) (jà-\text{jú}^{L})</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. bisyllabic

**lexical /H/ to \{H\}+L**

- págá
  - págá-ju
    - ‘tie’

- wáh
  - wáná-ju
    - ‘fry in oil’

- dáká
  - dá-gá-ju
    - ‘leave’

- dá‘á
  - dá-ju
    - ‘kill’ (rv-Deletion)

**lexical /HL/ to \{H\}+L**

- gúj
  - gún-ju
    - ‘take out’

- bá:ri
  - bá:ra-ju
    - ‘send’

- m̀ñ-Ø
  - m̀ñ-ju
    - ‘assemble [tr]’

c. trisyllabic

**lexical /HL/ to \{H\}+L**

- súñú-gi
  - súnú-gó-ju
    - ‘take down’

**lexical /LHL/ to \{LH\}+L**

- ñúñú-gi
  - ñùnú-gó-ju
    - ‘ruin’

An imperfective nonsubject relative can be followed by wò → ‘each, every’. The sense is ‘every time (that …)’, i.e. ‘whenever …’. Examples are (453a-b) and (450c) above. As in (450c), the L-toned final element induces a shift of the imperfective (relative) suffix back to H-tone.

(453) a. [íṣí bá-ju]

- [2SgSbj hit-\textit{Ipfv}.\textit{Rel}^\text{III}]
  - ‘a house that will fall’

- [2SgObj bite-\textit{Ipfv}]
  - ‘Every time you-Sg (will) hit the dog, it will bite you.’

b. ú yé-ju

- 2SgSbj come-\textit{Ipfv}.\textit{Rel}^\text{III}
  - ‘each time that you-Sg come’ (2011.1a.12)

Examples of imperfective subject relatives are in (454). I can see no systematic difference in the form of verb between subject and nonsubject relatives. The basic form of the verb, with L-toned imperfective suffix and with prosodically light /LH/-toned verb stems raised to \{H\}, is exemplified in (454a-b). In (454c), the suffixal tone is obscured by the dying-quail conjunction intonation. The imperfective suffix shifts to H-tone before an \{L\}-toned terminal element in (454d), and before a tightly phrased main-clause verb in (454e). The verbs in (454f-h) are tone-dropped.

(454) a. gir\textsuperscript{I} bá-gá-ju

- house\textsuperscript{I} fall-\textit{Ipfv}.\textit{Rel}^\text{I}
  - ‘a house that will fall’

b. [nà ní ètè: jà-ju]

- [2SgObj here well build-\textit{Ipfv}.\textit{Rel}^\text{III}]
  - ‘the people who will build a well here’
My assistant did not approve of relatives based directly on the progressive (-táŋà). The imperfective relative examples given above are often used in the full range of imperfective, including progressive and habitual as well as future, contexts. However, it is possible to combine -táŋà with a following copula, which can be relativized, as in (455). In nonsubject relatives, a subject pronominal is required (455c-d).

(455)  

a.  

\[ [nà \mathcal{L} \text{ súgó-táŋà}] \mathcal{H} \text{ wò} \]

[person\textsuperscript{L} go.down-Prog \textsuperscript{H} be.HumSbj.Rel]  

‘the person who is going down’

b.  

\[ [[nà \mathcal{L} \text{ súgó-téŋè}] \mathcal{H} \text{ wé} \text{ nà}] \]

[person\textsuperscript{L} go.down-Prog \textsuperscript{H} be.HumPlSbj.Rel]  

‘the people who are going down’

c.  

\[ [nà \mathcal{L} \text{ súgó-táŋà}] \mathcal{H} \text{ wò} \]

[place\textsuperscript{L} go.down-Prog \textsuperscript{H} be.HumSbj.Rel]  

‘the place where he is going down’
14.1.9.3 Negative perfective-system verbs in relative clauses

The perfective negative in main clauses has an \{L\} -toned stem followed by H-toned suffix -lí. The form used in relatives is segmentally identical. The perfective negative, unlike positive categories, allows plural-subject marking (-lâ:).

In subject relatives, the form of the verb is also tonally identical to the main-clause form. A plural-subject example is (456e).

(456a) [nà\(^L\) \ yè-\(\text{-lì}\)\(^L\) \ bàŋà\(^L\)]
[person\(^L\) \ come-PfvNeg.Rel \ owner \]‘(a/the) person who did not come’

b. [ìsì\(^L\) \ bógú \ bàŋ-\(\text{-lí}\)]
dog\(^L\) \ barking \ bark-PfvNeg.Rel
‘the dog that didn’t bark’

c. [nà\(^L\) \ [sà\(^a\) \ nànà\(^a\) \ pàgà-\(\text{-lí}\)] \ bàŋà\(^L\)]
person\(^L\) \ [ReflPoss \ cow] \ tie-PfvNeg.Rel \ owner
‘someone who didn’t tie up his cow’

d. [nà\(^L\) \ [tù \ tù-rù \ yà-\(\text{-lí}\)]
[person\(^L\) \ [horn.Def \ NearDist] \ hear-and.SS \ go-PfvNeg.Rel \ owner]
‘a person who heard that horn and didn’t go (to the fields)’  (2011.a.15)

e. [nà\(^L\) \ [sì\(^L\) \ pà \ dàgà-\(\text{-lâ:}\)]
[person\(^L\) \ any \ leave-PfvNeg.PlSbj.Rel \ Pl]
‘people who didn’t leave anything’

f. [sèy\(^a\) \ bàr-\(\text{àwú}\)\(\text{-lì}\)]
[very.well \ be.wounded-PfvNeg.Rel \ limit]
‘any (one) that were not (already) thoroughly (=badly) wounded’  (2011.b.05)

In contrast to main clauses and to subject relatives, in a nonsubject perfective negative relative the stem is H-toned. The suffix is L-toned (-\(\text{lí}\), plural -\(\text{-lâ:}\)) phrase-finally (457a-c). The tone reversal also occurs in perfective negative verbs with focalized subjects, see (403) in §13.1.1, and apparently with focalized nonsubjects, see (407b) in §13.1.2.

(457a) [nàŋà\(^L\) \ i\(^a\) \ pàgà-\(\text{-lí}\)]
cow\(^L\) \ 1SgSbj \ tie-PfvNeg.Rel
‘the cow that I didn’t tie up’

308
c. ɔ̀j̩ L wó H̩pùnú-gó-li
thing L 3SgSbj H̩be.ruined-Caus-PfvNeg.Rel
‘something that he/she didn’t ruin’

d. ɲà L [ɔ̀j̩ L p3̩] émé L̩dágá-là:
place L [thing L any] 2PlSbj H̩leave-PfvNeg.Rel
‘a place where we didn’t leave anything’

The tone of the suffix to -li, plural -là:, before an L-toned terminal element (458).

(458) a. [àndi: L i” H̩yá:-li] L àndi:
[year L 1SgSbj H̩go-PfvNeg.Rel] L year
‘the year when I didn’t go’

b. [[jùg5 mà] nà L̩dáy”]
[knowledge 1SgPoss] place L̩arrive_PfvNeg.Rel L̩limit
‘wherever my knowledge has not reached’ (2011.1a.31)

b. [Àr7ú nígir“] L̩nà L̩bàŋ à
[rain day] L̩rain.fall-PfvNeg.Rel L̩day
‘the day when it didn’t rain’

The experiential perfect negative, which includes the perfective negative suffix, can also be relativized.

(459) [nà L bàmàk5 yà: L-tè:-li] L̩bàŋà
[person L B go-ExpPerf-PfvNeg.Rel] L̩owner
‘(a/the) person who has never been to Bamako’

14.1.9.4 Negative imperfective-system verbs in relative clauses

The verb takes the same imperfective negative form segmentally as in main clauses, but undergoes a tonal change in nonsubject relatives. As in the perfective negative, plural-subject marking is allowed.

Subject relatives are in (460). The verb has the same tones as in main clauses. This construction is especially common in double negations with kɔ̀-rɔ̂ ‘does not exist’ like (460f). A plural-subject example is (460c).

(460) a. [nè L nì yè:-rò] L̩bàŋà
[woman L here come-IpfvNeg.Rel] L̩owner
‘a woman who does not come here’

b. [nà L ɔ̀j̩ pùnú-gó:-rò] L̩bàŋà
[person L thing be.ruined-Caus-IpfvNeg.Rel] L̩owner
‘someone who doesn’t ruin things’

c. [nà L ɔ̀j̩ pùnú-gó:-rè] nà
[person L thing be.ruined-Caus-IpfvNeg.PlSbj.Rel] Pl
‘people who don’t ruin things’
d. [nàL ɔ̀jɔ́dàgâ:-rò] Lbànjà
   [personL thing leave-IpfvNeg.Rel] Lowner
   ‘someone who doesn’t abandon things’

e. [nàL sɔ́ jɔ́-rò] jò-jò:
   [personL thing accept-IpfvNeg.Rel] Rdp-be.many.Stat
   ‘The people who didn’t accept the thing (=consent) are many.’ (2011.1a.15)

f. [sɔ́L yèr-è dè] gà:-rò]
   ‘There is nothing (=no crisis) that comes and doesn’t pass.’ (2011.1b.03)

g. [dúwɔ́ nàL hɔ́-ɲú∴]
   [loa personL be.able-Ipfv.Rel.&]
   [gɔ́-rò kà:n] yɔ́ kɔ̀
   [be.able-IpfvNeg.Rel also] Exist be.NonhSbj
   ‘There were (some) people who could handle the load and also (some) who could
   not handle (it).’ (2011.1a.13) (gɔ̀rɔ̀)

Nonsubject relatives are in (461). /LH/-tomed verbs merge with /H/-tomed verbs. The stem
syllables are therefore H-toned except for the <HL>-toned long vowel before -rò (plural -rê).

(461) a. nànjàL bé pírî’ti:-rò
   cowL 3PlSbj milk-IpfvNeg.Rel
   ‘a cow that they do not milk’

b. [nìjirì’nL i° yà:-rò] nìjirì’ì
   [dayL 1SgSbj go-IpfvNeg.Rel] Lday
   ‘the day when I will not go.’

c. [nìjirì’nL [ɔ̀jɔ́ pɔ́n] wò núnú-gó:-rò]
   [dayL [thingL any] 3SgSbj be.ruined-Caus-IpfvNeg.Rel]
   Lday
   ‘the day when he/she will not ruin anything’

d. ɔ̀jɔ́dàgâ:-rò
   thingL 1SgSbj leave-IpfvNeg.Rel
   ‘something that I will not leave’

14.1.9.5 Stative verbs (positive and negative) in relative clauses

In main clauses, a positive stative verb has a reduplicated form Cò-CòCò, which is reduced to
{L}-toned CòCò following a locational or other nonpronominal constituent (§10.4). In a
relative clause, the form is CòCò.

Subject relatives are in (462).
Nonsubject relatives are in (463).

(463) a. \[àrⁿá ] \[ná ] \[wó ] \[Hdáná ]
man place 3SgSbj sit.Stat.Rel
‘(there) where the man is sitting’

b. \[tũ ] \[gò:=ǹ ] \[Hkóró]
boubou [wall=Dat] be.hanging.Stat.Rel
‘the wall on which the boubou (garment) is hanging.’

c. \[sàjú ] \[tím =ǹ ] \[Htóró]
bird [tree=Dat] perch.Stat.Rel
‘the tree on which the bird is perched’

The regular stative negative is of the form \(CV'C\) = \(lá\) in main clauses. It can be used without change in subject relatives (464a-b), but the stem is \{H\}-toned in nonsubject relatives (464c). Plural-subject marking is allowed, as in other negative categories. Plurality is expressed by stem vocalism in (464b).

(464) a. \[àrⁿá ] \[dāná =lá ] \[Hbàná ]
‘the man who is not sitting’

b. \[ná ] \[dēná =lá ]
‘people who are not sitting’

c. \[ná ] \[jà ] \[wó ] \[dáná =lá ]
[person place 3SgSbj sit.Stat=StatNeg.Rel]
‘the place where the person is not sitting’

14.1.9.6 Other predicates (‘be’, ‘have’, ‘be in’, ‘it is’, adjective) in relatives

The locational-existential quasi-verb (‘be [somewhere]’) occurs in positive and negative forms in relative clauses. The human forms are generally followed by \(bàná\) ‘owner’ (singular) or by plural \(nà\). The ‘be’ quasi-verb has H-tone in relatives. The negative quasi-verbs have their usual \(CV'r\) shape (465c).
(465) a. [nàL bàmàkɔ́ hɔ́j] 1bàŋà
   [personL B be.HumSbj-Rel] 1owner
   ‘the person who is in Bamako’

b. tùwòL bàmàkɔ́ hɔ́
   stoneL B be.NonhSbj-Rel
   ‘the stone that is in Bamako’

c. [nàL bàmàkɔ́ wè:-rè] nà
   [personL B be.HumPlSbj-Neg] Pl
   ‘the people who are not in Bamako’

d. [[bìrɛ̀ pèrè]L hɔ́]  yà:-kɔ̀=y
   [[workL other]L be.NonhSbj-Rel] which?=it.is
   ‘The other work that exists, which (=what) is it?’ (2011.1a.18)

e. ùrⁿH gìrⁿH wè nà
   childrenL house Pl be.HumPlSbj-Rel Pl
   ‘children who are (staying) at home’ (2011.1a.07)

Relativization of ‘have’ clauses is illustrated in (466). The form of ‘have’ in relatives is sá, negative sà:-rá. Existential yé is absent from this construction.

(466) a. àrⁿH nàŋá hɔ́
   manL cow be.have-Rel
   ‘a man who has a cow’
   (also: àrⁿH nàŋá sá bàŋà)

b. pàL pèjú fɔ́ hɔ́
   placeL sheep 1SgSbj be.have-Rel
   ‘a place where I have a sheep’

c. [nàL bù:dú sà:-rá] 1bàŋà
   [personL money have-Neg-Rel] 1owner
   ‘a person who has no money’

d. [nàL sà:-rá] kɔ̀:-rè
   [personL have-Neg-Rel] be.NonhSbj-Neg
   ‘There is nobody who doesn’t have (a granary).’ (2011.1a.16)

The ‘be in’ quasi-verb can also be relativized on (467). It takes the form só. Subject relatives are common, as in (467a), but a nonsubject relative is also attested (467b).

(467) a. [sà:n fù→] [wòrùL bīn]
   [all all] [field.DefL in]
   nù:  hɔ́ dàyⁿ
   millet be.in-Rel limit
   ‘all the millet that was in the field’ (2011.1a.11)
b. binígi pa\textsuperscript{L} H só
manure place\textsuperscript{L} H be.in.Rel
‘a place where (some) manure is’ (2011.1a.29)

It is not normal to relativize on a positive ‘it is’ clitic form, since e.g. ‘a person who is a Dogon’ is always rephrased as ‘a Dogon’. However, it is possible to relativize on the corresponding negation (468).

\[(468) \quad \text{I’m looking for someone who is not a Dogon.}’\]

An adjectival predicate may also occur in a relative. Instead of a prolonged form of the adjective plus a ‘be’ quasi-verb, the adjective is bare and in \{H\}-toned form. It may be compared to the comparative form (‘be taller’ etc.), which however has \{HL\} overlay. Compare H nàr\textsuperscript{a} (469a) with nàr\textsuperscript{a}→ k\textsuperscript{a} ‘it is easy’ and with H nàr\textsuperscript{a} ‘(is) easier’ (stem nàr\textsuperscript{a}). A negative adjectival predicate does not change its form from main clause to relative (469c).

\[(469) \quad \begin{align*}
a. \ & \text{pù:} \text{-}[dùw-\mathcal{O}-\mathcal{O}] \quad \text{bá} \text{\textsuperscript{L}} \quad \text{dág-à} \quad \text{H nàr\textsuperscript{a}} \\
& \text{millet’-[carry-MP-VblN] \ manner\textsuperscript{L} \ a.little \ H easy.Rel} \\
& \text{‘the way (=in such a way that) carrying the millet (to the houses) after that is fairly easy’ (2011.1a.12)} \\
b. \ & \text{[jèpë} \textsuperscript{L}-ůr\textsuperscript{a}i:} \text{-L} \quad \text{bè} \quad \text{bá} \text{\textsuperscript{L}} \quad \text{bé} \quad \text{H sé}\textsuperscript{a} \\
& \text{[twin\textsuperscript{-}children.Def\textsuperscript{-L} PI] \ manner\textsuperscript{L} \ 3PlSbj \ H good.Rel} \\
& \text{‘(Because of) how handsome the twins were?’ (2011.1b.04)} \\
c. \ & \text{birè} \quad \text{kirè} \textsuperscript{L} = \text{lá} \\
& \text{work\textsuperscript{L} \ difficult\textsuperscript{L}=StatNeg.Rel} \\
& \text{‘a job that is not difficult’}
\end{align*} \]

14.1.10 Same-subject \textit{má} connecting nonsubject relative to main clause

Consider the examples in (470). Here the subject of a nonsubject relative is coindexed to the subject of the main clause. The key morpheme is \textit{má} following the verb, which has bare-stem form. There is no (other) pronominal subject pronoun in the relative clause. In effect, \textit{má} is an anaphoric pronoun (requiring an antecedent) similar to reflexive sà\textsuperscript{a}. Like the reflexive, \textit{má} is transpersonal, so it can be coindexed to any (nonimperative) subject, including first and second person pronouns. A similar \textit{má} can occur as a transpersonal reflexive possessor (§18.1.3.2).

\[(470) \quad \begin{align*}
a. \ & \text{I\textsuperscript{n} [pèjù} \textsuperscript{L} \ éwé \ \textit{má}] \quad \text{jè-jù} \\
& \text{1SgSbj \ [sheep\textsuperscript{L} \ buy \ Rel.SS] \ bring-Ipfv} \\
& \text{‘I will bring the sheep-Sg that I bought.’} \\
b. \ & \text{sè:} \text{dú} \quad \text{[pèjù} \textsuperscript{L} \ dàgá \ \textit{má}] \quad \text{jè-jù} \\
& \text{S \ [sheep\textsuperscript{L} \ leave \ Rel.SS] \ bring-Ipfv} \\
& \text{‘Seydou, will bring the sheep-Sg that he\textsubscript{s} left.’}
\end{align*} \]
c. \[\text{ú} \quad [\text{nìr}^\text{L} \quad \text{yër} \quad \text{má}] \quad [\text{nìr}^\text{Hi}] \quad \text{yā:-jū} \]
2SgSbj \[[\text{day}^\text{L} \quad \text{go} \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \quad [\text{day}] \quad \text{go-Ipfv} \]

‘You-Sg will go on the (same) day that you have come.’

The ability of a higher-clause subject to bind a lower-clause subject in a relative clause with \text{má} (470a-c) is paralleled by the ability of a higher-clause subject to bind a lower-clause subject in a factive clause (as complement of ‘know’), using transpersonal reflexive \text{sǎⁿ} (§18.1.4).

As usual, a supposed covert second person imperative subject fails to bind the anaphoric element. Compare indicative (471a-b), which have \text{má}, to the imperatives in (471c-d), which instead have a nonreflexive 2Sg preverbal pronoun in the relative clause.

(471) a. \[\text{í}^\text{L} \quad [\text{sɔ̀} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{ɛ́} \quad \text{w} \quad \text{ɛ́} \quad \text{má}] \quad [\text{bi-jū} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{do-Ipfv} \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \]
1SgSbj \[[\text{thing}^\text{L} \quad \text{want}. \quad \text{Rel} \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \quad \text{do-Ipfv} \]

‘I do what I want.’

b. \[\text{ú} \quad [\text{pèjù} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{dàgá} \quad \text{má}] \quad \text{jèr-ì} \quad \text{mà} \]
2SgSbj \[[\text{sheep}^\text{L} \quad \text{leave} \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \quad \text{bring-Pfv} \quad \text{Q} \]

‘Did you-Sg bring the sheep that you left?’

c. \[\quad [\text{pèjù} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{ú} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{dàg-è}] \quad \text{jèrè} \]
\[[\text{sheep}^\text{L} \quad \text{2SgSbj} \quad \text{HL} \quad \text{leave-Pfv.Rel}] \quad \text{bring.Imprt} \]

‘Bring-2Sg the sheep that you left!’

d. \[\quad [\text{sɔ̀} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{ú} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{ɛ́} \quad \text{w} \quad \text{ɛ́}] \quad \text{má} \quad \text{birè} \]
\[[\text{thing}^\text{L} \quad \text{2SgSbj} \quad \text{Rel}. \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \quad \text{do.Imprt} \]

‘Do-2Sg what you want!’

The verb before \text{má} is in bare-stem form. For example, ‘sell’ appears as \text{dɔ̀r̥s má}, with bare stem \text{dɔ̀r̥s} rather than perfective \text{dɔ̀r̥s-ɛ̂}. However, the L-tone at the end of /HL/- and /LHL/-toned heavy stems like \text{nùnú-gú} ‘ruin, damage’ becomes H-toned (472).

(472) \[\text{wò} \quad [\text{gir}^\text{L} \quad \text{nùnú-gú}^\text{Hi} \quad \text{má}] \quad \text{èw-è} \]
3SgSbj \[[\text{house}^\text{L} \quad \text{be.ruined-Caus}^\text{Hi} \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \quad \text{buy-Pfv} \]

‘He bought the house that he ruined.’

\text{jè má} with ‘take away’ is pronounced with a downstep on the \text{má} morpheme.

In (473a), the relative clause is imperfective, denoting an event expected to follow that of the main clause. Negative relatives clauses are illustrated in (473b) (imperfective) and (473c) (perfective). In (473b), the final L-tone element of the imperfective negative suffix is carried over to \text{má}, which is heard as \text{mà}.

(473) a. \[\text{í}^\text{L} \quad [\text{pèjù} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{èwè-jú} \quad \text{má}] \quad \text{ò-è} \]
1SgSbj \[[\text{sheep}^\text{L} \quad \text{buy-Ipfv} \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \quad \text{see-Pfv} \]

‘I saw the sheep-Sg that I will buy.’

b. \[\text{í}^\text{L} \quad [\text{pèjù} \quad \text{L} \quad \text{èwè:-rò} \quad \text{má}] \quad \text{ò-è} \]
1SgSbj \[[\text{sheep}^\text{L} \quad \text{buy-IpfvNeg} \quad \text{Rel.SS}] \quad \text{see-Pfv} \]

‘I saw the sheep that I will not buy.’
A textual example with suppletive stative ‘not know’ as predicate is (474).

(474) [kó niŋ níjír] [k tên ní  ò]
[Def day] [beak drink-if]
[ñ ò má]
[not know Rel.SS]
[g ní  ò má]
dance-while.SS spend.night-Ipfv
‘That day, when they had drunk millet beer, they would spend the night dancing (wild) dances that they didn’t know.’ (2011.1b.03)

Another textual example is (475).

(475) [fú g  ò má] dò]
[2SgSbj be.able-Ipfv Rel.SS limit] tie-Pfv if
‘You-Sg would tie up (=bundle) all that (=as much as) you-Sg could (carry) of it (=millet)’ (2011.1a.13)

Historically, it is possible that má in its various anaphoric functions originated as a special use of the homophonous 1Sg pronoun form. In several western Dogon languages, including Najamba, 1Sg pronominal-subject suffix -m doubles as logophoric subject suffix in quotations.

14.1.11 Relative clause involving verb- or VP-chain

Any direct chain can be relativized on. The nonfinal verbs have the same form they have in normal chains with final inflected verb. The final verb has the appropriate relative-clause form. (476a) is a subject relative. In non-subject relatives like (476b), the preverbal subject pronoun is placed directly in front of the final verb.

(476) a. [ná bágá súgó sá] báñá
[person fall go.down Pfv.Rel] owner
‘the person who fell down’

b. [ná bágá í súg-é ] dè
[place fall 1SgSbj go.down-Pfv] place
‘the place where I fell down’

yé ‘go’ and yéré ‘come’ are idiosyncratically tone-dropped as nonfinal chained verbs, when directly preceding the H-toned preverbal subject pronoun (477a). The tone-dropping does not occur before an intervening nonpronominal element (477b).

(477) a. [ná yé í m ní mú ]
[place go 2PISbj assemble-Caus-Ipfv]
‘the place where you-Pl go and assemble (them)’ (2011.1a.12)
b. *nìŋrìⁿ* yèrè /yè̃̃/ nà: wò *nì-nù*
   days come/go meal 3SgSbj eat.meal-lpfv
   ‘the day when he/she will come/go and eat a meal’

14.1.12 Demonstratives following the verb

My assistant had no difficulty placing a morphologically simple demonstrative pronoun after the verb of the relative clause, semantically modifying the head NP. In this construction, with near-distant *yɔ̀ː* or proximate *nàː;*, the verb undergoes no additional tonal changes, but the demonstrative itself usually drops tones (as it does following a numeral). However, there was one textual example (478d) where we would have expected *kɔ́*Lýɔ̀ː;*, but where the actual output was *kɔ̀Lýɔ́ː*. In this instance, the demonstrative controls tone-dropping on the verb (or, here, a locational-existential quasi-verb). The difference may involve presence of a tonal definite (L-tone) at the end of the verb or quasi-verb in (478.a-c) and its absence in (478d), but the discourse context of (478d) doesn’t fit this well. The presence of the tonal definite is very difficult to identify when it is not NP-final.

(478) a. *pèjù*ú ꦊéw-é yɔ́: 2SgSbj buy-Pfv.Rel *NearDist*
   ‘that sheep over there that you St bought’

b. *mòtàn* nì nùw-é: sà nà *Prox*
   ‘this scorpion who has come in here’

c. *[gù-gùrù* nèw*óː sò́-rò]* yɔ́: *NearDist* *dày*;
   ‘all those weeds in which there is no value’ (2011.1a.24)

d. *nùː-tèːrè* [gám *háː kèː] már*óː-à → kɔ́,
   [gám ná kèː] újú kɔ́, [some person *Poss] big-Adv be.NonhSbj,
   [sà*nà kèː] [some person *Poss] small be.NonhSbj,
   ‘some millet heaps were big, some (others) were (relatively) small. Now those
   that were big, …’ (2011.1a.13)
   (regular relative-clause form is *kɔ́*)

My assistant was not comfortable with similar combinations involving the far-distant demonstratives, which are more complex morphologically to begin with, and relatively uncommon in texts.

14.1.13 Universal quantifier ‘all’ (*dày*) following the verb

My assistant had difficulty adding *sàː* (and *fùː*) ‘all’ directly after the verb of a relative clauses. This is not surprising given the near-homophony of the more common of these two
quantifiers, namely sâⁿ, with the participial morpheme sâⁿ used in perfective subject relatives.

Instead, the intended sense is usually expressed by adding Ldàyⁿ after the verb (479a-b). This is the most noun-like of the ‘all’ quantifiers, being a special use of the L-toned form of the noun dàyⁿ ‘outer limit’. It therefore fits the pattern of L-toned nouns as terminal elements in relatives. Once Ldàyⁿ or any other terminal element, such as plural nà, has been added after the verb, sâⁿ ‘all’ may pile on (479b-c).

\[
(479) \begin{align*}
\text{a. } & \left[ \text{pèjù}^L \quad \text{ú}^L \quad \text{d5ⁿ-} \text{Lj}^L \quad \text{dày}^L \right] \quad \text{jèrè}^L \\
& \left[ \text{sheep}^L \quad \text{2SgSbj}^L \quad \text{sell-PfvNeg}^L \right] \quad \text{lumbled}^L \quad \text{bring.} \text{Imprt} \\
& \text{‘Bring all the sheep-Pl that you didn’t sell.’} \\
\text{b. } & \left[ \text{àrⁿù}^L \quad \text{girⁿ}^L \quad \text{pûnù-g-i}^L \quad \text{lamaño-g-i}^L \quad \text{dày}^L \right] \\
& \left[ \text{rain}^L \quad \text{house}^L \quad \text{be.ruined-Caus-Pfv}^L \right] \quad \text{lumberland}^L \quad \text{all} \\
& \text{‘We will fix up all the houses that the rain damaged.’ (dánú-gi)} \\
\text{c. } & \left[ \text{nà}^L \quad \text{saⁿ bè}^L \quad \text{lísimo}^L \quad \text{tá}^L \quad \text{sâⁿ}^L \quad \text{nà}^L \quad \text{sâⁿ}^L \right] \\
& \left[ \text{person}^L \quad \text{ReflPoss Pl} \quad \text{tax}^L \quad \text{pay}^L \quad \text{Pfv.Rel Pl} \right] \quad \text{all} \\
& \text{‘all the people who have paid their taxes’}
\end{align*}
\]

14.1.14 Evaluative adjective following the verb

Adjectives normally remain with the internal portion of the head NP. However, I have one textual example (480a) suggesting that if a mini-relative-clause functions is lexicalized as a kind of common noun (denoting an open set), in the fashion of agentive nominals, an evaluative adjective can follow it. In this case, the entire relative clause is tone-dropped.

The context for (480a) is that a childless old woman has no one to take care of her. The evaluative adjective ‘good’ effectively modifies ‘care-giver’, i.e. someone who is not ‘good’ in general but rather good at care-giving. Without ‘good’ the relative clause would have appeared as (480b).

\[
(480) \begin{align*}
\text{a. } & \text{nè:} \quad \text{pèrè} \quad \text{now} \quad \text{furthermore} \\
& \left[ \text{nà}^L \quad \text{sâⁿ}^L \quad \text{din-è:-nù}^L \quad \text{sèô}^L \quad \text{kàⁿ}^L \right] \\
& \left[ \text{person}^L \quad \text{ReflObj} \quad \text{hold-MP-Ipfv}^L \right] \quad \text{good} \quad \text{even} \\
& \text{‘Now furthermore she, didn’t even have a good person to take care of her(-self),.’} \quad (2011.1b.04) \\
\text{b. } & \text{nà}^L \quad \text{sâⁿ}^L \quad \text{din-è:-nù}^L \quad \text{kàⁿ}^L \\
& \text{person}^L \quad \text{ReflObj} \quad \text{hold-MP-Ipfv} \quad \text{even} \\
& \text{‘even anyone to take care of herself’}
\end{align*}
\]

Note that sâⁿ (reflexive object) as well as din-è:-nù (phrase-finally: din-è:-nù) is tone-dropped in (480a) under the control of the postverbal adjective. ‘Person’ is the head NP so it is tone-dropped anyway. Elicited examples show that the adjective forces tone-dropping on the entire
mini-relative clause (redundantly in the case of the head NP). Compare (481a) with an adjective to (481b) with no adjective, observing the tones of the preparticipial words. H\textsuperscript{h}pàná in (481b) has possessed-noun {H} overlay.

\begin{align*}
(481) & \ a. \ [nà \ [sà^{o} \ \text{pànà}] \ bi-jú^{L} \ sè^{o} \ \text{kà:}^{o}] \\
& \quad \text{[person [ReflPoss meal] make-}Pfv^{L} \ \text{good even]} \\
& \quad \text{‘(even) a good person to cook her meals’}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
(481) & \ b. \ [nà^{L} \ [sà^{o} \ H\text{pàná}] \ bi-jú \ \text{kà:}^{o}] \\
& \quad \text{[personL [ReflPoss Hmeal] make-}Pfv^{L} \ \text{even]} \\
& \quad \text{‘(even) anyone to cook her meals’}
\end{align*}

14.2 Subject relative clause

In this and the following sections I bring together the details described individually in the preceding sections, to illustrate what a complete relative clause looks like.

In a subject relative, like other relatives, the core NP (plus any numeral) that functions as relative head appears internally in the relative clause but undergoes tone-dropping. If the head NP is (human) plural, a plural morpheme nà is added after the verb (and perfective participial sá if present). Other than this there is no agreement with the (subject) head NP; in particular, there is no additional preverbal subject pronoun.

\begin{align*}
(482) & \ a. \ [\text{i:}^{o} \ \text{bágá sá}^{o}] \ \text{yā:} \ \text{wɔ̀} \\
& \quad \text{[childPfL fall Ppl.Pfv] where? be.HumSgSbj} \\
& \quad \text{‘Where is the child who fell?’}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
(482) & \ b. \ [\text{ùr}^{o}:^{L} \ \text{bágá sá}^{o} \ \text{nà}] \ \text{yā:} \ \text{wè} \\
& \quad \text{[childrenPfL fall Ppl.Pfv Pl] where? be.HumPl} \\
& \quad \text{‘Where are the children who fell?’}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
(482) & \ c. \ [\text{isí}^{L} \ \text{ú kéré sá}^{o}] \ \text{yā:} \ \text{kɔ̀} \\
& \quad \text{[dogPfL 2SgObj bite Ppl.Pfv] where? be.NonhSbj} \\
& \quad \text{‘Where is the dog that bit you-Sg?’}
\end{align*}

Adjectives and numerals that are part of the head NP remain with it, inside the relative clause, and are subject to relative-clause tone-dropping. However, any demonstrative, free plural particle, universal quantifier, or discourse-function particle (like ‘only’) that would normally be part of the head NP appears after the verb. If the overall NP is plural, plural nà appears after demonstrative (483d), while universal quantifier sá:o follows nà (483e). Demonstratives are tone-dropped regardless of whether plural nà is present (483c-d).

\begin{align*}
(483) & \ a. \ [\text{ì:}^{o} \ \text{sì:o-sí:o}^{L} \ \text{bágá sá}^{o}] \ \text{yā:} \ \text{wɔ̀} \\
& \quad \text{[child smallPfL fall Ppl.Pfv] where? be.HumSgSbj} \\
& \quad \text{‘Where is the small child who fell?’}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
(483) & \ b. \ [\text{ùr}^{o}:^{L} \ \text{kùrè:} \ \text{bágá sá}^{o} \ \text{nà}] \ \text{yā:} \ \text{wè} \\
& \quad \text{[childrenPfL six fall Ppl.Pfv Pl] where? be.HumPlSbj} \\
& \quad \text{‘Where are the six children who fell?’}
\end{align*}
c. [i:\ⁿ l:ⁿ bágá sáⁿ l:y:] géré
[children¹ fall Ppl.Pfv ¹NearDist] look at Imprt
‘Look at that child who fell!’

(484) a. [[ú¹ l:kè] l:iⁿ bágá sáⁿ] bāwⁿrⁿi
‘Your child who fell was hurt (wounded).’

b. [i¹ l:kè] l:iⁿ bágá sáⁿ yá: wɔ
[1SgPoss l:poss] l:child fall Ppl.Pfv where? be.HumSgSbj
‘Where is my child who fell?’

‘Where is Seydou’s child who fell?’

14.3 Object relative clause

In an object relative clause, the subject is expressed by a preverbal pronoun even if also expressed clause-initially by a nonpronominal NP. The head NP undergoes the usual tone-dropping. The verb has the form it would have in a main clause with singular subject, and does not agree with a plural subject. If the head NP is plural, plural morpheme nà occurs after the verb. Before nà, a final L-tone on the verb is raised to high, as in lág-è in (485c).

(485) a. [sè:dú l:ⁿ wó il:lág-è] bāwⁿrⁿi
[Seydou l:child 3SgSbj il:hit-Pfv.Rel] be.wounded.Pfv
‘The child who(m) Seydou hit was hurt.’

b. [i:\ⁿ bé il:lág-è] bāwⁿrⁿi
[child¹ l:child 3PI Sbj il:hit-Pfv.Rel] be.wounded.Pfv
‘The child who(m) they hit was hurt.’
c. [sè:ɗú ̀ũrʰiː L wó Hlág-é nà] 3SgSbj [Seydou children] 3SgSbj be.wounded-Pfv.PlSbj  
‘The children who(m) Seydou hit were hurt.’

bàwⁿɛ̂rⁿ-sèⁿ

14.4 Possessor relative clause

In this construction, the possessor itself undergoes tone-dropping as the head of the relative clause. In (486a-c), the tone-dropping actually applies both to the possessor and to the possessed noun (double tone-dropping).

(486) a. [([nà gîrⁿ] L bàgá sáⁿ L bànà) L]  
[[[person house] L fall Pfv.Rel] L owner]  
yàː  wà  
where? be.HumSgSbj  
‘Where is the person whose house fell?’ (nà, gîrⁿ)

b. [([nà núm̩] L bâwèrⁿ-ɛː: sáⁿ nà)]  
[[[person hand] L be.injured-then.SS Pfv.Rel] L owner]  
yàː  wè  
where? be.HumPlSbj  
‘Where are the people whose hands were hurt?’ (nà, núm̩)

c. [nà kɔ̀r̩̊̀]  
[person meaning] L at.all 2SgSbj not.know.Rel  
‘someone whose meaning (=background) you-Sg don’t know at all’ (2011.1b.02) (nà, kɔ̀r̩̊̀)

In elicitation, my assistant had some difficulty with the tones of the possessed noun, and I also recorded a variation on (486b) with clearly audible lexical tones on the possessed noun ‘foot’. It is possible that (487) represents an alternative syntax with ‘foot’ treated as an adverb, not phrased with ‘cow’ (‘X was injured on the foot’).

(487) [nà núm̩ L kùw ɔ̀ bâwèrⁿ-ɛː: sáⁿ]  
[cow L foot be.injured-then.SS Pfv.Rel]  
yàː  kɔ̀  
where? be.NonhSbj  
‘Where is the cow whose foot was hurt?’
The inconsistency of the data may be partially due to the ambiguity of \( {\text{l}} \) in e.g. (486a). The literal sense of \( {\text{bàŋà}} \) is ‘owner’. Whereas a final \( {\text{l}} \) in most relative clauses merely specifies human singular head NP, in possessor relatives the literal sense may well be activated. Indeed, examples like (488) are difficult to understand without taking \( {\text{l}} \) literally. Note that in the reading ‘the owner of [the roof that collapsed]’, ‘roof’ is quite properly \{L\}-toned since it is now the head NP of the relative, while \( {\text{l}} \) has the usual \{L\}-toned form for a terminal element in a relative clause.

(488) \[
\begin{array}{l}
{kùⁿ-mrà}^{L} \quad wòró \quad sá^{n} \quad {\text{L}}\text{bàŋà} \\
[\text{roof}^{L} \quad \text{collapse} \quad \text{Pfv.Rel}] \quad {\text{L}}\text{owner}
\end{array}
\]

\( yà: \quad wɔ̀ \)
where? \( \text{be.HumSbj} \)
‘Where is the owner of the house that collapsed?’

The double tone-dropping (i.e. of possessor and possessed) in (486) is nevertheless syntactically defensible, though not typical in other Dogon languages. We will see another case of double tone-dropping in the next section, on relativization involving postpositions.

14.5 Relativization on the complement of a postposition

When the NP complement of a postposition is relativized on, both the NP itself and the postposition are subject to tone-dropping. In each example in (489), the complement NP (‘person’, ‘people’, ‘house’) is audibly tone-dropped in the familiar fashion. The postpositions \( {\text{kùⁿ}} \) ‘on’ (489a) and \( {\text{bîn}} \) ‘in’ (489c) have also audibly dropped from /HL/ to \{L\} tone. The dative postposition (489b) is already \{L\}-toned; we can assume that it is (vacuously) tone-dropped by comparing it to the other postpositions.

(489) a. \[
\begin{array}{l}
{kùⁿ-mrà} \quad [nà \quad kùⁿ]^{L} \quad wòró \quad sá^{n} \quad {\text{L}}\text{bàŋà} \\
[\text{roof}^{L} \quad \text{person} \quad \text{on}^{L} \quad \text{collapse} \quad \text{Ppl.Pfv}] \quad {\text{L}}\text{owner}
\end{array}
\]

the person on whom the roof collapsed (=fell)’

b. \[
\begin{array}{l}
{bù:dú}^{L} \quad [nà=n\dot{\text{à}}}^{L} \quad í^{n} \quad {\text{H}}\text{ó-é}^{n} \quad nà \\
[\text{money} \quad \text{person}^{=\text{Dat}}^{L} \quad 1\text{SgSbj} \quad {\text{H}}\text{give-Pfv.Rel}] \quad \text{Pl}
\end{array}
\]

‘the people to whom I gave the money’

c. \[
\begin{array}{l}
[gìríⁿ \quad bîn]^{L} \quad ú \quad nû-yà^{n} \\
[\text{house}^{=\text{in}}^{L} \quad 2\text{SgSbj} \quad \text{go.in-Pfv.Rel}] \quad [\text{house} \quad \text{1SgPoss}^{=} \quad \text{it.is}]
\end{array}
\]

‘the house that you-Sg have entered, it’s my house’

[based on example from Prost, p. 94]

d. \[
\begin{array}{l}
[né: \quad wɔ̀^{n}] \quad [là:rù \quad gè:^{L}]^{n} \\
[\text{now} \quad \text{Top}] \quad [\text{lowly.one} \quad \text{for}]
\end{array}
\]

\[\begin{array}{l}
{\text{anà}} \quad bîn^{n} \quad jàtâ:-rò \quad [bê \quad {\text{H}}\text{wé}] \\
[\text{village} \quad \text{in}] \quad \text{count-IfvNeg} \quad [3\text{PI}^{\text{Sbj}} \quad {\text{H}}\text{be.HumPlRel}]
\end{array}\]

\( yèr-é:\)

‘Now when [the lowly person (=the mother) whom they (=people) in the village did not think highly of] came, …’ (2011.1b.04) (là:rù ‘lowly person’, purposive gè:)

321
Otherwise there was nothing else by means of which (one) could carry millet.’
(2011.1a.13)

‘the thing (=reason) for which they have abandoned (it)’ (2011.1a.15)

‘anything (i.e. livestock) in the houses (=village) to take (=convey) it (=millet) and give it to’ (2011.1a.22)
15 Verb (VP) chaining and adverbial clauses

By “chain” is meant a sequence of verbs, VPs, or clauses that denote two or more eventualities (sequenced or simultaneous), or that describe a single eventuality as a composite of two or more co-events. Adverbial clauses (‘at the time when …’) are closely related to this concept. Conditionals are treated separately in chapter 16, but there is some overlap with sequential chaining. The complement clauses in chapter 17 involve more specific grammatical interaction with the main clause, e.g. when the latter contains a control verb like ‘begin (to VP)’ or when the subordinated clause functions as a purposive clause.

A direct chain of verbs or VPs is one whose nonfinal verbs occur in the bare stem form, without an explicit subordinating morpheme. Typically, the components of direct chains denote co-events of a more or less unified eventuality. In TgK, direct verb chains are rather limited, because of the productivity of subordinators, especially the same-subject subordinator -ɛ: (§15.2.2.1, below). Chain-like sequences involving explicit subordination, are loose chains.

15.1 Direct chains (without chaining morpheme)

A distinction must be made between those direct chains that can occur in any aspectual context, and those that only occur in imperfective contexts due to restrictions on the same-subject anterior subordinator -ɛ:.

The aspectually versatile type of direct chain, functioning much like a compound denoting a single complex eventuality, and used in perfective as well as imperfective contexts, is exemplified (490). In cases like tá: gér-ɛ: ‘taste’, the need for a chain may not be so much the complexity of the event as the need to avoid confusion, given the fact that tá: ‘taste’ has homonyms (tá: ‘shoot, sting’; tá: ‘avoid taboo’).

(490) Direct verb chains (in any aspectual context)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chain</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jù:rà lé:</td>
<td>‘(2 farmers) sow in unison (in parallel rows)’</td>
<td>jù:rà ‘put side by side’, lé: ‘slash (earth) to sow seeds’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàgá súgó</td>
<td>‘fall down’</td>
<td>bàgá ‘fall (out)’, súgó ‘go down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàjá gùŋ</td>
<td>‘pull (sth) off’</td>
<td>bàjá ‘pull’, gùŋ ‘remove’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tà: gér-ɛ:</td>
<td>‘taste (sth)’</td>
<td>tà: ‘taste’ (with several homonyms), gér-ɛ: ‘look at, consider’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kámá súmà-gi</td>
<td>‘throw (sth) down’</td>
<td>kámá ‘throw’, súmà-gi ‘take down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kámá tì</td>
<td>‘throw (sth) away’</td>
<td>kámá ‘throw’, tì ‘send’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dèmè ná:-ɛ</td>
<td>‘push (sth) up’</td>
<td>dèmè ‘push’, ná:-ɛ ‘put up’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Certain verbs are particularly common in chains. Some clearly retain their basic lexical sense in the chain. For example, gùŋ ‘remove, take out’ occurs as final verb in numerous combinations like ‘pull off’ in (490), generally combining with a preceding verb specifying the manner of action (cf. English particles out, off and away in phrasal verbs).

A possible specialized element is tí, which as simple transitive verb means ‘send’, and which occurs as the final in kámá tí ‘throw (far) away’, i.e. horizontally as opposed to ‘throw down’ or ‘throw up’. The simple sense ‘send’ (e.g. money or a letter) is generally expressed as bá:rí or bá:rí tí ‘send’ (§16.1.3.2). tí occurs in what appears to be a three-part chain, dàgá tí gàrá ‘pass (sb, e.g. in a race)’, with dàgá ‘leave’ and gàrá ‘pass’. Here, however, we may be dealing with a homonymous morpheme or semantic offshoot tí that indicates a chronological divergence; see t-ì dè (§16.1.3.2), L-toned L (§15.1.6.3), and té-é(·) (§15.2.2.5).

If a stem occurs only as a nonfinal verb in chains, or develops a divergent sense in this position, it is difficult to identify it as a verb, rather than as an autonomous adverb. This is the case with tòrɔ, which seems to mean something like ‘move over, (move) a short distance’ in tòrɔ gùŋ ‘move, displace (sth)’ with gùŋ ‘remove’ and in tòrɔ dò: ‘move over (a little), budge; come near, approach’ with dò: ‘arrive, reach’. There is no obvious connection with the verb(s) tòrɔ ‘begin’, ‘reshape (blade)’, ‘(egg) hatch’.

Because ‘go and come (back)’ expresses a sequence of bounded events, it does not qualify as an aspectually versatile direct chain, so we get yé-é: yèré with the same-subject subordinated form of ‘go’ (contrast Jamsay direct chain yí: yèré).

Co-events can also be expressed in other ways. In (491), ‘run’ is expressed as a noun ‘running’ which functions as complement of an instrumental postposition.

(491) wò [jé bè] L nù-y
3SgSbj [running with] L go.in-Pfv
‘He/She ran in.’
‘He/She came in on the run.’

For cases where the final verb is specialized in chain-final function as a kind of control verb, e.g. ‘get, obtain’ in the sense ‘be able to’, see §17.5.

In imperfective contexts, those chains that are expressed in perfective contexts using the same-subject anterior subordinator -e: can be expressed in either of two ways: a) direct chains, or b) pseudo-conditionals with the first clause ending in dè. As a result, any verb-verb combination, even one that cannot be expressed as a direct chain in perfective contexts (e.g. in narrative sequences), can appear as a direct chain when the final clause is imperfective (including progressive), imperative, or hortative.

15.1.1 Verbal noun of directly chained verbs

Two chained verbs may combine into a verbal noun. The final verb has its regular verbal-noun form (§4.2.4). The nonfinal verb functions as compound initial and is {L}-toned: bágá súgó ‘fall down’, verbal noun bágá-[súg-ú] ‘falling down’.

15.1.2 Presence of AMN suffix in nonfinal verb in direct chains

In general, AMN (aspect-mood-negation) marking is not allowed on nonfinal verbs in direct chains. However, L ‘do first’ (in L-toned form) and the related té-é(·) occur medially in

324
chains, and function roughly as perfective markers for the preceding verb (§15.1.6.3, §15.2.2.5).

Adverbial clauses regularly do specify the temporal relationship between the subordinated and main clauses. Progressive -tánà can occur in adverbial clauses (§15.2.1.1). Other subordinators likewise distinguish a sequential (‘and then’) from a concurrent (‘while’) temporal relationship between two juxtaposed clauses.

15.1.3 Linear position and arguments of directly chained verbs

In normal direct chains where the two (or more) verbs denote co-events, they are usually either all intransitive or all transitive, with the same subject and (if relevant) object.

The chained verbs normally occur together, following the subject and any other constituents. For intransitive chains, this applies to the subject and to adverbial elements (492).

\[
\text{(492) } \begin{align*}
\text{sèdù} & \quad [\text{Rp-sand on}] \\
\text{bàgá} & \quad \text{fall} \\
\text{sūg-è} & \quad \text{go.down-Pfv}
\end{align*}
\]

Seydou fell down in the sand.

For a transitive chain, the (nonpronominal or pronominal) object also precedes both directly chained verbs.

\[
\text{(493) } \begin{align*}
a. & \quad \text{ì}^n \quad \text{jìštùrù} \quad \text{bàn} \quad \text{gùn-i} \\
& \quad \text{1SgSbj} \quad \text{donkey} \quad \text{pull} \quad \text{remove-Pfv} \\
& \quad \text{‘I pulled out the donkey.’}

d. & \quad \text{émé} \quad \text{ù} \quad \text{bàn} \quad \text{gùnš-jù} \\
& \quad \text{1PlSbj} \quad \text{2SgObj} \quad \text{pull} \quad \text{remove-lpfv} \\
& \quad \text{‘We will pull you-Sg out.’}
\end{align*}
\]

The verbs in a direct chain are, however, separated by a preverbal subject pronoun in relative clauses and related constructions.

\[
\text{(494) } \begin{align*}
a. & \quad [\text{ìnà}^L \quad \text{bàn} \quad \text{wò} \quad \text{gùn-è}]^L \quad \text{dèn} \\
& \quad [\text{place}^L \quad \text{fall} \quad \text{3SgSbj} \quad \text{go.down-Pfv.Rel}]^L \quad \text{place} \\
& \quad \text{the place where he/she fell down’}

d. & \quad [\text{nińir}ù^L \quad \text{ù} \quad \text{bàn} \quad \text{fù} \quad \text{gùn-ú}]^L \quad \text{nińir}^i \\
& \quad [\text{day}^L \quad \text{2SgObj} \quad \text{pull} \quad \text{1SgPoss} \quad \text{remove-Pfv.Rel}]^L \quad \text{day} \\
& \quad \text{‘the day (when) I pulled you-Sg out’ (for } \text{gùn-ú})
\end{align*}
\]

It was initially difficult to elicit chains of verbs with valency mismatches, but a textual example with an intransitive (‘come’) followed by a transitive (‘find, encounter’) shows that a pronominal object specifically associated with the second verb is positioned next to it (495a).

My assistant provided a follow-up example showing that a nonpronominal object also occurs in this position (495b).
15.1.4 Negation of direct verb chains

Only the final verb in a chain may be morphologically negated. The negation has scope over the entire chain. Only the final verb undergoes whatever tonal changes are required by the negative inflectional suffix.

(496)  
\[ \text{wó  bàgá  sùgò-\text{-lí}} \]  
3SgSbj  fall  go.down-PfvNeg

‘He/She did not fall down.’

15.1.5 Iterated \{HL\} -toned verbs plus a final motion verb

To indicate the cooccurrence of a backgrounded activity with a motion event (‘go’, ‘come’, ‘go up’, etc.), the backgrounded activity verb is iterated once (after a cognate nominal or other constituents). Both occurrences have \{HL\} overlay and no inflection. The \{HL\} applies to lexically /LH/ verbs like dègè ‘lick’ (497e) as well as to /H/-toned verbs. Nonmonosyllabic stems whose bare form ends in a high vowel, like wírì ‘whistle’ (497c), have the vocalic form with final mid-height vowel as in the imperative and various suffixed forms. The motion verb follows the iterated activity verb, but need not be adjacent to it, as shown by the intervening constituents in (497b-c).

(497)  
\( a. \)  
\[ wó  [nàː  pìːrˌHL-\text{-HL}pìːr]\]  
3SgSbj  [meal eat HL-\text{-HL} eat]  \( l_{yè-	ext{rē}} \)  
\[ \text{come-Pfv} \]  
‘He/She came (while) eating.’

\( b. \)  
\[ wó  [núŋù  núŋðˌHL-\text{-HL}núŋð]\]  
3SgSbj  [song sing HL-\text{-HL} sing]  \( l_{árərˌL} \)  
\[ \text{top.Loc-Pfv} \]  
\[ dș̃w-\text{-è} \]  
‘He/She went up (while) singing.’

\( c. \)  
\[ wó  [wîrəŋə  wîręˌHL-\text{-HL}wîrę]\]  
3SgSbj  [whistling whistle HL-\text{-HL} whistle]  \( nā \)  
\[ \text{ground go.down-Pfv} \]  
‘He/She came down (while) whistling.’

\( d. \)  
\[ wó  [kîrˌí  kópòrəˌHL-\text{-HL}kópòrə] \]  
3SgSbj  [bone gnaw HL-\text{-HL} gnaw]  \( l_{yē-y} \)  
\[ \text{go.Pfv} \]  
‘He/She went (while) gnawing on a bone.’

\( e. \)  
\[ wó  [nùmə  dęgęˌHL-\text{-HL}dęgę] \]  
3SgSbj  [hand lick HL-\text{-HL} lick]  \( sūg-\text{è} \)  
\[ \text{go.down-Pfv} \]  
‘She came down licking her hand.’

326
15.1.6 Nonfinal L-toned Čv(·) verb stems in chains

Like ‘go’ and ‘do first’ (see below), gi ‘say’ has an L-toned form Ľ gi in similar contexts in purposive clauses (§17.6.1.2).

15.1.6.1 Nonfinal L-toned Ľ yè ‘go’ in chains

An L-toned form of yè ‘go’ occurs nonfinally in chains, directly following another verb. Motion as such need not be involved. Rather, the construction implies some time lapse between the event denoted by the final verb(s) in the chain and the preceding event. (498) a. … bògér-è:-sèn dè, … turn.over-Pfv-PlSbj if],
  pà→ Ľ yè kó f:n ľ nà-nù, until Ľ go NonhSbj child ľ give.birth-Ipfv,
kó Ľ yè f:n nàrw è dè, …
NonhSbj Ľ go child give.birth-Pfv if, … ‘… you-Pl turn over (weeds), until eventually they go and bear fruits. When they have gone and borne fruits, …’ (2011.1a.30)

b. [bàrà[l distant Ľ yè] kíj-í: ľ dàn-è:-sèn dè
[oultback[l distant ľ go] meet prepare-CausPerf-PlSbj if
‘(when) they would go and meet in the distant bush and prepare (=plan)’ (2011.1b.03)

15.1.6.2 Nonfinal imperative Ĺ yà: ‘go’ in chains

In (499), the phrase with Ĺ yà:-→ is freely translated ‘as soon as (X) went’. It resembles Ĺ yà: in parallel constructions (§15.2.1.5), but the sense of the passage suggests rather a connection with imperative yà: ‘go’.

(499) [ĭyé ľ kè] ľ dè-dè:-I ľ yà:-→, [today ľ Top] Rdp-father.Def ľ go.Impr,
  íyé = ľ è:n ľ [tè–tè:] ľ tégir-í ľ dè again soda.ash-[Rdp-filtering.pot].Def ľ filter-Pfv Ipfv if
  ‘This time, as soon as the father went, again the (step-)mother filtered (the soda ash) (with) the soda-ash filtering pot.’ (2011.1b.01)
For a different construction with doubled final Ĺ yà:, see §15.2.1.5.

15.1.6.3 Nonfinal L-toned Ĺ tí ‘do first’ in chains

tí ‘do first’ (i.e. finish doing one thing before starting on another) is also attested in the form tê-è(·) as a perfective linker between two chained verbs denoting sequenced events (§15.2.2.5), and in the combination t-i dè with similar functions (§16.1.3.2). In (500), it has unsuffixed form, with L-tone, again as a perfective linker. The point of the passage is that the
villagers (in the past) would complete carrying one person’s millet from the fields to his home before beginning to do the same for another person.

(500) \[ \text{[wó] } \text{[l kè]} \text{ dògò-li,} \]
\[ \text{[3SgPoss] } \text{[l Poss] be.finished-PfvNeg,} \]
\[ \text{dàgá } \text{[l tì] } \text{[jù:]} \text{ [l péré]} — \text{ dùw-ɛ̀-rè} \]
\[ \text{leave } \text{[l do.first] [millet] other] — \text{ carry-MP-Ipfv.PSbj} \]
‘(If) (the millet) of that one was not finished (=completely transported), they didn’t leave it and then carry any other millet.’ (2011.1a.13)

tí ‘send’ or ‘cause to move away’ in verb chains, see (490) in §15.1, may be an accidental homonym of tí ‘do first’, or they may have diverged from a single ancestral verb.

Jamsay perfective positive inflectional suffix -tì and its Ben Tey match -tî, used mainly with transitive verbs, are related. Jamsay also allows tí (H-toned) as a perfective-like linker in chains.

15.1.7 Inflected form of \( yè- \) ‘go’ as final member of chain

In the form \( l\,yè-∅ \), a reduced form of perfective \( yè-ỳ \) ‘went’, the ‘go’ verb occurs in certain combinations that need not involve even incidental motion. The phrases in (501) are common.

(501) a. \( tάŋá \) \( l\,yè-∅ \) \( dè \)
\[ \text{become } \text{[l]go-Pfv if} \]
‘if it happens that …’ (discussed in §16.1.3.1)

b. \( nάŋá \) \( l\,yè-∅ \)
\[ \text{forget } \text{[l]go-Pfv} \]
“(he/she) forgot”

c. \( lάgǔ \) \( l\,yè-∅ \)
\[ \text{overflow } \text{[l]go-Pfv} \]
‘it was too much (extreme)’ (2011.1a.22)

tάŋá ‘become’ does not combine with ‘go’ in its basic sense, cf. \( tímé = ỳⁿ \) tάŋ-ɛ̀ ‘he became (turned into) a tree’. ‘Forget’ and ‘overflow’ (in the sense ‘be too much’) combine with ‘go’ only in the perfective positive. Thus nάŋá-li ‘did not forget’, nάŋá-jú ‘will forget’, lάgǔ-jú ‘will be too much’, etc.

As in English (\( X \) went and died), ‘go’ often occurs with ‘die’ and its euphemisms and with semantically related verbs like ‘pass’. In the textual examples in (502a-b), no motion was involved. In (502c-d), motion is already indicated by the preceding chained verb ‘go out’.

(502) a. \( mόr-ɛ̀-ɛ̀: \) \( l\,yè-∅ \)
\[ \text{be.lost-MP-and.SS } \text{[l]go-Pfv} \]
‘(she) was lost’ (euphemism for ‘died’) (2011.1a.01)

b. \( yd-η \) \( yè \) \( nú: \) \( l\,yè-∅ \)
\[ \text{like.that } \text{there } \text{die } \text{[l]go-Pfv} \]
‘In that way she died there?’ (2011.1b.02)
In these combinations, the final ‘go’ verb is particularly common in the perfective (positive). However, it can also occur in other forms. (503) is imperfective.

(503)  | ú | wàr-ë | dè |
[2SgSbj] | do.farming-Pfv | if |
| [[nù:L  | gàmá] | 1yè-∅  |
[dây”] | [millet- | some] | 1limit | die | 1go-lpfv |
‘If you-Sg farm (=weed) (too early), most of the millet will go and die.’ (2011.1a.03)

Even perfective 1yè-∅, though it is reduced in form and meaning, still patterns as an inflected chain-final verb stem. It has a plural-subject form 1yè-ɛ̀ with short vowel, compare the full form 1yè-ɛ̀-ɛ̀nt (they) went.

(504)  | fènè | bè | wàL |
[Logo Pl Top] | forget | 1go-Pfv.Plsbj | Quot |
| [nàŋa] | 1yè-∅  | 1wà |
‘(They said:) “As for us, we forgot (the rendez-vous).” ’ (2011.1b.03)

Something very similar to this chain-final perfective 1yè-∅ with bleached sense was undoubtedly the historical source of Jamsay perfective suffix -yè~-yà with motion verbs and statives.

15.1.8 Chaining with jìjì ‘(go) along with’

The invariant form jìjì ‘along with’ seems to function as a transitive verb in nonfinal position in a chain with a motion verb. The context is that the subject of the motion verb is taking along a dependent person (such as a child or a visitor), an animal, or e.g. a tool. The 1Sg object form má preceding jìjì (505b) suggests a possible analysis of jìjì as a transitive verb (limited to nonfinal position in chains) rather than a typical spatial postposition. One could alternatively argue that jìjì is a postposition like dative nì, which also follows 1Sg má. In the perfective, ‘go’ takes the reduced form 1yè-∅ described in the preceding section (505c).

(505)  | jìjì | yà: |
[child.Def 1L | along.with] | go.lmprt |
‘Go-2Sg with the child!’ (= ‘Take the child with you!’) 

b.  | má | jìjì | yèr-ë |
[1Sg | along.with] | 1come-Pfv |
‘(He/She) came with me (=brought me along).’
15.1.9 Chaining with final perfective of pórù ‘say’

In this construction, a final perfective pór-ì ‘said’ (§11.3.1) is added to a verb. The sense is not quotative, rather it indicates that the event in question immediately followed the preceding event. The construction is attested once in a text, involving a character transformed into a bird, perched on a tree, who could fly off very quickly. A more colorful translation like ‘flew off in a flash’ might be appropriate.

(506) [yò̀-ŋ wò́ gé-è] [bàiŋ yè́ pór-ì]
[like.that 3SgSbj say-and.SS] [B go say-Pfv]
‘When he had said (=sung) like that, Baji immediately went away.’ (2011.1b.02)

Following a ‘before’ clause, yè́ pór-ì ‘said’ (plural-subject yè́ pór-è:) has a perfect reading: ‘has/had (already) gone away’.

(507) a. wò́ ᵁ yè-jà, ín yè́ pór-ì
3SgSbj ᵁ come-before, 1SgSbj go say-Pfv
‘By the time he/she came, I had gone (away).’

b. bé́ ᵁ yè-jà, émè́ yè́ pór-è:
3PlSbj ᵁ come-before, 1PlSbj go say-Pfv
‘By the time they came, we had gone (away).’

My assistant did not accept this construction with verbs other than ‘go’.

15.2 Adverbial clauses with overt chaining or subordinating morpheme

15.2.1 Imperfective and durative subordinated clauses

In addition to the constructions described in the following subsections, see the imperfective complements of perception verbs like ‘see’ and ‘find’ in §17.2.2.2, and the iterated {HL}-toned verbs and a final motion verb in §15.1.5, above.

15.2.1.1 Progressive adverbial clause (-tànà, plural -tèŋè)

Time-of-day verbs like ná: ‘spend the night’ and dégé ‘spend the day’, along with tšw⁴⁷ ‘do for a long time’, can combine with a subordinated progressive clause (508a-c) whose verb has inflectional suffix -tànà. The optional plural-subject form -tèŋè can be used when the subject is plural (508a). My assistant favors this construction, rather than that with -nì: (see just below, §15.2.1.2) when the temporally concurrent main clause is perfective.
15.2.1.2 Different-subject ‘while’ clause (-nì ~ -ǹ)

A backgrounded clause denoting an activity simultaneous to that of the main clause, but with a disjoint subject, has suffix -nì ~ -ǹ on the verb. When combined with dè ‘if/when’, the actions can be sequenced rather than simultaneous, but the clause with -nì ~ -ǹ still denotes an imperfective action, as in (509c). See also the construction kó kɔ́-ǹ dè (§15.4.1.1).

(509) a. íⁿ bìré [nā: ō pì-ni] 1bì-jù
   1SgSbj work(n) [meal 2PlSbj eat.meal-while.DS] 1do-Ipfv
   ‘I will work while you-Pl eat.’

   b. [bìré ō bì-ni]
      [work(n) 2PlSbj do-while.DS]
      íⁿ gìně 1nɔ̀wⁿ-è:jù
      1SgSbj sleep(n) 1sleep-MP-Ipfv
   ‘While you-Pl work, I will sleep.’

   c. [hāl ŋù: bē dūw-è-nà]
      [even millet 3PlSbj carry-while.DS]
      [hāl tō→ dà:ɡá 1dè-è]
      [even even night 1night.fall-Pfv]
      [nùñà nā-è kà:”]
      [sun spend.night-Pfv even]
   ‘even if they are carrying the millet while night has fallen, even while (the next) day has broken, …’ (2011.1a.13)

   d. [é nè:] [ē:rebère nā:] gūŋ ō pì-nì dè, [2Pl now] [peanut main] take.out 2PlSbj eat-while.DS if,
      [nù: kū:” gō: jù]
      millet then 1go.out-Ipfv
   ‘You-Pl now, you are taking out (=harvest) groundnuts and eating them (for a period of time), then (eventually) the millet comes out.’ (2011.1a.19)

Forms of this suffix with various verb-stem shapes and tones are in (510). The stem takes its usual presuffixal form, and preserves its lexical tones. The vowel of -nì is frequently apocopated, resulting in -ǹ, rv-Deletion usually applies to Ėrvv and Ėrvv stems (510d). A
connection between this suffix and the dative postposition *ni*, which also often apocopates, is phonologically reasonable but makes no sense semantically.

(510) Different-subject (DS) ‘while’ subordinator (variant -n̄ not shown)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>DS</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Cv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó-ni</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú-ní</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gí</td>
<td>gí-ní</td>
<td>‘say’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yé</td>
<td>yah-ní</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé</td>
<td>jâ-ní</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| b. Cv:     |      |       |
| /H/-toned  |      |       |
| ká:n       | ká:n-ní| ‘shave’ |
| kɔ:       | kɔ:n-ní| ‘weep’  |
| ná:      | ná-ní | ‘spend night’ |
| nú:      | nú-ní | ‘die’   |
| tů:n      | tô:n-ní| ‘measure’ |
| /LH/-toned |      |       |
| bɛ:       | bɛ-ní | ‘put down’ |
| gĩ:n       | gĩ:n-ní| ‘steal’ |
| gò:      | gò-ní | ‘go out’ |
| jâ:      | jâ-ní | ‘dig’   |
| jɛ:      | jɛ-ní | ‘scoop’ |

| c. CvCv except with medial rhotic |      |       |
| /H/-toned |      |       |
| págá      | págá-ní| ‘tie’  |
| pǐné      | pǐné-ní| ‘shut (door)’ |
| súgó      | súgó-ní| ‘go down’ |
| /LH/-toned |      |       |
| bògó      | bògó-ní| ‘(dog) bark’ |
| bàgá      | bàgá-ní| ‘fall’ |
| dɔwɔ      | dɔwɔ-ní| ‘go up’ |

| d. Cvr, Cvr’v usually shortens to Cv- |      |       |
| rv-Deletion applies |      |       |
| bàr’a      | bà-ní | ‘beat (tomtom)’ |
| dɔr’ɔ      | dɔ-ní | ‘sell’ |
| gɛr-i      | gɛ-ní | ‘look’ |
| yɛrɛ       | yɛ-ní | ‘come’ |
| rv-Deletion fails to apply |      |       |
| tɛrɛ       | tɛrɛ-ní| ‘pound’ |

332
e. Cv:Cv
/HL/-toned
sí:rì  sí:ré-nì  ‘cook (meal)’
sí:rì  sí:ré-nì  ‘point at’
ú:-nì  ú:-ná-nì  ‘lay down’
/LHL/-toned
bà:rì  bà:rá-nì  ‘send’

f. CvCvCv
/HL/-toned
kígìrì  kígéré-nì  ‘return’
kóngújù  kóngújó-nì  ‘cough’
úgújù  úgóró-nì  ‘bake’
/LHL/-toned
pùnú-gù  pùnú-gó-nì  ‘ruin’
wègírì  wègóré-nì  ‘rub (eye)’

g. Mediopassive CvC-i:
/HL/-toned
kír-i  kír-é:-nì  ‘jump’
/LHL/-toned
dìw-i  dìw-é:-nì  ‘lean on’

15.2.1.3 Same-subject ‘while’ clause (jè)

This jè is distinct from recent perfect jè and variants (§10.2.1.3). It is attested with a following motion verb, so the basic context is ‘go (along) VP-ing’. The verb is in its bare stem as in chains. Mediopassive verbs have the -e: ~ -e: suffix allomorph.

(511)  

a. [nà^L  pɔ̃], [ligijj→  wàrá jè]  
   [person^L  all], [in.disorder  do.farm.work  while.SS]  
   [gà  -lè  go-Proh  
   ‘Nobody must go working (the fields) in disorder (randomly).’]

b. [dì:  nɔ̃:  jè]  
   [water  drink  while.SS]  
   [gà  -y]  
   [gà  -y  go-Pfv  
   ‘He/She drank water while going (walking).’]

c. yɔ̃-ŋ [bè  wò→]  
   [wùrùádù-wùrùádù-wùrùádù  
   like.that  [3Pl  all]  noisily  
   dìw-é:  jè]  
   [gò-ô:  mà, …  
   carry-MP  while.SS]  
   go.out-and.SS  and.then,  
   ‘Like that they all came out (of the bush) carrying (it) noisily, …’ (2011.1b.05)  
   [gò-ô:  for  gò-ô:]  

d. [kùmúgòrò  pɔl  pɔl  jè]  
   [head  cut.off  cut.off  while.SS]  
   [gà  -ji  go.past-lpfv  
   ‘(They) keep breaking (=cutting) off the heads (=grain spikes) and moving on  
   (from one plant to another).’ (2011.1a.10)
Compare Ben Tey subordinator -jè→ indicating continuing action.

15.2.1.4 Same-subject ‘while’ clause (-nì)

With a time-of-day verb (nà: ‘spend the night’, dègè ‘spend the day’), my assistant preferred a complement with suffix -nì: on the verb, instead of the progressive construction described above, when the temporally enclosing main verb is imperfective.

For verbs like jà:nù ‘boil (sth)’ whose bare stem ends in a short high vowel, the vocalism of the stem is that of the imperative and other suffixed forms, with a non-high final vowel.

-nì: can be reduced to -n in allegro speech or in high-frequency combinations. See yé yà:-n ‘while walking’ in (625b) in §17.6.1.1.

The time-of-day construction is illustrated in (512a-b).

(512) a. émé [té jà:ná-nì:] dègè-jù
1Pl!Sbj [tea boil-while.SS] spend.day-lpfv
‘We (will) spend the day making tea.’

b. émé gò: [gò:-nì:] nà:-jù
1Pl!Sbj dance(n) dance-while.SS spend.night-lpfv
‘We will spend the night dancing.’

For a textual example of gò:-nì: ‘while dancing’, see (474) in §14.1.10.

In (513) the verb plus -nì: is iterated and followed by dè ‘if/when’.

(513) yà:-nì: yà:-nì: dè, mhm,
go-while.SS go-while.SS if, uh-huh,
bè = ñ sá-è dè—
3Pl=Topic reply-Pfv if—
‘While they were going, uh-huh, they for their part spoke up—’ (2011.1b.05)

15.2.1.5 Parallel construction (Verb₁^{HL} yà:, Verb₂^{HL} yà:)

This construction is used to indicate that two activities are simultaneous or interspersed rather than being carried out in a strict chronological sequence. The yà: segments are uninflected, and a synchronic connection with the ‘go’ verb is tenuous (motion is not a necessary feature of the activities). I will gloss yà: noncommittally as ‘while’ in interlinear. For another construction with final yà:, see §15.1.6.2.

The two verbs take their presuffixal vocalic form, with an {HL} overlay on the final two syllables (or the single syllable of a monosyllabic stem). The verbs are otherwise uninflected, as the construction is used in narrative contexts where the referents and time frame are already clear. A subject NP is possible but not required.

In (514a), the point is that some farmers do not pile up all the millet grain spikes in the fields (over several days of the harvest) before carrying them home, rather they carry some home each day after cutting them off. In (514b), note that the object nouns (‘water’, ‘meal’) have their regular tones; this distinguishes the present construction from a purposive-clause
type with {HL} overlay on the verb but also with L-toned object nouns (in compound-initial form), see §17.6.2.

(514) a. \textit{kaːná} [gàmà ná] now [certain person] [géré] [yá:] [ dúw-è] [yá:].
[cut.off] [while] carry-MP [while]
[cut.off] [while] carry-MP [while]
[kó kà:] kà:ná yɔ́ kɔ̀ [Nonh] now [Nonh also] now [NonhSbj]'Nowadays, some people, (they do) cutting off (millet grain spikes) and carrying (them, to the houses) at the same time, cutting off and carrying. That too exists (=is done) nowadays.' (2011.1a.09)

b. [dí:] nɔ̀ [HL] [yá:] [ná:] jì [HL] [yá:] [water] drink [while] [meal] eat.meal [while]
‘drinking water and eating food at the same time’

c. kó íː' kùnɔ̀ [HL] [yá:] yɛ̀ [HL] gɛ́ gɛ́rɛ̀ [HL] lìyà:,
NonhSbj child put [while] flower fall.off [while]
‘It (=peanut plant) puts out fruits and the flowers fall off (at the same time).’
(2011.1a.20)

The mediopassive suffix (elsewhere -íː or -ɛː-) is reduced to -è, as in dúw-è from dúw-íː/dúw-ɛː: ‘carry’ in (514a).

Trisyllabic verbs have the partial {HL} overlay on the penult and the final, but preserve the lexical tone on the first syllable. The tonal effect is that only a final L-tone is superimposed: yɛ̀gɛ́rɛ̀ [HL] [yá:] from yɛ̀gírì ‘winnow (by shaking)’.

There are no irregularities among the verbs that do show irregularities in several other forms: jéːrɛ [HL] [yá:] (‘bring’), jàː [HL] [yá:] (‘take away’), yéːrɛ [HL] [yá:] (‘come’), yàː [HL] [yá:] (‘go’).

It is also possible to have a single yá:: clause, as long as it is followed by another clause or clauses that denote another prolonged activity.

(515) bé [HL] [géré] [HL] [yá::]
3PLSbj cut [while], [sùrɔ̃] [HL] [já] [tùnɔ̀] [HL] [lìmɔː-nɔː]
[pile.up] [place] [one.Loc] [assemble-Caus.Imprt]
[HL] [sùrɔ̃] [HL] [já] [tùnɔ̀] [HL] [lìmɔː-nɔː]
[pile.up] [place] [one.Loc] [assemble-Caus.Imprt]
‘As they cut off the grain spikes, (they) must gather and pile (them) in one spot, (they) must gather and pile (them) in a (=another) spot (and so forth).’ (géré) (2011.1a.12)

15.2.1.6 Parallel construction (Verb₁,Imprt ₁Verb₂,Imprt)

Another parallel construction, used in narrative to describe two simultaneous actions that continue in time, has the verb of the first clause in (singular) imperative form, hence HH-
toned for \(CV\)\(CV\) stems. The second verb is also imperative in form but \(\{L\}\)-toned, as often for verbs at the end of a clause or longer construction, especially in such parallelistic contexts.

\[(516)\]

\[\text{a. } [w\text{ó } b\text{ájá}] [dè-dè:] [\text{f}^\text{a } t\text{ɔ̀}] \quad \text{[3SgSbj pull.Imprt]} \quad \text{[Rdp-father around here call.Imprt]} \]

\[\text{[w\text{ó } b\text{ájá}] [dè-dè:] \quad \text{Lbɔ̀rɔ́ɔ̀] \quad \text{[3SgSbj pull.Imprt]} \quad \text{[Rdp-father lcall.Imprt]} \]

\[\text{[w\text{ó } b\text{ájá}] [dè-dè:] \quad \text{Lbɔ̀rɔ́ɔ̀] \quad \text{[3SgSbj pull.Imprt]} \quad \text{[Rdp-father lcall.Imprt]} \]

\[\text{[dè-dè:] } w\text{ɔ̀n]} \ldots\]

\[\text{[Rdp-father Top] } \ldots\]

‘She was pulling while the father (=crane) was calling (from) over here (on the other side), she kept pulling while the father kept calling. The father, …’

(2011.1b.02) \(\text{(bàjá, bɔ̀rɔ́ɔ̀)}\)

\[\text{b. } [w\text{ó } y\text{ęgérê}] [dè-dè:] [kɔgùjù]\text{[Rdp-father cough(n)] l cough.Imprt}\]

‘she kept winnowing while father kept coughing’

15.2.1.7 ‘Until getting tired’ \(\text{(fō→ } d\text{ēn-ę̄)\)}

This phrase, or its variant with \(p\text{̄}→\) instead of \(fō→\), can be added to a clause with progressive suffix, denoting an extended activity. It means literally ‘until (I, you, …) got tired’, but it mainly emphasizes the temporal extent and intensity of the activity.

\[(517)\]

\[\text{[f}\text{ō } n\text{ụnụ nụnụ-tática]} [\text{fō→ } d\text{ēn-ę̄)] \quad \text{[1SgSbj song sing-Prog] [until get.tired-Pfv]} \]

‘I sang until (I) got tired.’ (or: ‘I wore myself out singing’)

‘I sang for a very long time.’

\(d\text{ēn-ę̄}\) can also directly follow a same-subject anterior verb form (§15.2.2.1). In this case it is subject to clause-final tone-dropping (518).

\[(518)\]

\[\text{[ïnwé } b\text{è ] [f\text{ō } t\text{ɔ̀}] [nā] \quad \text{[\text{fō→ } d\text{ēn-ę̄]} \quad \\text{[LogoSbj PI] [here at] [person\text{all}]}} \]

\[\text{pór-ę: } \quad \text{Ldēn-ę́ɔ̀] \quad \text{gùrè } \quad \text{gò:-là:}} \]

\text{say-\text{and.SS}} \quad \text{[get.tired-Pfv] forward go.out-PfvNeg.PSbj}

‘(They said:) every one of us over here has spoken until (we) got tired, (but) (we) haven’t made progress.’ (2011.1b.04)

15.2.1.8 Chains with \(-ę:\) plus locational-existential quasi-verb

In the construction exemplified by \(\text{(519)}\), a verb with same-subject anterior form \((-ę:\) or variant) is followed by a subject pronoun and an \(<\text{HL}>\)-toned form of the appropriate ‘be’ quasi-verb (human singular \(w\), human plural \(wê\), nonhuman \(k\)). This is the tonal form of
such quasi-verbs in adverbial function (11.2.2.2). The sequence can function as background to a following foregrounded event.

(519) a. \([kɔn  nɔŋ dìn-ɛ:] i^\dot{n} wɔ\]

\[\begin{array}{ll}
1\text{SgSbj} & \text{be.HumSgSbj} \\
1\text{SgObj} & \text{catch-Pfv}
\end{array}\]

‘I was holding the (stolen) daba like this and they caught me.’

b. \([kɔn  nɔŋ dìn-ɛ:] émê wê\]

\[\begin{array}{ll}
1\text{PlSbj} & \text{be.HumPl} \\
1\text{PlObj} & \text{catch-Pfv}
\end{array}\]

‘We were holding the (stolen) daba like this and they caught us.’

15.2.2 Anterior clauses

In the constructions described under the “anterior” rubric, the time interval associated with the subordinated clause precedes that associated with the following main clause.

15.2.2.1 Same-subject past anterior (-e: ~ -e: ~ -i:)

The subordinating suffix -e: ~ -e: ~ -i: (usually -e:) is added to a clause (really a VP) with the same subject as the main clause. The two events are chronologically sequenced. Normally the entire event sequence has taken place in the past. My assistant did not accept this construction with a following imperative, preferring a direct verb chain (520b).

(520) a. \(i^\dot{n} [dē  jë:x-ɛ:] dā:n-i\)

\[\begin{array}{llll}
1\text{SgSbj} & \text{waterjar bring-SS} & \text{put.down-Pfv}
\end{array}\]

‘I brought the waterjar and put it down.’

b. \(dē jë:ri dā:ná\)

‘Bring-2Sg the waterjar and put it down!’

The pseudo-conditional or future anterior with dè is also possible with imperatives and more generally with ongoing or future event sequences, leaving -e: ~ -e: ~ -i: in connection with past event sequences.

Forms of this subordinator with stems representing different shapes and tone melodies are in (521). For the combination of -e: ~ -e: ~ -i: with a clause-final morpheme mà, see the following section.
(521) Same-subject (SS) anterior subordinator

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>SS</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**a. Cv**

no vocalic change

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ó</th>
<th>ó-è:</th>
<th>‘give’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tí</td>
<td>tí-è:</td>
<td>‘send’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
  [for té-è: ~ té-è see §15.2.2.5]
| gí | gí-è: | ‘say’ |
  [for gé-è: ~ gé-è see §11.3.1.2, §8.3.1.1]
| nú | nú-è: | ‘go in’ |

Ce harmonizing to Cé-è:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>yě</th>
<th>yě-è:</th>
<th>‘go’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jě</td>
<td>jě-è:</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**b. Cv: with nonhigh vowel**

[+ATR], stable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>gò:</th>
<th>go-è:</th>
<th>‘go out’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

[+ATR], harmonizing to [-ATR]

| bě: | bě-è: | ‘put down’ |

[-ATR] or low vowel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ná:</th>
<th>ná-é:</th>
<th>‘spend night’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ká&quot;:</td>
<td>ká&quot;-é:</td>
<td>‘shave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>já:</td>
<td>já-è:</td>
<td>‘dig’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jě:</td>
<td>jě-è:</td>
<td>‘scoop’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kš&quot;:</td>
<td>kš&quot;-é:</td>
<td>‘weep’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**c. CvCv , /H/-toned**

[+ATR]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>súgó</th>
<th>súg-è:</th>
<th>‘go down’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>téré</td>
<td>téré-è:</td>
<td>‘pound’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[-ATR]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>págá</th>
<th>pág-è:</th>
<th>‘tie’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>píné</td>
<td>pín-è:</td>
<td>‘shut (door)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**d. CvCv, /LH/-toned**

[+ATR]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bògó</th>
<th>bòg-è:</th>
<th>‘(dog) bark’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

[-ATR]r

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>yěřé</th>
<th>yěř-è:</th>
<th>‘come’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dɔwɔ</td>
<td>dɔw-è:</td>
<td>‘go up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bágá</td>
<td>bág-è:</td>
<td>‘fall’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**e. Cv: with high vowel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nú:</th>
<th>nú-ì:</th>
<th>‘die’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tú&quot;:</td>
<td>tú&quot;-ì:</td>
<td>‘measure’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gí&quot;:</td>
<td>gí&quot;-ì:</td>
<td>‘steal’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
f. \( CV : CV \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>allomorph</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sfiri</td>
<td>sfir-é:</td>
<td>‘cook (meal)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sfiri</td>
<td>sfir-é:</td>
<td>‘point at’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ú:-n</td>
<td>ú:n-é:</td>
<td>‘lay down’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bã:ri</td>
<td>bã:r-é:</td>
<td>‘send’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vowel quality is [-ATR] -é: for \( CV \) stems, regardless of lexical ATR quality. It is also -é: for all heavy stems, i.e. \( CV : CV \), mediopassive \( CVC-i: \), and trisyllabic stems. For the trisyllabics the [-ATR] value extends backward from the suffix to the medial syllable, if this syllable has a mid-height vowel, but it does not affect a [+ATR] vowel in the first syllable hence \( kígér-é: \) from \( kígiri \) ‘return’ (which is lexically [+ATR] as seen in imperative \( kígér \)), and \( kéngér-é: \) from \( kéngiri \) ‘listen’. For bimoraic \( CV \) and \( CV : CV \) stems, on the other hand, the suffix agrees with the lexical ATR value of the stem, so we get -é: or -e: depending on the stem. The allomorph is -í: after \( CV \) verbs with high vowel (521e). The phonology is not entirely transparent, but one way to explain the difference between \( CV \) and \( CV : CV \) stems is to argue that -é: is appended to the former, but fuses with the second mora of the latter, with the ATR value of this second mora dominating that of the suffix. How this analysis would explain the difference between \( CV : CV \) and heavier stems is left to the reader.

The vocalism of a verb plus -é: ~ -e: ~ -i: suffix is very close to that of the simple perfective form (§10.2.1), apart from the vowel length. The only clear difference in vocalism is for ‘give’, which has simple perfective 6-é but SS subordinated form 6-ë: . Given that the clause with SS -ë: denotes an antecedent eventuality, so there is also a semantic connection with perfectivity. This suggests that the SS -ë: form is segmentally a variant of the simple perfective with the final vowel (or semivowel -y) lengthened.

The tone of the suffix is also variable. It is always L-toned after a \( CV \) stem or after a heavy stem (\( CV : CV \), trisyllabic); in these combinations the stem itself has its lexical melody. For bimoraic (\( CV \) and \( CV : CV \)) stems, the suffix is H-toned, while the lexical tone is expressed on the first syllable. The tones again show considerable similarity to those of the simple perfective, but there are tonal divergences between the two forms for some \( CV \) stems, and a systematic tonal divergence in the /H/-toned \( CV \) stems (simple perfective \( CV-è \) etc., but SS subordination form \( CV-ë: \) etc.).
15.2.2.2 Simple inflected verb plus mà ‘and then’

TgK mà may be related historically to Jamsay mèyⁿ ~ màyⁿ, but the syntax of the two is rather different.

Clause-final mà ‘and then’ is attested once after a simple perfective verb.

(522) \[kèː bà→ nèː]. \[long.ago now], now \[pàrà-[gòː-ròː]l]-bìrë \[harvest]-Pfv and.then, \[sòː]-l \[nàŋ mà→]] \[híl.síː:n-kàⁿ, \[thing]-l [how? Q]] \[híl.equivalent, \[àrⁿ-ùrⁿ-ù bè] \[NearDist suffer-Prog and.then] \[yòː yè]-l \[nù-y] wà \[like.that there]-Pfv Quot ‘In the old days, now when the autumn work (=harvesting) was finished, or something of that sort, the young men would put (=hold) a festival.’ (2011.1b.03)

mà is also attested once after a progressive verb.

(523) \[yòː nèː.rè-táŋ] mà \[NearDist suffer-Prog and.then] \[yòː-ŋ yè]-l \[nù-y] wà \[like.that there]-Pfv ‘That (woman) was suffering, like that she died there, they say.’ (2011.1a.02)

More often, this mà is used after another subordinator or in stylistically marked verb iterations. For mà after same-subject anterior -eː ~ -eː ~ -iː see §15.2.2.3 just below, and for mà after kèːⁿ ~ kérⁿè see §15.2.2.8. For relevant iterative constructions see §11.6.6-7.

15.2.2.3 Same-subject anterior -eː ~ -eː ~ -iː plus mà

The suffix -eː ~ -eː ~ -iː (see preceding section) may also be followed by mà (cf. Prost pp. 52, 87). In data freely elicited from my primary informant, -eː ~ -eː ~ -iː was used without this morpheme. However, in narrative texts, examples both with and without mà are common. The examples of this combination suggest close coordination of the events in the two clauses, which in some cases are co-events (aspects of a single event). mà is also optionally added to the different-subject anterior subordinator kèːⁿ ~ kérⁿè (§15.2.2.8). I gloss it ‘and.then’ in interlinear.

(524) a. \[lòː]-l \[èː:n bår-ëː] mà \[aunt.Def soda.ash gather-and SS and.then] \[gìrⁿ-i jìjì]-l \[yè-∅] \[house go.with]-Pfv ‘The step-mother gathered up the soda ash (=burned stalks) and took it home with her.’ (2011.1b.01)
15.2.2.4 Conjoined background perfectives with dying-quail (∴)

In the textual passage (525), two clauses with perfective verbs each drawn out by dying-quail intonation (symbol ∴, interlinear gloss “.&”, see §7.1.1) function as background to a third clause. Both backgrounded clauses are also resumed by PPs (indented).

(525) jírⁿŋé súg-è·,
rainy.season go.down-Pfv.&,
[[jírⁿŋé-[súg-ú] h dógó] tɔ]
[[rainy.season-[go.down-VblN] h rear] at]
[wáρú gó:-sèⁿːː;]
[farm.work go.out-Pfv.PlSbj,&],
[wáρí h dógó] tɔ,
[farm.work h rear] at,
né: [kó wâ] [pàrá gó-è] gi-jù
now [NonhSbj QuotSbj] [autumn go.out-Pfv] say-Ipfv
‘(Suppose) the rainy season has come down (=begun), (so it is) after the coming down of the rainy season; and (they) have gone out (to the fields) (for) the first weeding, (so it is) after the first weeding; they now say “autumn (=harvest season) has gone out (=is happening).” ’ (2011.1a.32)

Another example from the same text is (526), where gó-è· is heard as [gòê:(·)] with final falling pitch.

(526) kà:ná, jírⁿŋé súg-è·,
now rainy.season go.down-Pfv.&,
pàrá gó-è·,
pàrá gó-è·,
autumn go.out-Pfv.&, autumn go.out-Pfv.&,
[kó h dógó níː] [né: iné h bi-jù]
[Nonh h rear after] [now what? h do-Ipfv]
‘Now, (suppose) the rainy season has come down (=begun), and the autumn has gone out, the autumn has gone out, (then) after that what do (they) do now?’ (21.1a.33)

This construction should not be confused with the same-subject anterior construction with -e: ~ -e: ~ -i: (preceding sections). Confusion could easily arise when the perfective verb to
which dying-quail intonation applies ends in L-toned -è ~ -è, so that the only audible effect of this intonation is prolongation of the vowel. In (525-6), note that súg-è::, phonetic [súgè:] is based on {HL}-toned perfective súg-è ‘he/she/it went/came down’, and is therefore clearly distinct from {H}-toned same-subject anterior súg-è: ‘went down and …’. In addition, plural-subject perfective -sèn can occur in the conjoined perfective construction, as in gò:-sèn:: in (525), pronounced [gò:sèn::]. By contrast, the same-subject anterior form does not allow plural-subject marking.

15.2.2.5 Perfective linker between two chained verbs (té-è: ~ té-è)

té-è: (often reduced to té-è) is the same-subject anterior form of tf in the sense ‘do first’ (the verb can also mean ‘send’). The irregular vocalism diverges from the more regular tf-è: from tf ‘send’, but it does have a vocalic match in purposive gé: from gi ‘say’ (§8.3.1.1). Other forms related to tf are L-toned 1 tf nonfinally in a verb chain (§15.1.6.3) and t-ì dé (§16.1.3.2).

Inserting té-è(·) makes it clear that the event denoted by the VP to the left was completed (perfective) before the time of the following event. In (527) té-è is followed by the final main-clause verb.

(527) [[kú" mâ] ká:" té-è] 1 gò-è
[head 1SgPoss] shave do.first-SS.Ant] go.out-Pfv
‘He shaved me, then left.’
‘Having (first) shaved me, he left.’

In (528) té-è is followed by another anterior subordinated clause (‘come’).

(528) [[âpú bóù] bé dàgá té-è] yèr-è: mâ, …
[froselle under] 3PObj leave do.first-and.SS] come-and.SS and.then,
‘She left them under a roselle bush and then came (home), …’ (2011.1b.04)

There is a verb té: ‘weave’, but it is probably not connected to this linking element té-è(·) in verb chains.

15.2.2.6 (Pseudo-conditional) future anterior (dè)

As Prost already astutely noted (p. 67 and passim), there are two distinct constructions with dè ‘if’. One construction is a conventional conditional antecedent clause, with clause-final dè ‘if’ as in ‘if he comes, I will see him’. The antecedent and the consequent are both ordinary main clauses (except for dè at the end of the antecedent), with their own independent subjects. The antecedent denotes a possible future eventuality, the consequent an eventuality that is causally or otherwise dependent on the realization of the antecedent. The verb of the antecedent clause is often, but need not be, aspectually perfective. Either or both of the clauses may be negative. See §16.1 on conditionals.

The other construction is a pseudo-conditional chain requiring a (positive) perfective verb before dè and a chronological sequence of eventualities. In the great majority of cases, the subjects of the two clauses are coindexed. Unlike the case with same-subject anterior subordinator -ë, which is used under these same conditions when the entire chain is perfective, the pseudo-conditional construction is used when the entire chain is imperfective. Therefore the dè clause is followed by a clause denoting an eventuality that is in progress,
recurrent, or not yet actualized, and it is at least implied that the first eventuality is included in this time perspective. The final clause may be imperative or hortative as well as imperfective indicative. Prost aptly dubs the pseudo-conditional verb the “participe futur antérieur.” Examples are in (529).

(529)  a.  wó  [dỳw-è  dè]  súgó-jú
   3SgSbj  [go.up-Pfv  if]  go.down-Ipfv
   ‘He/She will go up and (then) come (back) down.’

   b.  émé  [yè-Ø  dè]  yè-má-yⁿ
   1PlSbj  [go  if]  come-Hort-Pl
   ‘Let’s (three or more) go and come (back)!”

c.  [dèⁿ  dà:n-Ø  dè]  yà:
   [waterjar  put.down-Pfv  if]  go.Imprt
   ‘Put-2Sg the waterjar down and (then) go!”

d.  bé  [já-wò→  yèrè(-séⁿ)  dè]
   3PlSbj  [always  come-Pfv(.PlSbj)  if]
   [[jáⁿ  hGISPO]  yà:-tény
   [[ReflPoss  ñ-house.Loc]  go.Prog.PlSbj
   ‘Every day he/she comes here and (then) goes (back) home.’

See also (185a) in §8.2.4.

The verb before dè, in both conditional and pseudo-conditional constructions, triggers Apocope (here really a kind of Syncope) on a final perfective -i after an unclustered sonorant, thus dà:n-Ø for dà:n-i in (529c). For monosyllabic verbs whose perfective forms are trimmed before dè, see (560) in §16.1.2.

Prost stated that the pseudo-conditional dè, unlike conditional antecedent dè, cannot combine with an explicit plural-subject verb form. I find that this is usually the case, but that pseudo-conditional dè can occasionally take a plural-subject perfective verb (529d). Because the pseudo-conditional requires that the subjects in the two clauses be the same, plural-subject marking in the dè clause is redundant. Since plural-subject marking is optional anyway, this redundancy probably accounts for any statistical differences between conditional and pseudo-conditional clauses.

Likewise, Prost’s claim that the pseudo-conditional clause must share a subject with the following clause is not completely correct. While the majority of examples do follow this pattern, it is possible to switch subjects as long as the chronology is maintained and there is a close connection between the two eventualities. See (210) in §8.4.5.2.

The pseudo-conditional with dè competes with the direct-chain construction, where the nonfinal clause ends in a verb in bare-stem form. All examples with pseudo-conditional dè can be rephrased as direct chains. This applies to the examples in (529), which can be rephrased with direct chains dỳwè súgó-jú, yè yè-má-yⁿ, dà:n yà, yèrè … yà:-tény. If there is any difference in meaning, it is probably that the dè form puts a little more emphasis on the chronological sequence (“…, then …”).

The converse is not true, i.e. many direct verb chains cannot be freely replaced by pseudo-conditionals, even when the entire sequence is imperative. This is because the co-events denoted by the verbs in some direct chains are not chronologically sequenced, as in bájá gùñ ‘pull off’ (‘pull’ plus ‘remove’), whose co-events are synchronized.
Special cases of the pseudo-conditional are *tī dē* (§16.1.3.2) with the perfective of *tī* ‘do first’, and *gī dē* in purposive clauses (§17.6.1.3) with the perfective of *gī* ‘say’.

15.2.2.7 Different-subject anterior clause (*kē:*~ *kēr*~ ~ *kē*-*)

We now consider clause combinations involving disjoint subjects. In the construction illustrated in (530), the first clause does include a same-subject subordinator -è: (§15.2.2.1), but the coin dexation extends only to a following mini-clause (or chained verb) with an obligatory pronominal subject and a verb-like form *kē:* or its less common variant *kēr*. This form is not attested in other contexts; I will gloss it as ‘when.DS’ (DS = different subject). It is followed by a normal main clause with a disjoint subject.

(530) a. [sèdú nù-è:] [wó kē:*], ën go.out-Pfv
[S go.in-SS] [3SgSbj when.DS], 1SgSbj go.out-Pfv
 ‘When Seydou came in, I went out.’

b. [émé nù-è:] [émé kē:*], bèn go.out-Pfv
[1PlSbj go.in-SS] [3SgSbj when.DS], 3PlSbj go.out-Pfv
 ‘When we came in, they went out.’

c. [sùnú báj-è:] [íwó kē:*], pál-i
[rope pull-SS] [1SgSbj when.DS], snap-Pfv
 ‘When I pulled (on) the rope, it snapped.’

d. [í* wá:jú: [sèn L dé-è:] nùmà gèn-è:] [í* kē:*], [ënè dò-rò] wà
[1SgSbj money [RefiPposs L Rdp-father] source] request-SS
[í* kē:*], [ënè dò-rò] wà
[1SgSbj when.DS], [LogoS give-IPfVNeg] Quot
 ‘When I asked my father for some money, he said he wouldn’t give it (=he refused).’

e. [yè yè-è:] [wó kē:*],
[there go-SS] [3SgSbj when.DS]
[í* wá:jú: dá:ugu t-i]
[now Top] fly *send-Pfv
 ‘When he (=Crane) had gone there, now she (=girl) sent Fly (to inspect him).’ (2011.1b.02)

Prost (p. 86) comments that this construction is common in narratives: a new event is expressed as a perfective clause, then the same event is repeated as a background clause using the construction with *kēr*-è, then the next new event is expressed.

*kē:*~ *kēr*-è is likely derived from a subordinated form of *kār* ‘do’ or ‘be done’, a verb that is not present in this TgK dialect but is reported by Prost. The verb is common in e.g. Jamsay in similar different-subject constructions.

However, some TgK speakers (perhaps those that use *birè* instead of *kār* as the ‘do’ verb?) appear to be in the process of merging (or confusing) *kē:*~ *kēr*-è with *kē*-è; the same-subject anterior form of *kē*: ‘become’ (nonhuman). See (531c) below for an example with *kē*-è.
15.2.2.8 Different-subject *kè:*\(^n\) ~ *kèr*\(^n\)è plus *mà*

The different-subject anterior construction (preceding section) may be extended by adding a particle *mà*. This particle is also optionally used in same-subject anterior clauses (§15.2.2.3).

(531) a. *kà:nà* [sèrí yèr-è:] [kò kè:*\(^n\) mà],
now [plow come-and.SS] [NonhSbj when.DS and.then]
[sèrí bè] kàrà-sè\(^n\) dè,
[plow Inst] rip-Pfv.PISbj if,
ḯyè = ñ pu: [kò kù:*\(^n\)] L *nàmà*\(\)pù
again millet [Nonh on] then \(L_{\text{step.on-lpfv}}\)
’Now that the plow has come, they rip up (the earth) with the plow, (then) again they (drop seeds and) step on that in that way (=as described before).’
(2011.1a.01)

b. *[kà:nà nè:]*[á:sègè nè:] [á:r\(\)è: là]
[now now] [animal now] [formerly than]
sígè jó → kè:*\(^n\),
more many be:NonhSbj-and.SS [NonhSbj when.DS and.then]
[ी.r\(\)è]-kù̀s nè:] düw düw-i-i dè, ...
[peanut-leaf now] carry carry-MP-Pfv if, …
’Now that (livestock) animals have become more numerous than formerly, (the people) keep carrying the peanut leaves (=greens), (and ...)’ (2011.1a.22)

c. *[né:] wà\(^n\)] gù-gùrà,
[now Top] grass, [2SgSbj look-MP-and.SS]
[ú kè:*\(^n\)] mà,
[2SgSbj become. NonhSbj-and.SS and.then]
[pàŋŋ\(\)ì] gù-gùrà, sígè L düy\(^n\)]
[fonio-& grass\(\)\-remaining \(L_{\text{limit}}\)]
[kò yè-è:] sà\(^n\) gòjò-jú]
[NonhSbj go-and.SS ReflObj distinguish-Lpfv]
’Now the weeds, when you have looked, (you see that) the fonio and the remaining weeds have gone and become distinguishable.’ (2011.1a.24)

Example (531c) uses *kè:*\(^n\)è instead of *kè:*\(^n\), as mentioned in the preceding section. (531b) has one example of each, but in this case the occurrence of *kè:*\(^n\)è preserves the regular meaning of *kè:* (‘become’ with adverb).

15.2.2.9 Different-subject ‘after’ clause (-ñ dè)

This construction involves -ñ (different-subject ‘while’ subordinator, §15.2.1.2) and dè ‘if/when’. The temporal sense is closer to that of dè than to that of -ñ by itself. In this combination, the function of -ñ is to express the disjointness of the subjects of the subordinated and main clauses.

In addition to *gí-ñ dè* (§15.2.2.10) and *kò kò-ñ dè* (§15.4.1.1), there are four other textual examples. All clearly involve subject switches. The construction requires a preverbal subject pronoun. In (532d) the ñ dè clause is postposed to the main clause.
a. [gú-gúrú mòm-ɛ:] [ū dʒmʃ-ŋ dè],
[grass uproot-and.SS] [2SgSbj wait-DS if],
pɔ̌ mòm-írɛ́
fonio ripen-IPfv
‘After uprooting (=weeding) weeds, you Sg will wait, (until) fonio ripens.’
(2011.1a.25)

b. [sɔ̌ yɔ̂-ŋ] [sɔ̀-ɛ́ kɛwɛ-rɛ-kɛwɛrɛ] [ɛ́mɛ́ bĩ-ŋ dè],
[thing like.that] [thing ɛ́ minor] [1PISbj do-DS if],
pá ɛ́ mɔ́ ǹdè
until rain(n) rain.fall-IPfv
‘Things like that, we do minor things (=tasks) like that, until the (heavy) rain falls.’ (2011.1a.02) (verb birɛ́ ‘do’)

c. pú: [wó nɔw̃-š-ŋ dè],
millet [3SgSbj grind-DS if],
[nɛ́ wɔ̀ nɛ́] jë-ŷⁿ,
[now Top now] girl,
[ẽ-ɛ́-[tɛ-tɛ]:] ɛ́-lɔ̀w̃-lɔ́w ɔ̀ n = ŋ
[soda.ash]-[Rdp-filtering.pot] drip-drip say=while.SS
nūŋjũ ɛ́ tɔ̀rɔ̀ 繇-jù
singing begin-IPfv
‘After she (=step-mother) ground millet, then the girl, as the soda-ash filtering pot made dripping sounds, was beginning a song.’ (2011.1b.01) (the dead girl was resurrected as the singing pot)

d. [ɛ̀ nɛ́ wà]
[Logo QuotSbj]
[ʃgù-ʃgù yì bé: bɛ̃-ɛ̀ dè] yè-jù wà
[quickly over.there shit defecate-Pfv if] come-IPfv Quot]
[bé yà-ŋ dè]
[3PISbj go-DS if]
‘(Hare said:) “I will defecate quickly over there and will come (join you) after you-Pl have gone.” ’ 2011.1b.05

15.2.2.10 gí-ŋ dè ‘when, after’ (different subject)

In this construction, a clause ending in a bare stem is followed by a pronominal subject and gí-ŋ dè. The latter is composed of gí ‘say’ (also the basis for purposive morphemes), -ŋ elsewhere different-subject ‘while’ subordinator, and dè ‘if, when’, but the combination is rather frozen. The construction is often used like an English perfect.

The extent to which speech or thought is explicit or even alluded to varies. In (533a), the point is that groundnuts are harvested early and are a useful crisis food as one waits for the main staple (millet) to ripen, but there is no specific reference to the farmers’ thought process. In (533b), the ‘they’ in ‘they sang’ probably includes both the twins and the people (the song itself is a back-and-forth Q-and-A session), so it is treated as a different subject. In (533c), gí ‘say’ has its literal sense (it follows a song attributed to Hare). Instead of a clause, it is preceded by yɔ̌-ŋ ‘like that’, resuming a quoted song that the narrator has just finished.
A small crisis (i.e. food shortage) will eventually come for some people. When (and because) that (=crisis) has come, before millet comes out (=ripens in the field), groundnuts come out first. (2011.1a.19)

‘If they (=twins) went (somewhere else), when they had gone there, (they sang), “hey you (people), …” ’ (2011.1b.04)

‘When Hare had spoken (=sung) like that, Hyena replied: …’ (2011.1b.05)

15.2.3 ‘Since …’ clauses (gi:)”

The clause-final particle gi: creates ‘since …’ clauses, specifying an interval that began with the specified event and is understood to continue to the present. This clause type requires a clause-medial subject pronoun, even if the subject is also expressed by a clause-initial nonpronominal NP. This is a feature of subject relatives (§14.1.8), as also in imperfective complements of perception verbs (§17.2.2.2). The verb of the ‘since’ clause has the {H}-toned form characteristic of perfective verbs in nonsubject relatives.

The verbs whose regular perfective differs segmentally from the (nonsubject relative) form used in the ‘since’ construction are shown in (534). For segmentally similar but tonally distinct reductions before dè ‘if’, see (560) in §16.1.2.

(534) Form of singular-subject perfective before gi: ‘since’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regular</td>
<td>before gi:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. with -ỳ

| yè    | yè-ỳ   | yè gi: | ‘go’    |
| jé    | jé-ỳ   | jé gi: | ‘take away’ |
| nú    | nú-ỳn  | nú gi: | ‘go in’  |
b. with -è

ó  ó-è  ó giːⁿ  ‘give’

Examples of giːⁿ ‘since’ are in (535). That the verb has an {H} tone overlay is shown by comparison with regular perfectives like yèr-è ‘came’ and pùnú-g-ì ‘ruined’.

(535)  a. nì  ìⁿ yèr-è  giːⁿ,  màngòrò  ì-ì
here  1SgSbj  hìcome-Pfv  since,  mango  see-PfvNeg
‘Since I came here, I haven’t seen a mango.’

b. bàǹákọ  ú  yè giːⁿ,
B  2SgSbj  hìgo.Pfv  since,
nàmà  nì  àrⁿù  láw-ì
up.to.now  here  rain  rain.fall-PfvNeg
‘(Ever) since you-Sg went to Bamako, it hasn’t rained here.

c. sè:dù  péjú  wó  dár-è  giːⁿ,
S  sheep  3SgSbj  hìkill-Pfv  since,
[émé  bín]  jò-è
[1PlSbj  hìbelly]  hìbe.full-Pfv
‘Since Seydou slaughtered the sheep, our bellies have been full (=we have eaten well).’

d. tè  l-ì-rì:  ú  pùnú-g-ì  giːⁿ,
tea-1g ear  2SgSbj  hìbe.ruined-Caus-Pfv  since,
émé  té  bè-ì:
1PlSbj  tea  get-PfvNeg.PlSbj
‘Since you-Sg ruined the tea-kettle, we haven’t had any tea.’

e. [iⁿtìy]  mà  bè  yè-è:  giːⁿ,
[friend  1SgPoss]  3PlSbj  hìgo-Pfv.PlSbj  since,
ìⁿ  [kènè  -ká  bè]  wà
[anger  with]  be.HumSgSbj
1SgSbj  heart-Caus  weep
‘Since my friends went (=left), I have been sad.’

f. tìwó  kó  bág-è  giːⁿ,
stone  NonhSbj  hìfall-Pfv  since,
ìⁿ  yé  yà-ì
1SgSbj  there.Def  go-PfvNeg
‘Since the rock fell (off), I haven’t gone there.’

It was possible to elicit a negative example (536). The stem and perfective negative suffix are both included in the overlaid {H} tone.

(536) nòwⁿò  wó  bè-ì  giːⁿ,
meat  3SgSbj  hìget-PfvNeg  since,
[kènè  -páru  bè]  wà
[anger  with]  be.HumSgSbj
‘Since he didn’t get any meat, he has been angry.’
This construction can also be used to translate ‘since X’ where X is a noun phrase or adverbial phrase. This requires an overt verb, ‘go out’ (537a) or ‘pass’ (537b). (537a) is syntactically interesting in that the adverb ‘yesterday’ does not correspond to a nonhuman subject pronoun kò similar to that coindexed with ‘Feast of the Ram’ in (537b).

(537) a. yá: go.out-Pfv since, i nga: pí:-lì
   yesterday go out since, 1SgSbj meal eat.meal-PfvNeg
   ‘I haven’t eaten (a meal) since yesterday.’

b. lãyé kó gár-é gi:n
   Feast.of.Ram NonhSbj pass-Pfv since,
   rain rain.PfvNeg
   ‘Since the Feast of the Ram (passed), the rain hasn’t fallen.’

15.2.4 ‘Until…’ clauses

Simple ‘until’ (without a ‘from’ phrase) can be expressed with clause-initial expressive adverbial pà→ or fò→ ‘until, all the way to’.

(538) [s3L këwëré-këwëré] émé bi-ù dè,
[thing minor-minor] 1PISbj do.while.DS if,
pà→ ìrù láwò-jù
until rain(n) rain.fall-Ipfv
‘We do minor things (tasks), until eventually the (heavy) rains come.’ (2011.1a.02)

15.3 Noun-headed temporal clause (‘the time when …’)

Nouns denoting a time or time interval, especially tènë and less often dógurú, can function as head of a relative clause. They are {L}-toned like any relative-clause head NPs. Such relative clauses can be made into explicit temporal adverbial clauses (‘at the time when …’) by adding a postposition such as bè ‘with’. (539a) illustrates with an {L}-toned form of tènë ‘time’. For a similar case based on dógurú ‘time’ see (533a) in §15.2.2.10.

Other temporal nouns with meanings like ‘day’ and ‘year’ can also function as relative-clause heads. In an adverbial clause, the noun ‘day’ is repeated, still in {L}-toned form, after the clause proper, as a kind of external relative-clause head in addition to the clause-internal head (§14.1.7). If the verb is perfective, it is {H}-toned in the double ‘day’ construction (539b). ‘Year’ does not show the doubling, keeps the regular {HL} overlay on a perfective verb, and does not require a postposition (539c).

(539) a. [tènëL nùrù ù ú á:-jùH] bè,
[time sickness 2SgObj catch-Ipfv RelH] with,
i bàmàkɔ̀ wɔ
1SgSbj B be:NonhSbj
‘At the time when you were getting sick, I was in Bamako.’
b. \([ninir^n]_L \quad ú ^H yér-é]_L \quad ninir^n_i,L\)
\([day_L \quad 2SgSbj ^H come-Pfv.Rel]_L \quad day\]
\(nì \quad ãr^n_u \quad ìw-è\)
here rain rain.fall-Pfv
‘The day you-Sg came, it rained.’

c. \(kà: \quad ãr^nà-kùjù_l \quad kò \quad ^H yér-é,\)
grasshopper year^l NonhSbj \(^H come-Pfv.Rel,\)
\(émé \quad [pàrà-gò:rò]_L-bíré \quad bi-là:\)
1PlSbj \([autumn]_Sg\)-work do-PfvNeg.PI Sbj
‘The year the locusts came, we didn’t do the harvest.’
(also \(yér-è^L\) with topic intonation)

15.4 Reverse anteriority clause ‘before …’

Efforts to elicit ‘before …’ clauses were unsuccessful when the subjects of the main and adverbial clauses were the same. In this case, my assistant translated them with conditional or pseudo-conditional clauses, ending in \(dè‘\ if/when’. For example, ‘we’ll do some farm work before going to the market’ was rendered as ‘if/when we have done farm work, (then) we’ll go to the market’.

It was not difficult to elicit a distinctive ‘before …’ clause when the subjects of the two clauses were disjoint. See below.

15.4.1 Based on perfective negative

15.4.1.1 \(kò \ kó \ 3-ð ï \ dè\)

The construction in (540) involves a perfective negative clause (‘planting did not arrive’), framed by \(kò \ kó \ 3-ð ï \ dè ‘if it is (there)’. A semi-literal paraphrase is ‘if/when/while it was the case that [planting had not (yet) arrived], …’. The construction is common in texts.

(540) \(maintenant \quad [émé \quad gànà ^e^L],\)
now \(\quad [1P\Poss \quad country.Loc ^e^L],\)
\([lè \quad ðš:-lì] \quad [kò \quad kó \ 3-ð ï \ dè],\)
\([planting \quad arrive-PfvNeg] \quad [NonhSbj \quad be.NonhSbj \quad while.DS \quad if],\)
\(émé \quad ìgè \quad ù:\quad ‘bi-ðì\)
1PlSbj \( \quad what? \quad first \quad ^L \text{do-Ipfv}\)
‘Now (here) in our country, (even) before planting (time to plant) has arrived, what do we do first?’ (2011.1a.01)

A variation on this is in (541), where \(kò \ kó \ 3-ð ï \ dè\) frames a state including positive and negative propositions.

(541) \(né: \quad wɔ^n, \quad ãr^n_u \quad ìw-è: \quad mà,\)
now \(\quad Top, \quad rain(n) \quad rain.fall-and.SS \quad and.then,\)
\(nà \quad [né: \quad wɔ^n] \quad gàr-à\quad mà:-ñ-è: \quad ìe-ðì,\)
earth \(\quad [now \quad Top] \quad a.lot \quad dry-Inch-and.SS \quad finish-PfvNeg,\)
\(nà \quad bùñùr^n-ù-bùñùr^n-ù \quad [kò \quad kó \ 3-ð ï \ dè],\)
earth \(\quad \text{variably} \quad [NonhSbj \quad be.NonhSbj \quad while.DS \quad if]\)
15.4.1.2 kó kɔ́ bè

A slightly distinct construction with final bè (instrumental or similar) is seen in (542). I interpret the construction as a relative clause, plus a postposition.

(542) [sèři  yè-li]  [kó  Hkɔ́]  bè],
[pìlow  come-PfvNeg]  [[NonhSbj  he.  NonhSbj.Rel]  with],
[nùmš  bè]  [wágà-tùmò  L  dágà-L  dágà-L  dágà]
[hand  with]  [mound  small-L  small-L  small-L  small (§4.5.2)]
màŋjé-seⁿ  dè, …
make.ball-Pfv.PLsbj  if, …
‘Before the plow came (=was introduced), they shaped small round mounds (in rows), …’  (2011.1a.01)

15.4.2 With delayed future -jà

An {H}-toned verb stem with delayed future suffix -jà (§10.2.2.4) occurs at the end of the clause, which may contain dógùrù ‘time’ in {L}-toned form as relative head. The literal translation is therefore “(at) the time when … was going to happen (eventually).” The head noun is occasionally omitted as in (543c). A subject pronoun is required immediately preceding the verb.

(543) a.  [[ú  Hl  dè-dè:]  dógùrù  L  wó  yè-H-jà],
[2SgPoss  HlRdp-father]  time-L  3SgSbj  come-H-before]
1SgSbj  come-lpfv
‘I’ll come (=I’ll be back) before your father comes (here).’

b.  àrùù  dógùrù  L  kó  sügo-L  -jà,
rain  time-L  NonhSbj  go.down-H-before,
èmé  [tógú  bɔ́rɔ́]  nú-má-yìn
1PLsbj  [shed under]  go.in-Hort.PLsbj
‘Let’s go under the shed before the rain comes down.’

c.  àrùù  kó  yè-H-jà,
rain  NonhSbj  come-H-before,
èmé  [tógú  bɔ́rɔ́]  nú-è:
1PLsbj  [shed under]  go.in-Hort.PLsbj
‘We went under the shed before the rain came.’

d.  dógùrù  L  bè  dówɔ-H-jà,  bè  á:
time-L  3PLsbj  go.up-H-before,  3PLObj  catch.Imprt
‘Catch-2Sg them before they go up!’
‘Before X’, where X is a NP denoting a time, can also be translated using this construction with the verb dɔ́: ‘arrive’ (544a). If X denotes a human or other enduring entity, the logic is different (denoting priority relations) and the postposition gîrè ‘in front of’ is pressed into service (544b).

(544) a. iⁿ [láyé dɔ́:]-já] bàmàk5 yá:-jú
1SgSbj [Feast.of.Ram arrive]-before go-lpvv
‘I will go to Bamako before the Feast of the Ram.’

b. [àrⁿ à] L gàrá bè já
[manL big Pl] meal
[àrⁿ à L gîrè] xí:-jú
[children Pl in.front] eat-lpvv
‘The adult men eat before (“in front of”) the children.’

Forms of -já with representative verbs are in (545), with the bare stem and imperfective for comparison. The {H}-tone overlay before -já is evident in (545b) with lexical /LH/-tone, but the two irregular /HL/-toned stems (‘take away’, ‘bring’) in (545d) are not audibly affected. The j of -já does not become ɲ after a nasal syllable as it does in imperfective -jú ~ -jú, see ‘go in’ (545a). rv-Deletion applies to contracting stems before both suffixes (545c).

(545) Forms of -já ‘before’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>‘before’ with já</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. lexically /H/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú:-jú</td>
<td>nú:-já [nú:-dʒά]</td>
<td>‘go in’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó:-jú</td>
<td>ó:-já</td>
<td>‘give’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téRé</td>
<td>téRé:-jú</td>
<td>téRé:-já</td>
<td>‘pound’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíɡiri</td>
<td>kíɡéré:-jú</td>
<td>kíɡéré:-já</td>
<td>‘go back’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. lexically /LH/-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gó</td>
<td>gó:-jú</td>
<td>gó:-já</td>
<td>‘go out’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dágá</td>
<td>dágá:-jú</td>
<td>dágá:-já</td>
<td>‘leave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>þùnú-ɡi</td>
<td>þùnú-gó:-jú</td>
<td>þùnú-gó:-já</td>
<td>‘ruin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. rhotic-medial CvCv subject to rv-Deletion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yéré</td>
<td>yéré:-jú</td>
<td>yéré:-já</td>
<td>‘come’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bìRé</td>
<td>bìRé:-jú</td>
<td>bìRé:-já</td>
<td>‘work’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dárⁿá</td>
<td>dárⁿá:-jú</td>
<td>dárⁿá:-já</td>
<td>‘kill’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. irregular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʋ: to ý-</td>
<td>ý:-jú</td>
<td>ý:-já</td>
<td>‘see’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cě to Cá:-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yě</td>
<td>yě:-jú</td>
<td>yě:-já</td>
<td>‘go’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>presuffixal Cě:-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé</td>
<td>jé:-jú</td>
<td>jé:-já</td>
<td>‘take away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé:rǐ</td>
<td>jé:rǐ:-jú</td>
<td>jé:rǐ:-já</td>
<td>‘bring’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The simple delayed future has the same -jà suffix and the same segmental form of preceding verb stems, but it has {L}- rather than {H}-toned stem, and it is followed by sà ‘have’ (§10.2.2.4).

15.5 Spatial and manner adverbial clauses

15.5.1 Spatial adverbial clause (‘where …’) (nà)

The {L}-toned form of noun nà ‘area, ground’ is very common as relative-clause head denoting a place. The relative clause is optionally followed by an {L}-toned form dèŋ related to dèŋà ‘place’ (§14.1.7). In (546a-b), the NP containing the relative clause functions as an argument. In (546c) it is a true adverbial clause, creating a setting, although there is no locative postposition.

(546) a. [nàŋ] nà L àŋ bàŋ ñá sà ŋà yàː [cow place L fall Pfv.Rel] L place] go.Impr ‘Go-2Sg to the place where the cow fell!’

b. [nà L nà: ěmé pìː-pìː] wàŋ-á → kɔ [place] meal 1PISbj eat-lpfv] far.away be.NonhSbj ‘The place where we are going to eat is far away.’

c. [nà L ěmé ná-ë] [place] 1PISbj spend.night-Pfv] L place] [pɔː→] kɔː: rɔ ‘thing L nothing] be.NonhSbj-Neg ‘There is nothing (there) where we spent the night.’

15.5.2 Manner adverbial clause (‘how …’) (bà)

The usual head noun of a manner relative is bàⁿ L, an {L}-toned and slightly reduced variant of bàŋà ‘way, manner’. The relative clause may be followed by {L}-toned ǧiːⁿ L, cf. particle ǧiːⁿ ‘ike’ (§8.4.1).

(547) a. [[bìːjé bàⁿ L iː bìːjí] [work(n) manner L 1SgSbj do-lpfv] L manner] [wó kàː nɔː] káː nɔː bìːjí [3Sg also] likewise L do-lpfv ‘The way I work is how he/she too works.

b. [nà: bàⁿ L ŋiː pìː-pìː] [meal manner L 2SgSbj eat.meal-lpfv] mà = ŋì sèⁿ L = lá 1Sg=Dat good=StatNeg ‘The way you-Sg eat doesn’t please me.’
The verb of the bàⁿ clause is occasionally followed by nɔ̀, which appears to be related to demonstrative nɔ́: ‘this’.

(548) [ènè din-i: bè:-rò] wà,
[LogoSbj hold-MP get-IpfvNeg] Quot,
[bàⁿ nì ènè wɔ̀ nɔ́] [manner here LogoSbj be manner]
‘saying (=thinking) “I can’t keep them, (considering) the situation I am in.” ’
(2011.1b.04)

15.5.3 Headless adverbial clause as spatiotemporal or manner clause

15.5.3.1 Omission of redundant clause-internal head

My assistant did not accept headless relatives as adverbial clauses in elicitation. However, the implied internal head, such as ‘time’ in (549), can be omitted as long as the external {L}-toned noun was present after the relative verb.

(549) [[àrⁿú ∅ lɔw-ʒú++] ḷṭṇge] bè,
[[rain (time) rain.fall-Ipfv.Rel++] time] with
[wàrù-wùrí bè = n ɚa kɔ]
[farmer Pl=Dat good be.NonhSbj]
‘In the times when it rains, the farmers are pleased.’

Alternatively, if the postposition bè ‘with’ follows the relative clause, so that the latter’s adverbial nature is clear, a headless relative can function as a vaguely temporal clause (550).

(550) [músá ∅ bè â:-jú] bè,
[M (time) 3PlSbj arrest-Ipfv.Rel++] with,
₁[^] bâmànɔ wɔ̀ 1SgSbj B be.HumSbj
‘When they arrested Mousa, I was in Bamako.’

15.5.3.2 Headless adverbial relative clause plus topic wɔⁿ

Topic wɔⁿ may follow a headless relative clause in a construction translatable as ‘when/after …’, describing a backgrounded situation that sets the stage for a new event. Most textual examples involve perfective relatives (551).

(551) a. [bàrâ₁-nɔwⁿɔ bè wɔ kûwɔ jè,]
[outback⁻meat Pl 3SgObj eat.meat RecPf,
bè ᵢ kûw-ɛ wɔⁿ,]
3PlSbj ᶨ eat.meat-Pfv.Rel Top,
kiné yì ḷgô-è soul there.NearDist go.out-Pfv
‘The wild animals ate her up. When they had eaten her up, (her) soul went away from there.’ (2011.1b.03)
b. né: [ěː[čɛː-] sakeː tʂn-tʂn tʂn-tʂn tʂn-tʂn tʂn
now [soda.ash-[filtering.pot] all] (sound)
[ko ʰtʃr-ɛ  wɔ̌ⁿ],
[NonhSbj ʰbegin-Pfv.Rel Top]
[[[ɛ e kɔj] ʰbâŋã]  kɔːⁿ]  tʃr-ɛ
[[that.FarDist] [HumSg] also] begin-Pfv
‘Now all the soda-ash filtering pots, when they began to go “plop, plop,” that one
(of hers) too began (to sound).’ (2011b.01)

c. né: ɡɛr-ú ʰdɔ̀-ɛ wɔ̌ⁿ,
now cut-VblN ʰarrive-Pfv.Rel Top,
[né: wɔ̌ⁿ] [dɛrⁿ-ɛ]  ʰkûn-ú  wɔ̌ⁿ
[now Top] [crops² 2PlSbj ʰput-Pfv.Rel Top],
[kɔ  wɔ] [gûŋ-ú dɔ̀-ɛ] ʰgi-ʃú
[Nonh QuotSbj] [take.out-VblN arrive-Pfv ʰsay-lpfv
‘Now when (time for) cutting (millet/sorghum) has arrived, now as for the crops
that you-Pl have put (=planted), they say “the (time for) taking out (=harvesting)
has arrived.” ’ (2011a.32)

There is one textual example with a reduplicated imperfective relative, denoting a state just
prior to the intended action, which in fact was stymied (552).

(552) kûn-ɛ: ɡò-gó-ʃú ʰ
put-and.SS RdP-go.out-lpfv.Rel ʰ Top,
[ɲa² ɡó-ʃú ʰ]  ʰkɔ-ɾɔ
[place² go.out-lpfv.Rel] be.NonhSbj-Neg
‘As they put (it) down and were about to go out (of the house), (they found) there was
no way out.’ (2011b.05)

15.5.4 ‘From X, until (or: all the way to) Y’ (ŋàŋã, ʰdɔː)

The verbs ŋàŋã ‘take, pick up’ (bare stem form as in a chain) and ʰdɔː ‘arrive’ combine to
form two-clause constructions denoting the beginning and endpoints of a time span. Both
ŋàŋã and ʰdɔː are chained to a preceding verb denoting the relevant event type. The image is
of an event chronologically bounded by an act of ‘picking up’ (something) at the beginning
and by an endpoint. Compare the Jamsay construction of similar meaning with the cognate
verb ʃàŋà ‘take’.

In both clauses, there is a subject pronominal immediately preceding the verb.
The pronoun is obligatory unless there is no specific subject. It appears even if it simply resumes a
nonpronominal subject that has already been presented. The substantive verb of the first
clause has the form of a (singular-subject) perfective, therefore ending in {ɛ e} for many
verbs, but it has an {H} overlay. This is followed by ŋàŋã ‘take’, or by a conditional
perfective ɲàŋ-ɛ dè ‘if (it) takes’. The verb of the second clause takes the form of either the
bare stem (as in chains) or less often the verbal noun, but again it has {H} overlay. It is
followed by ʰdɔː ‘arrive’, in an uninflectable {L} -toned form of the bare stem.

For example, gò: ‘go out’ takes {H}-toned form gò-ɛ before ɲàŋã instead of the usual
perfective gò-ɛ ‘went in’ in the first clause, and gò: before ʰdɔː in the second. ɗên-ː ‘sit’
appears as ɗên-ː (from perfective ɗên-ː) in the first clause, and either ɗên-ː (from bare
stem ɗên-ː) or ɗên-t (from verbal noun ɗên-t) before ʰdɔː in the second clause.

355
The example in (553) demonstrates the use of the verb *nỳì ì* with a second 'take' verb (cf. English *how long does it take*?).

(553) [èxè  naï:] è da, [be ìlè-è] naï ì dè,
[peanut primary] Top, [3PlSbj ìslash.Pfv] take-Pfv if,
[kò ìtô:] dô;
[NonhSbj ìsprout(v)] ìarrive,
[ninirìì à:nà] ìlà
[day how many?] take ìget-Inf

'As for groundnuts, starting from (when) they have slashed (=planted), until it sprouts, how many days can it take?' (2011.1a.19)

Further elicited examples are in (554). My assistant preferred simple *nỳì* to the conditional *nì ì* (in both clauses) shows that the independent, not possessor, pronoun is used. This example also shows *yè* from bare stem *yè* 'go' in the second clause. In (554b), the first clause illustrates the immediate preverbal position of the subject pronoun. In the second clause, *kò* is an object pronoun, the (unspecified, nonspecific) subject being omitted. (554c) is inside a quotation.

(554) a. [nì ì ìyèr-è] nỳì, [here 1SgSbj ìcome-Pfv] take,
[[ì ìyè] ìdô:] [dî: in-è:-ìf]
[[1Sg ìgo] ìarrive] [water bathe-MP-PfvNeg]

'From the time that I came here until I went, I did not bathe.'

b. [àrù ìgirìì kò ìnùnú-ì] nỳì, [rain house NonhSbj ìbe.ruined-Caus-Pfv] take,
[kò ìdànù-ì] ìdô;
[[NonhSbj ìbe.fixed-Caus] ìarrive]
[èmé ginë ìwù-ì:-lá:]
[1PlSbj sleep(n) sleep]

'From the time the rain damaged the house, until when (they) fixed it, we didn’t sleep (well).'

c. [[bè wà] [bè ìnàr-ì] nỳì]
[[3Pl QuotSbj] [3PlSbj ìgive.birth-Pfv] take]
[[bè ìnà:] ìdô:] [màpà ìvè]
[[3PlSbj ìdie] ìarrive] [bad be.HumPlSbj]

'(quotation:) From the time they are born (lit.: “they [i.e. mothers] give birth to them”), to the time they die, they are evil.’

This construction can also be used with NPs rather than clauses, provided the NPs denote temporally bounded actions. This is the case with cognate nominals and semantically similar nouns, as in (555). Here the interviewer informs the interviewee that the questions to come will cover every aspect of farming. *wàru* primarily denotes working with the daba, especially in the middle of the rainy season. The clause with *lè* ‘slashing’ (i.e. striking the earth with a pick-hoe before dropping seeds into the hole) may be a rephrasing of the first clause with *wàru*, since *lè* more accurately represents the kick-off for the millet-farming season.
The verb *dà* is often translatable as ‘arrive’, but more strictly it denotes reaching the entrance, as when a visitor arrives in a courtyard but does not (yet) enter the house, or when e.g. the rainy season is just about to begin. So logically one might have had two occurrences of the verb in (556), one H-toned inside the second clause (‘arrive’ = ‘begin’) and the second L-toned outside and after the clause (‘until’).

A variation on this is (556). Here the eventuality denoted by the second clause has begun but has not ended. The first clause is structured as above. The second clause has a possessed compound verbal noun (‘its putting out child[ren]’) as subject. This is followed only by 4*²*ónica. The verb *dà* is often translatable as ‘arrive’, but more strictly it denotes reaching the entrance, as when a visitor arrives in a courtyard but does not (yet) enter the house, or when e.g. the rainy season is just about to begin. So logically one might have had two occurrences of the verb in (556), one H-toned inside the second clause (‘arrive’ = ‘begin’) and the second L-toned outside and after the clause (‘until’).

15.6 Past time constructions

The absence of a past morpheme associated with verbs (like inflectable verbal clitic = *be-* in several Dogon languages, or like Jamsay postverbal particle *ji:* means that the expression of past-time categories is challenging in TgK.

15.6.1 Perfect with *gàrá* (*y-* *ño*) ‘pass’

The verb *gàrá* ‘pass by, go past’ is used with a following 4*º*ónico (plural-subject 4*º*ónico) to form a perfect with any preceding VP. The 4*º*ónico (plural-subject) appears to be a reduced form of the perfective of ‘go’. The full perfective form is *y-醜* (plural *y-* *ém-* *dé*-), but reduced forms occur in some constructions (§15.1.6.1, §15.2.2.6, §15.2.3), *y-* *ém-* is also reduced to *ém-* before *dà* ‘if’. In *gàrá* 4*º*ónico, the 4*º*ónico sounds rather like a clitic, but note that rv-Deletion does not apply as it does in *gàrá* before most suffixes.

(557) a. *dògà-ì* 4*º*ónico 4*º*ónico 4*º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*ónico 4º*fono 4º*fon}
‘Before I could get to the hospital, he/she had (already) died.’
16 Conditional constructions

16.1 Conditional antecedent with dé ‘if’

16.1.1 Simple dé

Clause-final dé functions as the ‘if’ particle in the usual type of conditional antecedent clause, denoting a possible eventuality that would entail a second eventuality. Usually both eventualities are in the future, and the unmarked logical relation is one of cause-and-effect. In this case, the antecedent clause is perfective in form, and the consequent is imperfective (or a deontic modal category such as imperative). dé is L-toned, but it is subject to an optional pitch rise due to nonterminal intonation effects.

The antecedent clause precedes the consequent clause. The consequent may omit subject and object NPs repeated from the antecedent and may therefore be reduced to a verb.

(558) a. íⁿ ɛ́wè⁺L mē: 5-è dé, éwè-jù
1SgSbj market.Loc⁺L salt see-Pfv if, buy-Ipfv
‘If I see (=find) some salt in the market, I’ll buy (some).’

b. ú péjù [bàrà bín] bèr-è dé,
2SgSbj sheep [bush in] get-Pfv if,
ní jë:rë here bring.Imprt
‘If you-Sg get (=find) a sheep out in the bush, bring it here!’

c. jà-wò → bërë bì-jë dé, dé⁻a⁻jnù
always work(ν) do-Ipfv if, get.tired-Ipfv
‘If (you-Sg) work every day, (you’ll) get tired (=wear yourself out).’

Though often translated with ‘if’, the TgK particle dé can also be used when the antecedent eventuality is considered certain to happen, or when it denotes a recurring eventuality. In such contexts, ‘when’ or ‘after’ is a more apt free translation.

(559) émé wàrá dàg-à → wàrá-sé⁺a dé]
1PlSbj farming a.little do.farm.work-Pfv.PlSbj if]
kù⁻a éwè⁻L yà:jù
then market.Loc⁻L go-Ipfv
‘When/After we have done a little farm work, then we’ll go to the market.’

For pseudo-conditional dé, in future anterior subordinated clauses (first of two clauses denoting sequenced events in the future), see §15.2.2.6.
16.1.2 Reduced form of simple perfective of Cv verb before dè

The verb in the antecedent clause of a typical future-oriented conditional (‘if he comes, I’ll give him the millet’) is normally perfective, either simple perfective (positive) or perfective negative.

There are no morphological irregularities involving the perfective negative, or the plural-subject form of the simple perfective, in this construction. However, the (positive) singular-subject form of the simple perfective has slightly reduced forms for monomoraic Cv verbs before dè.

(560) Form of singular-subject perfective before dè ‘if’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bare stem</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bare stem</td>
<td>regular</td>
<td>before dè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. with -ỳ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yè</td>
<td>yè-ỳ</td>
<td>yè-∅ dè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jé</td>
<td>jé-ỳ</td>
<td>jé-∅ dè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nú</td>
<td>nú-ỳⁿ</td>
<td>nú-∅ dè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. with -è</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ó</td>
<td>ó-è</td>
<td>ó-∅ dè</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Segmentally identical but tonally distinct reductions of the perfective suffix -ỳ ~ -ì occur before  tàŋ ŋ ‘since’, which requires an {H}-toned verb; see (534) in §15.2.3.

Cv: stems, even though some of them have regular perfective forms of similar Cv-ỳ and Co-e shapes, are not reduced. Thus  àŋ dè (‘see’), nú-ỳⁿ dè (‘die’).

Bisyllabic stems with perfective in -ì (homophonous to the bare stem) often lose the -ì before dè, but this is not obligatory and only occurs after an unclustered sonorant. When the -ì is lost in this way, the stranded L-tone can be heard (in careful pronunciation) on the now word-final sonorant. I therefore attribute this to the phonological rule Apocope (§3.5.5). Example: perfective dá:-n-ì dè ~ dá:-n dè.

16.1.3 Extensions of dè

In addition to the extensions covered below, which (like dè itself) function as conditionals or temporal sequencing devices, some other combinations covered elsewhere may be mentioned.

-g-ì dè is used in some purposive clauses, as an alternative to gè:. These forms are based on gí ‘say’. See §17.6.1 for examples and discussion.

-nì dè is the combination of different-subject ‘while’ subordinator -nì and dè ‘if, when’. See §15.2.2.9-10.

16.1.3.1 tàŋá yè-∅ dè ‘if it happens that …’

An extended variant … tàŋá yè-∅ dè ‘if it happens that …’ is also found (compare Jamsay tàŋá: dè). It contains tàŋá ‘become, turn into’ and a reduced form of perfective yè-ì ‘went’, which elsewhere drops the suffixal semivowel before dè to result in yè-∅ dè ‘if (he/she) went’.
TgK \( \text{táńá } \text{yè-∅ } \text{dè} \) undoubtedly reveals the origin of the contracted Jamsay equivalent \( \text{táńá: dè} \), whose tones and vowel length are anomalous synchronically.

16.1.3.2 \( \text{t-i } \text{dè} \) (temporal sequencing)

An extension \( \text{t-i } \text{dè} \) emphasizes the temporal sequencing of the antecedent and consequent eventualities. Since the chronology is more relevant than the cause-and-effect relationship, I will gloss \( \text{tí} \) as ‘do first’ in interlinear and analyse \( \text{t-i } \text{dè} \) as containing its simple perfective form, with the usual loss of final \( \text{y} \) before \( \text{dè} \). Because of the chronological emphasis, \( \text{t-i } \text{dè} \) may be considered a special case of the pseudo-conditional construction with \( \text{dè} \) following a perfective verb (§15.2.2.6). Consistent with this, my examples of \( \text{t-i } \text{dè} \) involve future time contexts.

The stem \( \text{tí} \) is found elsewhere in TgK grammar as a linker in verb chains (§15.1.6.3) and in the form \( \text{t-ɛ́-ɛ̀} \): in a variant of the same-subordination construction (§15.2.2.5). Jamsay and Ben Tey cognates are mentioned at the end of §15.1.6.

16.1.4 ‘Unless’ antecedent

An ordinary negative antecedent can express ‘unless’ as well as other nuances.
16.2 Alternative ‘if’ particles

16.2.1 ‘Even if …‘ (… kà:"n, hâl … kà:"n)

Replacing clause-final dè by kà:"n ‘also, even’, with or without clause-initial hâl ‘even, all the way to’, expresses the sense ‘even if’. Usually the antecedent eventuality is unlikely to happen, and if it did it would not affect the consequent. In (564c) there is also a regular ‘if’ clause.

(564) a. hâl wò nî yèr-è kà:"n,
   even 3SgSbj here come-Pfv even,
   nà:  nî-è
   meal eat-PfvNeg
   ‘Even if he/she comes here, he/she won’t eat (here).’

   b. hâl àr"ú lsw-è kà:"n,
   even rain(n) rain.fall-Pfv even,
   ño bârá yè: rò
   1SgSbj bush go-Neg
   ‘Even if it rains, I won’t go to the bush (= the fields).’

   c. ño kà:nà, [wò HLlnà:] wè:-è kà:"n,
      child now, [3SgPoss HLmother] be.HumSgSbj-Neg even,
      ño ñ= ñ: dâgà tè: dè,
      child 2Sg=Dat leave do.first-Pfv if,
      pèré [lû l:ì] gî:"n wò din-è:
      other [[2SgPoss "child] like] 3SgObj keep-MP.Implr otherwise
      ‘A child now, even if its mother is absent (=dead), if/when an (orphaned) child is left to you (=in your charge), keep (=treat) it like your (own) child anyway.’
      (2011.1b.01)

For kà:"n in counterfactual conditionals, see §16.4, below.

16.2.2 ‘As soon as …‘ (dè fū→)

Addition of fū→ ‘all’ (§6.6.1, above) after the clause-final ‘if’ particle dè can add a nuance of immediacy to the sequencing of the antecedent and the consequent eventualities.
(565) a. ámírⁿí ùŋúr-ì dè fù→,
   chief get.up-Pfv if all,
   émé ɲà: ɲú ijí
   1PfSbj meal eat.meal-Ipfv
   ‘As soon as the chief gets up, we’ll eat.’

b. iⁿ bù:dú bɛ̀r-ɛ đè fù→,
   1SgSbj money get-Pfv if all,
   ɲ=ɲ tɔ́jɔ́-jú 2Sg=Dat pay-Ipfv
   ‘As soon as I get the money, I’ll pay you-Sg.’

16.2.3 ‘As long as …‘ (táⁿ fù→)

táⁿ here is borrowed from French (tant que). It is combined with fù→ ‘all’.

(566) [nìŋirí pè-së: ¹yɔ:] dɔ:-lfí táⁿ fù→,
   [day ten-seven¹NearDist] arrive-PfvNeg as.long all,
   [[kò i:'] ɲi-ɔ bìr-ɛ:-rò]
   [NearPoss child] eat-VblN do-MP-IpfvNeg
   kàn kɔ
   considered be.NonnSbj
   ‘As long as those seventy days haven’t arrived (=elapsed), its fruits are considered to
   be inedible.’ (2011.1a.19)

16.2.4 ‘Suppose that …‘ (sà)

A clause-final particle sà is used in suppositional conditional antecedents. In the interview-
style recorded texts, sà is often used by the interviewer at the beginning of a complex
question shifting from the previous issue to a new one.

(567) a. B: nè: njù:-dùw tòrš-sëⁿ lò, …
   A: ë→
   B: … [bàrá bìn], [njù:¹-të:xè wɔⁿ] yɔ kɔ sà, maintenant

   B: Now they had begun carrying the millet, right?
   A: Yes.
   B: In the bush, suppose there were some big heaps (of millet grain spikes). …
   [beginning of long speech turn ending with a new question]

b. maintenant [njù: wɔⁿ] düw-ɛ:-sëⁿ sà,
   [njù: sà:ⁿ] düw-ɛ: gír=e:-sëⁿ,
   maintenant gír=e jë:r-ɛ:-sëⁿ dè,
   [njù: dà] yà: ¹bè:-jù
   Now suppose that (they) have carried the millet,
   they have carried and brought all of the millet to the houses.
   Now when (they) have brought (it) to the houses,
   as for the millet, where do (they) put it?’ (2011.1a.16)
This sà is distinct from H-toned clause-final sà, an emphatic found widely in Malian languages (but absent from my TgK data) and probably derived from (African) French ça ‘that’. It is also distinct from sà and tonal variants ‘have’.

16.3 Willy-nilly and disjunctive antecedents (‘whether X or Y …’)

In a ‘whether or not’ conditional, the two alternative antecedents are juxtaposed without the final dé ‘if’. The construction is really a conjunction of the two antecedents, and has the dying-quail intonation (prolongation and pitch drop) typical of NP conjunction (§7.1.1). If (as often) the two alternative antecedents are positive and negative counterparts, the dying-quail intonation is expressed only on the positive clause, which precedes the negative with no pause (568a). If the two antecedents have distinct predicates, both have dying-quail intonation (568b).

(568) a. àr"ů l5w-è : bwaš-lí, rain rain.fall-and.SS rain.fall-PfvNeg
émé bàrá yā-ːjí 1PISbj bush go-lpfv.PISbj
‘Whether it rains or not, we’re going to the bush (=fields).’

  b. dí: kélů k5ː : nů: k5ː , water cold be.NonhSbj.&, hot be.NonhSbj.&,
1º n5ː-ɲú drink-lpfv
‘Whether the water is cold or hot, I will drink (it).’

16.4 Counterfactual conditional (kà : n)

In a counterfactual, it is implied that the antecedent eventuality did not in fact occur in the past, so the causal chain between antecedent and consequent was broken. The antecedent ends in kà : n ‘also, even’ rather than dé. We have seen kà : n in ‘even if’ antecedents (§16.2.1). The consequent is imperfective in form, as with other types of conditional.

(569) a. kà : yè-łí kà : n, grasshopper come-PfvNeg even, pàrà-gó:ró dāg-ɛːjú harvest be.good-MP-lpfv
‘If the locusts hadn’t come, the harvest would have turned out well.’

  b. wó nī yèr-è kà : n, 1º wó dā-ɲú 3SgSbj here come-Pfv even, 1SgSbj 3SgObj kill-lpfv
‘If he/she had come here, I’d have killed him/her.’
17 Complement and purposive clauses

17.1 Quotative complement

The inflectable ‘say’ verbs are póri and gi (§17.1.2).

The quotative particle wà is in common use at the end of quoted clauses (§17.1.3). It is also commonly inserted after the subject of a quoted clause (§17.1.4).

Imperative verb forms appear as such in quotations. Hortatives, which are structurally a subtype of imperative, likewise occur in quotations (§17.1.5).

Quoted clauses have logophoric pronouns corresponding to original first person pronouns; see §18.2 below.

17.1.1 Direct versus indirect in quotative complements

Most discourse is indirect in the sense that some conversion of deictics is observed, most prominently the replacement of original first person pronouns by logophoric pronouns. Most quoted speech and thought is indirect. However, the distinction between direct and indirect is not pervasive, since a) TgK aspect categories (unlike English tense) are not recomputed; b) imperative and hortative forms are retained; and c) there is no ‘that’ complementizer.

17.1.2 ‘Say that …’ with inflectable ‘say’ verb (póri, gi)

The inflectable ‘say’ verbs are póri and gi, see §11.3 for discussion of their forms (including irregularities). póri is very common in elicitation, gi is more common in texts. póri can take NP as well as clausal complements.

(570)  a. wó injé Lpôr-i
   3SgSbj what? say-Pfv
   ‘What did he/she say?’

   b. [ʒjò L pɔ一身¬] pòérí
      [thing nothing] say-PfvNeg
      ‘He/She didn’t say anything.’

   c. [ú yògò yè-jù dè] má = h  pɔ一身¬nɔ
      [2SgSbj tomorrow come-Ipfv if] 1Sg=Dat say-Imprt
      ‘If you’re coming tomorrow, tell me!’

   d. ̀in [wó Hgu’uŋiɔ L] yèrè bɛ一身-rò
      1SgSbj [3SgSbj Hhouse.Loc] come get-IpfvNeg
      wó = h  pôr-i
      3Sg=Dat say-Pfv
      ‘I told him that I can’t come to his house.’

365
The ‘say’ verb and its dative PP normally follow the quoted matter, and usually do not co-occur with an adjacent quotative wà, which would be rather redundant. However, a subject NP may occur at the beginning of the construction, preceding the quotation (570d).

The quoted matter may be short (e.g. a name) or one or more full sentences. Spatiotemporal adverbials (‘yesterday’, ‘here’) are reset to correspond to the current deictic center. However, aspectual categories are not reset. In ‘He said (ten days ago) that he would slaughter a goat the next day’, ‘would slaughter’ is translated out as an imperfective verb, just as in the original utterance (‘I will slaughter a goat tomorrow’).

The most important change from the original utterance to the quoted form is the use of logophoric pronouns replacing an original 1Sg or 1Pl pronoun, when the attributed speaker is not the current speaker. See §18.2 for examples and discussion.

For jussive complements (quoted imperatives and hortatives), see §17.1.5, below.

17.1.3 Quotative particle wà

The uninflectable particle wà follows the quotation. It functions much like quotation marks in written English. It may, however, co-occur with a pre-quotation subject denoting the attributed author of the quotation, like 3Sg wó in (571a). In any event, there is always an attributed speaker, even if covert, and this is sufficient to trigger the use of logophoric pronouns (which are coindexed to the attributed author).

(571) a. wó [[ènè Hánà] àr‘ú l5w-ê] wà
   3SgSbj [[LogoP village.Loc] rain rain.Pfv] Quot
   ‘He, said that it rained in his village.’

b. wó ènè yǎ:-jú wà
   3SgSbj LogoS go-Pfv Quot
   ‘He, says he, will go.’

c. wó [sè:dú bag-ê] wà
   3SgSbj [S fall-Pfv] Quot
   ‘He/She said that Seydou fell.’

In (571a-c), the particle preserved the tones of the preceding verb, whereas clause-final position often induces tone-dropping (perhaps intonational in nature) of verbs. However, in recorded texts the tone-dropping sometimes occurs even before wà (572).

(572) [ènè ètê: yá:-jú] wà
   [LogoSbj well go-Pfv] Quot
   ‘(He) said he was going to the well.’ (2011.1b.03) (yá:-jú)

When the quoted matter ends with a clause-final emphatic particle, wà is inserted between the predicate and the emphatic.

(573) [bàrâ bîn] [bàrâ¹-n3wºš fû→]
   [outback in] [outback¹-meat all]
ènè l¹bàrâ wà dê
    LogoObj l¹help.Imprt Quot Emph
   ‘(she said:) “all (you) wild animals in the bush, help me!” ’ (2011.1b.05)
Combined with quotative subject wà (following section), this means that there are two break points in a quotation where wà can be inserted: after the subject NP, and after the verb (but before emphatic particles).

Clause-final wà does not occur in negative or irrealis contexts like ‘He didn’t say …’ or ‘Did he say …?’. These contexts require an overt ‘say’ verb (which follows the quotation), and this makes a quotative particle unnecessary and perhaps inappropriate. Examples occur in the following section.

17.1.4 Quotative subject wà and allomorphs

A quoted sentence consisting of an overt subject (NP or pronoun) plus a VP can be divided into two, with one wà after the subject NP and a second wà or an inflectable ‘say’ verb after the VP (but before any emphatic particle). This division is regular with human subjects, particularly pronouns. It does not seem to apply to nonhuman subjects. I refer to the first wà as the quotative subject morpheme.

(574) a. bé [sè:ðu wà] [yà: yà:-tāŋà mà->] wà
   3PlSbj [S QuotSbj] [where go-Prog Q] Quot
   ‘They asked Seydou, where he was going.’
   (or: ‘They asked, where was Seydou going?’)

b. wó [nà bè wà] [lē lē:-sēⁿ]
   3SgSbj [person Pl QuotSbj] [slashing slash.earth-Pfv.3PI]
   pór-i dè, bìn^⁻-kJē=y
   say-Pfv if. untruth=it.is
   ‘If he says that the people have planted (the millet), it’s false.’

The 1Sg form is usually contracted from má wà to má à. The 3Sg can be contracted from wó wà to wó à. I know of no other irregularities in form.

The quoted subject may be a pronoun, reset to conform to the deictic center of the current speech event. In other words, it need not exactly repeat the pronominal or other form used in the original utterance. In (575a), for example, 1Sg is substituted for original 2Sg.

(575) a. bé [mà à] [yà: yà:-tāŋà mà->] wà
   3PlSbj [1Sg QuotSbj] [where go-Prog Q] Quot
   ‘They asked (me) where I was going.’

b. bé [ú wà] [yà: yà:-tāŋà mà->] wà
   3PlSbj [2Sg QuotSbj] [where go-Prog Q] Quot
   ‘They are asking (you) where you-Sg are going.’
   [said e.g. by an interpreter, when there is no common language]

c. wó [sè:ðu wà]
   3SgSbj [S QuotSbj]
   [yè të] bàg-ë] mà=ǹ L^⁻-pór-i
   [there.Def around] fall-Pfv] 1Sg=Dat L^⁷ say-Pfv
   ‘She said to me that Seydou has fallen over there.’
Clause-final \( \text{wà} \) is not used in negative or modally dubitative contexts (‘he didn’t say…’, ‘did he say…?’), which require an inflectable ‘say’ verb. However, quotative subject \( \text{wà} \) does appear after a human subject NP in such constructions.

(576) 

a. \( \text{ámádú} \quad [\text{nă} \quad \text{bè} \quad \text{wà}] \quad [\text{lē} \quad \text{lè:-sê}^\text{a}] \)  
\( \text{pò-lí} \)
\( \text{say-PfvNeg} \)

‘Amadou did not say that the people have sown (the millet).’

b. \( \text{ámádú} \quad [\text{nă} \quad \text{bè} \quad \text{wà}] \quad [\text{lē} \quad \text{lè:-sê}^\text{a}] \)  
\( \text{pór-i} \)
\( \text{say-Pfv} \)

‘Did Amadou say that the people have sown (the millet)?’

TgK differs from other Dogon languages that have a similar quotative-subject construction in that a homophonous and arguably identical \( \text{wà} \), with the same contracted pronominal forms, is used with topicalized pronouns. For details see (666) and preceding discussion.

17.1.5 Jussive complement (reported imperative or hortative)

This section describes the form of quoted (or otherwise indirect) imperatives, prohibitives, and hortatives.

17.1.5.1 Quoted imperative

A quoted (embedded) imperative takes the regular imperative form, but in invariant singular form regardless of the original addressee number. The original addressee appears as an obligatory clause-initial pronoun followed by quotative subject (QuotSbj) particle \( \text{wà} \) (often reduced to \( \text{à} \) after 1Sg \( \text{mà} \) or 3Sg \( \text{wó} \), and contracting with them as \( [\text{mà:}] \) and \( [\text{wà:}] \) respectively). This clause-initial pronoun functions as a quoted vocative, with the original subject, or more likely vocative ‘(hey) you!’, converted in accordance with the pronominal structure of the current speech event (hence often third person). Quotative \( \text{wa} \) (which adopts the final tone of the preceding word) may also occur at the end of the quoted clause.

The full form of the construction is exemplified by (577), which has two clearly distinct clauses.

(577)  
\( [\text{séydu} \quad \text{nî}] \quad \text{pó-nà}, \quad [\text{wó} \quad \text{à}] \quad \text{yëré} \quad \text{wà} \)  
\( [\text{S} \text{ Dat}] \text{ say-Imprt}, \quad [\text{3SgSbj} \text{ QuotSbj}] \text{ come. Imprt] Quot} \)  

‘Tell-2Sg Seydou to come!’

[lit: “Say to Seydou, (‘hey) he, come!’”]

It is also possible to omit the overt ‘say’ verb (\( \text{pórì} \)), since the quotative particles mark the imperative clause as quoted (578a). Or the overt ‘say’ verb may follow the quoted segment (578b), perhaps as a kind of afterthought.
(578) a. *séydú* [[má à] yéré] wá
S [[1Sg QuotSbj] come. Imprt] Quot
‘Seydou told me to come!’
[lit: “Seydou (said) ‘(hey) me, come!’ ”]

b. *séydú* [[má à] yéré] póři
S [[1Sg QuotSbj] come. Imprt] say. Pfv
‘Seydou told me to come!’
[lit: “Seydou said, ‘(hey) me, come!’ ”]

For wishes and imprecations (‘May God assist you!’) and the like, with a similar syntax except for the quotative subject marking, see §10.6.4.1, above.

The same structures are used for quoted prohibitives, which merely replace the imperative in the previous examples with a morphological prohibitive (579).

(579) [[séydú ni] pš-nž,]
[S [[wó à] yé-lé] wá
[[3SgSbj QuotSbj] come. Proh] Quot
‘Tell-2Sg Seydou not to come!’
[lit.: “Say to Seydou, ‘(hey) he, don’t come!’ ”]

17.1.5.2 Quoted hortative

As explained in §10.6.2.1, above, a hortative of the type translatable as ‘let’s VP!’ is structured as an imperative, with either a singular or plural addressee as the case may be, but with a 1Pl subject. This structure is reflected in the form of an embedded hortative, which treats the original addressee(s) as the subject(s) of the hortative verb. Therefore the hortative in (580) has a 1Sg pronoun as subject, representing the original addressee.

(580) *séydú* [má à] pámá wá
S [[1Sg Sbj QuotSbj] go-Hort] Quot
‘Seydou said to me, let’s go!’ (i.e. he suggested that he and I go)
[lit.: “Seydou (said), ‘(hey) me, let’s go!’ ”]

As with embedded imperatives, here the hortative verb is invariant in form. A plural subject can be expressed by the usual clause-initial pronoun, but the hortative verb does not take plural-addressee form (581).

(581) *séydú* [émé wà] pámá wá
S [[1Sg Sbj QuotSbj] go-Hort] Quot
‘Seydou said to us, let’s (all) go!’ (i.e. he suggested that he and we go)
[lit.: “Seydou (said), ‘(hey) us, let’s go!’ ”]

An embedded hortative negative is (582).

(582) *séydú* [má à] yám-lé wá
S [[1Sg Sbj QuotSbj] go-Hort-Proh] Quot
‘Seydou said to me, let’s not go!’ (i.e. he suggested that he and I not go)
[lit.: “Seydou (said), ‘(hey) me, let’s not go!’ ”]
17.2  Factive (indicative) complements

Factive complements have the form of main clauses, usually indicative but under some conditions polar interrogative. The factive clause may precede the entire main clause, including its subject, or it may be inserted between the subject and the verb of the main clause.

With verbs like ‘see’ and ‘hear’, a distinction must be made between factive complements that describe an inferred situation (‘I saw that he was tired’), and imperfective complements that describe an ongoing event (‘I saw him falling out of a tree’).

17.2.1  ‘Know that …’ factive complement

For the predicate íⁿ wɔ̂ ‘know’, including a copula, see §11.2.4.1, above.

A clausal complement has the form of a main clause. If ‘know’ is positive, the complement is a normal indicative clause, positive or negative as the case may be. If ‘know’ is negated, questioned, or otherwise non-assertive, the complement takes the form of a polar interrogative (§13.2.1). In English, ‘Does Seydou know that his house has fallen?’ has a presupposition absent from ‘Does Seydou know whether his house has fallen?’, but in TgK (583b) is used whether or not the current speaker knows whether the house has fallen.

17.2.2  ‘See (find, hear) that …’ complement

17.2.2.1  Factive complement of ‘see’ and ‘hear’

‘See’ can take a factive complement, in the form of a main clause, when the emphasis is on the agent’s inference of an eventuality based on visual and perhaps other evidence, rather than on direct observation of the eventuality (584a-b). This construction is also usual with ‘hear (a report)’ (584c) and ‘find (a situation)’ (584d). A nonpronominal subject of the factive clause is not resumed by a preverbal proclitic pronoun (584b,d).

(583)  a.  [ú] [bè-rè] [wó íⁿ wɔ̂]  
 [1SgSbj come-IpfvNeg] [3SgSbj know be.HumSgSbj]  
 ‘He/She knows that I am not coming.’

 b.  sè: dú [[săⁿ Hgíⁿ rè] bâg-è mà] íⁿ wɔ̂  
 S [[ReflPoss Hhouse] fall-Pfv Q] know be.HumSgSbj  
 ‘Does Seydou know that his house has fallen?’

 ‘Does Seydou know whether his house has fallen?’

(584)  a.  [ú] [kîlè-lî] íⁿ 5-tàngà  
 [2SgSbj be.done-PfvNeg] 1SgSbj see-Prog  
 ‘I see that you-Sg are not done (=are not ready).’

 b.  íⁿ [[săⁿ Hsúgêⁿ] dè-èⁿ] 5-è  
 1SgSbj [[ReflPoss Hyounger.sib] be.tired-Pfv] see-Pfv  
 ‘I saw that my younger sibling was tired.’
c. \[ú \ yèr-é \] \[íⁿ \ ég-é\]
   \[2\text{SgSbj} \ \text{come-Pfv}\] \[1\text{SgSbj} \ \text{hear-Pfv}\]
   ‘I heard that you-Sg had come.’

d. \[íⁿ \ yè-é: \] \[[sǎⁿ \ \text{Hl} \ \text{tày}ⁿ]\] \[íⁿ \ ɛ́ \ ɛ̀ \]
   \[1\text{SgSbj} \ \text{go-and.SS}\] \[[[\text{RefIposs Hl friend} \ \text{be.sick-Ipfv}\] \ \text{find-Pfv}\]
   ‘I went (there) and found that my friend was sick.’

17.2.2.2 Imperfective complement of ‘see’ and ‘hear’

In this context, the agent of ‘see’ or ‘hear’ directly perceives an event, rather than inferring a situation. The subject of the perception verb appears either before the complement (585a) or after it, next to the perception verb (585b-c).

Two syntactic details show that the complement is structured as a subject relative clause, suggesting that e.g. (585a) translates literally as “I saw [the child who was falling].” First, the verb of the complement ends in an L-toned version of otherwise H-toned imperfective suffix -jú or (plural) -jí. The L-toned version is the form that occurs in relative clauses, arguably reflecting a tonal definite (§14.1.9.2). Second, even when the subject of the complement is expressed as a nonpronominal NP, a preverbal subject pronominal is required. Note 3Sg wó in (585a,c) and 3Pl bé in (585b), agreeing with the clause-initial subject NP. This too is a feature of relative clauses (§14.1.8). Compare the syntax of ‘since’ clauses with gi:” (§15.2.3).

(585)
a. \[íⁿ \ [íⁿ \ [[\text{tínmé} \ \text{árà}] \ \text{l go:] \ wó \ \text{bàgá-jú}\+L]\]
   \[1\text{SgSbj} \ [[\text{child} \ [\text{tree on.top}] \ \text{go.out} \ 3\text{SgSbj} \ \text{fall-Ipfv.Rel}^{1L}]\]
   \[1\text{see-Pfv}\]
   ‘I saw (a/the) child fall(-ing) out of a tree.’

b. \[[ně \ \text{bè} \ \text{já} \ \text{bé} \ \text{jáyá-jí}\+L]\]
   \[[[\text{woman Pl}] \ \text{squabble(n)} \ 3\text{PlSbj} \ \text{squabble-Ipfv.PlSbj.Rel}^{1L}]\]
   \[íⁿ \ ég-é\]
   \[1\text{SgSbj} \ \text{hear-Pfv}\]
   ‘I heard the women squabble/squabbling.’

c. \[[íⁿ \ ú \ wó \ \text{lágá-jú}\+L]\]
   \[[\text{child} \ 2\text{SgObj} \ 3\text{SgSbj} \ \text{hit-Ipfv.Rel}^{1L}]\]
   \[íⁿ \ 1\text{See-Pfv}\]
   ‘I saw the child hit(ting) you-Sg.’

17.3 Nominalized and non-factive imperfective complements

Some main-clause verbs, such as ‘finish [VP-ing]’ and ‘consent [to VP], control a VP complement whose verb is in verbal-noun or other nominal form. Others take imperfective clauses as complements, or switch between verbal nouns and imperfectives.
17.3.1 Structure of verbal noun clause

A verbal noun in its regular abstractive function can be bracketed with clausemate complements. A simple direct-object noun, or other noun regularly associated with the verbal action (e.g. ‘night’ in ‘night fall’), is readily incorporated as an {L}-toned compound initial, as in (586). See §5.1.4 for more examples and discussion.

(586) \( i^n \quad gir^o\text{L-[ñu-ú]} \quad \text{kíl-i} \)
1SgSbj \( \text{house}^\text{L-[build-VblN]} \) finish-Pfv

‘I have finished the house-building.’

(= ‘I have finished building the house.’)

It is not possible to incorporate multi-word object NPs as compound initials in this manner. When the noun is modified by an adjective, the noun-adjective combination has its regular tones, as in a main clause. This means that the adjective has its lexical melody, and controls tone-dropping on the noun (587a). Likewise, adding a quantifier such as a numeral, or adding a possessor, prevents compound formation, and the object NP has its usual main-clause tonal form (587b-c). Pronouns and adverbials likewise resist incorporation (587d-e). The 1Sg pronoun \( má \) in (587d) is accusative in form and expresses an object, not a possessor.

(587) a. \( í^n \quad [[pèjú^\ell \quad már^oj]\quad pɔ́-∅] \quad \text{kíl-i} \)
1SgSbj \( [[\text{sheep}^\ell \quad \text{big}] \quad \text{skin-VblN}] \) finish-Pfv

‘I have finished skinning (and butchering) the big sheep.’

b. \( í^n \quad [[gir^i \quad lɔ́y]\quad ùj-ú]\quad \text{kíl-i} \)
1SgSbj \( [[\text{house} \quad \text{two}] \quad \text{build-VblN}] \) finish-Pfv

‘I have finished building two houses.’

c. \( í^n \quad [[sá^n \quad Hpèjú \quad bè]\quad dɔ́r^o-ú]\quad \text{kíl-i} \)
1SgSbj \( [[\text{ReflPoss} \quad H\text{sheep} \quad \text{Pl}] \quad \text{sell-VblN}] \) finish-Pfv

‘I have finished selling my sheep-Pl.’

d. \( wó \quad [má \quad gèr-ú]\quad \text{kíl-i} \)
3SgSbj \( [1SgObj \quad \text{look.at-VblN}] \) finish-Pfv

‘He/She has finished looking at me.’

e. \( wó \quad [nì \quad sèm-ú]\quad \text{kíl-i} \)
3SgSbj \( [\text{here} \quad \text{sweep-VblN}] \) finish-Pfv

‘He/She has finished sweeping here.’

When a morphologically simple demonstrative (\( nɔ́; \ yɔ́ \)) is part of an object NP in a verbal-noun complement, two seemingly distinct constructions occur. In one, the NP has its main-clause form, with tone-dropped noun and H-toned demonstrative (588a). In the other, the noun shows its lexical melody, while the demonstrative drops tones. One interpretation of this tone-dropping is that the demonstrative, but not the associated noun, has been incorporated as compound initial into the verbal noun (588b). Alternatively, the L-toned demonstrative is not incorporated at all, rather it has undergone Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering under the influence of an otherwise covert tonal definite on the noun (588c). This would make (588c) structurally parallel to (588a).
As explained in chapters 6 and 14 passim, the complex of noun, adjective, and numeral forms a unit that remains intact when the NP functions as head of a relative clause, while demonstratives (along with plural bè and ‘all’ quantifiers) are positioned to the right of the clause-final relative verb. In a verbal-noun clause, this repositioning is not possible, since (for example) a numeral following the verbal noun would be interpreted as quantifying over events rather than over objects.

If a true subject (agent) is included with the verbal noun, it takes the form of a possessor. In (589), the entire compound verbal noun (‘mango-cutting’) is treated tonally as the possessed noun, with {HL} overlay. It is more difficult to elicit examples with a subject and an uncompounded verbal noun, since most such meanings are more readily expressed with a cognate nominal. This comment applies even when the verbal noun, or a homophonous form, is used as the cognate nominal, as with nùː ‘death, dying’ in (589b).

17.3.2 ‘Prevent’ (gàːnù) with nominal complement

The transitive verb gàːnù (imperative gàːná) has a range of senses (or translations) including ‘pester’, ‘delay’, and ‘obstruct’. My assistant was uncomfortable using it as a control verb, as in ‘X prevent Y [from VP-ing]’. One alternative construction he offered instead was a negated causative of ‘go’ (590), using the causative in the permissive sense ‘let Y VP’.

He had no trouble with gàːnù accompanied by a simple nominal complement denoting an action or process (591).
17.3.3 ‘Dare’ (dà:rì) with imperfective complement

The verb dà:rì ‘dare (to VP), have the nerve or the effrontery (to VP)’ takes a complement with imperfective verb (positive or negative). The subjects of the two clauses are coindexed.

(592) a. dònó [émé HL dà:gòl] bín nù-ɲù dà:rà:-rò
cat [[1PLSbj HL courtyard] in] go.in-lpfv dare-lpfvNeg
‘The cat doesn’t dare to come into our courtyard.’

b. ú ámír’ì dỳ:–jú dà:rá–jú
2SGSbj chief insult-lpfv dare-lpfv
‘You-Sg dare to insult the chief?’

c. ú yë:-rò dà:rá–jú
2SGSbj come-lpfvNeg dare-lpfv
‘You-Sg dare to not come?’

17.3.4 ‘Consent’ (yòwá, mà:nà) with verbal-noun or imperfective complement

The sense ‘consent, agree (to VP)’ is expressed by either yòwá (also ‘receive, accept’) or mà:nà (imperative mà:nà). The complement is expressed using either a verbal noun or an imperfective verb, regardless of whether the two clauses have coindexed subjects. The subjects are coindexed in (593a) with a verbal noun, and in (593b) with an imperfective complement.

(593) a. ámír’ì nì yèr–ú yòw–è
chief here come-VblN consent-Pfv
‘The chief has agreed to come here.’

b. [àná HL 5g5-ì:] [jàná H ná] [H lá”pɔ̀]
[village rich.man] [[village person] tax]
tỳ:–jú yòw–è
pay-lpfv consent-Pfv
‘The rich man of the village has agreed to pay the (annual) tax for (all) the people of the village.’

The subjects are disjoint in (594). (594a) has a verbal noun complement, while (594b) has an imperfective complement.

(594) a. dë–dë: mà [bàmàkɔ̀-jyá-ɔ] [ì n 1kè] yòw–è
[Rdp-father 1SGPoss] [B-[go-VblN] [1SGPoss 1Poss] consent-Pfv
‘My father has consented to my going to Bamako.’
b. wó [émé kémé Lːnɔːŋũ] yɔwɔlǐ
 3SgSbj [1PISbj beer Lːdrink-lPfv] consent-PfvNeg
  ‘He/She did not consent that we drink beer.’

17.3.5 ‘Cease’ (dāgā) with verbal-noun complement

This is a special case of the important transitive verb dāgā ‘leave, abandon’. Wherever possible, a cognate nominal or other noun is used as the complement (595a). However, adding additional clause-internal constituents such as a direct object forces the use of a verbal noun clause (595b).

(595) a. bé wårú dāgā-sěn
 3PlSbj farming leave-Pfv.PlSbj
  ‘They have stopped farming.’

b. [áːsà:rà Lːàr publishing] [ùrⁿí: bê] tɔn-ú dāg-è
  [white.person Lːman] [children Pl] tease-VblN leave-Pfv
  ‘The white man has stopped teasing the children.’

17.3.6 ‘Want’ (iyé) with verbal-noun or imperfective complement

For the forms of the ‘want’ predicate, see §11.2.4.2.

For same-subject cases, the complement is most often a verbal noun (§4.2.4).

(596) a. wó [Lːsã Lːhǎnɔːi] yɛ-ɔː]
 3SgSbj [[ReflPoss Lːvillage.Loc^{-i}] go-VblN] want
  ‘She wants to go to her village.’

b. ñ [Lːsã Lːhɔrú] wårú
 1SgSbj [ReflPoss Lːfield] cultivate-VblN want
  ‘I want to cultivate (=do farm work) in my field.’

c. émé [kũⁿ-mɔrú Lːáːr] dɔwɔ-ɔ:
 1PlSbj [roof on] go.up-VblN want-PlSbj
  ‘We would like to go up on the roof.’

d. ñ [Lːmãngɔrɔ Lː[paːl-ú]]
 1SgSbj mango-[pick-VblN] want
  ‘I want to pick mangoes.’

An imperfective clause is also possible as a complement (597), since the complement denotes a hoped-for future eventuality.

(597) a. ù nù-ŋũ iŷː: mà
  2SgSbj go.in-Ipfv want Q
  ‘Do you-Sg want to come in?’
With certain complements, such as ‘eat’, my assistant prefers dëné ‘look for, seek’ as the main-clause verb (598).

(598) émé iyé làsiri-[ɲ-ŋ-∅] dëné-pú
1PlSbj today couscous-[eat-VblN] seek-Lpfv
‘Today (=this evening) we’d like to eat couscous.’

Different-subject complements of ‘want’ are in (599). The verbal noun is “possessed” by the subject in (599a-b). In (599c), the object ‘mango’ functions as compound initial for the verbal noun. In (599d), where the object NP is determined and therefore cannot function as compound initial, it would appear that ‘these mangoes’ functions as possessor of the verbal noun.

(599) a. ìⁿ yògò [ū [h-yér-ú]] iyé:
1SgSbj tomorrow [2SgPoss [h-come-VblN]] want
‘I want you-Sg to come tomorrow.’

b. ìⁿ yògò [sè:dú [h-yér-ú]] iyé:
1SgSbj tomorrow [S [h-come-VblN]] want
‘I want Seydou to come tomorrow.’

c. ìⁿ yògò [ū màngò-[pàl-∅]] iyé:
1SgSbj tomorrow [2SgSbj mango-[pick-VblN]] want
‘I want you-Sg to pick mangoes tomorrow.’

d. ìⁿ yògò [ū [màngò-[nà-pàl-∅]] iyé:
1SgSbj tomorrow [2SgPoss [mango-[pick-VblN]] Prox] want
‘I want you-Sg to pick these mangoes tomorrow.’

17.3.7 ‘Forget’ (nàpjà) with imperfective complement

This normally transitive verb (cf. wó má nàpjà-è ‘he/she forgot me’) can take an imperfective clause as complement. The complement denotes an action that the main-clause subject forgot to carry out.

(600) a. wó [pèjú jè:-jù] nàpjà
3SgSbj [sheep bring-Lpfv] forget-Pfv
‘He/She forgot to bring the sheep-Sg.’

b. [sùgò áwàrá-jú] nàpjà-lé
[mat lay.out-Lpfv] forget-Proh
‘Don’t-2Sg forget to lay out the mats!’

This is of course distinct from a propositional complement, as in (601). Here the complement takes the form of a polar (yes-no) question. A more literal translation would be ‘I forgot whether …’.
17.3.8 Obligational ‘must VP’ (kóy)

The obligatory construction is based on a hortative verb (for 1Sg or 1Pl subject), or on an imperative verb (for second or third person subject). It is followed by clause-final kóy.

Hortative examples are in (602). As in normal exhortations (‘let’s go!’), the plural-addressee hortative -má-ỳⁿ requires that a total of three or more persons (including the speaker) be involved.

(602) a. má sèwārà MBED-mà kóy
    1Sg S MBED-go-Hort must
    ‘I must go to Sevare (city).’

b. má [sàⁿ MBED-dé-dè:] bàrá
    1Sg [ReflPoss MBED-Rdp-father] help
    wàrú MBED-wà-mà kóy
    farm.work MBED-do.farm.work-Hort must
    ‘I must help my father do farm work.’

c. émé ní wẹ-má-ỳⁿ kóy
    1Pl here be.HumSbj-Hort-PlSbj must
    ‘We (three or more) must be (=stay) here.’

Examples with the imperative verb are in (603). As in normal imperatives, a virtual 2Sg imperative subject is disregarded for anaphoric purposes, so ‘your father’ in (603a) does not have the reflexive-possessor form seen in (602b), above. On the other hand, third person subjects must be represented by a 3Sg or 3Pl pronoun, even if also specified in the form of a NP (603b-c).

(603) a. [ú MBED-dé-dè:] bàrá wàrú wàrú kóy
    [2SgPoss MBED-Rdp-father] help farm.work do.farm.work.Imprt must
    ‘You-Sg must help your father do farm work.’

b. sè:dú wó sèwārà yá: kóy
    S 3SgSbj S go.Imprt must
    ‘Seydou must go to Sevare.’

c. [úr:í: bẹ̀] bẹ̀ bàrá yá:-ỳ kóy
    [children Pl] 3PlSbj bush go.Imprt-PlSbj must
    ‘The children must go to the bush (=to the fields).’

17.3.9 Normative ‘it is right that …’ (jâ:ⁿ kò) with imperfective complement

An example is (604). jâ:ⁿ is an adverbial meaning ‘right, proper, normal’ with reference to behavior.
17.3.10 ‘Fear’ (líw-i: ~ líy-i:) with imperfective complement

For the forms of líw-i: ~ líy-i: ‘fear, be afraid’ and its causative, see §11.2.5.4. The verb can take imperfective complements (605) as well as NP objects. This construction is used when the subjects of the two clauses are coindexed (‘be afraid to VP’).

(605) a. émé dà:qá dá:rà gò:-jú líyè-jì
   1PlSbj night outside go.out-Ipfv 'fear-Ipfv.PlSbj
   ‘We are afraid to go outside at night.’

   b. íⁿ kògùrò tèwⁿé-nú líyè-jì
      1SgSbj fish eat-Ipfv 'fear-Ipfv
      ‘I am afraid to eat fish.’

When the two clauses have disjoint subjects, the complement takes the form of a polar interrogative (§13.2.1.1) with imperfective aspect, as in (606).

(606) a. lú:ró má lòkèrè-jú mà→ líyè-tànà
   snake 1SgObj l'bite-Ipfv Q 'fear-Prog
   ‘I’m afraid that a snake will bite me.’

   b. sè:dú [nã bè] sãⁿ dɔ̌-jù mà→ líyè-tànà
      S [person Pl] ReflObj insult-Ipfv Q 'fear-Prog
      ‘Seydou, is afraid that the people will insult him.’

For the reflexive pronoun in (606b), see §18.1.4.

17.3.11 ‘Begin’ (tɔ́rɔ́) with verbal-noun or purposive complement

The transitive verb tɔ́rɔ́ ‘begin’, like its English counterpart, can take a range of nouns as nonclausal complements, provided they can be construed as denoting an activity. In (607), the complement is a noun (‘cough’) that implies the (absent) cognate verb.

(607) wó kògùjó tɔ́r-è dè,
   3SgSbj cough(n) begin-Pfv if,
   wó = ǹ lò ɔ́-nɔ́
   3Sg=Dat medication give-Impr
   ‘If he starts to cough, give him the medicine.’

When the complement of tɔ́rɔ́ is clausal (i.e. when it contains a verb), there are several options for the complement. The first is to convert its verb into a verbal noun (608).
(608) a. bé lē-Ø tër-sê^n
3PlSbj plant-VblN begin-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They have begun planting.’

b. bé [[tùwó árà] dɔ̃w-Ø] tër-sê^n
3PlSbj [[stone on.top.of] go.up-VblN] begin-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They have begun to climb the mountain.’

c. bé gir"L-fúj-ú] tër-sê^n
3PlSbj house"-[build-VblN] begin-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They have begun to build (a/the) house.’

d. bé [[gír"i mà] új-ú] tër-sê^n
3PlSbj [[house 1SgPoss] build-VblN] begin-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They have begun to build my house.’

e. bé mà làg-ú tër-sê^n
3PlSbj 1SgObj hit-VblN begin-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They have begun to hit me.’

Secondly, a purposive clause with suffix -lí after an {L}-toned form of the verb (§17.6.3) is common as the complement of ‘begin’ (609).

(609) a. bé péjú dãⁿ-lí tër-sê^n
3PlSbj [sheep kill-Purp] begin-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They have begun killing (=slaughtering) the sheep-Pl.’ (dãⁿá)

b. bé [búrú dɔⁿ-lí] tër-sê^n
3PlSbj [bread sell-Purp] begin-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They have begun selling bread.’

c. nɔⁿ "₃m₃-lí t₃r-è
meat be.rotten-Purp begin-Pfv
‘The meat has begun to spoil.’

d. [wò Hkè́n] pàrà-lí t₃r-è
[3SgPoss Hheart] be.angry-Purp begin-Pfv
‘He/She has begun to get angry’

Finally, a second type of purposive complement, expressed by compound-like tonal overlays, is also attested with ‘begin’. In this construction, an object nominal has {L}-toned form as a compound initial, and the verb has {HL} overlay; see §17.6.2, below.

(610) a. íⁿ [tíŋeh] t₃r-è
child [talk(n)] speak begin-Pfv
‘The child has begun to speak.’

b. íⁿ [yè] t₃r-è
child [going] go begin-Pfv
‘The child has begun to walk.’

379
17.3.12 ‘Be VERB-able’ (bir-/) with verbal-noun complement

Senses like ‘be drink-able’, ‘be-edible’, etc., focus on the intrinsic nature of the substance in question and some recurring actions applied to it as a consequence, rather than a particular person’s ability to apply the action. These senses are expressed by a construction consisting of the relevant NP (e.g. denoting a food), a verbal noun or similar action-denoting noun (such as a cognate nominal), and an imperfective form of mediopassive bir-/ ‘be done’ (cf. biré ‘do’). The positive form is bir-ɛ́ (611d), the negative is bir-ɛ̂ (611a-c). The negative form, which is very common, is homophonous with transitive bir-ɛ̂ ‘does not do’. The nonspecific implied agent (‘they’, ‘people’) is not overtly indicated.

(611) a. [kó H:\n]. pį-Ø bir-ɛ̂-rò
[NonhPoss \nchild] eat-VblN do-MP-IpfvNeg
‘Its fruits are inedible.’ (2011.1a.19)

b. [niŋir\n [pérɛ: [mú:né: ságà]] dɔ̃-li dè,
[day ten five plus)] arrive-PfvNeg if,
[wárú w3^n] bir-ɛ̂-rò
[farming Top] do-MP-IpfvNeg
‘If the fifteen days had not arrived (=elapsed), farming (=weeding) was not possible.’ (2011.1a.03)

c. [nú: ñr-ē] pör-ù bir-ɛ̂-rò
[millet ripen-Pfv] say-VblN do-MP-IpfvNeg
‘It can’t be said that the millet has ripened.’ (2011.1a.06)

d. [[gáw^n tà:nú] ü:-n-ú] bir-ɛ̂-jú
[[furrow three lay-Caus-VblN] do-MP-Ipfv
‘laying (them) down (by) three furrows can be done.’ (2011.1a.08)

‘Be obtainable’ and ‘be (easily) seen’ can also be expressed by a passivized verb, see §9.3.2.

17.3.13 ‘Finish’ (kíl-) with verbal-noun complement

kíl- ‘finish (VP-ing)’ takes a verbal-noun complement. The complement may include a direct object as {L}-toned compound initial.

(612) a. nà-\n-[ni-Ø] kíl-ì mà
meal\n-[eat.meal-VblN] finish-Pfv Q
‘Have (you) finished eating?’

b. bè tògù \n-[tòg-ù] kíl-ɛ̂-sê
3PlSbj shed\n-[build.shed-VblN] finish-Pfv
‘They have finished building the shed.’

c. émè námà lè-Ø kilè-là:
1Pl now sow-VblN finish-PfvNeg.PlSbj
‘We have not yet finished planting (millet).’
In (612a), the meal does not have to have been completely consumed; the subject of ‘finished eating’ has simply eaten enough and has ceased eating.

17.3.14 ‘Complete, finish’ (dùǹ) plus same-subject anterior clause

dùǹ ‘complete, finish (VP-ing),’ generally takes an NP complement. It appears to function as a kind of causative for dògó ‘be finished’, which occurs in contexts like ‘the sugar is finished (exhausted)’ and ‘the film is over’. While there is much overlap between dùǹ and kílí, dùǹ presupposes completion, as in ‘finish up (the food)’ in the sense ‘consume all the food’.

dùǹ can also be combined with another verb in the same-subject anterior form (§15.2.2.1).

(613) ab. [gìrⁿí ãj-ɛ́:] dùn-∅
    [house build-SS.Ant] complete-Pfv
    ‘He/She finished (completed) building the house.’

    b. [wó ëkè ëyò: ëtè→]
       [3SgPoss 1Poss 1NearDist] specifically
dùw-ɛ́: dùn-ɛ̀-sè: dè
    carry-SS.Ant complete-Pfv-P|Sbj  if
    ‘when (they) have completed carrying (the millet) of that particular (person)
    (2012.1a.13)

17.4 Locative verbal noun or other nominal complement

This construction has not turned up in the TgK data as a complement clause type.

17.5 Chained-verb complement clause

In this section we consider cases where a final verb controls a preceding clause containing a verb in the bare stem form (see beginning of §10.1.3).

17.5.1 ‘Be able to, can’

17.5.1.1 béré following the main verb

The verb béré means ‘get, obtain’ as a simple transitive verb with NP object. When preceded by a chained VP ending in a verb in the bare-stem form, the sense is ‘can VP, be able to VP’. The subjects of the two clauses are understood to be coindexed. Less often, the chained verb takes the same-subject anterior subordinated form in -ɛ: ~ -ɛ: ~ -iː, as in (614c).

(614) ab. ù [tùwò ^l már^ná] ñàŋá bê-já
    2SgSbj [stone^l big] lift get-lpfv
    ‘Can you-Sg lift this big rock?’
b. ú nùnú-ɲù dè, àná yě bě:-rò
2SgSbj be.sick-IPfv if, village go get-IPfvNeg
‘If you-Sg are sick, you can’t travel.’

c. p5⁰-ɛⁿ gàr-á→ decompose-Pfv a.lot
kó pá:m-è: bě-là:
NonhObj understand-and.SS get-PfvNeg.PlSbj
‘(We) haven’t been able to understand very much (=fully) (the expression) “it has decomposed.” ’ (2011.1a.25)

The imperfective negative (‘doesn’t, won’t’) is sometimes used in contexts where cannot would be used in English.

(615) [s3⁰-sɔ̀nɔ̀ kénɛ] wàrú biré-rò
[sand among] farming do-IPfvNeg
‘(You) don’t (=can’t) farm (=grow crops) in the sand.’

There are two ways to render ‘it’s possible’. bir-ɛ́:jù means more specifically ‘it is (=can be) done’ and denotes possible actions. kí-ɪ bě-jù (ending with the imperfective of běrɛ́) has a more general meaning ‘it could happen’, for example a rain tomorrow. kí-ɪ ‘it happened’ is a special perfective form of active copula ké: ‘be (nonhuman)’, as shown by its negation.

17.5.1.2  běrɛ́ in respectful requests

běrɛ́ ‘get, obtain’ occurs in ‘be able to VP’ expressions, see just above. This verb also appears in utterances like those in (616), where it adds a respectful note, as when a visitor asks to take leave of his/her host, either directly or through an intermediary. The positive version (616a) is easier to understand more or less literally in this pragmatic context, since ‘be able to’ implies the need for permission (616a). However, the use of běrɛ́ extends to negative contexts (616b), where a semi-literal reading makes less sense.

(616) a. íⁿ yě běrɛ́ iyè:
1SgSbj go get want
‘I want to (be able to) go.’

b. íⁿ yě běrɛ́ iyè = lá
1SgSbj go get want=StatNeg
‘I don’t want to go.’

17.5.1.3  {L} -toned běrɛ́ ꞏ preceding the main verb

Invariant {L} -toned běrɛ́ ꞏ can also precede the main verb, which then takes regular inflections. This looks like a verb chain, except that in a real verb chain běrɛ́ ‘get’ would have its lexical /LH/ melody. The sense is still close to ‘be able to’, but here it invokes an external situation, hence ‘(not) have the time to’ or ‘(not) have a chance (opportunity) to’, rather than ‘have the ability to’. Most textual examples are negations.
(617) a. bò:di: bèrèL è:li dè root have.a.chanceL become.tight-PfvNeg if ‘if the (millet) roots don’t have time to become firm’ (2011.1a.03)

b. nè: [nù:L gàmá], now [milletL certain], sàjù kò bèrèL jàgà:ro bird NonhObj have.a.chanceL peck-LpvN Neg ‘Now (with) some (kinds of, i.e. slow-growing) millet, the birds don’t have an opportunity to peck (=eat) that.’ (2011.1a.07)

c. [[àrⁿ á∂ù bò sà:] wò tì:↔tà:] [[man-children Pl all] 3SgObj holding], [wò wà] [fù: bèrèL yà:ro] wà [3Sg QuotSbj] [well have.a.chanceL go-LpvN] Quot ‘All the young men held (=restrained) him, (and) said “you won’t be able to go to the well (to throw yourself in).”’ (2011.1b.03)

d. [[nù: má] kú:n ír-e:] [kó kे:] [[millet ReflPoss] like.that ripen-and.SS] [NonhSbj when.DS], [dèrë:má] kú:n bèrèL gë́:ro wà [crops ReflPoss] like.that have.a.chanceL look-Pfv Quot ‘His (own) millet ripened in that way and thus [focus] he was able to cut (=harvest) his (own) crops, it is said.’ (2011.1b.05)

17.5.2 ‘Help’ (bàrà) as {L}-toned nonfinal verb in chain

With an NP object, ‘help’ is the regular transitive verb bàrà, as in má bàr-è ‘he/she helped me’. When the (logical) complement is clausal, the construction used is a kind of chain, with {L}-toned bare stem bàrà preceding the other verb, which has the contextually appropriate inflection. A direct object associated with the final verb may precede (618a) or follow (618b) the ‘help’ verb and its own direct object.

(618) a. gìrⁿí [má lBàrà] újì house [1SgObj lhelp] build.Imprt ‘Help-2Sg me build the house!’

b. ín [sà:n dé-dè:] bàrà kërù të:re-jù 1SgSbj [[ReflPoss RdP-father] lhelp] stem lburn-Lpv ‘I will help my father burn the stems.’

Since bàrà also means ‘increase (e.g. price)’ and ‘add (sth)’, ‘help’ may be an over-precise gloss in (618). A literal gloss for (618a) like “adding (yourself) to me, build the house!” might help bring out the TgK syntactic structure.

17.5.3 ‘Look’ (gër⁻i) as final verb in chain (‘try to’)

gër⁻i: ‘look (at)’ (§10.1.3.7) can combine with a preceding VP in a sense close to ‘try to VP’, particularly where volition rather than physical difficulty is the issue.
In other contexts, ‘try to VP’ is expressed indirectly by a purposive clause with final \(\text{gè}:\) (§17.6.1 below). (620) is literally ‘(I) went in order to go to the market, (I) couldn’t.’

(620) \[
\begin{array}{l}
[\text{éwè-L} \quad \text{yā-jú} \quad \text{gè:}] \quad \text{yē-è:} \quad \text{bè-li}]
[\text{market.Loc} \quad \text{go-Lpvf} \quad \text{for} \quad \text{go-and.SS} \quad \text{get-PfvNeg}]
\end{array}
\]
‘I tried to go to the market, but I couldn’t.’

17.6 Purposive, causal, and locative clauses

In addition to explicitly purposive clauses (see below), simple clause-chaining can sometimes be translated in this fashion. This is especially the case when the chain includes a nonfinal verb of motion or of changing position (e.g. sitting down), which may be a preliminary to an intended further action (621).

(621) \[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{émé} \quad \text{dēŋ-í:} \quad \text{[sān} \quad \text{bè]} \quad \text{dē:r}nè-mā}
\text{1PlSbj \quad sit-MP \quad [RefIObj \quad PI] \quad rest-Hort}
\end{array}
\]
‘Let’s sit down and rest (ourselves).’
‘Let’s sit down in order to rest (ourselves).’

17.6.1 Purposive clauses with postposition \(\text{gè:}, \text{gì}, \text{or} \text{g-í dè}\)

The ‘say’ verb \(\text{gí}:)\) (§11.3.1.2) is the source of purposive particles and postpositions. There is no sharp boundary between (thought-)quotative and purposive constructions. The range is from ‘saying/thinking that X’ to ‘planning/intending to X’ to ‘on the grounds that X’ to ‘in order that X’, a scale of descending foregrounding of the spoken or mental proposition. Forms that can occur after an imperfective clause in more or less purposive sense are those in (622). Compare postnominal postposition-like purposive elements \(\text{gè:}, \text{gì}, \text{and} \text{in combination with ‘God’} \text{gà}:)\) (§8.3.1.1).

(622) \[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{form} & \text{comment}
\end{array}
\]
\[
\begin{array}{ll}
a. \text{gè:} & \text{reduced from} \text{gé-è:} \text{‘said’ (same-subject anterior)}
b. \text{gì} & \text{same as L-toned chained form of} \text{gí} \text{‘say’}
c. \text{g-í dè} & \text{lit. ‘if (X) says/said’}
\end{array}
\]

For \(\text{gí-ù dè}\) see §15.2.2.10.

17.6.1.1 Purposive clause with \L \text{gè:}

This is an L-toned variant of the postnominal purposive postposition, which is usually \(\text{gè:}\) (§8.3.1.1), like the same-subject anterior form \(\text{gé-è(·)} \text{‘said (and then …)’}\) from which they both derive.
Purposive clauses have the following complement when the two clauses have the same subject, and after an imperative complement when the two clauses have disjoint subjects. The purpose clause may be positive or negative, and may or may not share a subject NP with the main clause. The purpose clause is inserted into the middle of the main clause, following the subject, preceding the verb, and variably positioned with respect to other clause-medial constituents.

In (623a-b), the purpose clause is positive and has the same subject as the main clause. Purposive 623a-b clauses do not have the preverbal subject pronoun preceding 'say' as in (623c).

(623) a. émé [[bàmàkš yãː-ʃí] [bù:dù dëǹé-tëŋ pérdàŋ [Bamako go-lPfv.Plsbj] [money seek-Prog.Plsbj] ‘We’re trying to get money to go to Bamako.’

b. ṭn [ [[sáŋ Àn:i.] bàmàkš tí-jú] [bù:dù dëǹé-tëŋ pérdàŋ [money seek-Prog] ‘I’m trying to get money to send my child to Bamako.’

c. [bë́ nëː] sáːn [lògù L nàː-1sL] [3Plsbl [[mëː-n-ë:, soda.ash-Rdp-filtering.pot assemble-Caus-and.SS, mëː-n-ë, pëřë] dàn-gë-ë] other be.fixed-Caus-and.SS [yé jàː-jù] [wò gë-ë] [there convey-lPfv] [3Sgl say-and.SS] ‘Now all of them (=women) gathered the soda-ash filtering pots in the main palaver shelter. While they decided to gather (the pots), as for her-(self), she (step-mother) made another soda-ash filtering pot, intending to take it there.’ (2011.1b.01)

In (624a-d), the purpose clause is positive but the subjects of the two clauses are disjoint. Here the verb of the purpose clause appears in imperative rather than suffixed imperative form. The use of the imperative does not necessarily imply that an imperative-like clause was ever uttered; see (624a) with an inanimate NP.

(624) a. dëŋà L-sëx:rë [ [dìː sùgò] [të:kùn pérdàŋ roof.gutter [[water go.down.lPfv] [money seek-Prog.Plsbj] ‘We put gutters (on the roof) so the (rain) water will come down.’
b. ¹ⁿ ³gùn¹ⁿ [gùrⁿⁱ ³bín] ¹SgSbj lamp [house in]
   [³kèⁿ ¹{kà}] jāŋ jāŋá ¹gè:j ¹³gùn-n ³kùn-ì
   ‘I put a lamp in the house so that my child can read (at night).’

c. ³kó ¹³gè:j bì-téŋè, bǐré ỹr̃s ³³gè:j
   [Nonh ¹for] do-Prog.PIsbj, work(n) be.soft.ımprt ¹³gè:j
   ‘They are doing (it) for that reason. So that the work becomes soft(er).’
   (2011.1a.12) [purposive clause added as afterthought]

In (625), the subjects are the same but the purposive clause is negative. In (625a-b), the verb of the purposive clause is imperfective negative, parallel to the imperfective positive in (623), above. In (625c), the verb of the purposive clause is prohibitive, and the nuance can be captured by using English ‘lest’ in the free translation.

(625) a. ¹ⁿ [[[úrⁿⁱ bè] gà:nà:-rò] ³³gè:j]
   ¹SgSbj [[[children Pl] disturb-IpfvNeg] ³³³gè:j
   wàg-á→ we
   far be.Hum
   ‘I go some distance away, so as not to disturb the children.’

b. ¹ⁿ [yé yā:-n bāgá-lé ³³gè:j]
   ¹SgSbj [going go-while.SS fall-Proh ³³³gè:j
   bá:gá tiwé-táŋà stick lean.on-Prog
   ‘I am supporting myself with a cane, so as not to fall (=lest I fall) while walking.’

In (626), the subjects are disjoint and the purposive clause is negative. Here the purposive verb is prohibitive in form.

(626) tógú [àrⁿᶟ nù-lé ³³³gè:j ³dèw-è]
   shed [rain go.in-Proh ³³³gè:j ³cover-Pfv
   ‘(We) covered the shed (with a tarp) so the rain won’t leak in.’

³³³gè:j can also be used with predicative comparative adjectives, with {HL} overlay.

(627) [mù: dāg-à→ kò ³³³gù] ³³³gè:j ³³³³gù]
   [millet a.little NonhSbj ³³³³gù] ³³³³gù]
   [kò ³³³gè:j] bǐ-téŋè
   [Nonh ³³³for] do-Prog.PIsbj
   ‘so that millet will be slightly faster (to ripen). For that reason (=that’s why) they are doing it.’ (2011.1a.01)

³³³gè:j ‘for that (reason)’, as in (627) is common as a resumption of a full purposive clause.
17.6.1.2 Purposive clause with *gi*

Purposive *gi* is derived from an L-toned chained form of *gi* ‘say’. Similar L-toned nonfinal chained forms are attested for *tí* ‘do first’ and *yě* (yǎː-) ‘go’ (§15.1.6.1.3).

*gi* is less common than *Lgɛ̀*: as a clause-level purposive morpheme in my data. It is attested with a perfective clause in the sense ‘on the grounds that’ or ‘considering that’ (628a), and with an imperfective clause indicating an intention or purpose (628b-d).

(628) a. *kó* → [[ɲúː ǐ:n kún-i] *gi*] tɔ̂-rè
  Nonh [[millet child put-Pfv] for] hack.down-IpfvNeg.PISbj
  ‘(They) don’t hack (them) down (merely) on the grounds that millet has put (=grown) grains.’ (2011.1a.08)

b. *jâŋ* bè→, ânâL-yê bè→,
  study and, villageL-going be,
  [[já:gu ńa:ga:jú] *gi*] kòlôm-O bè→
  [[commerce do.commerce-Ipfv] for] go.around-VblN and
  ‘There is schooling, and there is traveling (for work), and there is going around (in the region) in order to do commerce.’ (2011.1a.33)

c. [dè-dèː wà] wó wà [īyé ńkè],
  [Rdp-father QuotSbj] [3Sg QuotSbj] [today 1Top],
  [[iːn-tí dêné-ná] *gi*] bàrà yǎː-jú *gàː*:
  [[child.Def 1L look.for-Ipfv] for] outback go-Proh warning
  ‘She said: “Father (of the girl), definitely do not go into the bush today intending to look for the child.” ’ (2011.1b.01)

d. *wó wà* [īyé ńkè] [[bàrà yǎː-jú] *gi*]
  [3Sg QuotSbj] [today 1Top] [[outback go-Ipfv] for]
  gô-è dè
go.out-Pfv if
  ‘(she said:) “If you go out intending to go to the bush today, …” ’ (2011.1b.01)

With nonhuman pronoun as complement, *kó gi* ‘for that’ can resume a fuller purposive clause.

17.6.1.3 Purposive clause with *g-î dè*

Another variant, *g-î dè*, is optionally used instead of *gè*: when the main clause is imperfective with future time reference. In form it is a pseudo-conditional based on the perfective (§15.2.2.6). These elements are roughly parallel in form to those of the ‘do first’ verb *tí* (*tɛ́-ɛ́*, *t-i dè*), see §16.1.3.2, §15.2.2.5.

Like purposive clauses with *gè*, those with *g-î dè* normally take an imperfective complement when the main and purposive clauses have the same subject (629).
When the subjects are disjoint, an imperative (or, if negative, prohibitive) verb is used (630a-b). An adjectival predicate is also possible (630c).

(630) a. ënê [billet ëwè-jù] Lg-í dè
1SgSbj [ticket buy-Ipfv L ] say-Pfv if
bírè [bí-jú]
work(n) do-Ipfv
‘I will work in order to buy the ticket.’

b. ënê [][[ùrù: bè] gâ:nâ:-rò] g-í dè
1SgSbj [[children Pl] disturb-IpfvNeg] say-Pfv if
wàg-à → wé:-jú
far be.HumSgSbj-Ipfv
‘I will go some distance away, so as not to disturb the children.’

A full purposive clause can be resumed as kó g-í dè ‘for that reason’.
The sequence g-í dè can also be a true conditional antecedent meaning ‘if X says’ (631).

(631) maintenant [][[kò bànjà] L sà: yỳ:-rò] now [ [[Def owner] L thing accept-IpfvNeg.Rel] [ìmè tòjà:-rò] g-í dè,
[LogoS pay-IpfvNeg] say-Pfv if,
17.6.2 Tonal purposive clauses of type (ǹ ṣ) before motion verb

This construction is used with intransitive or transitive motion verbs in the main clause (‘go’, ‘send’, etc.) and with purposive complement. The subject of the purposive clause is the theme (entity in motion) in the main clause. The verb of the purposive complement has an {HL} overlay, and a preceding object (sometimes a cognate nominal or verbal noun) has the tone-dropping typical of nominal initials in (ǹ ṣ) compounds. This construction has an exact counterpart in Jamsay.

The tonal purposive construction is also attested as a complement for ‘begin’, along with other purposive and verbal-noun complement constructions; see (610a-b) in §17.3.11, above.

I have one unexplained textual example that translates as a subject relative but that seems to have the bare stem and (ǹ ṣ) tones of a tonal purposive clause.

The tonal purposive construction should be distinguished from another construction involving an {HL} overlay on the verb. This is the parallel construction, indicating that two activities...
are simultaneous (or interspersed), of the form Verb₁\textsuperscript{HL, L}yà; Verb₂\textsuperscript{HL, L}yà; see §15.2.1.5. Here the \{HL\} applies at most to the final two syllables, and an object noun is not tone-dropped.

17.6.3 Purposive clauses with -\textit{lì}

An alternative purposive clause has \{L\}-toned verb stem followed by H-toned -\textit{lì}. This form is homophonous with the singular-subject perfective negative, but there is no semantic connection, and purposive -\textit{lì} has no special plural-subject form. Other constituents in the purposive clause have their usual tones. In the attested examples, the subjects of the clauses are shared.

(634) a. \textit{bé} [péjú \textsuperscript{L}èwè]-\textit{lì} \textsuperscript{L}yèrè
3PlSbj [sheep buy\textsuperscript{-Purp}] \textsuperscript{I}come-Pfv
‘They came in order to buy a sheep.’

b. \textit{bé} bàrá [(sà\textsuperscript{a}o} bò \textsuperscript{HL}jà\textsuperscript{tùrù}] \textsuperscript{L}dènè]-\textit{lì} \textsuperscript{L}yèrè\textsuperscript{:}
3PlSbj bush [[RefI POSS Pl] \textsuperscript{IL}donkey] look.for\textsuperscript{-Purp} \textsuperscript{I}go-Pfv.PlSbj
‘They went out into the bush to look for their donkey.’

A purposive clause with -\textit{lì} can also be used as the complement of ‘begin’; see §17.3.11, above.

17.6.4 Causal (‘because’) clause (\textit{sàbù, sàbú dè→})

L-toned \textit{sàbù} ‘because’ is the primary TgK version of a family of forms in Malian languages derived from Arabic \textit{saabab-} ‘reason’. \textit{sàbù} can occur clause-initially or -medially.

(635) a. \textit{nèw\textsuperscript{a}o} \textsuperscript{L}pèrè, yà kò
3PlSbj [value\textsuperscript{L} other], Exist be.NonhSbj, 
\textit{sàbù} \textsuperscript{L}mòm mòm-\textit{là}: dè,
uprooting because uproot-PfvNeg.PlSbj if, 
\textit{ju}:\textsuperscript{L} dàg-\textit{là}: \textit{bè}:rò
millet.Def\textsuperscript{L} be.good-MP get-IpfvNeg
‘There is another value (to it). Because if (we) don’t do the uprooting, the millet cannot turn out (=yield) well.’

b. \textit{kúr\textsuperscript{a}o} \textsuperscript{L}nànà ár\textsuperscript{rù}: kò hàjè sè:-rè,
leaf-Def\textsuperscript{L} up.to.now formerly Nonh need(n) have.PlSbj-Neg,
\textit{sàbù} \textsuperscript{L}[[jò\textsuperscript{=}nì]\textsuperscript{L}jè] [[jò\textsuperscript{=}nì]\textsuperscript{L}ô-jùî] ...
\textbf{because} [[thing=Dat]\textsuperscript{L} convey] [[thing=Dat] give-Ipfv] ... ‘The leaves (=peanut greens) they had absolutely no need for in the old days. Because (there was not) anything (i.e. livestock) in the houses (=village) to take (=convey) it and give it to.’ (2011.1a.22)

\textit{sàbú-dè→} is a clause-initial (or preclausal) ‘because’ form. In isolation, it is pronounced with \{H\}-toned \textit{sàbù}; in sentential context it is often heard with lowered pitch.
(636) émé kà:ná àná yě ³bè:-rè,
1PlSbj now village go ³get-LpfvNeg.PlSbj,
sábú-dè: ôjù ³-ká ³mjnú
because road bad

‘We cannot go to the village now, because the road is no good.’

When the complement is an NP rather than a clause, purposive-causal postposition gè: can be used in the (retrospective) sense ‘because of’ as well as in the (prospective) sense ‘for, for the purpose of’. See §8.3.1.1, above, for examples.

17.6.5 Phrase- or clause-final sógò ~ sógò ‘because (of)’

In (637), a clause ending in sógò ‘because’ is repeated (after an intervening thought quotation) with gè:, bringing out the interchangeability of the two.

(637) jōwⁿ [kó ³kè] hi sónjòrò] i:n wš sógò,
hare [[Nonh ³Poss] hi cleverness] know be.NonhSbj because,

‘…’,

[thought quotation omitted]

jōwⁿ [kó ³kè] hi sónjòrò] i:n wš ³gè:,
hare [[Nonh ³Poss] hi cleverness] know be.NonhSbj ³for,

jōwⁿ bāná gô: ³yê-∅
hare dodge go.out ³go-Pfv

‘Hare, since he knew (=recognized) that cunning, (thinking) “…” Since Hare knew (=recognized) that cunning, Hare got away from there.’ (2011.1b.05)

Another example of sógò is (638).

(638) émé = ni [kó ³dó:rù] gā-gārā,
1Pl=Dat [NonhPoss ³fatigue] Rdp-pass.Stat
lè ³-k₅ ³íg-ní: lè:-jú sógò,
pick.hoe stand-while.SS plant-Lpfv because,
[[kó ³bè] ³ná:r²næ]
[[Nonh with ³easy]

‘(planting with another tool) is very tiring for us. Because (with) a pick-hoe, one plants standing up. (Planting) is easier with that.’ (2011.1a.01)
Anaphoric elements, i.e. those that coindex their reference to that of an antecedent, are the reflexive $sá^n$, reflexive possessor $má$, the logophoric $ênè$, and the reciprocal $sá^n$-$tú^n$. 

### 18.1 Reflexive

#### 18.1.1 Reflexive object ($sá^n$)

Reflexive morpheme $sá^n$ is used when the object is coindexed with the subject. This applies to first and second as well as to third person subjects, and to cases where a subject pronoun is optionally omitted (639c). Reflexive $sá^n$ is unrelated in form to logophoric pronouns, and has no transparent relationship to any noun.

\[(639)\]

- a. $í^n$ $sá^n$ $lág-è$
  
  1SgSbj | ReflObj | hit-Pfv
  
  ‘I hit-Past myself.’

- b. $[úr^nì: bè] [sá^n bè] kéj-ì^n$
  
  [children Pl] | [ReflObj Pl] | cut-Pfv.PlSbj
  
  ‘The children cut themselves.’

- c. $(ú)$ $[lìgè:] [dỳ∂łë^n bìn] sá^n gë-ì:$
  
  (2SgSbj) | [what? Pl] | [mirror in] | ReflObj | look.at-mp.Pfv
  
  ‘Why did you-Sg look at yourself in the mirror?’

A covert second person imperative “subject” does not qualify as antecedent (§10.6.3). Therefore (640) has 2Sg object, rather than reflexive object as in (639c). Because 2Sg $ú$ occurs in non-clause-initial position in (640), it cannot be misinterpreted as a (clause-initial) subject pronoun.

\[(640)\]

- $[dỳ∂łë^n bìn] ú gë-ré$
  
  [mirror in] | 2SgObj | look.at.Imprt
  
  ‘Look-2Sg at yourself in the mirror!’

#### 18.1.2 Reflexive PP complement

A dative example is (641a). An example with a spatial postposition is (641b).

\[(641)\]

- a. $í^n$ $bú:dù$ $sá^n = ñ$ $bà:r-ì$
  
  1SgSbj | money | Refl=Dat | send-Pfv
  
  ‘I sent some money to myself.’
b. ₁ˢᶠ  bǔ:dú  ṣⁿ bỳ̄rè
   1SgSbj  money  [Refl  under]  ¹̄ bèr-è
   ‘I found the money under myself.’

18.1.3 Reflexive possessor

18.1.3.1 Reflexive possessor ṣⁿ (plural ṣⁿ bè)

The reflexive replaces a regular pronominal possessor when it is coindexed to the clausemate subject. The possessed noun takes its usual possessed-noun overlay, usually {HL} or {H} depending on its syllabic shape and morphological structure.

(642)  a. ṣⁿ  ṭề  ṭê
   1SgSbj  [ReflPoss  ṭê-
   ‘I saw my father.’

b. bè  bè  bè  bè  bíñ
   3PlSbj  [[[ReflPoss  bè  ṭê-
   ‘They went into their (own) house.’

Reflexive possessor ṣⁿ is coindexed with the 2Sg subject ū in (643a). As mentioned above, an imperative “subject” does not bind reflexives, so in (643b) the possessor of the object is the regular 2Sg form. However, in quoted speech an imperative is associated with an overt subject, converted from second to third person, with quotative subject wà. This does qualify as an antecedent (643c).

(643)  a. ū  ṣⁿ  ṭề  ṭê
   2SgSbj  [ReflPoss  ṭê-
   ‘Where did you put your hat?’

b. ū  ṭề  ṭê
   [2SgPoss  ṭê-
   ‘Give 2Sg me your hat!’

 Reflexive ṣⁿ is treated as a noun, and always precedes the possessed NP. This creates a conflict when a possessor coindexed to a clausemate subject is allowed by the syntax to follow the possessum, as happens when the possessed noun is quantified by a numeral. Two constructions are possible in this case. In (644a), ṣⁿ occurs as a morphologically simple reflexive possessor preceding the possessed NP, which has {HL} possessor-controlled overlay. In this construction, ṣⁿ is optionally expanded as ṣⁿ kè, as in (644b), with kè ‘possession’ in apposition to the real possessum. Plural ṣⁿ bè is likewise optionally restructured as ṣⁿ bè kè. These restructured prenominal [X kè] possessors have different tonosyntactic properties than ordinary prenominal possessors. After a restructured [X kè] possessor, an N-Num possessum has an {L}+H overlay rather than the usual possessor-controlled {HL} or {H}. Elsewhere, the {L}+H overlay occurs only in before a post-numeral
controller (determiner or possessor) within the same NP, so (644b) is a rare exception where the controller precedes the string. Restructured reflexive possessor [sǎⁿ  kè] is especially common when a universal quantifier is added (644c). In (644d), the alternative postnominal reflexive possessor má, see §18.1.3.2 just below, replaces preposed sǎⁿ  kè in (664c), but controls the same \{L\}+H overlay.

(644) a.  sè:dú  [sǎⁿ \(^{\text{HL}}\) [ùr’iː:  l₅y]] \(^{1}\) Reserve
S  [ReflPoss \(^{\text{HL}}\) [children two]] \(^{1}\) see-Pfv
‘Seydou, saw his, (own) two children.’

b.  sè:dú  [[sǎⁿ \(^{1}\) kè] [ùr’iː:  l₅y]] \(^{1}\) Reserve
S  [[ReflPos \(^{1}\) Poss] [children two] \(^{1}\) see-Pfv
‘Seydou, saw his, (own) two children.’

c.  íⁿ  [[sǎⁿ \(^{1}\) kè] [gir’iː kùrɛːː] \(^{L+H}\) fū→] \(^{1}\) d₃-nù
1SgSbj  [[ReflPos \(^{1}\) Poss] [house six] \(^{L+H}\) all] \(^{1}\) sell-lpv
‘I will sell all six of my houses.’

d.  íⁿ  [[gir’iː kùrɛːː] \(^{L+H}\) má  fū→] \(^{1}\) d₃-nù
1SgSbj  [[house six] \(^{L+H}\) ReflPos all] \(^{1}\) sell-lpv
[= (c)] (for má see the following section)

18.1.3.2 Reflexive possessor má

A less common but well-attested alternative to preposed sǎⁿ is postposed H-toned má. It does not control tones on the possessed noun, except that when it follows a numeral it controls the same \{L\}+H overlay on the N-Num string in (645a) below as does sǎⁿ  kè in (644b) above. My assistant indicated that the reflexive possessor type with sǎⁿ is more common than that with má, at least in his dialect, but both occur in texts recorded in his native village. Also like sǎⁿ, má is transpersonal, so the antecedent can be first or second person (645c) as well as third (645a-b). Reflexive marking is not obligatory in possessors, so nonreflexive 1st/2nd person possessors are also possible in indicative clauses (645d-e). A nonreflexive second person possessor is obligatory in imperatives, where once again the imperative “subject” is unable to bind an anaphor (2f-g).

(645) a.  sè:dú  [[ùr’iː:  l₅y] \(^{L+H}\) má] \(^{1}\) Reserve
S  [children two] \(^{L+H}\) ReflPos \(^{1}\) see-Pfv
‘Seydou, saw his, (own) two children.’

b.  dè-dè  \(^{4L}\) jàgà  [màrpá:  má]  l₅j:w-ɛː
Rdp-father.Def \(^{L}\) lo! [rifle ReflPos] load-and.SS
jiː  \(^{L}\) yɛ-ɔ̀
take.along \(^{L}\) go-Pfv
‘Lo, the father had loaded his rifle and had brought it with him.’ (2011.1b.01)

c.  ú / ðⁿ  [[ùr’iː:  l₅y] \(^{L+H}\) má] \(^{1}\) Reserve
2SgSbj/1SgSbj [children two] \(^{L+H}\) ReflPos \(^{1}\) see-Pfv
‘You-Sg, I saw your, (own) two children.’
d. \( ì^n \) \([\text{[ür}^{â}i:] \text{láy}]^{L-H} \text{má}^{L-á-è}\)
1SgSbj \([\text{children two}]^{L-H} \text{1SgPoss}]^{l\text{see-Pfv}}
‘I saw my (own) two children.’

e. \( ú\) \([ú^{â}i:] \text{láy}]^{L-á-è}\)
2SgSbj \([\text{2SgPoss} \text{[children two]}^{l\text{see-Pfv}}
‘You saw your (own) two children.’

f. \([ú^{â}i:] \text{láy}]^{L-bóř^{â}á}\)
[\text{2SgPoss} \text{l[children two]}^{l\text{call.Imprt}}
‘Call your (own) two children!’

g. \([\text{ür}^{â}i:] \text{láy}]^{L-á-è}\)
[\text{[children two]}^{L-H} \text{[2SgPoss lPoss]}^{l\text{call.Imprt}}
[=f]

See also \(ɲú: \text{má} ‘his (own) millet’ and \(dèr^{â}é \text{má} ‘his (own) crops’ in (617d).

It is possible that reflexive possessor \(\text{má} \) is etymologically a specialized offshoot of an original 1Sg pronominal, cf. the homophonous 1Sg object \(\text{má} \). Western Dogon languages like Najamba go so far as to use the 1Sg subject suffix on verbs as a logophoric subject marker in quoted clauses. However, actual 1Sg possessor is expressed in TgK by \(\text{má} \), which is L-toned, unless followed by a postposition as in \([\text{pè má} \text{bè} ‘with my wife’, which is discussed following (131) in §6.2.3. Four different ways to combine \(\text{giré ‘eye’ with a following segmental \(\text{ma morpheme are shown in (38) in §3.7.4.6. If \( \text{má} \) were replaced by LK-toned \(\text{mà} \) in (645a), the sense would be ‘Seydou saw my two children’.

Another context with a more or less anaphoric \(\text{má} \) is nonsubject relatives whose subject is coindexed to the subject of the higher clause. There, however, \(\text{má} \) is clause-final and functions much like a same-subject switch-reference subordinator. See §14.1.10 for examples and discussion.

18.1.4 Reflexive with antecedent in higher clause

A reflexive pronoun \(\text{sâ}^{n} \) can be used in a lower clause for a third person referent, with the antecedent being the subject of the higher clause. In (646), \(\text{sâ}^{n} \) is the subject of the lower clause, and is coindexed to the subject of the higher clause.

(646) \(\text{sè:dú} [\text{[sâ}^{n} \text{bágá-jú}]^{f}^{i:}^{n} wò}\)
S \([\text{[RefI} \text{fall-Lpfv}]\text{know be.HumSgSbj}
‘Seydou knows that he, will fall.’

Compare the use of same-subject \(\text{má} \) in relative-clause subjects in (471) in §14.1.10.

My assistant also sometimes, but not consistently, allowed the reflexive pronoun to be used with a nonsubject in the lower clause, still coindexed to the higher (rather than clausemate) subject. The reflexive is used in this fashion in direct-object function in (647a-b).

(647) a. \(\text{sè:dú} [\text{[nà bè} \text{sâ}^{n} \text{dò:-jú}]^{i:}^{n} wò}\)
S \([\text{[person PI} \text{RefI} \text{insult-Lpfv}]\text{know be.HumSgSbj}
‘Seydou knows that the people are insulting him,‘
b. sè:dú [[n̥̂ a b̕ e] s̕ a” dɔ̊ jú mà→] líyé-tāŋà
S [[person Pl] RefObj insult-Lpv Q] fear-Prog
‘Seydou is afraid that the people will insult him.’

This use of the reflexive for nonsubjects coindexed to the higher subject is especially common in relative clauses. See the ‘care-giver’ examples in §14.1.14, e.g. (480a). There the reflexive object s̕ a” is coindexed with the higher subject (the old woman) in spite of the intervening lower-clause subject (‘person’).

However, this use of the reflexive is not rigorous. In (648a-b), we get the regular 3Sg pronoun although the context for the elicited examples involved coindexation with the higher subject.

(648) a. sè:dú [i” wó=ǹ pējú ó-jú] i” wɔ̂
S [1SgSbj 3Sg=Dat sheep give-Lpv] know be.HumSbj
‘Seydou knows that I will give him a sheep.’

b. sè:dú [i” wó lágá-jú mà→] líyé-tāŋà
S [1SgSbj 3SgObj hit-Lpv Q] fear-Prog
‘Seydou is afraid that I will hit him.’

A reflexive object in the lower clause in (648a-b) would most readily be interpreted as coindexed with the clusmates (not high-clause) subject. This would be less of a problem in the ‘care-taker’ example mentioned above, since ‘a good person’ is nonspecific and would make little sense as the antecedent of the reflexive.

Similarly, I have not observed this use of reflexive s̕ a” with other than third person reference, though in its primary functions the reflexive pronoun is transpersonal, i.e. it can have any pronominal person category as antecedent. In (649), note 1Sg object má instead of a reflexive pronoun.

(649) a. [n̥̂ a b̕ e] má 1dɔ̊ jú] i” wɔ̂
[[person Pl] 1SgObj 1insult-Lpv] 1SgSbj know be.HumSbj
‘I know that the people are insulting me.’

b. [n̥̂ a b̕ e] má dɔ̊ jú mà→] líyé-tāŋà
[[person Pl] 1SgObj insult-Lpv Q] fear-Prog
‘I am afraid that the people will insult me.’

18.1.5 Reflexive topic (s̕ a” kè)

s̕ a” kè, identical in form to the reflexive possessive (‘one’s own possession’), is used as a contrastive topic ‘as for him/her(-self)’. It refers back to an NP that has been a primary topic of the passage when one or more other discourse referents are on the radar. For kè in topic function, see §19.1.3 below.

In (650a), the father and the mother are in the middle of a tug-of-war over their children, with father trying to send them away (in the form of birds) and mother trying to keep them there. In (650b), the stepmother has figured prominently in the narrative to this point, but ‘they’ (the other village women) have also made their presence felt.
a. bé gũŋ-gũŋ sú-sù:rù tí-täŋä, 3PObj take.out take.out move.down move.down send Prog, né: [sâŋ ˥ kë] yé ˥ tær[^3], now [Refl ˥ Top] Exist ˥ perch.Stat, [wô bàjá-jù] [wô bàjá-jù]‘… he kept sending them (=the children) away from (there). Now as for him(-self), (he) was (still) perched (on the tree). (She) kept on pulling.’ (2011.1b.02)

b. mɔ̃-ŋú [bé gé-ɛ̃], [sâŋ ˥ kë] assemble Caus-Ipfv [3PISbj say-and SS], [Refl ˥ Top] [lɛ́:n-[të-të:]b pɛrɛ dâŋ-gɛ́:] [lɛ́:n-[të-të:]] other be fixed Caus-and SS ‘While they decided to gather (the pots), as for her(-self), she (step-mother) made another soda-ash filtering pot and …’ (2011.1a.01)

18.1.6 Emphatic pronouns

18.1.6.1 sán-ɔ́: ‘(by/for) oneself’

The adverbial expression form sán-ɔ́: is irregularly contracted from sâŋ tún ɔ́ with tún ‘one’, here in the sense ‘alone, unaccompanied’ (§4.6.1.1). Examples of sán-ɔ́: are in (651a-b).

(651) a. wô bàrá sán-ɔ́: ˥ yɛ́-y 3SgSbj bush Refl one ˥ go-Pfv ‘She went to the bush (=to the fields) by herself (=alone).’

b. ìⁿ bû:dú sán-ɔ́: dîn-ɛ́:pû 2SgSbj money Refl one hold MP-Ipfv ‘I will hold (=keep) the money (for) myself.’

18.2 Logophoric pronouns

18.2.1 Logophoric ènè for second and third person antecedent

Elicited examples involving quotations show that logophoric ènè is used when the quotation is ascribed to a third person (652a) or to the addressee (652b), but not to the speaker (652c). ènè is most systematically used with third person quoted speaker, and in cases like (652a) it cannot be omitted. By contrast, in second person subject examples like (652b) ènè is often omitted. The examples in (652a-b) involve ènè in subject function within the quoted clause.

(652) a. wô [ènè (wà)] yɛ́-jù wà 3SgSbj [LogoS QuotSbj] come-Ipfv Quot ‘He, said that he would come.’

b. ú [liŋ̥ ˥ gɛ́:] [ènè] yɛ́-jù ˥ pɔr-i 2SgSbj what? ˥ for [LogoS] come-Ipfv ˥ say-Pfv ‘Why did you Sg say that you were coming?’
c. ìⁿ nánà [(ìⁿ) yè-jú] lìpò-li
1SgSbj never [(1SgSbj) come-lpv] lìsay-PfvNeg
‘I never said that I was coming.’

d. dè-dè: ìL màrà: ìnà-nà
[Rdp-father.Def ìL] rifle ìtake-Pfv,
ònè ìL tè-tèwè-jú wà
LògòS woman.Def ìL Rdp-kill-lpv Quot
‘The father picked up a rifle, saying “I will shoot (you) the woman …”’

Examples with ëné in object function are in (653). Again, the antecedent (the quoted speaker) may be second or third, but not first, person. For second person subject the logophoric occurred in free elicitation from French cues (653b), but my assistant accepted a variant with 2Sg object pronoun that I proposed (653d).

(653) a. wó [(má à] ëné lág-è] wà
3SgSbj [(1Sg QuotSbj] LògòObj hit-Pfv] Quot
‘She, said that I (had) hit her,.’

b. ú [ìñè ìgè:] [(má à] ëné lág-è] lìg-i
2SgSbj [what? ìfor] [(1Sg QuotSbj] LògòObj hit-Pfv] lìsay-Pfv
‘Why did you-Sg say that I (had) hit you?’

c. ìⁿ [(ú wà] má lág-è] lìpò-li
1SgSbj [(2Sg QuotSbj] 1SgObj hit-Pfv] lìsay-PfvNeg
‘I didn’t say that you-Sg (had) hit me.’

d. ú [ìñè ìgè:] [(má à] ú lág-è] lìg-i
2SgSbj [what? ìfor] [(1Sg QuotSbj] 2SgObj hit-Pfv] lìsay-Pfv
[=(b)] [accepted]

18.2.2 Logophoric plural ëné bè for original-utterance 1Pl pronoun

If the original utterance (by a single speaker) included 1Pl pronominals, a quotation thereof converts them to logophoric plural ëné bè. In (654), Seydou is included in the group that is coming.

(654) sè:dú [ëné bè] yè-jú wà
S [LògòS Pl] come-lpv Quot
‘Seydou, said that they were coming.’

18.2.3 Logophoric ëné syntactically a pronoun

As subject, ëné normally occurs in clause-initial position, like other NPs and pronouns (655b). Also like them, it moves to clause-medial position (following the object and other nonpronominal complements, but still preceding verbs) under focalization (655c). The test of pronominal status is whether, in a nonsubject relative, ëné in subject function occurs

399
immediately before the inflected verb of the relative clause, like normal pronouns. In (655d), we see that this is the case. Therefore ěně occurs in the same range of linear positions as ordinary personal pronouns.

(655) a. íⁿ nàná dàrⁿ-è: dág-è
   1SgSbj cow kill-and.SS leave-Pfv
   ‘I killed the cow and left it (there).’

b. sè:du [ěně nàná dàrⁿ-è: dág-è] wà
   S [LogoS cow kill-and.SS leave-Pfv] Quot
   ‘Seydou, said that he, had killed the cow and left it (there).’

c. sè:du [nàná ěně dàrⁿ-è: ěně dág-è] wà
   S [cow LogoS kill-and.SS leave-Pfv] Quot
   ‘Seydou, said that it was he, [focus] who killed the cow and left it (there).’

d. sè:du [nàná ěně dàrⁿ-è: ěně dág-è]
   S [cow LogoS kill-and.SS leave-Pfv]
   [yà: kà] mà → wà
   [where? be.NonhSbj Q] Quot
   ‘Seydou, said (=asked), where is the cow that he, killed and left?’

Logophoric ěně is also like ordinary pronouns in that, as possessor, it can occur in either the nonappositional construction, as in ěně gírⁿ í ‘his/her house’, or in the appositional construction with kè ‘thing, possession’, as in gírⁿ [ěně ₁kè] ‘his/her house’.

18.2.4 Logophorics in nested quotations

The occurrence of a quotation embedded in another quotation does not necessarily prevent a logophoric pronoun in the lowest quotation from being coindexed with the attributed speaker of the higher quotation. This is easiest to see when the attributed author of the lower quotation is 1Sg, which cannot be the antecedent for a logophoric. In (656), ěně is the object of ‘(I) kill (him)’, and can only refer to Seydou. (656) looks like it has trimmed out a second [mà à], but the speaker clearly understood the context, and the second ‘say’ verb shows that there is an embedded lower quotation. The final quotative particle wà relates to the higher quotation.

(656) sè:du pór-è: mà,
   S say-SS that,
   [[mà à] [ěně ₁dà-jàù] pór-ì] wà
   [[1Sg QuotSbj] [LogoObj ₁kill-Lpfv] say-Pfv] Quot
   ‘Seydou, said that I said that I would kill him.’

However, when both higher and the lower quotations are attributed to distinct third persons, so that both are (in theory) eligible for antecedent status for logophorics in the lower quotation, my assistant prioritized, allowing the logophoric to refer only to the attributed speaker of the lower quotation. Therefore ěně in (657) is coindexed with Adda (female name). The nonlogophoric 3Sg pronoun wò in object function might refer to Seydou, but could also refer to a third participant.
(657) sèdú pór-ɛ̀ mà, S say-SS that, [ádà wà] [éné wó 1-dà-pù] pór-ì wà [A QuotSbj] [LogoS 3SgObj 1.kill-Ipfv] say-Pfv Quot ‘Seydou said that Adda said that she would kill him.’

‘Seydou said that Adda said that she would kill him/her.’

18.2.5 Non-logophoric topic-indexing function

In the absence of a coindexed quoted speaker, the logophoric pronoun is not used for the subject of a relative clause that is coindexed to the subject of the higher clause. A construction where clause-final mà same-subject subordinator replaces the expected clause-initial subject pronoun is used instead (§14.1.10).

18.3 Reciprocal

18.3.1 Simple reciprocals (sàⁿ-túⁿ)

The basic reciprocal word is sàⁿ-túⁿ, consisting of an L-toned form of reflexive sàⁿ plus a synchronically obscure element -túⁿ that belongs etymologically to a cognate set meaning ‘companion’ (e.g. Jamsay tɔʷwⁿ⁻ⁿ). Some other Dogon languages also have a reciprocal word containing this element or a synonym.

The antecedent is normally the clausemate subject. The reciprocal may function as direct object (658a), complement of postposition such as dative (658b), or possessor of a nonsubject NP (658c). The reciprocal form can be used for any nonsingular number of interacting participants, i.e. from two up.

(658) a. émé ëwè 1L market.Loc RecipObj see-Pfv.PlSbj ‘We saw each other in the market.’

b. émé sàⁿ-túⁿ=̀ǹ bù:dú 1-ò-jù 1PlSbj Recip=Dat money give-Ipfv ‘We give each other money.’


18.3.2 ‘Together’ (wò→, màʳⁿ⁻ⁿ⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻~-~-~
In some other constructions, ‘together’ is expressed by a stem from the word-family including \( m₃r^n \): ‘assemble, come together’.

\[
(660) \quad \text{émé} \quad \text{[éːʁéː]} \quad \text{nǐː} \quad \text{m₃₃-n-ɛː-ɛːn}
\]

1PISbj [peanut.& cowpea.&] assemble-Caus-Pfv.PISbj
‘We put-Past the peanuts and the cow-peas together.’

18.4 Restrictions on reflexives

18.4.1 No antecedent-reflexive relation between coordinands

In a NP conjunction, the left conjunct may not function as antecedent of a reflexive possessor (or other reflexive element) in the right conjunct. In (661), there is no overt indication that ‘his’ in ‘his father’ is coindexed with ‘Amadou’.

\[
(661) \quad \text{[āmādūː]} \quad \text{[wó} \quad \text{HL-dē-ɗeː]} \quad \text{yèr-ɛː-ɛːn}
\]

[A [3SgPoss HL-Rdp-father]] come-Pfv.PISbj
‘Amadou, and his, father came.’

19 Grammatical pragmatics

19.1 Topic

In addition to the morphemically marked topical constituents described in the following sections, a NP often occurs by itself preclausally, followed by a pause.

\[
(662) \quad \text{[gū-gùrù} \quad \text{L-yɔː]} \quad \text{pùː} = \text{nì} \quad \text{s₋ₐ} = \text{lā}
\]

[grass.Def L-NearDist], millet=Dat good^not.be ‘Those weeds, they are not good for millet.’ (2011.1a.02)

19.1.1 Falling tone (or pitch) on topical NP

Such unmarked, preclausal topical NPs often have a final falling tone if not already L-toned. This is systematic with topical \( kō \) ‘(as for) it/that’, based on the nonhuman pronoun \( kō \) ‘it, that’.

A similar final L-tone is also the mark of the tonal definite (§4.4.1.1) and the tonal locative (§8.2.1). It is possible that the “topical” and “definite” functions should be consolidated into one category. On the other hand, falling-tone topics tend to be paired in parallel clauses, suggesting a connection with the dying-quail intonation marking coordinands in NP conjunctions. Yet another possibility is that the finalling pitch represents a contraction of the topic particle \( w₃^n \) (eliticized variant = \( ŵ^n \)) leaving a tonal trace behind.

In (663a), the demonstrative \( n₃ \) ‘this’ shows the final L-tone twice. In (663b), the relative-clause form of ‘be in’ is elsewhere H-toned \( sō \).

\[
(663) \quad \text{a. ŋe} \quad \text{[kō} \quad \text{Lbː]} \quad \text{[kō} \quad \text{tūrù]}
\]
Yes, the two of them are the same. This one, the body is red, (and) this (=other) one, the body is white.’ (2011.1a.27, varieties of roselle bush)

b. [yɛː bɪn] [sɔː pɛrɛ] L L
[NearDist in] [thing other]
Q 2SgSbj go-LpfvNeg.PI Pl
‘Can you-Sg speak (about) anything else that is in it (=farming) putting all (of it) together (=summarizing briefly)?’ (2011.1a.33)

19.1.2 Topic (wɔⁿ)

The Topic particle is wɔⁿ following a NP, pronoun, PP, or adverb (for subordinated clauses see below). A less common variant wɔyⁿ is attested, especially before a pause due to hesitation, e.g. nɛː wɔⁿ varying with nɛː wɔyⁿ ‘now’.

The topic particle generally signals a change in topic or setting from the preceding discourse, or a reaffirmation of a topic when a switch might have been expected. The tone is copied from the final preceding tone (except as noted below).

(664) a. [bɛ wɔⁿ] yɛː-rɛ
[3PlSbj Top] go-LpfvNeg.PI Pl
‘As for them, they won’t go.’

b. [nɛ bɛ wɔⁿ] yɛː-rɛ
[woman Pl Top] go-LpfvNeg.PI Pl
‘As for the women, they won’t go.’

c. ɛmɛ yáː bɪrɛ gɔr-á → bɪr-ɛ,
1PlSbj yesterday work(n) a.lot do-Pfv,
[ɪyɛ wɔⁿ] [sɔː bɛ] dɛrɛ-mi-pu
[today Top] [RefObj Pl] rest-Caus-Lpfv
‘Yesterday we worked hard; as for today, we’ll rest.’

The topicalized constituent might well be preclausal in many cases. However, there is evidence that this constituent is at least sometimes clause-internal. In (665a), the topicalized element is a pronominal dative, governed by the verb ‘give’. In (665b), the absence of accusative marking in TgK (except for 1Sg, see below) means that the object NPs are not explicitly governed, but the absence of any pause and of resumptive object pronouns points to clause-internal position.

(665) a. ʊ ŋ h gɔr-á → ọ-ɛ,
2Sg=Dat a.lot give-Pfv,
b. [̀rə̀ ɓè] á.-sèⁿ ɡà→,
[man  Pl]  catch-Pfv.PISbj but,
[nè  ɓè  wɔⁿ]  á.-là:
[wɔ́  ɓè  wɔⁿ]  á.-là:
[wɔ́  ɓè  wɔⁿ]  á.-là:
[woman  Pl  Top]  catch-PfvNeg.PISbj
‘They took the men, but as for the women, they didn’t take (them).’

The 1Sg pronoun does distinguish subject òⁿ from object má (§4.3.1) and this distinction is maintained before the topic particle. Topical subject òⁿ wɔⁿ is in (666a). One would expect #má wɔⁿ for direct object, but instead a slightly expanded form má à wɔⁿ occurs, contracted from má wà wɔⁿ. Other topical object pronouns also show wà, but without wɔⁿ. In (666b), 2Sg object ú wà anticipates the topic switch to 1Sg object in the following clause. Other topic forms are 3Pl bé wà, and contracted 3Sg wɔ́-s from /wó wà/. A phonologically identical wà morpheme with the same contractions occurs as the quotative subject particle (§17.1.3). In (666b), note that the first clause anticipates the (contrastive) topic switch and has wà, though not wɔⁿ:

(666) a. [òⁿ  wɔⁿ]  yà:-rò
[1SgSbj  Top]  go-IpfvNeg
‘As for me, I won’t go.’

b. [ú  wà]  gàr-à→  lág-è.
[2SgObj  Top]  a.lot  hit-Pfv,
[mà  á  wɔⁿ]  tɔwɔ́-li
[1SgObj  Top  Top]  touch-PfvNeg
‘He hit you-Sg a lot, (but) as for me, he didn’t touch (me).’

Topic particle wɔⁿ can be added to an ‘if’ clause (667).

(667) [jù:  lîkè]  hi-ágá  tɔ,  [mɔm  gàr-è  dè  wɔⁿ],
[[millet  1Poss]  1 side] around,  [uprooting  pass-Pfv  if  Top],
[[jù:  lîkè]  hi-ágá  tɔ  wɔⁿ],
[[millet  1Poss]  1 side] around  Top.
[3jɔ́  dɔm-è-nú]  ɔ̀-là:
[thing  wait-MP-Ipfv]  see-PfvNeg.PISbj
‘Concerning (work) of millet, when the uprooting has passed, concerning (work of)
millet, (we) haven’t seen anything (else) to wait for.’ (2011.1.a.04)

The topic particle can contract and cliticize in the form = wòⁿ. In (668), the immediately preceding segment has introduced the two color types of roselle for making bissap beverage, and the speaker now elaborates on each of them in turn. Twice = wòⁿ is added to a tonal definite.

(668) báⁿ-k [wòⁿ]
red.Def = Topic,  now [boil  drink-Ipfv]
ú  pó-juⁿ-k,
2SgSbj  say-Ipfv.Rel
If the tonal marking of topic (§19.1.1 above) is historically derived from wɔ̀ⁿ, deleting the segments but preserving the L-tone, this cliticized contraction could represent a transitional pattern.

For wɔ̀ⁿ at the end of headless perfective relative clauses in the sense ‘when/after …’, see §15.5.3.2.

19.1.3 Possessive kè in topic function

kè is familiar as a possessive marker: [ú kè] ‘yours’, etc., see §6.2.3. However, in texts [X kè] is often best translated as ‘concerning X, regarding X, as for X’ or the like, i.e. as a topical NP, often preclausal. Examples are frequent in the texts. A clearly topical example is (669).

(669) maintenant, lè kè, now, slashing kè, lè = lò dè, est-ce que
[slashing-pickhoe with] slashing=it.is.not if, Q
[[lè pèré bâ lè:jú] yò kè
‘Now, as for planting (i.e. slashing the earth), if not (=aside from) with a pick-hoe, is there any other way to plant?’ (2011.1a.01)

One can argue for a literal possessive reading in such cases, with topicality inferred from context. Compare English on the subject/topic of X, or constructions like this: of the bureaucracy, he said that … In TgK, this would imply omission of an understood ‘subject/topic’ noun and a locative postposition. Such constructions can occur overtly, see [jnú: kè ʰáɡá] tɔ, ‘concerning (work) of millet’ in (667) in §19.1.2. This might be the origin of the topicalizing function of kè.

For reflexive topic sàⁿ kè see §18.1.5 above.

19.1.4 Topical interrogative subject ‘what about?’ (dà)

A NP-final particle dà is attested in NPs that function as topics for a following question. A translation ‘what about X?’ with a following question roughly captures the flavor (‘What about you, are you going?’). Interlineal abbreviation is QTop.

There are many examples of dà in the interview-style recording. In (670a), dà is added to a near-distant demonstrative (in recent discourse-definite sense), the whole NP functioning as topic of the ‘what?’ question. The topical NP is resumed by the possessor kò in the interrogative clause proper. Other elicited examples like (670b) involve topical NPs that function as subjects of the interrogative clauses.
406

(670) a. né: [gù-gùrù]¹-[kò:j-ú] [yɔ́: nà] dà … now [grass]¹-[dig.up-VblN] [NearDef PI] QTop …

pù: = nì [kó ʰnêwⁿê] iŋé = y
millet=Dat [NonhPoss ʰusefulness] what?=it.is
‘Now those acts [that you recently mentioned] of digging up weeds … what is their value for the millet?’ (2011.1a.02)

b. [ú ʰpéjú dà] yɔ́ kò ɔ̀ mà
[2SgPoss ʰsheep QTop] Exist be.NonhSbj Q
‘Your-Sg sheep-Sg, is it there?’

c. [ú dà] bīrè bīrè ʰbè-jù mà
[2Sg QTop] work(n) do ʰget-lpfv Q
‘You-Sg, can (you) do the work?’

When dà is used without an overt following question, a general question is implied. This can happen when the topic changes in the context of a series of questions. In (671), the interviewer switches the discussion of farming techniques from groundnuts (‘main peanuts’) to regular peanuts (‘Mossi peanuts’). ‘What about X?’ captures the discourse function.

(671) né: [ê:rê ʰmùnùʳù] dà
now [peanutʰ Mossi] QTop
‘Now, (what about) peanuts?’

My assistant declined to produce or accept examples with dà (as opposed to wɔ̀ⁿ) in non-interrogative contexts, and explicitly stated that such a context is a condition for the use of the particle.

19.1.5 Topic (kày)

Much less common than wɔ̀ⁿ or dà is kày. It occurred once in about an hour of recorded text, following a clause rather than an NP. In (672), it co-occurs with two tokens of wɔ̀ⁿ.

(672) né: wɔ̀ⁿ’’ [pàrâ-gô:rô]¹-bîrè = lô dê kày,
[now Top] [harvest¹-work(n)=it.is.not if Top]
[nnú: ʰkè đàgà] tɔ wɔ̀ⁿ’,
[millet ʰPoss about] around Top.
[pàrâ-gô:rô]¹-bîrè dêm-ɛ:-jû [námà kà:’n]
[harvest¹-work(n) wait-MP-lpfv [as.of.now also]
‘Now, if it isn’t (=other than) harvest work, concerning millet, we are still waiting for the harvest work.’ (2011.1a.05)

kày is the regular topic particle in several other regional languages.
19.1.6 ‘Now’ (kà:ná, né:, né: wɔⁿ)

The neutral ‘now’ temporal adverb, paraphrasable as ‘at this time’ with no further pragmatic baggage, is kà:ná (673a). It is also used in oppositions like ‘nowadays, in the present’ (kà:má) versus ‘in the old days, in the past’ (kò kẹ:, kẹ: bá→, or gíré tọ).

né: wɔⁿ (with the topic particle) or just né: is a pragmatically sensitive ‘now’, and is more likely than kà:ná to occur preclusally (before the subject), as in (673b).

(673) a. émé bírè kà:ná bì-jù
1PISbj work(n) now do-Ipfv
‘We will work now.’

b. [né: wɔⁿ] émé gírì¹ yà-jù
[now Top] 1PISbj house lgo-Ipfv
‘Now we’ll go home.’

c. né: pèré yó kà
now other Exist be.NonhSbj
‘Now, is there another (way)?’ (2011.1a.02)

Simple né: as in (673c) is usually pronounced with the same low pitch typical of clause-initial subject pronouns, and like them may be set off by a pause.

né: is also common after a clause-initial (or preclausal) topical pronoun or NP. The two elements are prosodically grouped. Again the sense of ‘now’ is pragmatic rather than referentially temporal.

(674) [kó né:] [kó bọⁿ] pàŋ gi-jù
[Nonh now] [NonhPoss name] how? lsay-Ipfv
‘That now (=what you have just mentioned), how (= what) do (they) call it?’
(2011.1a.02)

For a distinct né:, see (396) in §12.3.

19.1.7 ‘Also’ (kàr“à ~ kà:

This particle follows the NP or other constituent that it highlights. It is not normally clause-final (after the verb), even when the translation suggests that it has clausal scope, except when the clause itself is an argument of a higher main clause. Instead, the particle is attached to some preverbal constituent, whether a cognate nominal as in (675e) or some other nominal as in (675f). The particle may follow 1Sg subject or object forms (675a-b) as the sentence requires.

(675) a. ú bàmàkọ yè-Ọ dè, [í” kàr”à] yà-jù
2SgSbj B lgo-Pfv if, [1SgSbj also] lgo-Ipfv
‘If you-Sg go to Bamako, I’ll go too.’

b. wó ú lág-è dè, [má kà:] lágá-jù
3SgSbj 2SgObj hit-Pfv if, [1SgObj also] hit-Ipfv
‘If he hits you-Sg, he’ll hit me too.’
c. u = n bɔ̀bɔ́n ó=ò ðè, 2Sg=Dat candy give-Pfv if,
[má = n kàrₐ] ó-jù [1Sg=Dat also] give-lpfv
‘If she gives you a piece of candy, she’ll give (one) to me too.’
[note: a true conditional, not a pseudo-conditional]

d. ɛ̀m ɛ̀m [yògò kàːn] bìrè ¹biː-jù
1PlSbj [tomorrow also] work(n) ¹do-lpfv
‘We’ll work tomorrow too.’

e. émé émé [dàná kàːn] ¹dànà-nù
1PlSbj [hunt(n) also] hunt-lpfv
‘We will go hunting also.’

f. wó pā: sìrē-jù, [jnà kàːn] sémé-nù
3SgSbj meal cook-lpfv, [ground also] sweep-lpfv
‘She cooks meals, and she also sweeps (the ground).’

The particle may follow an entire PP, but is not inserted between the postposition and its complement, even where this would be logically reasonable as in (676b).

(676) a. émé de ¹ [girí bìń] kùn-è:-sèⁿ, 1PlSbj waterjar [house in] put-Pfv.PLsBJ,
[tógú bɔ̀n kàːn] b-è:-sèⁿ [shed under also] put.down-lpfv
‘We put waterjars in the house, and (we) placed (some) under the shed too.’

b. nā [ðógò mà] yó kɔ, person [behind 1Sg] Exist be,
[ú dógò kàːn] yó kɔ [2SgSBj behind also] Exist be
‘There is someone behind me, and (someone) behind you-Sg too.’

In textual example (677), the clause preceding kàːn ‘also’ functions as subject (or theme) of the final ‘(it) exists’ predicate.

(677) [kwàrù₁k ɡeⁿ] bǐnî [farm.work₁ black] in]
[kúː₃ nà:-nù kàːn] yó kɔ [then go.in-lpfv also] Exist be.NonhSBj
‘There is also (=it can also happen that) (you) go back in then (from time to time)
during the black farming (=the first round of weeding).’ (2011.1a.03)

In many textual occurrences, ‘also’ or ‘too’ is not a felicitous English translation. Often kàːn is used in a sense such as ‘likewise’, bringing out a pragmatic parallel or comparability rather than identity of eventuality types. In some cases it is little more than a topic-switching device.
19.1.8 ‘Also’ (=ǹ)

There are occasional examples of a clause-initial (or preclausal) topic-switching phrase with a pronoun plus cliticized =ǹ. The form is identical to the corresponding dative PP in the reduced (cliticized) variant of the postposition (§8.1.1), except for 1Sg, where the topical form is \(I^n=ǹ\) in contrast to the irregular 1Sg dative \(mäß=ǹ\). There seems to be a hint of ‘also, too’ in the free translation.

\[\text{[nê: } \text{wô'] } \text{nô}^{+\text{L}} \text{ [bê dógô]}
\]
\[\text{[now Top] woman.Def }^{+\text{L}} \text{ [3Pl behind]}
\]
\[\text{tåg-ê-ê: } \text{mà,}
\]
\[\text{follow-MP-and.SS and.then,}
\]
\[\text{yâ:-nî: } \text{yâ:-nî: } \text{dè, } \text{mhm,}
\]
\[\text{go-while.SS go-while.SS if, } \text{uh-huh,}
\]
\[\text{bê=ǹ } \text{sá-ê } \text{dè—}
\]
\[\text{3Pl=} \text{also reply-Pfv if—}
\]

‘Now the woman followed behind them. While they were going, uh-huh, they for their part spoke up——’ (2011.1b.05)

For \(iyê=ǹ\) ‘again’ see (685) in §19.3.1.

19.1.9 ‘Even’ (hâl, kär nâ ~ kâ:’)

There is no consistent distinction between ‘X also’ and ‘even X’. The same kär nâ ~ kâ:’
illustrated in §19.1.7 above for ‘X also’ is also found in passages translatable as ‘even X’, hence the two translations for (679b). The phrase in question is optionally preceded by hâl ‘all the way to, until’ to force the ‘even X’ translation (679a). The absence of a parallel phrase in preceding discourse can also force an ‘even X’ translation, as with (679c).

\[\text{[hâl à'sâ:rá kà:’] té nô:çoné}
\]
\[\text{[even white.person also] tea drink-Lpfv}
\]

‘Even the white person will drink tea.’

\[\text{wô } \text{dí: } \text{nô:çoné, } \text{frí } \text{nô:çoné,}
\]
\[\text{3SgSbj water drink-Lpfv, milk drink-Lpfv,}
\]
\[\text{[kêpê kà:’] nô:çoné}
\]
\[\text{[beer also] drink-Lpfv}
\]

‘He drinks water, he drinks milk, he even drinks beer.’

or: ‘He drinks water, he drinks milk, he drinks beer too.’

\[\text{[pô: kà:’] kûn-ô:}
\]
\[\text{[greeting also] put-PfvNeg}
\]

‘He didn’t even greet (=say hello).’

For ‘even if’ conditionals, see §16.2.1.

For nê: and yê in the sense ‘(not) even’ in a fortiori constructions, see §12.3.

For 389
19.2 Interclausal discourse markers

19.2.1 ‘But …’ (gà→)

gà→ is a ‘but’ particle, occurring at the border between two clauses that are discordant in some fashion. In TgK, gà→ is normally pronounced at the end of the first clause, though it only makes sense when the final clause is uttered.

(680) a.  jɔ̀wá bɛ̀-jú  gà→ bàŋ-ì: bɛ̀-rò
   run  get-Ipfv  but,  hide-MP  get-IpfvNeg
   ‘You-Sg can run, but you can’t hide.’

b.  [nɛː  mà-ŋà-lí  dè] tɔɔ- rè  gà→,
   [now  dry-Inch-PfvNeg  if]  hack-IpfvNeg.PISbj  but,
   [kò  mà-ŋè:]  [tɔɔ  dɔɔ-è]
   [NonhSbj  dry-Inch-and.SS-Pfv.PISbj]  hack  arrive-Pfv
   [kò  sà a] tɔɔ- tì  dè,
   [NonhSbj  ReflObj  show-Pfv  if,]
   nɛː  kú a  tɔɔ- jú  dɔɔ- rè a
   now  only.then  hack-Ipfv  on.other.hand
   ‘Now when it (=millet) has not (yet) dried out, (they) do not hack (the stems) down. But when that (millet grain) has showed itself as having dried (=hardened) so that (the time) to hack down (the stems) has arrived, then (they) they hack (them) down.’ (2011.1a.08)

19.2.2 ‘And/or alternatively…’ (gá:)

This particle, which seems to be H-toned although in some cases it is heard with low pitch, occurs medially in the second part of a parallel construction describing alternative possibilities (e.g. alternative techniques). Specifically, it occurs after a clause-initial constituent, generally one that conveys the difference between the two parallel possibilities. The second part may include kà::‘also’, especially when both alternatives in fact occur.

(681) a.  ní  kà a  [wɔrú bimí  pàŋà-nù] yù  kò→
   cowpea  also,  [[field  in]  crossplant-Ipfv]  Exist  be.NonhSbj,
   [nì-bɔg]= kà  bɔɔ- jú a
   [cowpea-apart=Foc  and.or  grow.apart-Ipfv]  Exist  be.NonhSbj
   ‘Cow-peas too, there is cross-planting (them) in a (millet) field, (and/or) there is growing (them) separately (in their own field).’ (2011.1a.29)

b.  [[[kúwɔ bɛ] yà- jú nà] yè  wè,
   [[foot  Inst]  go-Ipfv.RelH]  PI]  Exist  be.HumPl,
   [[[fìr` [hù] bɛ] kà  bɔɔ- jú nà] kà a]
   [[[iron  Inst]  and.or  go-Ipfv.RelH]  PI]  also
   yè  wè
   Exist  be.HumPl
   ‘There are (people) who go on foot, and there are (people) who go on bicycles.’
This might be connected with the *gá*: that occurs in one type of verb iteration, following the first iteration of the verb (§11.6.5). A less likely connection is with possessed noun *gá*: ‘something like’ (§8.4.1).

19.2.3 ‘Otherwise …’ (*dɔ̀ŋɔ̀rⁿɔ̀*)

Clause-final particle *dɔ̀ŋɔ̀rⁿɔ̀* occurs at the boundary between two conflicting propositional states. The *kú* particle at the beginning of the following clause in (682a), here glossed ‘lest’, is adominitive.

(682) a. **émé bíné bǐ-má dɔ̀ŋɔ̀rⁿɔ̀, kúⁿ gǎ:-rò**

1Pl work do-Hort otherwise, lest pass-lpfvNeg

‘Let’s work, otherwise we won’t get by (=succeed).’

b. **bé yè-lá: dɔ̀ŋɔ̀rⁿɔ̀, yèrè-şé” dè,**

3PlSbj come-PfvNeg.PISbj otherwise, come-Pfv.PISbj if,

**émé bé ¹lágà-jù**

1PlSbj 3PlObj ¹hit-lpfv

‘They haven’t come, however if they do come, we’ll beat them up.’

See also (172), (564c), and (680b).

19.3 Pragmatic adverbs or equivalents

19.3.1 ‘Again’ (*pílé-m-è:, pílé-m-n, ìyé = ǹ*), ‘not again’ (*pèré*)

One free-standing ‘again’ adverbial is *pílé-m-è*: This is a same-subject subordinating form with -è: (§15.2.2.1) from frozen causative *pílé-m-* ‘do again, repeat’. Of course the following verb has the same subject as ‘do again’ in this construction.

(683) **í” bág-è:, ụnrá-è:, pílé-m-è: ¹bág-è**

child fall-SS, get.up-SS, repeat-SS ¹fall-Pfv

‘The child fell, got up, and fell again.’

*pílé-m-* itself may be used as a nonfinal chained verb. It can often be translated as ‘furthermore, in addition’.

(684) **[yé: wò → sá:” fú→] gàr-è dè,**

[NearDist all all all] pass-Pfv if,

**pílé-m ñé: náŋ-páŋ bín-è dè, …**

do.again now how?-how? do-Pfv if, …

‘When all those (things) have passed, what (things) do (you) do now in addition, (and ...)’

The adverb *iyé = ǹ* is another ‘again’ expression. Its relationship to *iyé* ‘today’ is unclear. The *= ǹ* is likely to be the clitic *= ǹ* described in §19.1.8 rather than the dative postposition. Like *pílé-m, iyé = ǹ* can be a pragmatic adverbial ‘furthermore, in addition’. (685) is from a passage about reseeding in spots where the first millet sown has not sprouted.
The combination of a negated verb and adverb pèré ‘otherwise, additionally’ (cf. adjective pèré ‘other’) in the sense ‘on another occasion’ can be translated as ‘not again’ (686).

The simple ‘again’ expressions (pilé-in, iyé = ñ, pèré) often co-occur in the same clause.

19.4 ‘Only’ particles

19.4.1 ‘Only’ (sày)

sày ‘only’ follows the constituent or clause that it highlights. The 1Sg form is mí = ýⁿ sày in both subject and object function, suggesting a connection with focalization. The <LH> tone of sày is often reduced to L-tone, medially as well as prepausally.

Like the ‘also’ particle, sày is attached wherever possible to a preverbal constituent, even when the translation suggests clausal or VP scope. In (688), the particle is attached to the object noun giné ‘sleep’ in a fixed noun-verb collocation.

412
19.4.2 ‘Just (one)’ (léwⁿ)

léw is a kind of intensifier for the numeral tūrū ‘one’. It may be separated from tūrū by other constituents.

(689) 1SgSbj [wó tūrū säy] [girⁿi bín] léwⁿ tém-è
3Sg one only [house in] just one find-Pfv
‘I found him/her completely alone in the house.’

19.5 Phrase-final emphatics

For clause-final sä, see delayed future -jà sä in §10.2.2.4.

19.5.1 Clause-final tájiri ‘definitely’

The noun-like element tájiri ‘certainly, definitely’ is an adverb medially or at the end of a clause. It is not in a higher clause, taking another clause as complement. It indicates the speaker’s certainty about the truth or validity of the statement. In textual passage (690), it has a strong confirmational value.

(690) B: est-ce que [kó gɛ̀:] bì-wè-ré
A: [kó gɛ̀:] bì-tẹ̀jé tájiri

B: Aren’t they doing it for that reason?
A: They definitely do it for that reason. (2011.1a.12)

Elicited examples are in (691). They confirm that tájiri is an adverb. It occurs with other adverbs like ‘tomorrow’ (in either order), in the usual adverbial position following real subject NPs (691b). It precedes low-referentiality “subjects” in fixed meteorological collocations like ‘rain’ in (691a).

(691) a. yògó tájiri ārⁿú lšwš-jù
    tomorrow certainly rain rain.fall-lpvf
    ‘It will certainly/definitely rain tomorrow.’
    [can also be ordered: tájiri yògó ārⁿú lšwš-jù]

b. émé yógó tájiri hàmàkɔ dɔ̊-jù
    1PlSbj tomorrow certainly B arrive-lpvf
    ‘We will certainly arrive in Bamako tomorrow.’

19.5.2 Phrase-final já:ti ‘exactly’

Although this form, common in Fulfulde and several other Dogon languages, was elicited in TgK, it did not occur in the recorded texts.
19.5.3 Clause-final \textit{kòy} (confirming)

This clause-final particle is used in statements that confirm the listener’s expectation, or that express agreement with what the interlocutor has just said. Compare English \textit{sure} (A: It’s hot today. B: It \textit{sure} is.).

The passage in (692) shows the difference between \textit{dè}, which contradicts the listener’s expectation, with \textit{kòy}, which confirms it. The discussion is about harvesting millet grain spikes using a harvesting knife, either with the millet plant still standing (“up high”) or previously hacked down (“on the ground”).

(692) B: \textit{yó: kírè = lá→}  
A: \textit{dág-à→ kírè→ kòÿ dè. [árá kùⁿ kè] kírè nánà, dág-à→ —}  
B: [árá kùⁿ kè] kírè  
A: [árá kùⁿ kè] kírè \textit{kòy}, [ná kùⁿ kè] sógò

B: That isn’t hard (work)?  
A: It \textit{actually} is rather hard. In particular, (the method) up high is harder. Fairly—.  
B: Up high is harder?  
A: Up high \textit{sure} is harder than on the ground.

Clause-final \textit{kòy} should be distinguished from \textit{kó=ý} ’that’s it’, with ‘it is’ clitic.

19.5.4 Clause-final \textit{là} (surprise)

This particle is probably a variant of \textit{n’est-ce pas?} type tag questions, which can be used rhetorically (§13.2.1.3). It is a mild emphatic that can usually be left untranslated. The textual examples involve information of some importance (e.g. clarifications) in the discourse.

In (693a), the narrator clarifies the listener’s confusion about which child was referred to in a preceding clause, by revealing that there was a second child in the scene.

(693) a. \textit{[wó \textsuperscript{1} kè]\textsuperscript{1 i:ⁿ} yó:\textsuperscript{5 kòÿ \textsuperscript{là}}}  
\textit{[3sgPoss 1Poss 1child] exist be.NonhSbj \textbf{Emph}}  
‘Now there was (also) a child of hers (=of the step-mother).’ (2011.1a.01)

b. A: \textit{háyè kà:ná \textsuperscript{5 yó:\textsuperscript{5 gè:\textsuperscript{5 mà}}} \textit{well now [nearDist for Q] [nearDist leave-Pfv]}}  
\textit{\textsuperscript{5} dág-è.}}  
\textit{previously chiefhood say-Ipfv.PlSbj \textbf{Emph}}

B: \textit{dgó́}

A: … Well, that is why nowadays (they) have abandoned that. In the past they said (=called it) the chiefhood.  
B: Chiefhood? (2011.1a.15)
19.5.5 Clause-final dë (contradicting or warning)

This clause-final particle is used when the speaker believes that the proposition in the clause is not what the listener expects, or more generally to indicate surprise or urgency. It is a warning to the listener to take careful note. Compare English actually or clause-initial well when correcting the listener, and low-pitched now in warnings (‘Don’t be late now!’)

(694) a. ɛ’ [jɛ̃-ûrî]: L n5: nà sëâ wë dë
wow! [twin-children ï Prox Pl] good be.HumPlSbj Emph
‘(they said:) “wow, those twins are definitely handsome.”’ (2011.1b.04)

b. [bàrä bîn] [bàrä L-nɔ̀wɔ́ âjú]
[outback in] [outbackL-meat all]
ènè L-bàrä wà dë
LogoObj L-help.Imprt Quot Emph
‘(He said:) “all (you) wild animals in the bush, all wild animals help me!” ’ (2011.1b.05)

See the second line (first turn for A) in (692) in §19.5.3 for another example.

19.5.6 Clause-final gà ~ gâ: (warning)

A clause-final element heard as gà or gâ: occurs in warnings. I gloss it as ‘beware’ in interlinear.

[gɔ:nɔ́-sɔ’ yè yè-jú gà]
[raider Exist come-Ipfv beware]
‘She (=step-mother) told the girl, “go in (=hide) under it (=pile of stalks) quickly, (since) raiders are coming!” ’ (2011.1b.01)

b. [dè-dè: wà] [wò wà] [iyé lìkè],
[Rdp-father Quot] [3SgSbj Imprt] [today lTop],
[ɦ̱-nɔ̀ dënë-pú] gí l bàrä yà: lè gà:
[child.Def l look.for-Ipfv] for] outback go-Proh beware
‘(She said:) “Father (of the girl), definitely do not go into the bush today intending to look for the child.” ’ (2011.1a.01)

19.6 Backchannel and uptake checks

The recorded texts are full of brief backchannel items, ranging from mhm-type vocalizations to ë→ ‘yes’, which indicate that the listener is following what the speaker is saying (or asking). In addition, the listener often repeats a clause or phrase just used by the interlocutor. It is difficult to tell when this is a request for confirmation and when it is just backchannel. In any event, the interlocutor may take it as a request for confirmation, and may repeat the phrase yet again.

(696) is the free translation of a segment with particularly dense backchannel from one interview-style text (2011.1a.06).
A: … Now that (millet) has become ripe.
B: It has become ripe.
A: Yes, that has become ripe.
B: Before all that has happened, …
A: Yes?
B: … as for the millet, it can’t be said that the millet has become ripe yet.
A: It can’t be said.
B: Developing the red fuzz …
A: Developing the red fuzz.
B: Putting out fruits (=grains) …
A: Uh-huh.
B: Turning whitish …
A: Turning whitish.

On the other hand, uptake checks initiated by the speaker who holds the floor did not occur frequently in the texts. This is perhaps attributable to the particular individuals involved; that is, the speaker could assume that the listener understood more or less everything and that he would ask when anything was unclear.

19.7 Greetings

Simple time-of-day greeting sequences are summarized in (697). A is the first speaker. All of the initial greetings by A are imperative in form, with -ỳ for plural addressee as in normal imperatives. The ‘good morning’ phrases are retrospective, based on the verb ná: ‘spend the night’ and sé:w ‘well-being’, but ná:-w”á and sé: wɔ are irregular in form. There is no special greeting for mid-day, so the simple pɔ: ‘hello!’ is used then. The two afternoon/evening greetings are slightly retrospective, denoting the concurrent or just elapsed time of day (nùnùŋú kùⁿ ‘early afternoon’, dàgà-nùŋú ‘late afternoon’).

(697) a. morning to 10 AM
   A: ná:-w”á
   ná:-w”á-ỳ
   ‘good morning!’ (single addressee)
   ‘good morning!’ (plural addressee)

   B: sé:w ná-è mà
   [lit. “did [you] spend the night well?”]

   A: sé: wɔ

b. mid-day
   A: pɔ:
   pɔ:-ỳ
   ‘hello!’ (single addressee)
   ‘hello!’ (plural addressee)

   B: pɔ:.

c. early afternoon around 1 to 4 PM
   A: [nù-nùŋú kùⁿ] pɔ:
   [nù-nùŋú kùⁿ] pɔ:-ỳ
   ‘good afternoon!’ (single addressee)
   ‘good afternoon!’ (plural addressee)

   B: pɔ:.
d. late afternoon to evening, around 4 to 7 PM
A: \( \text{dàgà-nùŋú pòː} \quad \text{‘good afternoon/evening!’ (single addressee)} \)
\( \text{dàgà-nùŋú pòː-ŷ} \quad \text{‘good afternoon/evening!’ (plural addressee)} \)
B: \( \text{półː} \)

e. night (after nightfall)
A: \( \text{dàɡà pòː} \quad \text{‘good evening!’ (single addressee)} \)
\( \text{dàɡà pòː-ŷ} \quad \text{‘good evening!’ (plural addressee)} \)
B: \( \text{półː} \)

e. night (at parting)
A: \( \text{jáⁿ náː} \quad \text{‘(have a) good night!’ (single addressee)} \)
\( \text{jáⁿ náː-ŷⁿ} \quad \text{‘(have a) good night!’ (plural addressee)} \)
B: \( \text{àmà sɛ́ⁿ bè èmê náː-ма} \quad \text{‘may God shave us spend the night with good(ness)!’} \)

Situational greetings involving a location or the addressee’s activity, not depending on time of day, are in (698). The reply in each case is \( \text{półː} \).

(698)  a. \( \text{ú bìr̩̩→} \quad \text{(doing any work) (single addressee)} \)
\( \text{é bìr̩̩→} \quad \text{(doing any work) (plural addressee)} \)
[compare noun \( \text{bìr̩̩} \) ‘work’]

  b. \( \text{bàrá pòː} \quad \text{(returning from fields) (single addressee)} \)
\( \text{bàrá pòː-ŷ} \quad \text{(returning from fields) (plural addressee)} \)
[compare noun \( \text{bàrá} \) ‘the bush, the fields’]

  c. \( \text{èt̩̩è pòː} \quad \text{(returning from well) (single addressee)} \)
\( \text{èt̩̩è pòː-ŷ} \quad \text{(returning from well) (plural addressee)} \)
[compare noun \( \text{èt̩̩è} \) ‘well’]

  d. \( \text{éwè-L pòː} \quad \text{(at or returning from market) (single addressee)} \)
\( \text{éwè-L pòː-ŷ} \quad \text{(at or returning from market) (plural addressee)} \)
[compare noun \( \text{éwè} \) ‘market’, tonal locative \( \text{éwè-L} \)]

Greetings and wishes to departing and returning travelers are in (699). (699a) is literally ‘may God take you-Sg/Pl there with peace’, slightly distorted from \( \text{àmà [jám bè]} \) ‘God [with peace]’, plus the 2Sg or 2Pl pronoun and \( \text{dɔ́ː-ŋ} \) ‘cause to arrive’ (imperative \( \text{dɔ́ː-nɔ́} \)). (699b) is also slightly irregular ‘God (has) brought you (back)!’, whose normal form would be (for the singular) \( \text{àmà ú jɛ́ːrː-ɬ} \).

(699)  a. \( \text{àmà j̩̩aⁿ ú dɔ́ː-nɔ́} \quad \text{‘bon voyage!’ (to single traveler)} \)
\( \text{àmà j̩̩aⁿ bè é dɔ́ː-nɔ́} \quad \text{‘bon voyage!’ (to traveling group)} \)

  b. \( \text{àm-ú: jɛ́ːrːɛ́} \quad \text{‘welcome back!’ (to single returnee)} \)
\( \text{àm-ɛ́: jɛ́ːrːɛ́} \quad \text{‘welcome back!’ (to returning group)} \)
Presenting condolences to the family of a deceased person is very important in Dogon culture. In (700), A is the visitor and B, who replies, is one of the bereaved. \textit{kárⁿá} ‘do’ is not used in the focal TgK dialect except in formulaic phrases like this, but it is reported as a ‘do’ verb for other TgK dialects (and is common in Jamsay).

(700) \begin{align*}
A: \ & àmá = h \quad yá:pú \quad kárⁿá \\
& \text{God=Dat} \quad \text{reconciliation} \quad \text{do.Imprt} \\
B: \ & yá:pú \quad kárⁿá
\end{align*}

The four-part sequence (701) is uttered on major religious holidays.

(701) \begin{align*}
A: \ & àmá \quad íyé \quad tó:r-ì \\
& \text{God} \quad \text{today} \quad \text{show-Pfv} \\
& \text{‘God has showed today to us.’} \\
B: \ & pò: \\
A: \ & àmá \quad nàŋürⁿù \quad tó:ró \\
& \text{God} \quad \text{next year} \quad \text{show.Imprt} \\
& \text{‘May God show next year to us!’} \\
B: \ & ãmí:nà \\
& \text{amen}
\end{align*}
20 Text

“Planting”

This corresponds to tape 2011.01, segment 1a. It is excerpted from a long interview-style text about farming. Recorded in Koporo-Pe in 2011. Additional texts, with TgK transcriptions and free English translations along with some notes, but without interlinear mark-up, are in a separate document.

(702) B: dàgà-nùŋù pò:-ỳ [dè A]
late.afternoon greeting-Pl [father A]
A: pò:-→
greeting
B: Good afternoon, A [name].
A: Greetings.
[pò:-ỳ in plural-imperative form, addressed to two people; B uses dè ‘father’ respectfully addressing an older man]

(703) B: èmè ìyè nì [básí gè:] yè-là:
1PIsbj today here [trouble for] come-PfvNeg.PIsbj
A: âmá basí pógó
God trouble brush.away
B: We haven’t come here today because of any trouble.
A: May God brush away any trouble.
[standard sequence when a guest arrives; imperative pógó with third person subject (‘God’) in a wish]

(704) B: wálà:, nò: kà:ná [émè 1kè], ëmè, tògò-gànà 2L,
well, Prox now [1Pl 1Top], 1Pl, Togo-country.Loc 2L
wàrú bá 3L 1wà-ùjù,
farming manner 1do.farming-Lpvf,Rel,
wàrú ñàŋ-è dè, lè ñàŋ-è dè,
farming take-Pfv if, slashing take-Pfv if,
[pàrà-[gò:-rò]] 1L-biré 1L-dà,
[autumn-[go.out-Nom]] 1L-work(n) 1L-arrive,
[kò 1só] ù=ǹ úpù 5-nù 2L-gè;
[NonhPoss 1thing] 2Sg=Dat ask-Lpvf for,
maintenant ëmè tì→, [lè kù”] lá: 1lòrù-ùjù,
now 1PIsbj first, [slashing about] first 1begin-Lpvf,
maintenant [émè 1gànà 1L],
now [1PIsbj 1country.Loc 1L]
[lè dò-li] [kò kò-ǹ dè],
[slashing arrive-PfvNeg] [NonhSbj be.NonhSbj-while.DS if],
émé inè lá: 1bi-ì
does first 1do.Lpvf.PIsbj
B: Well, this now, as for us, we, (in) Togo country, the way (one) does farming. From farming with the daba (and) from slashing (=planting) to autumn work (=harvesting), so that I may ask you-Sg about that topic. Now first of all, we’ll start with planting. Now, (here) in our country, before planting (time) has arrived, what do we do first?

[wàlá]: < Fr. voltâ; émé kè with possessive kè in topic function §19.1.3; gâná 'land, country' twice in tonal locative form §8.2.1; báà 'manner' head of imperfective manner adverbal relative §15.5.2; verb ǂwà-jù after rv-Deletion §3.5.3.2 from verb stem wàrâ 'do farming' (prototypically working earth with a daba [type of hoe] with pulling motion), with cognate nominal wàrâ; verb lè: and cognate nominal lè 'slash (earth, with pick-hoe, to sow seeds)', hence 'plant (millet)'; [X làg-à dè] [Y ǂdà:] 'from X to Y' with làgà 'take' and dà: 'arrive' §15.5.4; the complex initial in the compound [pàrâ-[gò:-rò]]ǂ-biré is nominalization from collocation pàrâ gò: 'autumn go out', i.e. 'be harvest time'; kò ǂsò: from sò: '(abstract) thing, matter, issue', {H}-toned after nonhuman "possessor" kò as discourse-definite marker §4.4.1.3; purposive gè: (postposition after NP §8.3.1.1) and ǂgè: (clause-final §17.6.1.1); tíf and lá: are interchangeable adverbs 'first'; 'before' clause with perfective negative §15.4.1.1; ǂbì-jì one of several tone-dropped clause-final verbs, from biré 'do'

(705) A: [lè dà:-h] [kó kò-à dè]
[slashing arrive-PfNeg] [NonhSbj be.NonS-while.DS if]
[émé bàrâǂ-biré lá:] ǂbì-jì,
[1PISbj outback-work(n) first ǂdo-Ipfv.PISbj],
bàrâǂ-biré jìwèǂ-[tè:r-ú] bè→,
outback-work(n) thorn-[burn-VblN] and,
gìwèǂ dège-dège→,
bùšǂ small-small,
þù:ǂ-[kè:n-ú]
[trash]ǂ a.little millet-[slashing be.ruined-Caus-Ipfv.\Rel]
té:térè té:térè:jù bè→,
chop-chop burn-Ipfv and,
þù:ǂ-[dàg-à jù: ǂlè] nùmù-gó-jùǂH]
[trash a.little millet-[slashing be.ruined-Caus-Ipfv.\Rel]ǂH]
té:térè:jù bè→,
burn-Ipfv and,
[yjɔ: l:רגû l:דַַּו] émé bì-ñ dè]
[NearDist ǂtype ǂlimit] 1PISbj do-while.DS if]
[pà→ ǂyè-G dè],
[until ǂgo-Ipfv if]
émé àr̃:ña ǂdêm-é:jù
1PISbj rain(n) ǂwait.for-MP-Ipfv

A: Before planting (time) has arrived, we do buswork (clearing fields) first. (In) buswork, there is burning thorns (=thorny branches), there is chopping and burning the small bushes that prevent millet from turning out well, there is burning the trash (e.g. remains of last year’s stems) that damages millet-planting. We do all those sort of thing until (the time when) we are waiting for the rain.

[jìwè-[tè:r-ú] and nù:-[kè:n-ú] verbal-noun compounds with incorporated object §5.1.4; conjointed series with bè 'and' §7.1.3; té:térè reduced from iterated /tè:r-térè/: subject relative clauses with tone-dropped heads giwèǂ and ǂrå:ǂ with imperfective verbs ǂgà:nà-ñù and ǂnümù-gó-jùǂH §14.1.9.2; tágù 'kind, type' tone-dropped to ǂtágù
B: bon, nè; àrⁿù kà:ná, àrⁿù tí→ l₅w-è dè,
good, now, rain(n) now, rain(n) first rain.fall-Pfv if,
è łyè=h ịgè ¹bi-jì
2PlSbj again what? ¹do-Ipfv.PlSbj

B: Okay. Now the rain now, when rain first falls, what do you-Pl do now?

A: àrⁿù tí→ l₅w-è dè, ẹmé lè-lè-jú,
rain(n) first rain.fall-Pfv if, 1PlSbj Rdp-slash-Ipfv,
leⁿ-k₃ᵃ jànjá-sëⁿ dè,
slashing l¹-pick.hoe take-Pfv.PlSbj if,
 núⁿ-sá sàj-sëⁿ dè,
millet¹-seed scoop-Pfv.PlSbj if,
[bàrá ¹yè] [wàgà-tùmọ⁻¹ pëⁿ] lè-sëⁿ dè,
[outback ³go] [ridge ²old] slash-Pfv.PlSbj if,
[núⁿ kùn-ê-sëⁿ dè] [ẹmé nàm-ê dè],
[millet put-Pfv.PlSbj if] [1PlSbj step.on-Pfv if]
ęmè wàrù ¹ldùm-ê:nù,
1Pl farming ²wait.for-MP-Ipfv,
àrⁿé: yṣ-ŋ bì-tènpè
formerly like that do-Prog.PlSbj

A: When rain first falls, we plant. (We) take the pick-hoe, scoop up some millet seed,
go to the bush (=the fields) and make slashes (with the pick-hoe) (on) the old (plowing)
ridges. (We) put (=drop) the millet (seeds, in the slashes), we step (on the seeds), we
then) wait for the farming work (=weeding). (They) did like that in the old days.

[lè-lè-jú reduplicated imperfective §10.2.2.2; dè ‘if/when’ used repeatedly to link
clauses into a chronological sequence; perfective plural-subject suffix -sëⁿ marks
the subject of these clauses as plural, but only at the end does 1Pl ęmè appear overtly (since
the discussion is about general farming techniques there is much switching between 1Pl,
2Pl, and 3Pl and many ambiguous passages); lèⁿ-k₃ᵃ and núⁿ-sá are typical noun-noun
compounds with tone-dropped initial §5.1.3; bàrá ¹yè] with L-toned ¹yè ‘go’ medially in
a verb chain §15.1.6.1]

B: maintenant, kó,
now, Nonh,
ṣù⁻¹i. [hàl े lê:] [é kęⁿ],
millet.Def⁻¹L [even 2PlSbj slash] [2PlSbj when.DS],
[[[nà¹ lę:má] tó-è]
[[place¹ some] sprout-Pfv]
[[nà¹ lę:má] tó-li] dè]
[[[place¹ some] sprout-PfvNeg if]
[é nê:] [kò⁻¹l nê:] jànjá-pàŋ ¹bi-jì]
[2Pl now] [Nonh.Topic⁻¹L now] how?-how? ¹do-Ipfv.PlSbj],

B: Now, then, the millet, even if you-Pl have planted (it), if it has sprouted in some
spots and it has not sprouted in some (other) spots, how and how (=what things) do you-
Pl now do (to) that?

[kęⁿ in different-subject subordinated clause §15.2.2.7; parallel clauses with gàmá
’some’ §6.3.2; kò⁻¹L with falling tone as topic §19.1.1]
A: [gámá tò-ě] [gámá tò-ří] dè,
[some sprout-Pfv] [some sprout-PfvNeg] if,
êmé iyé = ì nù.:sà sà:sèⁿ dè,
1PlSbj again millet-seed scoop-Pfv.Plsbj if,
[nà én-i-j] táá ṣe-ř dè,
[land get.wet-M-Pfv] become lgo-Pfv if,
êmé jáŋbóř³ gí-jí,
[1PlSbj resowing lsay-Lpvf.Plsbj]
A: If some has sprouted and some has not sprouted, we scoop up some millet seed again, (then) if the earth happens to get soaked (by another rain), (there is) what we call “re-sowing” (jáŋbóř³).
[... táá ṣe-ř dè if it happens that ... ’§16.1.3]

(709) [êmé ye-ř dè] [nù.: nù:] gân,
[1PlSbj go-Pfv if] [millet.& millet.&] between]
êmé lè:-ù̆r⁴ dè,
1PlSbj slashing¹-hole slash-slash-Pfv.Plsbj if,
[nù: tù:ù nàmá-nàmá-sèⁿ dè],
[millet one-one step-on-step-on-Pfv.Plsbj if]
lìgè-m dàgà-jù
be.complete-Caus leave-Lpvf
We go (to the fields), slash (more) holes (with the pick-hoe) in between the millet plants (that have sprouted), step on the millet (seeds, dropped into the slashes) one by one, complete (the rows of millet, i.e. filling the gaps), and leave (it).

[NP conjunction expressed by dying-quail intonation §7.1.1; tù:ù ruled distributive iteration of tù:ù ‘one’ §4.6.1.6]

(710) B: maintenant, lè kè,
now, slashing Top,
[lè ḷ kè] bè lè = lò dè, est-ce que
[slashing¹-pickhoe with] slash=it.is.not if, Q
[lè ḷ pèré bà ḷ ḷ jù-h] y5 k5
[slashing¹-pickhoe manner slash-Lpvf Rel-h] Exist be.NonhSbj
B: Now, as for planting (i.e. slashing the earth), if not (=aside from) with a pick-hoe, is there any other way to plant?

(711) A:  

<êmé—> êmé = nì [kó hì. dó:řù] gà-gáù,  
1Pl=Dat [NonhPoss hì. fatigue] Rdp-pass.Stat,  
êmé ṭ ḳ ḅ ḷ j̣ sọ̀,  
slashing¹-pick.hoe stand-while.SS slash-Lpvf because,  
êmé ṭ ḳ ḅ hì. nà:x̣a  
[Nonh with hì. easy]  
êmé ṭ ḳ ḅ ḷ j̣  
[1PlSbj slash¹-pick.hoe with] slash-Lpvf
B: nè pèré y5 k5  
now other Exist be.NonhSbj
A: If not with a pick-hoe specifically, planting with something else, it is very tiring for us. Because (with) a pick-hoe, one plants standing up. (Planting) is easier with that, (so) we plant with a pick-hoe.

B: Now, is there another (way)?

[the pick-hoe has a long wooden shaft so the farmer can make a light slash in the earth without having to bend over; té-> 'exactly' §8.4.3.2; “its fatigue passes (=is excessive) for us (dative)”; -ní: while for same subject §15.2.1.4; sógò ‘because’ §17.6.5; {HL} overlay on adjective in a comparative §12.1.2.1]

(712) A: pèrè, [gàmá L hí ná], [dág-à→ kó dè],
other, [some L hí person], [small-Adv be. NonhSbj if]
ú gà-ní: dè]
[2SgSbj pass.by-while SS if]
[gàmá kúwɔ bè] tógúj-i dè] námá-jô;
[some [foot with] turn.over-Pfv if] step.on-lpfv,
[gàmá jìŋùrˈú bè] tó-è dè]
[some [hoe with] slash-Pfv if]
námá-pù [kí-i bè-jù],
step.on-lpfv [be. NonhSbj-Pfv get-lpfv],
kó dág-à→ kó dè]
NonhSbj small-Adv be. NonhSbj if
A: Other than that, some people, if it (=field) is small, as you pass by (in the field), (you-)Sg could turn over some (spots of in the field) with the foot and (after sowing more seeds) step on (them). You can possibly slash some (spots) with a short-handled pick-hoe and step on (them), if it (=field) is small.

[dág-à→ kó adjectival predicate §11.4.1.2; gà-ní: same-subject ‘while’ subordinator §15.2.1.4 with gàrã ‘pass by’; -jó: variant of imperfective -jú in paired-clause construction §10.2.2.3; kí-i bè-jù ‘it may be’ §11.2.2.4]

(713) B: [yɔ́: sà:”] lè = y quoi
[NearDist all] slashing=it.is
A: < yɔ́:— > yɔ́: lè = y;
[NearDist slashing=it.is,
lè sɔ́-sɔ́ yà-táŋã kò]
slashing various go-Prog NonhSbj
B: All that (=those methods) are planting.
A: Those are planting. The various (methods of) planting are going (=being described in turn).

(714) B: lè est-ce que, gàmá wàgà L-túmò bì-rè dè,
slashing Q, some ridge thing do-Pfv if,
< kúwɔ— > [kúwɔ bè] tógúj-i dè,
[foot with] turn.over-Pfv if,
[bè lè-jù”] [kò kà:”] kò-rɔ́]
[3PlSbj slash-lpfv.REL L] [[Nonh also] be. NonhSbj-Neg], …
A: kó kà:”
Nonh also
B: … ùrɔ̀-bòn gi-è: mà
… plowed field say-Pfv. PlSbj Q
A: [kó  kà: “]  yá  kɔ̀  
[Nonh  also]  Exist  be.NonhSbj
B: [sù,  kó  né:]  ṣàpáŋ-śàpáŋ  bì-jì  
yes,  [Nonh now]  how?-how?  do-Ipfv.PIbSbj

B: Planting. When (they) have done the thing (=turned over) some (spots) in the (plowed) ridges, when (they) have turned over (some earth), (the way) they will plant. Doesn’t that too exist? …
A: That too—
B: … they call (them) plowed fields?
A: That too exists.

[bé  lè:-jú  headless imperfective adverbial relative §15.5.3]

(715) A: [kó  kà: “]  ṣùrù  bì-sà:n,  [wàrù  gi: “]  
[Nonh  also]  plowed.field,  [farming  like],  
jà:“ùrù  kùn-e:-sù “  dè,  wàrù-sù “  dè,  
donkey  put-Pfv-PlbSbj  if,  do.farming-Pfv.PIbSbj  if,  
[wàgá-tùmò  kàná]  né:  jà:祐-jà  gi:jì,  
[ridge “  new]  now  (quoted)  say-Ipfv.PIbSbj  
[kó  bì “]  né:  àwàrá-祐-jà  gi:jì,  
[NonhPoss  “name.Def]  now  white.person “…  say-Ipfv.PIbSbj,  
ú  né:,  [kúwá  bè]  tògú-i  nàmá-jì:,  
2Sg  now,  [foot  with]  turn.over-Pfv  step.on-Ipfv,
A: That too, plowed fields (plowed before sowing), like cultivating (=weeding). (They) put a donkey (in the field), (they) do farm work (=make furrows with plow or daba), (they) call it “preparing the field for planting” (jà:祐-jà). Its name now, (they) call it “white person’s preparing the field for planting” (=plowing). Now you-Sg (might) turn over (some earth) with the foot (and) step on (it).
[jà:祐-jà  compound  verbal  noun  based  on  noun-verb  collocation  jà:祐-jà: “prepare field for planting’, i.e. with ridges (or rows of mounds) and furrows, made by hand or with a plow]

(716) [[gùm  hì  “]  [lè “  kà “  bè]  
[[some  “person]  [slashing-pick.hoe  with]  
kó “  kà “  i-gì-i  dè]
[Nonh  on]  stand-MP-Pfv  if]  
[wàgá-tùmò  kàná]  lè  “  dè,  
[ridge “  new]  slash-Pfv  if,  
nàmá-pù  kà:“  ǐyé  “  yà  kɔ̀  
step.on-Ipfv  also  again  Exist  be.NonhSbj
Some people stand up on that (=ridges) with the pick-hoe. They slash (with the pick-hoe) (in) the new ridge (formed by the plow) and step on (it), that too exists.

(717) B: [kó “  ]  [ núm “  bè]  bir-e:-jù  mà-→,  
Nonh.Topic “,  [hand  with]  do-MP-Ipfv  Q,  
or  [sàrù “  bè]  jì  bì-jì “,  
[plow(n)  with]  thing  do-Ipfv.PIbSbj—,
[sàrù “  bè]  dàm-gà-jù  
[plow(n)  with]  be.fixed-Caus-Ipfv
B: So, is it (=can it be) done by hand, or do they do the thing with a plow—do they carry it out with a plow?

{mediopassive biri]-jú ‘be done’ is often translatable as ‘be possible’; sàrú ~ sèrí ‘plow’ < Fr charrue}

(718) A: à:rè: [giré tò] [sèrí bè], formerly [before around] [plow(n) with],

[sèrí yè]-lî [kò ì:kò] bè],

[plow(n) come-PfvNeg] [[NonhSbj ì:be.NonhSbj.Rel] with],

[nùmò bè] [wàgà-tùmò dàgà]-ï dàgà]-l dàgà]

[hand with] [ridge small]-l small]-l small]

màŋà-se dè,

shape(v.)-Pfv.PI SBj if,

[kò kà] nù: nàmá-tènè,

[Nonh on] millet step. on-Prog.PI SBj,

A: In the old days, previously, with a plow—Before the plow came (=was introduced), (they) used to shape small round mounds (in rows) by hand and step on (seeds) on those (=mounds).

{giré tò ‘forward, ahead’ here means ‘before, previously’, for tò see §8.2.14; ‘before ...’ construction with perfective negative, kò ‘it is’ (in relative-clause form), and instrumental bè; dàgà]-l dàgà]-l dàgà iterated adjective §4.5.2]

(719) kà:mà [sèrí yè]-lî: [kò kà]-n mà],

now [plow(n) come-and.DS] [NonhSBj when.DS and.then]

[sèrí bè] kàrà-sè dè,

[plow(n) with] rip-Pfv.PI SBj if,

ì:yè=n nù: [kò kà]-n kà:-n l nàmá-pù

again millet [Nonh on] like this l step on-PlfP

Now after (=since) the plow came, (they) rip up (the earth) with the plow, (then) again (they) (drop seeds and) step on that in that way (=as described before).

(720) B: yò: wà]-n nè:, gu]-sà]-n bìn—,

NearDist Top now, full.outback in—,

kò [gu]-]sà]-n bìn] sày mà→, ou bien hâl

Nonh [full.outback in] only Q, or even

[wòrù]-l-bònò bín] kà:-n ì:yè l bì-jí

[field]-l-fallow in] also thing l do-PlfP PI SBj

B: (As for) that now, out in the bush—, (is) that (method) only out in the bush? Or do (they) also do the thing in fields that have lain fallow (for one to three years)?

{gu]-sà] includes the uncultivated outback, but also long-abandoned fields that have gone back to nature and/or have been grazed by livestock, in any event more remote than bàrá, which can denote any area away from villages including cultivated fields; noun wòrù]-l-bònò, cf. verb bònò ‘hoe (earth) into a small mound (with the daba)’

(721) A: [gu]-sà]-n bìn] kàrà bè-mà-jà→,

[full.outback in] rip get-Caus-PlfP,

[wòrù]-l-[pù]-pù]-l bín] kàrà bè-mà-jà→,

[field]-l-[Rdp-fallow] in] rip get-Caus-PlfP,

[nù: dàgà kò ì:kò l gù]-l gè;

[millet a.little NonhSbj ì:fast] l for,
724

level it)

practice example) fonio, they turn over the earth (all around, with a daba), can’t

pèré

comparative adjective

that reason (=that one to three years) you could let it rip, so that millet will be slightly faster (to ripen). For

if/when X has passed by

A: That way it will yield more millet. That’s why they do it. The millet, it will yield more now.

[bè-mà— from bè-m, causative of bè-ré ; wòrù¹-[pù-pùrò] is synonymous to wòrù¹-bóno (see just above); HL ɔ̀ gè: purposive clause with {HL}-toned predicative comparative adjective ɔ̀ gù ‘be faster’; gá:rá ‘more’ §12.1.2]

(722) B: [é nè:] [nè kàⁿ] pèré

[2Pl now] [slashing on] otherwise

[sì: pèré¹ tìgè ° è bì-ju] [[thing other¹] speak 2PlSbj ¹ get-IPfv.Rel]

[yà kò mà, [yà nà sà:n] gàr-è dè

Exist be.NohnSbj Q, [[NearDist Pl] all] pass.by-IPfv if

B: You-Pl now, concerning planting, is there additionally another topic that you-Pl can talk (about), aside from all those things (already said)?

[object relative clause with tone-dropped adjective in head NP, see sò:¹ pèré another thing in the following segment below; ‘aside from X’ is phrased as ‘if/when X has passed by’; bè-ré means ‘get, obtain’ with NP complement but ‘be able to, can’ with a preceding chained verb §17.5.1]


thing¹ other, [thing¹ new] formerly 1PlSbj not.know but, kà:ná émé, pòŋŋ ǧi:n,

now 1Pl, fonio like,

pá bùgúj-è:-sè° dè,

land turn.over-PPv-PlSbj if,

[kò bì] [nè ] lè-ju kà:n] yè bì-tèŋè

[Nohn in] [slashing slash-IPfv also] Exist do-Prop.PlSbj

A: Another topic, a new topic. In the past we didn’t know, but now, like (=for example) fonio, they turn over the earth (all around, with a daba), they also in fact practice planting (fonio seeds) on that (disturbed earth surface).

[fonio is a cultivated grain, Digitaria exilis; bùgúj ‘turn over (earth, with daba, to level it)]

(724) B: [kò ¹ nè:] ijê = y [kò ¹ nèwè] yà:-kò = y

[Nonh.Topic¹ now] what?=it.is [NonhPoss ¹ value] which?=it.is

A: kò¹ nè: kò gá:rá kè:né-ju,

Nonh.Topic¹ millet NonhSbj more produce-IPfv

[kò ¹ gè:] bì-tèŋè

[[Nonh ¹ for] do-Prop.PlSbj]

[jù: kò gá:rá kè:né-ju]

[millet Nonh more produce-IPfv]

B: That way, what is it? Which (=what) is its usefulness?

A: That way it will yield more millet. That’s why they do it. It will yield more millet.
B: [yɔ́ sâːn fùː] lê = ỳ
[NearDist all all] slashing=it.is
A: [yɔ́ sâːn fùː] lê = ỳ
[NearDist all all] slashing=it.is
B: [yɔ́ dógó níː] [lēⁿ pèrɛ] kɔː:-rɔ̃
[NearDist h' rear after] [slashing¹ other] be.NonhSbj-Neg
A: [yɔ́ dógó níː] [lēⁿ pèrɛ] lēⁿ pèrɛ,
[NearDist h' rear after] [slashing¹ other], slashing¹ other
émɛ [yɔ́ dógó níː] [lēⁿ pèrɛ],
1PlSbj [NearDist h' rear after] [slashing¹ other],
pèrɛ jùgɔ:-rɛ other know-lpfvNeg.Plsbj
B: [yɔ́ nà wɔ́ ỹ] nèː kà:ná,
[NearDist Pl Top] now now,
[é [yɔ́ nà sâːn fùː] biré-sëⁿ]
[2Pl [[NearDist Pl] all all] do-Pfv.Plsbj
A: ê→ yes
B: All those are (methods of) planting?
A: All those are (methods of) planting.
B: After those, there is no other (method of) planting?
A: After those, another (method of planting), we don’t know any other (method of) planting after those (already mentioned).
B: As for those now, you-Pl have done all those (things)?
A: Yes.
Indices

Prosody (grammatical)

{L} tone overlay
clause-final {L}-toned verbs (reflecting defocalization and downdrift), §3.8.2
initial stem in some compounds
ordinary noun-noun compounds, §5.1.3
noun-adjective bahuvrihi, §5.2.1.1
incorporated noun in agentive and verbal-noun compounds, §5.1.4-5
incorporated noun in tonal purposive, §17.6.2
finals of some frozen compounds, §5.1.2
possessed form of a few nouns, §6.2.1.3
tone-dropped nouns etc. before a tonosyntactic controller
noun or adjective before adjective, §6.3.1
noun, adjective, or numeral before demonstrative, §6.5.2
head NP in relative clause, §14.1.2
demonstratives
L-toned after tonal definite, §3.7.3.5
{L} tone overlay
{HL} tone overlay
phonological realization of {HL} on heavy stems, §3.7.3.2
possessed form of prosodically heavy nouns, §6.2.1.2
final in some compounds
possessive-type compounds, §5.1.6
agentive and verbal-noun compounds, §5.1.5
verb stem
in tonal purposive clause, §17.6.2
in verb-stem iterations before motion verb, §15.1.6
in parallel construction before yà:, §15.2.1.5
in comparatives
predicative adjectives and verbs, §12.1.2.1
with gradient quantifiers, §12.1.3
emphatic reduplicated adjectival predicate, §11.4.3
{H} tone overlay
possessed form of most prosodically light nouns, §6.2.1.1
final stem in some compounds
noun-adjective bahuvrihi, §5.2.1.1
possessive-type compounds, §5.1.6
verb stem
in iteration type verb₁⁺H⁻lé (gá:), §11.6.5
imperatives of prosodically light verb stems, §10.6.1.1
{L}+H (all-low except one H-tone at right edge), §3.7.3.7
...Num before demonstrative, (116c-d) in §6.1.4, (152a-d) in §6.5.2
...Num before pronominal possessor, (126a-b) in §6.2.1.5
...Num before ‘all’ quantifier, (118c) in §6.1.4, (154b-c) in §6.6.1
+L local tone at right edge
tonal definite, §4.4.1.1
tonal locative, §8.2.1
tonal topic, §19.1.1

\
\{L\} tone overlay
\{HL\} tone overlay
phonological realization of {HL} on heavy stems, §3.7.3.2
possessed form of prosodically heavy nouns, §6.2.1.2
final in some compounds
possessive-type compounds, §5.1.6
agentive and verbal-noun compounds, §5.1.5
verb stem
in tonal purposive clause, §17.6.2
in verb-stem iterations before motion verb, §15.1.6
in parallel construction before yà:, §15.2.1.5
in comparatives
predicative adjectives and verbs, §12.1.2.1
with gradient quantifiers, §12.1.3
emphatic reduplicated adjectival predicate, §11.4.3

{H} tone overlay
possessed form of most prosodically light nouns, §6.2.1.1
final stem in some compounds
noun-adjective bahuvrihi, §5.2.1.1
possessive-type compounds, §5.1.6
verb stem
in iteration type verb₁⁺H⁻lé (gá:), §11.6.5
imperatives of prosodically light verb stems, §10.6.1.1

\{L\}+H (all-low except one H-tone at right edge), §3.7.3.7
...Num before demonstrative, (116c-d) in §6.1.4, (152a-d) in §6.5.2
...Num before pronominal possessor, (126a-b) in §6.2.1.5
...Num before ‘all’ quantifier, (118c) in §6.1.4, (154b-c) in §6.6.1
+L local tone at right edge
tonal definite, §4.4.1.1
tonal locative, §8.2.1
tonal topic, §19.1.1
downstep
on possessed noun, §6.2.1.4
in bahuvrihi compounds, §5.2.1.1

Intonation
dying-quail final intonation, §3.8.3
prolongation of final syllable, §3.8.2

Selected morphemes

-Ø
see -ú (verbal noun)
= : (lengthening of vowel), see = y ~
= i ~ = : (it is’ elicitic)
à-, frozen initial in a few nouns, §4.1.7
in a few cognate nominals, §11.1.5.2
á:, ‘who?’, §13.2.2
ágá tó, ‘about, concerning’, §8.2.14
ámá:n, ‘so-and-so’, §4.1.3
án-, in a few cognate nominals, §11.1.5.2
á“ man’ (in one compound), §5.1.8
áN-, frozen initial in a few nouns, §4.1.7
á:ná, ‘how much/many?’, §13.2.7
år“á, ‘on top of’, §8.2.5
år“á, ‘man’, §5.1.8
år” in one compound, §5.1.8
bà–, ‘all the way (to/from)’, §8.2.13
in comparatives, §12.2.2
báá, ‘be equal to’, §12.2.1
bá“ in manner adverbial relative clauses,
§15.5.2
báñá, ‘owner’, §5.1.9
compounds (X báñá), §5.1.9
báñá after relative clause with human
singular head, §14.1
bárá, ‘help’
(XL)-toned bárá nonfinally in verb
chain, §17.5.2
bíní – bírn, ‘in, inside’, §8.2.2
bè
plural of noun, §4.1.1, §6.1.1
instrumental postposition, §8.1.2
kó kó bè, ‘before’ clause, §15.4.1.2
after NPs in serial conjunctions, §7.1.3
bè, 3Pl pronoun, §4.3.1
bè:, facitative with adjective, §11.4.4
bè-gèrè, ‘between’, §8.2.6
bèré, ‘get’
‘be able to’, §17.5.1
in respectful requests, §17.5.1.2
L-toned bèré nonfinally in verb chain,
§17.5.1.3
bír-t, ‘be possible’, §17.3.12
bôr-t, ‘take place’, §11.2.5.3
bôrè, ‘under’, §§8.2.10
bá”, ‘beside’, §§8.2.7
da, topic of interrogative, §19.1.4
dàg–à, ‘a little’, §8.4.2
dàgá, ‘cease’, §17.3.5
-dàgá, in cardinal-direction terms, §8.4.5.3
daŋ, ‘exactly’, §§8.4.3.2
daŋè, ‘dare’, §17.3.3
dañ”, ‘all’, §6.6.2
in NP conjunctions, §7.1.4
in relative clauses, §14.1.13
dè, clause-final particle
‘if’ in conditionals,
pseudo-conditional in imperfective
context, §15.2.2.6
-ô dè, different-subject ‘after’,
§15.2.2.9
dè fú– with ‘all’ quantifier, §16.2.2
dèŋu, ‘place’
dèŋ as terminal element in spatial
adverbial relative, §15.5.1
dè, clause-final emphatic, §19.5.5
dèw”, ‘straight’, §8.4.6.3
déy”, ‘artic’, §8.4.6.4
-dígí, in cardinal-direction terms, §8.4.5.3
dógó, ‘behind’, §8.2.9
dógó ní, ‘after’, §§8.2.9
dógúrú, ‘time’, §15.3
dó:, ‘arrive, reach, attain’
in comparatives, §12.2.4
dó: in ‘from … to …’ construction,
§15.5.4
dòŋòrò, ‘otherwise’, §19.2.3
düh, ‘finish’, §17.3.14
dúnś, ‘last’, §4.6.2.1
é
2Pl pronoun, §4.3.1
e kò, see érú kò
-e (suffix), see -e ~ -e ~ -i
egè, far-distant presentative, §4.4.3
èrú kò ~ é kò, far-distant demonstrative,
§4.4.1.2
-ɛ~ -e ~ -i, perfective, §10.2.1.1
  with verb-stem reduplication, §10.2.1.5
  with verb-stem iterations, §11.6.2
  in relative clauses, §14.1.9.1
-ɛː ~ -eː ~ -iː, same-subject anterior
  subordinator, §15.2.2.1
  in perfect of continuing possession,
  §10.2.1.4
  with following ‘be’ quasi-verb,
  §15.2.1.8
-ɛː-
  see -iː ~ -ɛː- (mediopassive)
  see -eː ~ -eː- -iː (same-subject
  anterior)
-ɛː, perfective verb suffix (see also -eː ~ -
  eː ~ -iː)
  before plural-subject perfective -sɛⁿ,
  §10.2.1.1
  before recent perfect jé, §10.2.1.3
  in relative clauses, §14.1.9.1
émé, 1Pl pronoun, §4.3.1
ěné, logophoric pronoun,
forms, §4.3.1
grammar, §18.2
fó→, ‘all the way to, until’, §8.2.12
  fó→ dé⁰-ėⁿ ‘until getting tired’,
  §15.2.1.7
  ‘until’ clause, §15.2.4
fú→, ‘all’, §6.6.1
  in conditionals, §16.2.2-3
gà
  minor variant of ‘for’ postposition,
  §8.3.1.1
  clause-final particle (warning), §19.5.6
gà→, ‘but’, §19.2.1
gà:, clause-final particle (warning),
§19.5.6
gá:
  ‘something like X’, §8.4.1
  after -lé in verb-stem iterations, §11.6.5
  ‘and/or alternatively’ in parallel construction,
  §19.2.2
gámà, ‘some, certain (ones)’ or
  ‘sometimes’, §6.3.2
gámà ná ~ gám ná ‘some (people)’,
§6.3.2
gân, ‘between’, §8.2.11
gâːn, ‘prevent’, §17.3.2
gârá, ‘pass by’
gârá yè-ĩ, perfect, §15.6.1
gâr-á--, ‘a lot’, §8.4.2
gârá, ‘more’, §12.1.2
gêː, gê:
  gêː, postnominal ‘for’ postposition,
  §8.3.1.1
  gêː, in purposive clauses, §17.6.1.1
gêr-ĩː, ‘look’
  forms, §10.1.3.7
  ‘try’ as final verb in chain, §17.5.3
gí, ‘say’, §11.3.1.2, §17.1.2
  as ‘for’ postposition, §8.3.1.1
  irregular imperative gi-né, §10.6.1.1
  gi ní dë, ‘when, after’, §15.2.2.10
  L-toned gi, in purposive clauses,
  §17.6.1.2
  g-i dë, in purposive clauses, §17.6.1.3
-gîⁿ, human characteristic denominal
  suffix after {L}-tone, §4.2.3
  giⁿ, ‘like’, §8.4.1
  X gîⁿ-káⁿ, §8.4.1
  gîⁿ in ‘since’ clause, §15.2.3
  gîⁿ as terminal element in manner
  adverbial relative clause, §15.5.2
  gîrè, ‘in front of’, §8.2.8
  -gü, nominal suffix
    deverbal nominal after {H}-tone,
    §4.2.1
    nonhuman characteristic denominal
    suffix after {L}-tone, §4.2.3
  -gv, minor causative suffix, §9.2.2
  in factitives, §9.5
  hâl, ‘even’, §19.1.9
  -i, verbal noun after CiC-, §4.2.4
  -i (suffix), see -e ~ -e ~ -i
  = iː, see = y ~ = iː = = (‘it is’ clitic)
  -iː ~ -ɛː-, mediopassive, §9.3.1
  omitted in verbal noun, §4.2.4
  reduced to -ɛ before yà:, §15.2.1.5
  -iː→, predicate adjectives, §11.4.1.2
  ën, 1Sg pronoun, §4.3.1
  ën tò ‘over here’, §4.4.2.1, §8.2.14
  ëː, ‘child’, §4.1.2
    compounds, §5.1.7
    L-toned as possessed noun, §6.2.1.3
  ëː wà, ‘know’, §11.2.4.1
    factive complement, §17.2.1
  ënè, ‘not know’, §11.2.4.1
\textit{ipè}, ‘what?’, §13.2.3
\textit{ipè grè}, ‘why?’, §13.2.3
\textit{ipè bè}, ‘how?’, §13.2.3
\textit{irè}, ‘be better/more’, §12.1.4
\textit{îyè} = h, ‘also, furthermore’, §19.3.1
\textit{îyè}, ‘want’, §11.2.4.2

\textit{já}, complement of, §17.3.6

\textit{jà sà} (delayed future), §10.2.2.4
\textit{-jà} in ‘before’ clause, §15.4.2

\textit{-jà}, variant imperfective negative, §10.2.3.5

plural subject -\textit{jè}, §10.2.3.5
H-toned -\textit{jà}; -\textit{jè}, §10.2.3.5
\textit{jà:``}, ‘right, proper’, §17.3.9
\textit{játi}, emphatic, §19.5.2
\textit{já-wò→}, ‘always’, §8.4.6.5
\textit{jè}, ‘take away’, §10.1.3.2
\textit{jè-ô de}, in conditionals, §16.1.2

\textit{-jè}, plural-subject paired imperfective, §10.2.2.3

\textit{jè}, recent perfect, §10.2.1.3

as chained verb, §10.1.1

\textit{-jè}, same-subject ‘while’ clause, §15.2.1.3

\textit{jè-li}, recent perfect negative, §10.2.3.3
plural subject -\textit{jè-là}, §10.2.3.3
\textit{-jí ~ -pj}, plural-subject form of -\textit{jú ~ -pù}, §10.2.2.1

\textit{jíjè}, ‘go along with’, §15.1.8
\textit{jó}, ‘many’, §8.4.2

\textit{-jó}, paired imperfective, §10.2.2.3

\textit{-jú ~ -pù}, imperfective, §10.2.2.1

nasal allomorph after original nasalized syllables, §10.2.2.1
plural-subject -\textit{jí ~ -pj}, §10.2.2.1
with verb-stem reduplication, §10.2.2.2
in relative clauses, §14.1.9.2
complement of ‘see’ or ‘hear’, §17.2.2.1

\textit{kà`}, ‘at the edge of’, §8.2.4

\textit{kà`` ~ kà``}, following some EAs in adverbial (not predicative) function, (220) in §8.4.6.1

\textit{kà``~ kàr``à}

‘also’, §19.1.7
‘even’, §19.1.9
‘even if’ in conditionals, §16.2.1
in counterfactual conditionals, §16.4

\textit{kà:nà}, ‘now’, §19.1.6

\textit{kàr``à}, see \textit{kà``}

\textit{kày}, topic, §19.1.5
\textit{kè}, possessive, §6.2.3
in ‘belong to’ predicates, §11.5.3
in relative clause, §14.1.3
as topic marker, §19.1.3, §18.1.5
\textit{kè``}, ‘become’ (nonhuman), §11.2.2.3
same-subject anterior \textit{kè-è}, §15.2.2.7

\textit{kè`` ~ kèr``è ~ kè-è}, different-subject anterior, §15.2.2.7

with following \textit{mà} ‘and then’, §15.2.2.8

\textit{kènè}, ‘heart’

colloctions, §11.1.4

\textit{kènè}, ‘among’, §8.2.12

\textit{kèr``è}, see \textit{kè``}

\textit{kèw-kèw}, ‘same, equal’, §12.2.3

\textit{kî-i}, ‘happen’ (nonhuman), §11.2.2.4

\textit{kî-l}, ‘finish’, §17.3.13

\textit{kó}, ‘be’ (nonhuman)

\textit{kó} after existential \textit{yà}, §11.2.2.1-2

\textit{kó}

nonhuman pronoun, §4.3.1

prenominal discourse-definite, §4.4.1.3, §6.5.1

\textit{kò-kè`}, ‘first’ (ordinal), §4.6.2.1

\textit{kòy}, ‘must’, §17.3.8

\textit{kòy}, clause-final emphatic, §19.5.3

\textit{kù``}, admonitive particle, §19.2.3

\textit{kù``}, ‘on, over, about’, §8.2.3

\textit{kù`` ~ kù``}, ‘like that’ or ‘only then’, §4.4.2.3

\textit{kù``}, in conjunctions, §7.1.2

\textit{kùnh}, ‘put’

valency, §11.1.1.2

\textit{kùn}, definite locations, §4.4.1.5

\textit{là}

‘than’ in comparatives, §12.1.1.1-2

with \textit{irè} ‘be better/more’, §12.1.4

clause-final emphatic (surprise), §19.5.4

= \textit{là}, stative negative, §10.4

plural-subject = \textit{lè}, §10.4

with derived stative stems, §10.4, §11.2.3

with adjectival predicates, §11.4.2

in relative clauses, §14.1.9.6

in negative comparatives, §12.1.1.1

L-toned = \textit{là} in adjectival comparatives, §12.1.2.1

\textit{là}, tag question, §13.2.1.3

\textit{là: mà}, §13.2.1.3
lá; ‘first’ (adverb), §8.4.5.2
-lá, see -lì
=lé, see =lá
-lé
prohibitive, §10.6.1.2
plural-subject -lé-y, §10.6.1.2
in verb-stem iterations, §11.6.5
léwⁿ, ‘just (one)’, §19.4.2

-lí, verbal suffix
in purposive clauses, §17.6.3
perfective negative, §10.2.3.1
plural-subject -lì-, §10.2.3.1
in relative clauses, §14.1.9.3
in ‘before’ clause, §15.4.1.1-2
léw-i: ~ líy-i: ‘fear’, §11.2.5.4
imperfective complement, §17.3.10
= lò, ‘it is not’, §11.2.1.2
lò mà, rhetorical tag question, §13.1.2.1
lìy ~ lìy = lò, ‘two’, §4.6.1.2
-m, see -mv
mà, mà→

mà, 1Sg possessor, §6.2.3
mà after iterated verb, §11.6.7
mà ‘and then’
after simple inflected verb,
§15.2.2.2
after same-subject anterior -e: ~ -e:
~ -i:, §15.2.2.3
after different-subject ké:n ‘and then’, §15.2.2.8
mà→, ‘or’, §7.2.1-2
mà or mà→ at end of polar
interrogatives, §13.2
mà in verb-stem iteration with ‘yes!’
answer, §11.6.6
mà rarely between relative verb and
resumptive terminal noun, §14.1.7
má
1Sg object pronoun, §4.3.1, §6.7
before some postpositions, §4.3.2
dative mà nì ~ mà = nì, §8.1.1
anaphoric element
reflexive possessor, §18.1.3.2
same-subject connector from relative
to main clause, §14.1.10
in ‘good to eat’ construction,
§6.3.3.3
hortative suffix, §10.6.2.1
plural subject -má-yⁿ, §10.6.2.1
embedded hortative, §17.1.5.2
in obligational clause, §17.3.8
mà:, ‘approximately’, §8.4.3.1
má:n, ‘be courageous’, §10.1.3.8
má:h, ‘consent’, §17.3.4
mbè, variant of plural bè
mí, 1Sg pronoun with ‘it is’ or focus clitic,
§4.3.1
-m-lé, hortative negative, §10.6.2.2
plural subject -m-lé-y, §10.6.2.2
mòrⁿ-i:, ‘assemble’
in ‘together’ construction, §18.3.2
-mv, derivational verb suffix
causative, §9.2.1
in factitives, §9.5
passive, §9.3.2
=nì
variant of ní (dative)
= nì ‘also’ in topic switches, §19.1.8
-nì, see -nì (‘while’)
-
ì dè, different-subject ‘after’, §15.2.2.9
gí-nì dè ‘when, after’, §15.2.2.10
kó kò dè, §15.4.1.1
-ná, deadjectival nominal, §4.2.2
nà, plural
with demonstratives, §4.4.1.2, §6.1.4
linear position, §6.1.1
in relative clause with human plural
head, §14.1
nà:, ‘authentic, entire’, §5.1.10
-nà:, medial element in natural-species
compounds, §5.1.11
nánà, ‘never’, §8.4.6.5
nàpá, ‘forget’, §17.3.7
nè:, in ‘a fortoiri’ construction, §12.3
nè:, ‘now’, §19.1.6
nè: wàⁿ, §19.1.6
nì, ‘here’, §4.4.2.1
nì ~ = nì, dative, §8.1.1
-nì ~ = nì, different-subject ‘while’
subordinator, §15.2.1.2
-nì:, same-subject ‘while’”, §15.2.1.4
-nì:, ordinal, §4.6.2.2
with ‘how many?’ interrogative,
§13.2.7
nà, terminal element in manner adverbial
clause, §15.5.2
nà:, proximate demonstrative (‘this’),
§4.4.1.2, §6.5.2
ná bàŋà (human), §4.4.1.2
L-toned nà:, §6.2.3, §14.1.12
nà-, ‘like this’, §4.4.2.3
nú, ‘go in’, §10.1.3.2
nú-Ø dè, in conditionals, §16.1.2
númà, source postposition, §8.3.2
-nv, minor causative suffix, §9.2.2
-nv, verbal derivational suffix
causative, §9.2.2
inchoative, §9.5

pá, ‘area, ground’
pá as head noun in spatial adverbial
relative, §15.5.1
páng, ‘how?’, §13.2.6
pàngá, ‘take, pick up’
in ‘from … to …’ construction, §15.5.4
pè, ‘woman’, §5.1.8
pè as possessed noun, §6.2.1.3
yà, and yè in compounds, §5.1.8

-pí nominal suffix after {H}-tone, §4.2.1
see -jú ~ -pú, §10.2.2.1
-pù, see -jú ~ -pú, §10.2.2.1
ó, ‘give’,
irregular imperative ó-ó, §10.6.1.1
valency, §11.1.1.2
ó-Ødè, in conditionals, §16.1.2
ójù, ‘whatchamacallit?’, §13.2.9
pà-, ‘all the way to’, §15.2.4
pèrcé, ‘other’, §4.6.1.1
adverb ‘otherwise’, in ‘not again’
construction, §19.3.1
pîlè-nì, ‘do again’, §19.3.1
póórù, ‘say’, §11.3.1.1, §17.1.2
irregular imperative póórù, §10.6.1.1
valency, §11.1.1.2
as final element in verb chain, §15.1.9
pò, ‘any’, §6.6.4

-rè see -rò

-rò, imperfective negative, §10.2.3.4
plural subject -rè, §10.2.3.4
in relative clauses, §14.1.9.4

-rv, negative
-rv after ‘be’ quasi-verb, §11.2.2.2
-rv after ‘be in’ quasi-verb, §11.2.3
-rv ~ -rv, transitive (of mediopassive), §9.3.1
-rv ~ -rv ~ -rv, reversive, §9.1
-rv, see -rv

sà, ‘suppose that’ in conditionals, §16.2.4
sà ~ sà ~ sà, ‘have’
plural subject sè ~ sè ~ sè, §11.5.1
sà ‘have’ after existential yè, §11.5.1
sà in perfect of continuing possession,
§10.2.1.4
sà, in -jà sà (delayed future), §10.2.2.4
sà in relative clause, §14.1.9.6
sàbù, ‘because’, §17.6.4
sà-dà-rà, ‘a fortiori’, §12.3
sà°, perfective relative clauses, §14.1.9.1
sà°, reflexive, §18.1.1
sàn-5: ‘by oneself’, §18.1.6
see also sà°-tan
sà:, ‘all’, §6.6.1
sàn-5:, see under sà
sà°-tan, reciprocal, §18.3
sày, ‘only’, §19.4.1
sè ~ sè ~ sè, plural-subject of sà ~ sà ~ sa
‘have’
-sè°, plural-subject perfective, §10.2.1.1
sèy°
‘a lot’, §8.4.2
‘well’, §8.4.4.1
sì-ì, ‘have’, §11.5.2
sígè, ‘remain’, §11.2.5.1
sígè ~ sígè, ‘more’, §12.1.1.2
sì:°-kà° ‘equivalent of (X)’, §8.4.1, §8.4.3
síwè tè, see síyè tè
síyé tè ~ síwè tè, ‘towards’, §8.2.14
sò, ‘be in’, §11.2.3
sò in relative clause, §14.1.9.6
sògò
‘because’, §8.3.1.2, §17.6.5
‘than’ in comparatives, §12.1.2.1-2
sò:, ‘a fortiori’, §12.3
tájìrì, ‘it is certain’, §19.5.1
tà°, from French tant (que)
tà° fi→ ‘as long as’ in conditionals,
§16.2.3

táŋà ‘be with’, (with noun complement),
§11.2.5.2
táŋà yè-Ø dè ‘if it happens that …’,
§16.1.3.1
-táŋà, progressive suffix, §10.2.2.5
plural subject -tàngè, §10.2.2.5
with locational-existential ‘be’ quasi-
verbs, §10.2.2.5
with existential yè, §11.2.2.1
with verb-stem reduplication, §10.2.2.6
in adverbial clauses, §15.2.1.1
té, ‘precisely’
with adverbs, §4.4.2.2
with quantities, §8.4.3.2
-téŋé, plural-subject form of -táná
téŋé, ‘time’, §15.3
té, see tó ~ té
té-é(·), see tí ‘do first’
té-jë, experiential perfect, §10.2.1
as chained verb, §10.1.1
té-lí, experiential perfect negative,
§10.2.3.2
plural-subject tè-lá; §10.2.3.2
tí, ‘do first’
L-toned tí nonfinally in verb chains,
§15.1.6.3
té-é(·), §15.2.2.5
t-í dè, §16.1.3.2
bà:rí tí ‘send’, §16.1.3.2
kámdá tí ‘throw (sth) away’, (490) in
§15.1
tí →
‘one’ (in counting), §4.6.1.1
‘first’ (adverb), §8.4.5.2
tó ~ té, approximative spatial postposition,
§8.2.1.4
in demonstrative adverbs, §4.4.2.1-2
after yá: ‘where?’, §13.2.4
tó:rí, ‘begin’, §17.3.11
tú:rí, ‘one’ (adjective), §4.6.1.1
tonal locative versus tonal definite,
§4.4.1.1, §8.2.1
in bahuvrhi compound, §5.2.1.2
tú:rá, ‘one’ (numeral), §4.6.1.1
tú-tú:rá (distributive), §8.4.7.2
-tú, verbal noun, §4.2.4
allomorphs -f and - Có, §4.2.4
compounds, §5.1.4
verbal noun clauses, §17.3.1
ú:ño: ~ ú:ndó ~ ú:ndó, presentative, §4.4.3
wà, quotative, §17.1.3
quotative subject, §17.1.4
wè ~ wè ~ wè, see wò ~ wò ~ wò
wè:, ‘become’ (human), §11.2.2.3
wí:-í, ‘remain’ (human), §11.2.2.4
wò, 3Sg human pronoun, §4.3.1
wò→, ‘each, every, all’, §6.6.3
in ‘together’ clauses, §18.3.2
wò ~ wò ~ wò, ‘be’ (human singular),
§11.2.2.2
plural-subject wè ~ wè ~ wè, §11.2.2.2
with progressive suffix, §10.2.2.5,
§11.2.2.2
wò after existential yá, §11.2.2.1-2
wò in relative clause, §14.1.9.6
wò”, topic morpheme, §19.1.2
after headless adverbial relative clause,
§15.5.3.2
-wò-rá, progressive negative, §10.2.3.6
plural-subject -wè-rá, §10.2.3.6
with verb-stem reduplication, §10.2.3.7
=y ~ =i: ~ =i:; ‘it is’ clitic, §11.2.1.1
as complement of ‘become’, §11.2.1.3
-yá, plural-subject imperative, §10.6.1.1
in greetings, §19.7
after prohibitive -lé, §10.6.1.2
after hortative -má, §10.6.2.1
after hortative negative -m:lé,
§10.6.2.2
yá:
‘woman’ (in compounds), §5.1.8
imperative (and presuffixal stem) of yé
‘go’, §10.1.3.2
in WH interrogatives
yá: ‘where?’ interrogative, §13.2.4
yá: dó:gúrú, yá: téŋé bë ‘when?’,
§13.2.5
yá: ká, ‘which?’, §13.2.8
yá:, see under yé ‘go’
yé, ‘go’, §10.1.3.2
imperative yá:, §10.6.1.1
nonfinal imperative yá: in verb chain,
§15.1.6.2
parallel construction with yá: after each
of two verbs, §15.2.1.5
L-toned yé nonfinally in verb chain,
§15.1.6.1
yé- Có as final member of verb chain,
§15.1.7
yé- Có dè, in conditionals, §16.1.2
yé
in ‘a fortiori’ construction, §12.3
see also under yé ‘go’
yé, ‘woman’ (in compounds), §5.1.8
yé, ‘there’ (discourse-definite), §4.4.2.1
distinct from existential yé, §11.2.2.1
yé ~ yá:, existential, §11.2.2.1
with positive stative predicates, §11.2.3
absent from focalized clauses, §13.1
yí, ‘over there’, §4.4.2.1
yó:gó, near-distant presentative, §4.4.3
Grammatical terms

accusative, §6.7
adjective, §4.5
  syntax (in NP), §6.3
  expansions of adjective, §6.3.3
  adjectival predicate, §11.4
  bahuvrihi compounds, §5.2.1.1
  comparative, §12.1
  lexical tones, §3.7.1.4
  grammatical tones, §3.7.2.3
Adjective-Numeral Inversion, §6.4.2
adverb
  adverbs (other than PPs), §8.4 (see also
    expressive adverbial)
  adverbial clause, §15.2
  ‘a fortiori’, §12.3
  ‘again’, §19.3.1
  agitative, §4.2.6
  compounds, §5.1.5
  ‘all’ (see quantifier)
  ‘also’, §19.1.7-8
  ambi-valent (see valency)
AMN (aspect-mood-negation), §10.1
  in nonfinal verb in a chain, §15.1.2
anaphora, chapter 18
anterior clause, §15.2.2
apocope, §3.5.5
apposition
  pronominal possession, §6.2, §14.1.3,
    §18.1.3.1
  pronoun and relative-clause head,
    §14.1.4
approximative, §4.4.2.2
aspect (see AMN, perfective, perfect,
  imperfective, stative)
aspect-mood-negation (AMN) suffix,
  §10.1
Atonal-Morpheme Tone-Spreading,
  §3.7.3.3
augment -ê- after certain types of verb
  plural-subject of perfective, §10.2.1.1,
  §14.1.9.1
auto- and paragenerate, §3.7.3.1
backchannel, §19.6
bahuvrihi, §5.2.1
‘be’
  ‘it’ is clitic, §11.2.1
  locative/existential, §11.2.2.2
  after chained verb, §15.2.1.8
  ‘become’
    with NP, §11.2.5.2
    with adjective (see inchoative)
  ‘be able to’, §17.5.1
  ‘because’ (see causal)
  ‘become’ (see ‘be’; for adjectives see
    inchoative)
  ‘before …’ clauses, §15.4
  ‘begin’, §17.3.11
bifurcation (of NP in relative clause),
  §6.1.3
bracketing (within NP), §6.1.4
  ‘but’, §19.2.1
causal
  postposition (‘because of’), §8.3.1.2
  causal clauses (‘because’), §17.6.4-5
causative, §9.2
  valency of, §11.1.2
chaining (of verbs or VPs), chapter 15
  arguments of chained verbs, §15.1.3
  in relative clause, §14.1.11
  verbal suffix or chained auxiliary verb,
    §10.1.1
characteristic nominal, §4.2.3
clause-final tone dropping, §3.8.2
cliticization, §3.6
  clusters, §3.3.8
    rules affecting clusters, §3.5.6
  cognate nominal, §11.1.5.2-3
comparatives, chapter 12
comparatives, chapter 12
compounds
  agitative, §5.1.5
  nominal, §5.1
  adjectival, §5.2
  bahuvrihi, §5.2.1
  verbal noun, §5.1.4
  ‘owner’, §5.1.9
  iterated stem and medial -nà:, §5.1.11
instrumental, §5.1.12
compound-like tonal purposive clause,
§17.6.2
conjunction
of NPs, §7.1
conditionals, chapter 16 (see also pseudo-
conditional)
counterfactual, §16.4
coordination, chapter 7
no anaphoric relationship among
coordinands, §18.4
consonants, §3.3
Contour-Tone Mora-Addition, §3.7.4.2
Contour-Tone Stretching, §3.7.4.2
dative, §8.1
deadjectival verb, §9.5
definite
tonal definite, §4.4.1.1
prenominal discourse-definite kó,
§4.4.1.3, §6.5.1
defocalized verb or adjective, §13.1
dctic (see demonstrative)
delayed future, §10.2.2.4
in ‘before’ clause, §15.4.1.2
demonstratives
demonstrative pronouns, §4.4
grammatical tone overlays, §3.7.2.5
syntax (in NP), §6.5
follow verb in relative clause,
§6.1.3, §14.1.12
demonstrative adverbs, §4.4.2
denominal verb, §9.6
detachability (see bifurcation)
determiners (see definite, demonstrative)
different-subject (see switch-reference)
discourse markers, §19.2
disjunction, §7.2.2
dissimilation (see also tone polarization)
liquid C’s (doubtfully) in some
reversive verbs, §3.5.3.2
distributive
numerals (iterated), §4.6.1.6
‘each’, §6.6.3
‘do’
‘do whatchamacallit?’, §13.2.9
contraction, §10.1.3.6
with existential morpheme, §4.4.2.1
with expressive adverbials, §8.4.6.1
source of different-subject anterior
clause marker, §15.2.2.7
‘be done’ (= ‘be possible’), §17.3.12
downdrift, §3.8.2
downstep, §3.7.4.6
dying-quail, §3.8.4, §15.2.2.4
emphatic
phrase-final particles, §19.5
pronouns, §18.1.6
Epenthesis, §3.5.3.1
evaluation, §8.4.4
‘even’, §19.1.9
‘even if’, §16.2.1
existential, §11.2.2.1
experiential perfect, §10.2.1.2
expressive adverbial
intensifiers, §6.3.3.2
‘flat’, §4.5.3
in adjectival predicates, §11.4.1.2
extent (see quantifier)
factive
suffixal derivation, §9.5
adjectival derivation with bé, §11.4.4
factive complement clause, §17.2
‘fear’, §11.2.5.4
complement clause, §17.3.10
focalization, §13.1
fraction, §4.6.3
‘from’, §15.5.4
future
delayed future verb form, §10.2.2.4
pseudo-conditional future anterior,
§15.2.2.6
‘give’, §10.1.3.1
greetings, §19.7
harmony (see vowel harmony)
‘have’, §11.5.1-2 (see also possession)
headless
NP, §6.1.2
relative clause, §14.1.6
hortative, §10.6.2
negative, §10.6.2.2
with 3rd person subject, §10.6.4.2
embedded, §17.1.5.2
/i/ > u before labial, §3.5.8.1
imperative, §10.6.1 (see also prohibitive)
status of implied 2nd person subject,
§10.6.3
with 1st and 3rd person subjects,
§10.6.4.1-2
embedded imperative (jussive),
§17.1.5.1
imperfective (see also future, progressive)
positive imperfective system, §10.2.2
imperfective positive, §10.2.2.1
negative, §10.2.3.4-5
in complement clauses, §17.3.3-4, §17.3.6-7, §17.3.10
inalienable, §6.2.4
inchoative (suffixal derivation), §9.5
instrumental
instrumental-comitative postposition, §8.1.2
instrument nominals, §4.2.5
instrumental relative compounds, §5.1.12
intensifier, §6.3.3.2 (see also “expressive adverbial”)
interrogatives, §13.2
polar interrogative vis-à-vis ‘or’ disjunction, §13.2.1
tag question, §13.2.1.2-3
embedded, §13.2.10
interrogative topic, §19.1.4
intonation, §3.8
iteration (of the full stem), see also reduplication
nouns, §4.1.6 (lexical), §4.2.7 (expressive)
adjectives, §4.5.2 (distributive)
umerals, §4.6.1.6 (distributive)
verbs, §11.6, §15.1.5
‘it is’, §11.2.1
jussive, §17.1.5
kin terms
inalienable possession, §6.2.4
vocative, §4.1.8
‘know’, §11.2.4
complement clause, §17.2.1
‘like’ (see similarity)
linear order
within NP, §6.1.1, §14.1.3 (Adjective-Numeral Inversion)
of arguments in verb chains, §15.1.3
locative
tonal locative, §8.2.1
postposition, §8.2.2
logophoric, §18.2
manner adverbal (see also similarity)
adverbal clause, §15.5.2-3
mediopassive (verbal derivative), §9.3.1
metathesis (consonants), §3.5.1.2
metrical structure, §3.2.2
modal (see also imperative, hortative, ‘be able’)
obligation, §17.3.8
‘proper, right’, §8.4.4.2
certainty, §19.5.1 (see also emphatic)
Monophthongization, §3.5.8.2
‘more’, §12.1.2
‘be more’, §12.1.4
motion and transfer verbs
‘arrive’, §10.1.3.1
in ‘from X to Y’ construction, §15.5.4
‘go in’, §10.1.3.1-2
‘go out’, §10.1.3.1
in ablative function, §8.2.13
‘come’ phonology, §3.5.3.2, §10.1.3.6
‘bring’ phonology, §3.5.3.2, §10.1.3.6
‘go’, §10.1.3.1-2
‘go’ in verb chains, §15.1.6.1-2, §15.1.7.1.1.8
‘(go) along with’, §15.1.8
‘take away’, §10.1.3.1-2
Nasalization-Spreading, §3.5.1.1
nasalized vowels, §3.4.2-3
negative
of aspectual inflections, §10.2.3
stative negative, §10.4, §11.4.2
‘it is not’, §11.2.1.2
adjectival predicates, §11.4.2
‘not be (somewhere)’, ‘be absent’, §11.2.2.2
‘not be in/on’, §11.2.3
‘not know’, §11.2.4.1
interaction with quantifier, §6.6.5
of chained verbs, §15.1.4
nominalization
deadjectival, §4.2.2
denominal, §4.2.3
deverbal, §4.2.6
Nonfinal Contour-Tone Simplification, §3.7.4.5
nouns, §4.1
lexical tone melodies, §3.7.1.3, §3.7.1.6-7
grammatical tone overlays, §3.7.2.2
noun phrase, chapter 6
numerals, §4.6
lexical tone melodies, §3.7.1.4
grammatical tone overlays, §3.7.2.4
bahuvrihi compounds, §5.2.1.2
obligation, §17.3.8
object (see also accusative)
focalized, §13.1.2
head of relative clause, §14.3
‘only’, §19.4
ordinal, §4.6.2
parallel constructions, §15.2.1.6
paired imperfectives, §10.2.2.3
participle (in TgK only in perfective positive), §14.1.9.1
passive
mediopassive (suffixal derivation), §9.3.1
passive suffix (identical to causative), §9.3.2
past, §10.5.1, §15.6.1
perception verb
complement clause, §17.2.2
perfect
experiential perfect, §10.2.1.2
negative, §10.2.3.2
recent perfect, §10.2.1.3
negative, §10.2.3.3
perfect of continuing possession, §10.2.1.4
perfect construction with ‘pass’, §15.6.1
perfective (see also perfect)
perfective positive system, §10.2
simple perfective, §10.2.1.1
negative, §10.2.3.1
reduplicated, §10.2.1.5
‘do first’ (arguably related to ‘send’ verb)
ti as linker in verb-chains, §15.1.6.3
té-è: in same-subject clause, §15.2.2.5
t-i dé, §16.1.3.2
person
from direct to indirect discourse, §17.1.4
plural
bè after noun, §4.1.1
possession, §6.2
compounds, §5.1.6
predicates
‘have’, §11.5.1-2
‘belong to’, §11.5.3
possessor as head of relative clause, §14.4
1’kè in topic function, §19.1.3
Postnominal-Determiner Tone-Lowering, §3.7.3.5
postposition, chapter 8
pronominal complements, §4.3.2
focalized, §13.1-3-4
complement as head of relative clause, §14.5
presentative, §4.4.3
Presuffixal V2-Raising, §3.5.2.2
progressive, §10.2.2.5
reduplicated, §10.2.2.6
negative, §10.2.3.6
reduplicative negative, §10.2.3.7
in adverbial clause, §15.2.1.1
prohibitive, §10.6.1.2
prolongation (intonational), §3.8.3
pronouns, §4.3
possessor, §6.3.2
pronominal-subject suffixes, §10.3
emphatic, §18.1.6
pseudo-conditional, §15.2.2.6
purposive
purposive-causal postposition, §8.3.1.1
purposive clause, §17.6
tonal purposive, §17.6.2
as complement of ‘begin’, §17.3.11
quantifier
‘certain (ones), some’, §6.3.2
‘all’, §6.6.1
in relative clauses, §14.1.13
‘each’, §6.6.3
‘any’, §6.6.4
extent (‘a lot’, ‘a little’, ‘many/much’), §8.4.2
quasi-verb, §11.2.2
question (see interrogative)
quotation
quotative verb, §11.3.1
quotative complement, §17.1
jussive, §17.1.5
recent perfect, §10.2.1.3
reciprocal, §18.3
reduplication (see also iteration)
nouns
initial Cv- in nouns, §4.1.4
reduplication plus suffix -ná (extent nominals), §4.2.2
final reduplications in nouns, §4.1.5
adjectival predicates, §11.4.3
verbs
reduced from full-stem iteration, §11.6.3
perfective, §10.2.1.5
imperfective, §10.2.2.2
progressive, §10.2.2.6
negation, §10.2.3.7
stative, §10.4
reflexive, §18.1
relative clauses, chapter 14
with repeated L-toned copy of head noun, §14.1.7
headless, §14.1.6
‘remain’, §11.2.5.1
reversive (suffixal derivation), §9.1
Rightward H-Spreading, §3.7.4.3
rv-Deletion, §3.5.3.2
same-subject (see switch-reference)
‘say’, §11.3.1 (see also quotation)
as final verb in chain, §15.1.9
as adverbial clause marker, §15.2.2.10
‘send’, §10.1.3.1 (for related forms see under perfective)
similarity
‘like’, §8.4.1
‘like this/that’, §4.4.2.3
‘since …’
clauses, §15.2.3, §15.5.4
‘So-and-so’, §4.1.3
source postposition, §8.3.2
spatial
postpositions, §8.2
deictic adverbs, §4.4.2.1
other simple spatial adverbs, §8.5.4.3
spatial adverbial clause, §15.5.1, §15.5.5
specificity (‘approximately’, ‘exactly’), §8.4.3
spirantization, §3.3.2
stative
stative form of regular verbs, §10.4
in relative clause, §14.1.9.5
‘be’, ‘become’, ‘it is’, §11.2.1
in relative clause, §14.1.9.6
‘be in’, ‘be on’, §11.2.3
in relative clause, §14.1.9.6
‘have’ (see possession)
Stranded-Tone Re-Linking, §3.7.4.4
subject
fixed (low-referentiality) subjects, §11.1.4
subject of imperative, §10.6.3
focalized, §13.1.1
head of relative clause, §14.2
Suffixal Vowel-Spreading, §3.5.2.1
switch-reference
same-subject clauses, §15.2.1.3, §15.2.2.1, §15.2.2.3
same-subject relative clause, §14.1.10
different-subject clauses, §15.2.1.2, §15.2.2.7-10
syllables, §3.2.1
Syncope, §3.5.4
temporal adverbial
simple adverbs, §8.4.5.1
adverbial clauses, §15.2-4
‘than’, §12.1.1.2
‘together’, §18.3.2
tonal locative, §8.2.1
tone, §3.7
polarization, §3.7.3.4
in stem iterations, §11.6.5, §15.1.5
clause-final tone-dropping, §3.8.2
tone-dropping
 tonosyntactic within NP, §6.1.4
clause-final (downdrift), §3.8.2
in certain verbs in verb chains, §15.1.6
tonosyntax
within NP, §6.1.4
catalyst, §3.7.3.6
topic, §19.1
reflexive topic, §18.1.5
wə̀i in headless adverbial relative clause, §15.5.3.2
‘until’
clause, §15.2.4
valency, §11.1.1-2
ami-valent verbs, §9.4
of causatives, §11.1.2
verb
stem shapes, §10.1.3
vocalism, §3.5.2
lexical tone melodies, §3.7.1.2, §3.7.1.5
grammatical tone overlays, §3.7.2.1
derivation, chapter 9

440
inflection, chapter 10
form in relative clauses, §14.1.9
verbal noun
uncompounded, §4.2.4
of chained verbs, §15.1.1
compounds, §5.1.4-5
verbal noun complement, §17.3
verb phrase, §11.1.3 (see also chaining)
vocative
of kin terms, §4.1.8
vowels, §3.4

sequence of vowel plus vowel or semivowel, §3.5.7
vowel harmony, §3.4.6
vowel symbolism, §3.4.7
VV-Contraction, §3.5.7.2
‘want’, §11.2.4.2
‘intend to’, §10.2.2.2
‘whatchamacallit?’, §13.2.9
‘while’ clauses, §15.2.1
‘with’ (see instrumental-comitative)
# Abbreviations and symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>accusative (in 1SgAcc), §6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adj</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adv</td>
<td>adverbial (especially derived from adjective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agent</td>
<td>agentive nominal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ant</td>
<td>anterior (subordinated clause)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATR</td>
<td>advanced tongue root (vowel feature)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>consonant (in e.g. CvCv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caus</td>
<td>causative, §9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Char</td>
<td>characteristic (nominal derivative, §4.2.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>dative, §8.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Def</td>
<td>definite, §4.4.1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dem</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Det</td>
<td>determiner (demonstrative or definite)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DF</td>
<td>discourse-functional elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimin</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dist</td>
<td>distant (in NearDist and FarDist)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DS</td>
<td>different subject (subordinator), §15.2.1.2, §15.2.2.7-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EA</td>
<td>expressive adverbial, §8.4.6, §4.5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emph</td>
<td>emphatic (clause-final particle)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exist</td>
<td>existential particle, §11.2.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExpPf</td>
<td>experiential perfect, §10.2.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact</td>
<td>factitive (‘cause to become’ with adjective), §9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foc</td>
<td>focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut</td>
<td>(delayed) future, §10.2.2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>high (tone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hort</td>
<td>hortative, §10.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hum</td>
<td>human</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipfv</td>
<td>imperfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imprt</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inch</td>
<td>inchoative (‘become’ with adjective), §9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inst</td>
<td>instrumental, §8.1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iter</td>
<td>iteration (full reduplication)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>low (tone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logo</td>
<td>logophoric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>mediopassive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n)</td>
<td>noun (in interlinear glosses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg</td>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>nominalization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonh</td>
<td>nonhuman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP</td>
<td>noun phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Num</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obj</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss</td>
<td>possessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pf</td>
<td>perfect (in ExpPf or RecPf)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poss</td>
<td>possessive (kè), §6.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP</td>
<td>postpositional phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ppl</td>
<td>participle (in Ppl.Pfv, in relative clauses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prog</td>
<td>progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proh</td>
<td>prohibitive (negative imperative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pron</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prox</td>
<td>proximate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proh</td>
<td>prohibitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purp</td>
<td>purposive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QTop</td>
<td>interrogative topic (‘what about X?’), §19.1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quot</td>
<td>quotative particle, §17.1.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
QuotSbj  quotative subject particle, §17.1.4
Rdp  reduplication
Recip  reciprocal, §18.3
RecPf  recent perfect, §10.2.1.3
Refl  reflexive, §18.1
Rel  relative clause (verb participle)
Rev  reverse (verb derivation, §9.1
Sbj  subject
Sg  singular
SS  same subject (subordinator), §15.2.1.3-
Stat  stative, §10.4 (derived), §11.2-4 (lexical)
Top  topic
Tr  transitive (verb stem, paired with mediopassive), §9.3
V  verb
VblN  verbal noun
VP  verb phrase
SymbO
*  reconstructed
#  ungrammatical, unacceptable, unattested
á, à, â, ầ, a  tones on vowels (or syllables), §3.7
š, š̀, š́, š̂, pš  tone changes on stem in compounds, chapter 5
/…/
   a) lexical tone melody, e.g. /LH/, /H/
b) underlying or lexical representation, e.g. /gàrá/
{…}  a) tone overlay, e.g. {HL}, {H}, {L}
b) enclosing any set, e.g. {u a i}
[…]  a) phonetic (IPA) representation, e.g. [bû:]
   ₁  downstep
[…]L  {L} tone overlay controlled by an element to the right, §6.1.4
[…]L+H  like preceding but with extra H-tone on final syllable/mora
[HL,…], [H]  {H} or {HL} tone overlay controlled by a possessor to the left, §6.2.1
[…]L  {L} on demonstrative or numeral in certain combinations, §3.7.3.5, §4.6.1.4
   →  “intonational” prolongation of final vowel or sonorant, §3.8.3
∴  dying-quail terminal intonation effect, §3.8.4
=  clitic boundary, §3.6
&  conjunction (in interliners, e.g. X.& Y.& ‘X and Y’)

444
Reference